



9 97020020 1947 E  
3 1761 02002018 6

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



This book is purchased from  
The Schofield Fund  
given in memory of  
William Henry Schofield  
Victoria College, B.A. 1889  
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895  
Professor of Comparative Literature  
Harvard University, 1906-20.  
Harvard Exchange Professor at  
University of Berlin, 1907  
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and  
University of Copenhagen, 1910.  
Harvard Exchange Professor at  
Western Colleges, 1918.













## Melusine.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVIII.

1895.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO. ; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.





Comment guion et ses gens  
 desconfirent les galees des  
 savrazins sur mer Et com

# Melusine.

COMPILED (1352-1394 A.D.) BY

JEAN D'ARRAS

ENGELISHT ABOUT 1500.



EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT  
IN  
THE LIBRARY OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM  
BY  
A. K. DONALD.

PART I.  
TEXT, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

LONDON:  
PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,  
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.  
1895.

PR.

1119

E5

no.68

pt.1

61057  
25-1-37

Extra Series, LXVIII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PROEM ... .. .	1
Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst / ...	2
Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of For- ests for to comme to the Feste that he made of hys sone /	18
Cap. III. How a forester came to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayllous wildbore that euer was sen byfore /	19
Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn with hym ... .. .	21
Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vnkle ... .. .	25
Cap. VI. How Raymondyn came to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladyes with her	28
Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers ... .. .	34
Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttre ... .. .	35
Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before / ...	37
Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong' Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym / ... .. .	40
Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert / and how he bought it / ...	42
Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned came and delyuered to Raymondyn his yefte / ... .. .	44
Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward his lady / ... .. .	46
Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land	51

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider / ... ..	52
Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner /	54
Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted ... ..	54
Cap. XVIII. How the byssshop halowed the bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne laye ... ..	56
Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of Melusyne / ... ..	58
Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of þem ...	107
Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of theirre moder Melusyne and entred theirre ship / ... ..	114
Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce	143
Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came byfore the kinge, he beyng in his bed syke ... ..	151
Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughtler vnto the kinge of Cypre ... ..	157
Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kyng of Anssay tofore lucembourg / and how he was take ... ..	201
Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne ... ..	204
Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourg to Counseylle ... ..	211
Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourg / ... ..	214
Cap. XXIX. How the kyng of behayne sent a messenger toward the king of Anssay his brother / ... ..	215
Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost	218
Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do take the body of kyng Federyke that he had slayn and commanded it to be brent ... ..	227
Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slayn in bataylle	232
Cap. XXXIII. How the kyng Zelodius & the other saracyns were brent and bruyled ... ..	233
Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kyng Federyk of behayne ... ..	235

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne / ... ..	240
Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers jousted after dyner ... ..	241
Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf <i>within</i> the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion ... ..	296
Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande ... ..	302
Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayllezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder ... ..	304
Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymondin cam in garande toward geffray ... ..	307
Cap. XLI. How Geffray <i>with</i> the grete teeth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent bothe thabbot & al the monkes there	309
Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoone, for this that Raymondyn, her lord, wyted her ... ..	314
Cap. XLIII. It is shewed hereafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn ... ..	315
Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swoone ... ..	317
Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament / ...	317
Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe ... ..	319
Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble ... ..	321
Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children ... ..	322
Cap. XLIX. How geffray <i>with</i> the grete teeth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouerthrew hym <i>with</i> hys spere / ... ..	324
Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray folowed hym ...	326
Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoH for to fyght with the geaunt / ... ..	327
Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, <i>within</i> the mountayn ...	327
Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the geaunt kept in pryson ... ..	330
Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott ... ..	330

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vnclē ... ..	331
Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy ... ..	332
Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys synnes to hym ... ..	334
Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme & confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope ... ..	340
Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyd the monastery of Mayl- leses ... ..	346
Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhawk	364
Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away ... ..	366
Cap. LXII. How the king was bete & ouerthrowen and knew not of whom ... ..	367
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS ... ..	373
LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF MELUSINE ... ..	387
GLOSSARY ... ..	389
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PERSONS) ... ..	401
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PLACES) ... ..	407





## Melusine.

[A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe.  
compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated  
to the Duke of Berry and Auuergne, and  
4 translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of  
Frenche into Englishe.<sup>1</sup>]

IN the begynnyng of all werkes / men oughten first  
of alle to calle the name of the creatour of all May the Creator  
8 Creatures, whiche is very & trew maister of alle  
thinges made & to be made, that oughten somewhat to  
entende to perfection of wele. Therfore att the begyn-  
nyng of this present historye / though that I ne be not  
12 worthy for to requyre hym / beseche ryght deuoutly  
his right highe & worthy mageste / that this present help me to bring  
this book to a  
good end!  
history he wyl helpe me to bring vnto a good ende / &  
to fuldoo it att hys glorye & praysyng. And to the  
16 plaisire of my right high, mighti, and doubtid lord  
Iohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duc of Berry & of  
Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after  
the veray & true Cronykles, whiche I haue had of hym This History was  
compiled (in  
French)  
20 and of the Erle of Salesbury in England, & many other  
bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to accom-  
plysshe hit. And bycause that his noble sustir Marye,  
doughtir to the kyng Iohanne of Fraunce, duchesse of  
24 Bar, had requy<sup>2</sup>red my said lord for to haue the said  
historye / the whiche in fauour of her hath doon as  
moche to his power as he might, to serche the very

for the Duchess  
of Bar,  
<sup>2</sup> fol. 1 b.

<sup>1</sup> This title is added in xviith cent. handwriting.

at the command  
of her brother  
John, Duke of  
Berry and Au-  
vergne,

trouth & true historye / and hath commanded me  
for to do drawe alle alonge thystory whiche herafter  
foloweth /. And I as of herte dyligent / of my pouere  
witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth 4  
of hys gracyous commandement. Wherefore I humbly  
& deuoutly beseche & pray to my Creatour, that my  
said lord wil take it in gree / and also all them that  
schall rede or here it / that they wil pardonne me yf I 8  
haue said eny thinges that ben not to their good gree.  
Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the Wens-  
day, saynt Clementis day in Wynter, the yere of our  
lord Ml. ecc. lxxx. vij. beseching alle them that sha 12  
rede, or here it redde, that they wil pardonne me  
my fawte, yf their be eny. ffor certaynly I haue com-  
posed it the moost justly that I coude or haue mowe,  
after the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to 16  
be trew.

and was com-  
menced on St.  
Clement's Day,  
Nov. 23, 1387.

\* \* \* \* \*

## Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymordyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thirst /.

20

<sup>1</sup> fol. 2.

David said that  
the judgments  
of God are un-  
fathomable.

It is foolish,  
therefore, not  
to believe that  
marvellous  
things are true,

for the Creature  
cannot compre-  
hend the designs  
of God.

**D**Auid <sup>1</sup>the prophete saith, that the Iuggements and  
the punysshinges of god ben as abysmes without  
bottom & without ryuage. And he is not wyse that  
suche thinges supposeth to comprehende in his wit / & 24  
weneth that the meruaylles that ben through the vni-  
uersal world, may nat be true, as it is said of the thinges  
that men calle ffayrees / and as it is of many other  
thinges wherof we may not haue the knowleche of alle 28  
them. Now thenne the Creature ought nat therfore for  
to traueille, by outrageous presumyng to knowe & to  
comprehende in his wit & vnderstanding the Iugements  
of god / but men oughten / thinkynge / to be meruaylled 32  
of hym / and meruaylling / to considere / how they may

worthily & deuoutly prayse and glorify hym that Iugith  
so, and ordeynith suche thinges after hys plaisure &  
wille without eny gaynseyng<sup>1</sup>./

Men should  
rather think  
how worthily to  
praise him.

- 4 **T**he creature of god that is rasonable, oughte moche  
besily to vnderstande aftir the sayeng of Aristote,  
that the pynges which he hath made & creatid here  
bynethe, by the presence þat they haue in themself,  
8 certyfyen to be suche as they are / As saynet paule  
seyth in thepistle that he made to the Rommaines /  
sayeng in this manere / that the thinges that he hath  
doon, shalbe knowen & seen by the Creatures of the  
12 world / that is to wete, by the men that can rede &  
adiousten feyth to þactoures whiche haue ben byfore  
vs / as to wete & knowe the landes, the prouinces & the  
straunge Countrees. and to haue ouerseen & vysyted  
16 the dyuerse Royaumes / haue founde so many of dyuerse  
meruaylles aftir common exstimacion, that thumayn  
vnderstanding is constrayned of god / that soo as he is  
without ryuage & without bottom / soo are the thinges  
20 meruayllous & wounderfull in many dyuerse landes.  
aftir their dyuerse nature / that saaf their Iuggement.  
I suppose that neuer no man / but only Adam. hadd  
parfytt knowlege of the thinges Inuysible or that may  
24 not be seen. Wherefore I me bethink fro day to day  
to proufytte in science, & to here & see many thinges /  
which men suposen not to be true. the which, yf they  
be trew / I putte them fourth into this termes byfore  
28 you / to thende that the grette meruaylles that ben  
conteyned in this present hystory may be byleued.  
Wherefore I <sup>1</sup>think to treate to the playsure of god /  
and after the commandement of my said right mighty  
32 and noble lord./

Reasonable  
creatures

should believe  
what is seen,

and should  
give credence to  
travellers

who see many  
marvels.

Adam alone had  
perfect know-  
ledge;

but the author  
daily learns more  
and more,

and tells what  
he has seen, that  
his history may  
be believed.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 25.

- L**Ate vs now leue the Auctoures with peas / and  
retourne we to that we haue herde say and telle  
of our auneyent and old tyme / and that this day we  
36 haue herd say what in the land of Poitou was seen in

Leaving the  
Authors,  
let us turn to  
what has been  
seen in Poitou.

dede / for to couloure<sup>1</sup> our hystory to be trew / as we hold<sup>t</sup> hit soo / and for to shew & publysshe it thugh the true Cronykles / as we suppose to doo /.

In ancient times  
fairies and gob-  
lins often ap-  
peared in Poitou,

We haue thenne herd<sup>t</sup> say and telle of our auneyents, 4  
that in many partes of the sayd<sup>t</sup> lande of Poytow haue  
ben shewed vnto many oon right famylerly many ma-  
nyeres of thinges / the whiche somme called Gobelyns /  
the other ffayrees, and the other 'bonnes dames' or good 8,  
ladyes / and they goo by nyght tyme and entre within  
the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore /  
and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of  
theire cradelles. and somtyme they tourne them out of 12  
theyre wit / and somtyme they brenne & roste them  
before þe fyre / and whan they departe fro them, they  
leue hem as hoole as they were byfore / and somme gyue  
grette happe & ffortune in this world. And yet haue 16

Gervaise tells of  
other fairies,

I herd<sup>t</sup> say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipfu<sup>t</sup> & of cre-  
dence, that somme other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght  
tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of  
wymen with old<sup>t</sup> face, of low and lytil stature or body / 20

which performed  
menial duties.

whiche dide scoure pannes & potts, and dide suche  
thinges as a mayde or seruau<sup>t</sup> oughte to doo / lyberaly  
& without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith  
for certayn, that in his tyme he hadd<sup>t</sup> a fren<sup>d</sup> that was 24  
auneyent & old<sup>t</sup>, whiche recounted for trouth / that in  
hys dayes he hadd<sup>t</sup> seen many tymes suche thinges.

He also says  
that the fairies  
sometimes took  
the form of beau-  
tiful women,

and saith yet the said<sup>t</sup> Geruayse, that the sayd fayrees  
toke somtyme the fourme & the fygure of fayre & 28  
yonge wymen / of whiche many men haue hadd<sup>t</sup> som  
doughtirs, and haue take to theire wyues by meanes of  
som couenauntes or promysse that they made them to  
swere vnto them / the som / that they shuld<sup>t</sup> neuer see 32  
eche other / on the satirday / and that by no maner  
wyse they shuld<sup>t</sup> nat enquiryre where they were by-  
comme / the other / that yf they had eny children /

whom men have  
married on cer-  
tain conditions ;

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *coulourer*.



that theire husbandes shuld neuer see them in theyr  
 child<sup>d</sup> bedd<sup>d</sup> / And as long<sup>t</sup> as they kept theyre cove-  
 nauntes they had good fortune and were euer in pros-  
 4 peryte / but assoone as they faylled of theyr promysse  
 or couenauntes they fell down fro<sup>1</sup> theyr good happ &  
 fortune / and aftir these thinges so happed to haue  
 broken theyr couenauntes / the other were conuerted &  
 8 tourned into serpentes. And yet more sayth the <sup>2</sup>said  
 Geruayse, that he byleueth this to be permytted & doon  
 for som mysdedes that were doon ayenst the playsure  
 of god / wherfore he punysshed them so secretly & so  
 12 wonderly wherof none hath parfytte knowlege / but  
 alonely he / and they may be therefore called the  
 secrets of god, abysmes without ryuage and without  
 bottom / For none knoweth nothing perfyttly to the  
 16 regarde of hym / how be it that sometyme of his pro-  
 uysion ben many thinges knowen / not only of oon /  
 but of many other. It is seen often whan a man  
 hath yssued out of hys countree / and hath seen many  
 20 awounder & meruayllous thynges whiche he neuer wold  
 haue byleued hit by here sayeng<sup>t</sup>, without he had hadd  
 the sight of hit / but as for me that haue nat walked  
 ferre, I haue seen somme thinges that many oon shuld  
 24 nat byleue without they sawe it. With this seyth  
 the said Geruayse, & setteth fourth an ensauple of a  
 knyght, named Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the  
 prouince of Asy / the whiche knyght by auenture on an  
 28 euen founde oon of the fayree in a medowe / and wold  
 haue had her to his wyf / and in dede she assentid to  
 hit / by suche couenaunce that neuer he shuld see her  
 naked / and were longe togider / and the knyght grew  
 32 & waxed prosperous fro day to day. It happed long  
 tyme after that / that he wold haue seen the said  
 Nymphe naked / as he dede / in so moche that the  
 said nymphe putte her heed in to a watre and was

and so long as  
 the conditions  
 were kept, they  
 were prosperous  
 and happy ;  
 but when they  
 were broken,  
 they became  
 poor, and their  
 wives were  
 turned into ser-  
 pents.

<sup>a</sup> fol. 3.

Gervaise thinks  
 this is because of  
 some misdeeds,  
 for which God  
 has punished  
 them.

Travellers often  
 see marvellous  
 things ;

but even I, who  
 have not been  
 far, have seen  
 some marvels.

Sir Robert du  
 Chastel Roussel  
 found a fairy in  
 a meadow,

and was married  
 to her on condi-  
 tion that he  
 should never see  
 her naked.

For a long time  
 he was prosper-  
 ous ;

but one day  
 he broke his  
 promise,

<sup>1</sup> MS. has 'for.'

and his wife was  
changed into a  
serpent, whilst  
he himself grew  
poor.

I have to tell  
how the Castle  
of Lusignen was  
built by a fairy,

and how from  
the same woman  
a noble race  
descended,  
which shall  
reign for ever.

First I will tell  
you whence she  
came.

1 fol. 3b.

The children of  
Melusine and  
Raymondin were

Uryan, King of  
Cyprus; Guyon,  
King of Armenia;  
Raynold, King  
of Bohemia; An-  
thony, Duke of  
Luxembourg;  
Raymond, Earl  
of Forest;

Geoffrey, of Lu-  
signen; Theodo-  
ric, of Partenay;

Fromont, of  
Maillières.

Once upon a  
time, in Albany,  
lived a brave  
King

tourned in to a serpent, whiche was neuer seen after  
that / And the knyght fro day to day wexed pouere  
and declyned from his prosperyte. As for prouerbes  
& exemples I wil none bryng<sup>r</sup> more vnto you / and 4  
that / that I haue doon / it was bycause þat I suppose  
to treate how the noble ffortresse or Castell of Lusyg-  
nen was bylded & made of a woman of the fayree, and  
the manyere how / after the juste & true cronykle / 8  
without to applye ne adiouste to it. nonething / but that  
it be approuued Iuste & trew, and of the propre or owne  
matere / And ye shall here me spek & say of the noble  
lynce whiche yssued of the said woman / that shall 12  
regne for euer vnto thend of the world / aftir that it  
appiereth that it hath euer regned vnto this tyme  
present. But bycause that I byganne first to treate of  
the fayree / I shall telle you how & of whens cam 16  
the said woman whiche bilded the noble <sup>1</sup>ffortress of  
Lusygnen, beforseyd./

**H**erafter folowen the names of the estates of the  
children whiche yssued of Melusyne, and were 20  
bygoten of Raymondyn in wedlok. And first yssued  
kyng Uryan, whiche regned in Cypre. Aftir hym  
cam King Guyon, which regned myghtily in Armenye.  
Item, King<sup>r</sup> Regnald, whiche regned right mightily 24  
in Behaygne. Item, Anthony that was duc of Lucem-  
bourg. Item, Raymond that was Erle of fforest.  
Item, Geffray with the grette toth, that was lord of  
Lusygnen. Item, there yssued also theodoryk, which 28  
was lord of Partenay. Item, ffroymonde, that was  
monke into thabbey of Mailleses,<sup>2</sup> the whiche Geffray  
with the grette toth brent the said Abbey, & thabbot  
also with an hundred religious or monkes. / 32

**I**t is true that there was somtyme in Albany<sup>3</sup> a  
kyng that was moche worthy & valyaunt / And  
as sayth thystory / he had of hys wyf many children /

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Maillières*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *Albanie*.

& that Mathas whiche was fader to florymond was  
 hys first sone / and this kinge had to name Elynas, named Elynas.  
 and was right worthy & mighty knight of his land./

4 And it happed that after the decess of his first wyf / as After his first  
wife's death he  
was hunting,  
 he chaced in a fforest nighe to the see, in the which

forest was a moche fayre fontaynne / that sodaynly he  
 had so grett athurst / that as constreyned<sup>1</sup> he tourned and being thirsty,  
went towards a  
fountain.

8 & yede toward the said fontaynne. And whan he ap-  
 prouched to the said fontayne / he herde a voyce that When he ap-  
proached, he  
heard beautiful  
singing, which  
he thought must  
be of some angel;  
 song<sup>t</sup> so melodyously & so swetly / that he suposed none

other / but it had the voyce of an Angel / but soone aftir  
 12 he knewe that hit was the voyce of a woman. Thenne  
 descendid he & alyghted fro hys hors to thende he  
 shulde not make gret affray / and walked fayre & softly

toward the fontayn in the most couered wyse that he  
 16 coude. And whan he camme nygh to the fontayne / but, walking  
towards the  
fountain, he sees  
a beautiful lady  
(Pressyne).  
 he sawe there the fayrest lady that euer he the dayes

of hys lyf had seen to his aduys or semynge. Thenne  
 he stode styl al abasshed of the grett beaulte that he  
 20 perceyued in the same ladye, which euer songe so

melodyously and so swetly. And thus he stood styl /  
 asmoche for the bewte of the lady / as for to here her  
 swette & playsaunt voyce / and hyd hym in the best  
 24 wyse that he coude vnder the leeuys of the trees / to  
<sup>2</sup>thende that the said lady shuld not perceyue hym / &  
 forgate all the chasse and grett thirst that he had afore.

He hides himself  
to listen to her,

\* fol. 4.

And byganne to think on the songe & on the beaulte  
 28 of the lady. In so moche that he was as rauysshed  
 & knew nat yf it was daylight or nyght, ne yf he slept  
 or wakkeð./

and to look upon  
her beauty: by  
both he is en-  
tranced.

Thus as ye shall now here was kynge helynas so  
 32 T abused / aswel of the right swete songe / as of  
 the bewte of the said lady that he ne wyst whether he  
 slept or waked, For euer styl she songe so melodyously  
 that it was a swete & melodyous thing to here / Thenne

As he stands  
there,

<sup>1</sup> 'honstreyned' in MS.

he remembers  
nothing ;

but two hounds  
at last disturb  
him.

He goes to  
the fountain to  
drink,

and humbly  
salutes the lady,

who returns his  
salutation.

He asks her who  
she is.

He knows all the  
lords and ladies  
of the neighbour-  
hood,

and is surprised  
that she is with-  
out retinue.

He asks her  
pardon for his  
rudeness in  
questioning her.

the kynge Elynas was so rauysshed & abused<sup>1</sup> that he remembred of nothinge worldly / but alonely that he her<sup>d</sup> & sawe the said lady, and abode there long tyme. Thanne camme rannyng toward him two of hys houndis 4 whiche made to hym grett feste,<sup>2</sup> and he lepte & mevyd hym as a man wakyng from slep / and thenne he remembred of the chasse, and had of new so grett athurst / that without hauyng aduys ne mesure he yede 8 fourth vpon the ryuage of the fountayne, and toke the basyn which heng' therby & drank of the watre. And thenne he beheld the said lady whiche had lefte her songe & salued<sup>3</sup> her right humbly / beryng vnto her 12 the gretest honour & reuerence that he might. Thanne she that coude & wyst moche of wele & of honour, rendred to hym his salutacion right gracyously, 'Lady,' said Elynas, the kinge / 'of your curtoysye be 16 nat you dyspleased yf I requyre of you to knowe of your estate / of your beyng & what ye are / For the cause that moueth me therto is suche / as now I shall reherse to you. Right dere lady vouche ye saaf to 20 wete & knowe that I can & know<sup>4</sup> so moche of the beyng of this countree, that there nys within this foure or fyue myle neyther Castel ne ffortres, but pat I knowe / except that same fro whens I departed this 24 day by the mornynge, whiche is two myle hens or theraboute. Nor there nys neyther lord ne lady within this Countrey but that I knowe them wel, and therefore gretly I meruaylle & wounderly am abasshed, fro whens 28 may be suche a fayr and so gent a lady as ye be / so exempt & vnpurveyed of felawship. and for godis loue pardonne me / For grette outrage is to me to demande of you therof / but the grette desire & good wyll that 32 my herte bereth toward your gracyous personne, hath caused hardynes within me for to doo it.' /

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *abusé*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *feste*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *salua*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *sçay et congnois*.



- 1 **S**ire Knight,' said the lady / 'there is none outrage /  
 but it commeth to you of grette curtoysye & honour. And knowe you, sire knight, that I shall nat  
 4 be longe alone whan it shal playse me / but from me  
 I haue sent my seruauents, while þat I dysported me.'  
 Thenne cam fourth to<sup>2</sup> that word<sup>3</sup> oon of her seruauents,  
 wel arayed, whiche rode on a fayre Courcer, and att his  
 8 right hand ledd<sup>4</sup> a palfroy so richely enharnashed<sup>5</sup> that  
 the kyng Elynas was moche abasshed of<sup>6</sup> the grette  
 richesse & noble aray that was about the said palfray.  
 Thanne said the seruauent to his lady: 'Madame, it is  
 12 tyme whan it shall playse you to comme.' And she  
 fourthwith said to the kinge: 'Sire knight, god be  
 with you, and gramercy of your curtoisye.' thenne she  
 went toward the palfray / and the kinge hyed hym,  
 16 & helped to sette her on horsbak moche prately.<sup>5</sup>  
 And she thanked hym moche of hit, and departid /  
 And the kyng yede to his hors, and lept on his bake.  
 thanne camme hys meney, whiche sought hym, and  
 20 sayd that they had taken the herte. And the king<sup>7</sup>  
 said to them / 'that playseth me.' Thenne he byganne  
 to thinke on the beaulte of the said lady, and so moche  
 he was surprysed of her loue, that he ne wyst what  
 24 contenaunce or manyere he shuld hold / and said to  
 his meyne / 'goo you alle before / and I shall folow  
 you soone.' They yede at hys commandement theire  
 way / and wel they perceyued & knew that he had<sup>8</sup>  
 28 found som thinge / And the king hastily tourned his  
 hors, & toke the way that the said lady had ytaken / &  
 folowed her.
- T**hystory recounteth to vs, that so long folowed the  
 32 kinge Elynas the lady, that he found her in a  
 fforest, where as were many trees high & strait / and  
 [it] was in the season that the tyme<sup>6</sup> is swete &

1 fol. 4 b.

She replies  
courteously.Her servants  
have retired  
whilst she  
amused herself.A servant then  
brings a palfrey,  
richly capari-  
soned,and the lady,  
bidding the King  
farewell,mounts and rides  
away.The King also  
mounts, but his  
attendants ar-  
rive, having  
killed the deer.Being enamoured  
of the lady, the  
King dismisses  
his retinue,and rides after  
her.He overtakes her  
in the forest.<sup>2</sup> Fr. à.<sup>3</sup> Fr. enharnacié.<sup>4</sup> Fr. de.<sup>5</sup> Fr. doucement.<sup>6</sup> Fr. temps.

The lady, hearing the noise of his horse, waits for him;

but when he comes up,

King Elynas is much abashed.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 5.

The lady asks him why he follows her,

to which he replies that he is ashamed to let her go unaccompanied through his land.

She excuses him, and begs him not to delay his return merely for that,

upon which he declares his love for her,

gracious, & the place within the forest was moche delectable.<sup>1</sup> And whan the lady herde the noyse of the hors of the kynge Elynas, that rode fast, she said to her seruau<sup>t</sup>: 'Stand we styl, and late vs abyde this knight, For I byleue that he cometh vnto vs for to telle to vs a part of his wille, wherof he was nat as tofore aduysed, For we sawe hym lepe on his hors all thoughtfu<sup>l</sup>.' 'Madame,' said the seruau<sup>t</sup> / 8 'at your plaisir.' Thanne camme the kinge nigh vnto the lady / and as he had neuer seen her before, he salewed her, moche affrayenge, For he was so surpysed<sup>2</sup> of her loue that he coude nat holde conten- 12 aunce. Thanne the lady, that knew yncoghe as it was, and that <sup>3</sup>she shuld comme to her entrepryse / said to hym: 'Kynge Elynas, what goost thou sechyng<sup>t</sup> aftir so hastily / haue I oughte borne away of thyn 16 owne?' / And whan the king<sup>t</sup> herde hym named, he was moche abasshed, For he knew nat what she was that spak with hym / and neuertheles he ansuerde to her: 'My dere lady, nought of myn owne ye withbere / 20 but only that ye passe & goo through my land / and it is grett shame to me / sith that ye be astraunger,<sup>4</sup> that I ne doo you to be conueyed worshipfully thugh my land / whiche I wold moche gladly doo yf I were 24 in place, & had tyme & space for to doo it.' Thenne ansuerde the lady: 'Kynge Elynas, I hold you for excused, & pray you yf ye wyl of vs none other thinge / that ye leue ne lette nat your retourne for that cause.' 28 And Elynas ansuerde / 'wel other thing<sup>t</sup> I seke, lady' / 'And what is it?' said she / 'telle it to me hardyly.' 'My right dere lady, sith that it is your wille & plaisir for to knowe it / I shall telle it to you. 32 I desire moche more than eny other thing<sup>t</sup> in the world forto haue your good loue & your good grace.' 'By my feith,' said she, 'kyng Elynas, to that haue ye

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *delectable*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *surpris*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *estrangière*.

- not faylled / yf that ye think theron but wele & honour, For neuer man shal haue my loue in hys auauntynge.' 'Ha, my dere lady, I ne think on my  
 4 lyf on none cas dyshoneste.' Thenne perceyued the lady þat he was esprised<sup>1</sup> of her loue, & said to hym /  
 'yf ye wil take me as your wyf by mariage, and be sworne vnto me that ye shal nat see me duryng my  
 8 childbed, nor to peyne your self in no manere of way for to loke on me att that tyme / And yf this ye wil doo & swere / I am she that shal obey to you as a wyf ought to obey her husband.' Thanne þe kinge anoone,  
 12 and *with* good wille, sware & promysed to hold that byfore is said. Without longe rehercyng they were spoused, & ledd longe a good lyf togidre. But al the land of the kinge Elynas was moche abasshed who was  
 16 this lady / how be it that she gouerned her wel right wysly & valiauntly. But Nathas, that was sone to the kyng Elynas, hated her ouermoche. and [it] happed that she was at her childbed of thre doughtirs / the  
 20 whiche she had borne<sup>2</sup> ryght gracyously alle her tyme, & was deliuered of them thre at ende of ix. monethis / the first borne was named Melusigne, the second Melyor, and the iij<sup>de</sup> Palatyne. The kyng Elynas  
 24 was nat thanne present at that place, but kyng Nathas his sone was there, and beheld hys thre sustirs, that were so fayre that it was meruaylle. and thanne he went toward the kinge his fader / and thus he said to  
 28 hym : 'Sire / Madame, the quene Pressyne your wyf, hath made & is delyuered of thre doughtirs, the most fayre that euer were seen / *comme* & see them.' Thenne kinge Helynas, that remembred nat of the promysse  
 32 that he had made to Pressyne his wyf / sayd / 'ffayre sone / so wyl I doo.' And yede apertly<sup>3</sup> & entred anoon *within* the chambre wheras Pressyne bathed her thre doughtirs. and whan he saw them / he said in

avowing the honesty of his passion.

She will marry him, if he will promise never to see her in childbed;

to which condition he assents.

They are married, and live long together;

but Nathas, the son of King Elynas, dislikes her (Pressyne); and when she is in childbed of three daughters,  
 2 fol. 5 b.

Melusine, Mellior, and Palatyne,

persuades the King to visit her.

He, forgetting his promise, enters her chamber,

<sup>1</sup> *empris*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *apertement*.

and greets her  
joyfully.

She reproaches  
him for breaking  
his promise, say-  
ing he has lost  
her for evermore,

but that she  
knows Nathas  
is the cause of  
all;

whereupon she  
disappears with  
her three daugh-  
ters, and is never  
seen again.

King Elynas is  
much afflicted at  
the loss of his  
wife Pressyne  
and his daugh-  
ters,

and laments for  
seven years.

His people think  
him mad,  
and make Nathas  
their king,

whom they  
marry to the  
Lady of Yeris;

<sup>4</sup> fol. 6.

and from the  
two is born  
Florymond,

with whom the  
history is not  
concerned.

Pressyne goes  
with her daugh-  
ters to Avalon,  
or the Isle Lost,

this manere: 'god blesse the moder & the doughters,'  
& toke of them grette Ioye. And whan pressyne  
herde hym, she answerde to hym, 'Fals kinge, thou  
hast faylled thy couenaunt, wherof grett euyl shal 4  
comme vnto the / and hast lost me for euermore.

And wel I wot that thy sone Nathas is cause therof,  
& departe I must fro the lightly.<sup>1</sup> but yet I shalbe  
auenged me on thy sone by my sustir & felow, my 8  
lady of the yle lost.' And these thinges said / [she]  
toke her thre doughtirs & had them withher / and  
neuer aftir she was seen in the land /

**T**hystorye saith to vs, that whan the kinge had lost 12  
pressyne his wyf, and his thre doughters, he was  
so wofull & so abashed that he wýst not what he  
shuld doo or say. but he was by the space of seuen  
yere that he dede none other thinge, but compleyned 16  
& sighed, & made grette playntes & piteous lamenta-  
cions for loue of Pressyne his wyf, whiche he louyd of  
lawfull<sup>2</sup> loue. and the people in hys land said that he  
was assoted.<sup>3</sup> and in dede they gaue & betoke the 20  
gouernement ouer them & of alle the lande to Nathas  
his sone. Which gouerned valiauntly, and held hys  
fader in grette charyte. And thenne the barons of  
Albanye gaf to hym vnto hys wyf agentyl woman, 24  
whiche was lady of Yerys. And of these <sup>4</sup>two yssued  
florymond, whiche afterward toke moche of payne &  
traueyll. Neuertheles, oure hystory is not enterprysed  
ne begonne for hym / and therefore we shall hold oure 28  
peas of hym, and we shall retourne to oure hystorye.

**T**hystorye saith, that whan Pressyne departed &  
yede with her thre doughtirs, she went in to  
Aualon, that was named the yle lost, bycause that all 32  
had a man ben there many tymes<sup>5</sup> / yet shuld not he  
conne retourne thither hymself alone / but byhapp &

<sup>1</sup> Fr. soudainement.    <sup>2</sup> Fr. leal.    <sup>3</sup> Fr. assoté.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. tant y eut esté de foyz.



grett auenture. And there she nourysshed her thre  
doughtirs vnto the tyme that they were xv. yere of  
age / and ledd<sup>e</sup> them euery mornyng on a high  
4 mountayne whiche was named, as thystory saith &  
recounteth, Elyneos, whiche is asmoche for to say in  
englissh as florysshed hy<sup>e</sup>.<sup>1</sup> For from thens she sawe  
ynough the land of Albany.<sup>2</sup> and often said to her  
8 thre doughtirs, waymentyng & sore wepyng: 'See, my  
fayre daughters, yonder is the land wher ye were born /  
and ye shuld haue had your wele & honour, ne had be  
the dommage of your fader, that bothe you & me hath  
12 putte in grett myserye without ende vnto the day of  
dome, whan god shal punysse the euyl folk / and the  
good he shall enhaunse in their vertues.'

16 **M**elusyne, tholdest doughtir, demanded of her  
moder Pressyne: 'What falshed<sup>3</sup> hath doon  
oure fader, wherby we must endure so longe this greef  
& sorow?' Thanne the lady, theyre moder, byganne  
to telle & shew vnto them all the manere of the  
20 faytte, so as ye haue herd tofore. And thenne whan  
Melusyne had herde her moder, and that she vnder-  
stode all the faitte or dede, She tourned the talke of  
her moder,<sup>4</sup> & demanded of her the commodytees of  
24 the land / the name of the Cites, tounes, & Castels of  
Albanye / and rehercyng these thinges they al descendid  
doun fro the hy<sup>e</sup>, & retourned to the yle of Aualon.  
And thanne Melusyne had & drew <sup>5</sup>apart her two  
28 sustirs, that is to wete Melyor & Palatyne, & said to  
them in this manyere: 'My dore sustirs, now loke &  
byhold we the myserye wherin oure fader hath putt  
both oure moder & vs all, that shuld haue be so wel att  
32 ease & in so grette worship in oure lyues. what think  
you good of your best aduys for to doo / For as for

where she brings  
up her daughters.

She takes them  
every morning to  
a high mountain,

called Elyneos,

and shows them  
the land in which  
they were born.

Melusine asks  
what was their  
father's wrong  
doing,

and Pressyne  
tells them the  
whole story.

<sup>5</sup> fol. 6 b.

Melusine then  
conspires with  
her sister

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *montaigne florie*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Y'bernie*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *faulceté*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *remist sa mère en aultres parolles*.

to punish King Elynas for the sorrow he has brought upon them and their mother,

by imprisoning him in a mountain of Northumberland,

This they accordingly do;

but when they tell their mother Pressyne,

she is very grieved and angry at their unfilial conduct.

7 fol. 7.

my parte I think to auenge me therof / and as lytel myrthe & solas that he hath Impetred<sup>1</sup> to oure moder by hys falshed / as lytel joye I think to purchasse vnto hym /.' Thenne her two sustirs ansuerde to her 4 in this manere: 'Ye be our oldest sustir, we shall folowe & obey you in all that ye wil doo & shall ordonne theirowf.' And Melusyne said to them / 'ye shew good loue, & to be good & lawfull<sup>2</sup> to oure moder, 8 For by my feyth ye haue said right wel. and I haue aduysed yf it semeth you good that we shall close or shett hym on the high mountayne of Northumberland, named Brombelyoys / and in myserye he shalbe there 12 all<sup>3</sup> his lyf.' 'My sustir,' said either of bothe sustirs / 'lette now hye vs for to doo this / For we haue grette desyre to see that oure moder be auenged of the vnlawfulness that our fader dede shew vnto her.' 16 'Thanne the thre doughtirs dide so moch, that by theyre false condycion they toke theyr fader, & closed or shett hym on the said mountayne. And after that they had so doon, they retourned to their moder, 20 and to her they said in this manere: 'Moder, ye ne oughte to retche<sup>4</sup> ne care more of the vnlawfulness<sup>5</sup> & falshed of our fader / For therof he hath receyued hys payment, For<sup>6</sup> neuer he shal yssue ne departe fro 24 the mounteyne of Brombelyoys, wheron he is closed & shett by vs / and pere he shall waste hys lyf & his tyme with grett dolour and woo.' / 'Ha / ha / alas!' said their moder Pressyne to them / 'how durst you 28 so doo / euyl herted doughters, & without pyte / ye haue not doon wel, whan he that begat you on my body ye haue so shamfully punysshed<sup>7</sup> by your proude courage. For it was he of whom I toke all 32 the playsaunce that I had in this mortall world,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *impetré*.    <sup>2</sup> Fr. *leal*.    <sup>3</sup> MS. has 'as.' Fr. *toute*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *challoir*.    <sup>5</sup> Fr. *desleauté*.

<sup>6</sup> MS. has 'firo.' Fr. *car*.

whiche ye haue taken fro me. therefore, knowe ye wel  
 that I shall punyssh you of the meryte aftir youre  
 deserte. thou, Melusyne, that art tholdest, & that  
 4 oughtest to haue be the moost knowyng / all this is  
 comme & doon thurgh the thy counseyH, For wel I wot  
 that this pryson hath be gyuen to thy fader by the /  
 and therefore thou shalt be she that shalbe first  
 8 punysshed therof. For notwithstanding the vnlaw-  
 fulness of thy fader / bothe thou & thy sustirs he  
 shuld haue drawen to hym, and ye shuld shortly haue  
 ben out of the handes of the Nymphes<sup>1</sup> & of the  
 12 fairees, without to retourne eny more. And fro hens  
 fourthon I gyue to the / the gyfte that thou shalt be  
 euery satirday tourned vnto a serpent fro the nauyll  
 downward / but yf thou fynd ony man þat wil take  
 16 the to hys wyf / and that he wil promytte to the that  
 neuer on the Satirday he shall see the, ne þat shall  
 declare ne reherce thy faytt or dede to ne personne /  
 thou shalt lyue thy cours naturell, and shall dey as a  
 20 naturel & humayn woman / and out of thy body  
 shall yssue a fayre lynee, whiche shalbe gret & of  
 highe proesse. but yf by hap or som auenture / thou  
 shuldest be seen & deceyued<sup>2</sup> of thyn husband /  
 24 knowe thou for certayn that thou shuldest retourne  
 to the tourment & payne wher as thou were in afore /  
 and euer thou shalt abyde therinne vnto the tyme that  
 the right highe Iugge shal hold his iugement. And  
 28 thou shalt appiere by thre dayes byfore the fortresse  
 or Castel whiche thou shalt make, and thou shalt  
 name it aftir thy name / at euery tyme whan it shall  
 haue a new lord, and lykwyse also whan a man of thy  
 32 lynee shal dey. And thou, Melyor, to the I gyue a  
 Castel in the grette Armenye, whiche is fayre & riche,  
 wher thou shalt kepe a<sup>3</sup> Sperohak vnto the tyme that  
 the grett maister shall hold his Iugement. And al

For punishment  
 she condemns  
 Melusine, the  
 eldest and the  
 most in fault,

to be turned into  
 a serpent every  
 Saturday, until  
 she finds some  
 one who will  
 marry her, and  
 promise never  
 to see her on  
 that day.

If he break his  
 promise,

she must return  
 to her punish-  
 ment until the  
 Day of Judg-  
 ment,

appearing before  
 her castle for  
 three days, when-  
 ever it shall have  
 a new lord, or  
 when one of her  
 descendants is  
 about to die.

Melior is con-  
 demned to keep  
 a sparrowhawk  
 in a castle in  
 Armenia, until  
 the judgment  
 day;

<sup>3</sup> fol. 7b.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *japhes*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *decelléc*.

and all knights  
who shall watch  
there a certain  
time without  
sleep,

shall have any  
gift they desire,

except herself in  
marriage.

Those that per-  
sist in this last  
request shall be  
unfortunate to  
the ninth genera-  
tion.

Palatyne is to  
be imprisoned on  
Mount Guygo,  
with the treasure  
of King Elynas,  
until one of their  
lineage shall de-  
liver her,  
and obtain the  
treasure.

The sisters then  
go their several  
ways.

Be not displeased  
that I tell you  
these things.

I will now pro-  
ceed to the  
history itself,

but will first  
tell you how  
King Elynas  
ended his days.

After living a  
long time upon  
the mountain,  
he died,

<sup>2</sup> fol. S.

noble and worthy knightes descended & comme of  
noble lynce, that wil goo watche there the day byfore  
the euen, and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste,  
whiche is on the xx. day of Iung,<sup>1</sup> without eny slep, 4  
shal haue a yeft of the of suche thinges that men may  
haue corporelly / that is to wete, of erthly pinges  
without to demande thy body ne thy loue by maryage  
nor other wyse. And al thoo that shal demande the 8  
without cesse, and that wyl not forbere & absteynne  
them perof / shalbe infortunate vnto the ix. lynce, and  
shul be putt from their prosperytees /. And thou  
shalt be closed, palatyne, & shette on the mountayn of 12-  
Guygo, with al the tresoure of thy fader, vnto the  
tyme that a knight shal comme of our lynce whiche  
shal haue al that tresoure to help therwith for to gete  
& conqyre the land of promyscion / & shal delyure 16  
the from thens /.' Thenne were the thre sustirs full  
heuy of herte & sorowfull, & departed fro their  
moder. And Melusyne went & toke her way al alone  
thrughe the forest & thikk busshes. Melyor also 20  
departed, & yede toward the Sperhaak Castel in the  
grette Armenye. And Palatyne also went to the  
mounteyne of Guygo, wher many a man hath seen  
her /. And I myself herd it say of the kinge of 24  
Arragon and of many other of hys royaume. And  
be nat you displesed yf I haue recounted vnto you  
this auenture, For it is for to adiouste more of feyth,  
& for to verfyfy thistory, And fro hens fourthon I 28  
wil entre into the matere of the very & true hystory,  
but first I shall telle to you how the king Elynas  
fynysshed his dayes in this world / and how Pressyne  
his wyf buried hym within the said mountayn in a 32  
moche noble tombe, as ye shal here hereafter. /

**L**onge tyme was the Kyng Elynas on the said moun-  
tayne in so moch, that deth which bringeth <sup>2</sup>euery

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *juing*.



personne to an ende toke hym. Thanne camme ther  
 Pressyne his wyf and buryed hym there / and on hym  
 made to be sette oon so noble & so riche a tombe, *pat*  
 4 neuer byfore ne syn that tyme was seen none suche ne  
 so riche. For on the tombe were riches without com-  
 paracion as of precyous stones and other Jewellis / and  
 about it were grett & highe Candelstykes of fyn gold,  
 8 and lampes & torches whiche brennen both day &  
 nyght continually. And on the said tombe stood vp  
 right a Statue or ymage of Alabaster, kerued & made  
 aftir the lengthe, lyknes, & fourme of Kinge Elynas /  
 12 and the said ymage held in her handes a table<sup>1</sup> of gold,  
 whereon was writon the forsaid auenture. And there  
 the lady Pressyne stablysshed a stronge geaunt to the  
 sauegarde of the tresoure byfore said / the whiche  
 16 Geaunt was wounder fyers & horryble, and al the  
 Countre therabout he held vnder his subgection. And  
 also aftir hym many other geaunts kept it vnto the  
 tyme & commyng of Geffray with the grett toth / of  
 20 the whiche ye shall more here hereafter. Now haue ye  
 herde of the Kinge Elynas and of Pressyne his wyf.  
 And from hens fourthon I wil bigynne & shew the  
 trouth of thystory of the meruaylles of the noble Castel  
 24 of Lusignen in Poitow. And why & by what manere  
 hit was bilded & made./

and Pressyne  
 buries him, and  
 erects a rich  
 tomb to his  
 memory,

bearing a statue  
 of the King.

She places a  
 giant to guard  
 the tomb and  
 the treasure,

who was suc-  
 ceeded by many  
 others, until  
 Geoffrey with  
 the Great Tooth  
 came.

Now I will tell  
 you of the mar-  
 vellous Castle  
 of Lusignen.

A noble man  
 of Brut Britain,  
 falling out with  
 the nephew of  
 the King,

leaves the land;

and meeting a  
 beautiful lady  
 near a fountain,

**T**hystory recounteth to vs that there was somtyme  
 in the Brut Brytayne<sup>2</sup> a noble man whiche fell at  
 28 debate with the newew of the kinge of Bretons. and in  
 dede he durst therfore nomore dwelle within the land /  
 but toke with hym al his fynaunce & goodes, and went  
 out of the land by the high mountaynes. And as  
 32 telleth thistorye he founde on a day nighe by a fon-  
 tayne a fayr lady to whom he told al his Fortune &  
 aduenture / so that fynally they enamoured<sup>3</sup> eche other,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *tablier*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *la brute bretagne*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *s'amouèrent*.

he marries her,  
and in her  
land builds  
many towns  
and castles;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 8 b.

and the country  
is called Forests.

The knight,  
quarrelling with  
the lady,

she suddenly  
disappears.

He afterwards  
marries the  
sister of the Earl  
of Poitiers,

and has many  
children by her,  
of whom the  
third born was  
named Raymon-  
din.

and the lady shewed to hym grett loue, & dide vnto hym moch comfort. and he began *within* her land, that was wast & deserte for to byld & make fayre townes & strong Castels. and was the land *within* <sup>4</sup> <sup>1</sup>short tyme peupled reasonably / And they dede calle the land forestz, bycause that they founde it full of grett wodes & thikk bushes, And yet at this day it is called Forestz. It haped that this knight & this lady <sup>8</sup> fel at debate togidre. I ne wot not goodly how ne wherfore / but that right sodaynly departed the lady fro the knight, wherfore he was woful & heuy. and notwithstandinge he grew & encreaced euer in worship <sup>12</sup> and in prosperite. The noble men thanne of this land / seeying that they were without a lady purveyed hym of oon to hys wyf, a moche gentil & fayre woman, sustir to the Erle of Poitiers, which regned at that tyme, & <sup>16</sup> he begate on her many children males. emonge the whiche was oon / that is to wete the ijde borne, whiche was named Raymondyn, and was fayre, goodly & gracyous, moche subtyl & wyty in all thinges. And <sup>20</sup> that same tyme<sup>2</sup> the said Raymondin might be xiiij yere of age./

Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to comme to the Feste <sup>24</sup> that he made of<sup>3</sup> hys sone./

<sup>4</sup> fol. 9.

The Earl of  
Poitiers holds  
a great feast

<sup>4</sup> The Erle of Poyters held a grett feste of a sone that he had, and wold haue made hym to be dowbed a knight. And no more children he had, but <sup>28</sup> only a fayre mayde that was called Blanche / and the sone had to name Bertrand. [Thanne the Erle Emery]<sup>5</sup> manded & desyred a moch fayre company for loue of the knighthode of his sone / and amonges other he bode <sup>32</sup>

in honour of his  
son Bertrand,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *icelluy temps*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *pour*. <sup>5</sup> omitted by the translator.

- & prayed the Erle of Forests to *comme* to the feste, & that he shuld bring<sup>1</sup> with him thre of his sones, the oldest, For he wold see them. Thanne the Erle of  
 4 Forestz went at his mandement in the moost honourable wyse that he coude, and with hym he led thre of his sones. The feste was grette, and there were made and dowbed many a knight for loue of Bertrand, sone  
 8 to the Erle of Poyters, that was pat day proferred to thonourable & worshipfull ordere of knighthod. And also was ther made and dowbed to a knight, theldest sone of the Erle of Forestz, for he jousted moche wel  
 12 & fayre. And was the fest contynued and holden the space of viij dayes. And the Erle of Poyters made & gaf many & moche fayre & grett yestes. <sup>1</sup>And at the departyng of the feste the Erle of Poyters demanded  
 16 of the Erle of Forestz, & prayed hym to leue *with* hym Raymondin his nevew, and that he shuld neuer care for hym For he wold puruey for him wel. And the erle of Forestz graunted it / and thus dwelled the said  
 20 Raymondyn with the Erle of Poyters his vncl, that loued hym wel. And after toke the feste an ende moche honourably & frendly. And as now cesseth thistory to spek of the Erle of Forests, whiche re-  
 24 tourned with his two sones & al his fellowship vnto his Countre. And begynneth oure hystory to procede fourth / and to spek of the Erle Emery, and of Raymondyn./

to which the  
Earl of Forests  
and his sons are  
invited.

At the feast  
many are  
knighted.

When it is over,  
the Earl of  
Poitiers asks  
the Earl of  
Forests to leave  
Raymondin in  
his charge,

which is done.

28 Cap. III. How a forester *camme* to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayllous wildbore that euer was sen byfore./

32 **T**hystorye certyffiyeth to vs and also the veray Cronykles that this Erle Emery was grauntfader

The grandfather  
of Earl Emery  
was St. William.

<sup>1</sup> In French version Cap. III. begins from this point.

The Earl was  
worthy, and  
learned in  
astronomy,

and devoted to  
his nephew  
Raymondin.

\* fol. 10.

He had hounds  
and hawks,

and one day  
went to hunt a  
wild boar in the  
Forest of Cou-  
lombiers.

to saynt William that was Erle, and left al worldly  
pocessyons for to serue oure Creatour, and toke on  
hym the ordre & Religion of the whit mauntelles, an  
ordre or Religion so called. And therof I wil not 4  
make grett locucion or talking; But I will procede  
fourth on our matere, and to spek of the Erle Emery.  
Thistory thanne telleth to vs that this Erle was moche  
worthy & valyaunt a knight / and that loued euer 8.  
noblesse, And was the most wyse in the science of  
Astronomye that was in hys dayes, ne byfore syn that  
Aristotles regned. That tyme that the Erle Emery  
regned / thistory sheweth to vs that [he] coude many a 12  
science,<sup>1</sup> & specially he was parfytte in the science of  
Astromy, as I haue said tofore. And knowe ye that  
he loued so moche his newew Raymondin that he might  
no more. and so dide the child his vncle, and peyned 16  
hym moche to playse & to serue hym at gree, and to  
doo hym playsir in all maners. It is wel trouth <sup>2</sup>that  
this Erle had many houndes and many haakes of al  
maneres. and [it] befell as thistory recounteth that 20  
oon of the Foresters camme vnto the Erlis Court, & de-  
manded<sup>3</sup> or told that in the Forest of Coulombiers was  
the moost meruayllous wildbore that had be seen of  
longe tyme byfore, and that at hym shuld be the best 24  
& fayrest dysport that eny gentylman shuld euer haue.  
'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'these tydynges please  
me wel. late the hunters & houndes be redy to morow  
by tymes. & we shall goo to the chasse.' 'My lord,' 28  
said the Forester, 'at your playsire.' And al thus he  
departed fro the Erle / and made redy al that apar-  
teyned to the chasse for to hunte at thoure that he had  
apoynted./

32

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *que de moult de sciences estoit plain.*

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *denoncier.*



Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace  
and Raymondyn with hym.

- AND whan the day was comme that Erle Emery  
4 **A** with grette foyson of barons and knightes departed  
out of the Cite of Poyters / and Raymondyn rode euer  
byside hym on a gret Courser the swerde girded about  
hym and the shelde <sup>1</sup> hehge ouer hys sholder. And whan  
8 they were comme to the Forest they byganne fourthwith  
to hunte, And the wildbore was founde that was fel &  
proude, & deuoured & kyld many houndes and toke  
his cours thugh the Forest, For he was strongly  
12 chaffed, and they byganne for to folowe hym waloping  
a good paas, but the wildbore doubted nothings / but  
menyd & wered hym in suche a manere that there ne  
was so hardy a dogge ne hound that durst abyde hym,  
16 ne so hardy a hunter that durst hold the spere styl  
anenst hym for to hit & broche hym. And thanne  
camme bothe knightes and esquyers / but neuer oon was  
there so hardy that he durst sette foot on the grounde  
20 for to withstande & haue launched at hym. Thenne  
camme the Erle that cryed with a highe voyce. sayeng.  
'shal this swyne<sup>2</sup> abasshe us all.' And whan Ray-  
mondyn herde thus spek hys vncle, he was in hymself  
24 vergoyouse<sup>3</sup> and shamed / and alighted from his  
courser and sette feet on grounde / and holding the  
swerde naked, yede courageously toward the said bore,  
and gaf to hym a strok with grette anger / And the  
28 bore dressed toward hym and made hym to fall on hys  
knees, but soone he stood up, And as preu<sup>4</sup> hardy and  
valyaunt wold haue broched and threst hys swyrde  
within the booris heest / but the bore fledd, and so  
32 fast he ranne that there was neyther man ne hound  
but that he lost the sight of hym, but alonely Ray-  
mondyn that was on horsbak, and so fast he folowed

Earl Emery,  
his nephew  
Raymondin, and  
many knights

<sup>1</sup> fol. 10 b.

go to the forest.

They come upon  
the boar,

but the dogs  
and the knights  
are afraid of him.

Earl Emery  
cries, 'Shall this  
swine abasshe  
us all?'

Raymondin,  
ashamed,  
dismounts,

and attacks the  
boar,

which runs away;

Raymondin  
follows on  
horseback,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *filz de truyc.*

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *vergongne.*

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *preus.*

leaving all the  
hunters behind.

His uncle, afraid,  
gallops to him,  
and bids him  
give up the  
chase,

but Raymondin  
heeds not;

\* fol. 11.

and the hunt  
continues.

The horses sag,  
leaving Earl  
Emery and his  
nephew alone on  
the track.

They rest under  
a tree,

from which the  
Earl studies the  
sky,

and praises God,

the bore that he outranne al thoo that were at the  
chace, & lefte them behinde and founde hym self alone.  
Wherof the Erle, his vncl, was aferd / les that the  
bore shuld distroye hym. Wherfore the Erle waloped 4  
aftir hys newew Raymondin and with a high voyce  
escryed hym. 'Fayre newew, leue this chasse, and cursed  
be he that anonced it to vs, For yf this swyne hurt  
you I shall neuer haue joye in my herte.' But Ray- 8  
mondyn, whiche was chaffed,<sup>1</sup> doubted not of hys lyf,  
ne toke heede to none euyl Fortune that might befall  
2to hym therof / but euer wit/houte cesse folowed the  
said bore, For he was well horsed. And the erle folowed 12  
euer hys newew. What shuld auayll yf herof I shuld  
make a longe tale. Alle theire horses byganne to be  
chaffed and very, & abode fer behinde, saaf only the  
Erle and Raymondyn, whiche chaced the bore so longe 16  
that the nyght felt on them./ Thanne the Erle & his  
newew stode styl and rested þem vnder a grette tree.  
And the Erle gan to sey to Raymondin, 'Fayre newew  
here shall we abyde tyl it be mone shyn.' And Ray- 20  
mondyn said to hym, 'Sire, aftir your wille shall I  
doo.' And soone aftir roos the moone fayre and  
bright./ Thenne the Erle that knew moche of the  
science of Astronomy dide loke & behelde the skye and 24  
sawe the sterres full bright & clere, and the moone that  
was moche fayre without tache or spot, ne none ob-  
scurte or darknes was seen about it /. he ganne sore to  
wepe. And aftir grette & deep sighynges said in this 28  
manere. 'Ha / ha / right mighty and veray god, how  
grette ben the meruaylles that thou haste lefte here  
bynethe / as to knowe parfytly bothe the vertues &  
the nature of many wounder and dyuerse condycions 32  
of thinges, and of theire significacions or beteknynges.  
This might not be perfightly knowen, yf thou shadd  
nat vpon the men somewhat of thy full & deuyne grace,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *eschauffé*.

And speecyally of this meruayllous aduenture, the  
 whiche I now see by the sterres whiche thou hast cre-  
 ated & sitte by ordre on the firmament or skye / and  
 4 that I knowe by the high science of astronomye / of  
 the whiche by thy grace þou hast lente to me oon  
 braunche of knowlege wherof I oughte to preyse /  
 to thanke and to regracy<sup>1</sup>. the hertily in thy highe  
 8 mageste, wher to none may be compared. O veray &  
 highe sire, how might this be reasonably as to know-  
 lege humayne without it were by thy terrible jugement,  
 For no man shuld not mowe haue & receyue wel for  
 12 to do euer euyl. And notwithstanding I see & per-  
 ceue wel by <sup>2</sup>the highe science of Astronomy / of  
 whiche somme vnderstandyng I haue / to me leued<sup>3</sup>  
 of thy pure grace what hit segnyfyeth or betokneth,  
 16 wherof moche meruailled I am.' These wordes said /  
 the Erle byganne to wepe and to sighe more strongly and weeps.  
 than he dide byfore. Thanne Raymondin whiche hadd  
 kyndled the fyre with hys fyreyron and that had herde  
 20 the moost part of all that the Erle Emery had sayd /  
 said to hym in this manere / 'My lord, the fyre is wel  
 kyndled, comme and warme you. and I bylene that within  
 a while we shall haue somme tydynges of your meyne,  
 24 For as my thought ryght now I herd barking of dogges.'  
 'By my feith,' said the Erle. 'of the chace I gyue  
 nomore force / but of that I see' / And thanne he be-  
 helde vpward vnto the sky and wept ful sore / And  
 28 Raymodyn þat so moche loued hym, said to hym /  
 'Ha / ha / my lord, for godis loue lette that thing<sup>4</sup> be.  
 For it apparteyneth not to so highe a prince as ye be,  
 For to putte or sette hys herte therto / ne for to en-  
 32 quyre of suche artes, ne of suche thynges. but wel it  
 behouyth to you, and that shalbe wel doon to regracye,  
 and to thanke god of that he hath purueyed you and  
 promoted vnto so highe and so noble a lordship as

\* fol. 11 b.

Raymondin  
kindles a fire,and asks the  
Earl to warm  
himself,and says he hears  
the dogs barking.The Earl being  
still in tears,Raymondin tries  
to divert his  
attention,<sup>1</sup> Fr. *gracier*.<sup>3</sup> Fr. *presté*.

but he says he  
sees wonderful  
adventures in  
the sky.

Raymondin asks  
what they are.

The Earl says,  
that if a subject  
<sup>1 fol. 12.</sup>  
were to slay his  
lord, then

that subject  
would found  
a noble line.

Raymondin  
answers, that he  
cannot believe it,

because it is  
against right  
and reason.

While they speak  
they hear a great  
affray;

they stop and  
listen;

youre is. And as me semeth it is grette symplenes to  
take ony sorowe or heuynes of suche thinges that may  
not helpe / hyndre ne lette' / 'Ha / ha / fole,' said the  
Erle, 'yf thou wyst and knew the grette meruaylles & 4  
wounderfull auentures that I see, thou shuldest be al  
abasshed.' Thanne Raymondyn, that thought none euyl,  
answeryd in this manere. 'My right dere & doubted  
lord, I pray you to telle it to me / yf it is thinge that I 8  
may knowe.' 'By god,' said the Erle, 'thou shalt  
knowe it / and I wold that neyther god ne the world  
shuld demande of the nothinge of it / and that thad-  
uenture shuld befall to the, on myn owne self / For 12  
from hens fourth I am old and haue frendes ynoughe  
for to hold my lordshipes. but yet I loue the so moche  
that I would that so grett a worship were haped to  
thee / And the auenture is suche / that yf at the same 16  
ooure a subget dide <sup>1</sup>slee hys lord he shuld becomm the  
moost mighty and moost worshiped that euer camme out  
of hys lynage or kynrede, And of hym shuld procede  
and yssue so subtile a lynce / that of it shuld be 20  
mencioun and remembraunce made vnto thende of the  
world. And know thou for certayn that this is trouth  
whiche I telle to the.' Thanne ansuerde Raymondyn  
that neuer he shuld mowe byleue that it were trouth / 24  
and that it were ayenst al right and reason / that a  
man shuld haue wele for to doo euyl, and for to doo  
suche a mortal treson. 'Now byleue thou it surely,'  
said the Erle to Raymondyn, 'For it is as I tell to the.' 28  
'By my feith,' said Raymondin / 'yet shall I nat by-  
leue it.' And as the Erle Emerye and Raymondin  
spak of the said auenture togidre, they herd al alonge  
the wod a grette affray / and Raymondyn toke thanne 32  
hys swerd that lay on the erthe. and lyke wyse dede  
the erle, And abode longe thus thinkinge for to knowe  
what it was, and stode byfore the fyre / on that syde  
as them semyd that the stryf was. And longe in suche 36



a state they abode tyl that they sawe a wounder grette  
 & horryble bore moche chaffed commynge toward  
 them. Thanne gan sey Raymondyn, 'My lord, clemme  
 4 you vpon som tree lest that this wyld bore hurte you,  
 and lette me dele with hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the  
 Erle / 'god forbede that I leue the in suche auenture  
 al alone.' And whan Raymondyn herde this, he went  
 8 & stode byfore the bore hauyng hys swerd on his feet,<sup>1</sup> Raymondin goes  
 and wilfuH<sup>2</sup> for to dystroye & slee hym / and the wild to slay him.  
 bore tourned hym and went toward the Erle. Thenne  
 byganne the dolour of Raymondyn / and the grette  
 12 hape that therof camme aftirward to hym, As the very  
 & trew history recounteth to vs.

Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of  
 Poyters, his vncl.

16 <sup>3</sup> IN this part recounteth thystory, that whan Ray- 3 fol. 12 b.  
 mondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe  
 hym that he shuld not hurte his lord / the bore anoone  
 hurted to hym, & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche  
 20 seeyng the wyld bore comme / lefte his swerd, and toke  
 a short spere, and strayght held it dounward before  
 hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the  
 chasse, broched the bore thurgh the brest / but the  
 24 Erle fel down on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn,  
 holdyng hys swerde in his hand, camme toward the bore,  
 and wold haue smytte hym betwene the foure<sup>4</sup> legges,  
 For he leye vpsodounne the bely vpward. and suche  
 28 a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore, that the blade of  
 hys swerde brake / so that the poynte of it sprang  
 ayenst the Erlis stomak, & wounded hym sore / in so  
 moche that he deyed therof. And Raymondyn, which  
 32 was sore chaffed / seeyng hys wepen broken, and not

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *l'espee au poing*, mistranslation for 'in his fist.'

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *par bonne volenté de la destruire*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *quatre*.



<sup>1</sup> fol. 13.Raymondin kills  
the boar,and then sees  
that his uncle is  
dead.He weeps and  
laments pite-  
ously,and remembers  
that such an  
adventure would  
make a man  
famous.<sup>2</sup> fol. 13 b.

yet *percey*<sup>1</sup>uyng<sup>1</sup> his mortal werk / toke the spere, &  
so strongly broched it thrughe the bore, that he slew  
hym. But whan he dide loke toward his vncle, and  
that he sawe hym all bloody / he went, and wold haue 4  
had hym to stand vpon his feet, but it was for nought.  
he thenne pulled out of hys brest the piece of the  
swerd, and knew that it was hys dede /. Moche  
meruayllously thanne byganne Raymondin to sighe & 8  
to complayne, & wept and lamented piteously, sayeng in  
this manere : ‘Ha / ha / false fortune, how moche art  
thou peruerse & euyl, that hath doon to be slayn by me  
hym that loued me so moche, and that had doon to me 12  
so moche good? Ha / god fader almighty / wher shal  
now be the land where this harde & false synner shal  
mowe abyde / For in certayn all they that shall here  
spek of this grett mysdede shal juge me / & with good 16  
right, to dey of a shamfull deth, For a more false ne  
more euyl treson dide neuer no synner. / Ha / erthe  
cleue & open the / & deuoure thou me fourthwith, and  
lete me fall with the moost obscure & derk angel 20  
within helle, pat somtyme was the fayrest of all other  
in heuen, For wel I haue deserued it.’ In this dolour  
& woo was Raymondyn a longe space of tyme, & was  
moche poughtfull & wroth / and bethought hym self, 24  
& said in this manere / ‘My lord & vncle, that lyeth  
deed yonder, sayd to me / that yf suche an auenture  
shuld comme to me, that I shuld be worshiped more  
than ony man of my lynage. but I now see wel al the 28  
contrary / For truly I shalbe þe moost vnhappy &  
dyshonoured man that euer was borne of woman / and  
by my feyth I haue wel deserued it / it is wel raison  
& right. But notwithstanding <sup>2</sup>syth that now it may 32  
none oþerwyse be / I shal dystourne me out of this  
land, and shal goo som wher for to purchasse myn  
aduenture, suche as god wil send to me in to somme  
good place, where as I may take & do penitence for my 36

synne.' And thanne Raymondyn *camme* to hys lord / and sore wepyng, kyssed hym with so heuy & wooful herte / that thenne he had nat mow say one only word

Raymondin  
sadly kisses his  
dead lord,

4 for all the gold in the world /. And soone aftir that he had kyssed hym, he layed his foot on the sterop and lepe vpon his hors / and departed, holding his way through the myddel of the Forest, moche dyscomforted,

leaps on his  
horse, and rides  
through the  
forest

8 & rode apas vnknowing the way, ne whether he went / but only by hap & att auenture, And made suche a sorowe that there nys no personne in the world that coude thinke ne sey the v<sup>th</sup> part of hys dolour /.

12 **W**han Raymondyn departed fro his lord, and that he had lefte hym deed beside the fyre, and the wild bore also / he rode so longe through the Forest, euer wepyng and complaynyng so sore that it was gret pite for to see & here hym / that about mydnyght he aprouched nygh to a fontayne of fayerye, named þe fontayne of soyf / And many one of the Countre þer about called hit the fontayne of fayerye,

till he comes  
nigh to the fairy  
Fountain of Soif.

20 bycause that many a meruaylle felt & happed there many tymes in tyme passed. And was this fontaynne in a wounderfull & meruayllous place / and ouer it was a roch of meruayllous height / and al alonge the said

24 Fontaynne was a fayre medowe, nygh to the high Forest. And wel trouth it is that the moone dide shynne at that tyme ryght clere & bright, And the hors ledd Raymondyn whiche way that he wold, For no heede nor

28 <sup>1</sup>aduys he had of nothing, for cause of the gret dysplaysaunce that he had *within* hym self. And notwithstanding that he slept, hys hors ledd hym in this state so longe that he was *comme* wel nygh to the

He falls asleep  
on his horse,  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 14.

32 fontayne. And at that same tyme were there [thre] ladyes, that played & dysported them / amongis the whiche oon was auctorised of the other as maistresse & lady ouer them, Of the whiche lady I wil now spek

which journeyes  
on to the  
fountain,

where three  
ladies disport  
themselves.

36 aftir that thistory telleth.

Cap. VI. How Raymondyn *camme* to the  
Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne,  
and two other ladyes with her.

Unknown to  
himself Ray-  
mondin is  
carried by his  
horse

<sup>2</sup> fol. 14 b.

past the Fairy  
Fountain.

The chief lady  
there feignedly  
complains of  
Raymondin not  
greeting them,

she stops his  
horse,

and reproves  
him.

Raymondin does  
not hear,

Thystory saith, that so longe bare the hors Ray- 4  
mondyn thus pensefull<sup>1</sup> & heuy of herte of the  
myshap that was *comme* to hym, that he ne wyst where  
he was, ne whither he went / ne in no manere he ledd  
hys hors / but his hors ledd hym where that he wold, 8  
For Raymondin touched <sup>2</sup>not the brydeH / and herd  
ne saw nought / so sore was hys wit troubled. And  
thus he passed byfore the fontayne where the ladyes  
were, *without* hauyng eny sight of them. but the 12  
hors that sawe them, was sodaynly afrayed, and fledd  
thens, rannynge moche fast. And thanne she that was  
the gretest lady of them thre, sayd in this manere :  
'By my feyth, he that rode now & passed byfore vs, 16  
semyth to be a moche gentyl man / and, neuertheles,  
he maketh of it no semblaunt / but he sheweth the  
semblaunt of a vylayne or kerle, that hath passed  
so before ladyes *without* to haue salewed them.' And 20  
all this said she feynynghly / to thende that the other  
shuld nat perceyue to what thinge she tended, For she  
wyst & knew wel how it was *with* hym, as ye shal  
here say in thystory hereafter. And thanne she gan 24  
say to the other: 'I goo to make hym spek, For he  
semeth to be asleep.'<sup>3</sup> She departed fro the other  
two ladyes, and yede to Raymondyn, and toke the  
hors by the brydell & made hym to stand styl, and 28  
said in this manere: 'By my feyth, sire vassal, hit  
commeth to you of grette pryde or of grette rudesse for  
to passe byfore ony ladyes *without* spekyng or somme  
salutacion / how be it that bothe rudesse & pryde 32  
may be in you.' And the lady cessed as thenne of her  
wordes / but Raymondyn herde nor vnderstod, ne

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *pensif*.

<sup>3</sup> 'a sheep' in MS.

- ansuerd her not. And she, as angry & wroth, sayd  
 ones ayen to hym : ‘ And how, sire musarde, are ye so  
 dyspytous that ye dayne nat ansuere to me ?’ And yet  
 4 he ansuered neuer a word. ‘ By my feith,’ sayd she  
 within her self, ‘ I byleue nonne other / but that this  
 yong man slepeth vpon his hors / or ellis he is eyther  
 dombe or def / but as I trow I shal make hym wel to  
 8 spek, yf he euer spak byfore.’ And thenne she toke  
 and pulled strongly hys hand, sayeng in this manere :  
 ‘ Sire vassal, ye slep.’ Thanne Raymondyn was  
 astonyed <sup>1</sup>and affrayed, as one is whan another awaketh  
 12 hym fro slepe / and toke hys swerd, wenyng to hym  
 that it had be hys vnclis meyne, that wold haue take  
 and slayn hym. And the lady thanne perceyued wel  
 that he yet had not seen her, and, al lawghing, bygan  
 16 to say to hym, ‘ Sire vassal, with whom wyl you  
 bigynne the bataille ? / your enemys ben not here,  
 And knowe you, fayre sire, that I am of your party or  
 syde ?’ And whan Raymondyn herd her spek, he be-  
 20 held her, and perceyued the gret beaulte that was in  
 her, and toke of hit grett meruayll, For it semed to  
 hym that neuer byfore he had not seen none so fayre.  
 And thenne Raymondyn descendid from hys hors, and  
 24 bowed hys knees, and made reuerence vnto her, and  
 said : ‘ My dere lady, pardonne to me myn Ignoraunce  
 & vylonny that I haue doo toward you, For certaynly  
 I haue mystaken ouermoeche anenst your noble per-  
 28 sonne. And neuertheles, I ne sawe ne herd neuer  
 what ye haue said tyl that ye toke me by the hand.  
 and knowe ye, that I thoughte moche at that tyme on  
 a thinge that sore lyeth nygh to my herte / and vnto  
 32 god I pray deuoutly that amendes I may make vnto  
 you / and that of hys grace I may at myn honour be  
 out of this payne, whiche hurteth myn herte sore.’  
 ‘ By my feyth,’ sayd the lady / ‘ it is wel said, For as  
 36 for to bygynne eny thinge, the name of god most first

which enrages  
her;

she sees he  
sleeps,

and wakes him  
suddenly,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 15.

whereat he is  
affrighted,

but the lady  
soothes him.

He admires her  
beauty,

for he had seen  
none so fair  
before.

He asks pardon  
for his neglig-  
ence.



The lady asks  
Raymondin  
where he travels  
to;

1 fol. 15 b.

he says he has  
lost his way,

but she calls him  
by his name,  
and tells him  
not to deceive  
her.

This abashes  
Raymondin.

The lady  
recounts to him  
his adventure,

which abashes  
him yet more.

He asks how she  
knows of it.

be called to mans help / and I byleue you wel / that  
ye herd not what I haue said / but, fayre sire, whither  
goo you att this tyme of nyght / telle hit hardly  
to me / yf goodly ye may dyscouere it. And yf you 4  
knowe not the way / wel I shaH dresse you to it / For  
there nys neyther way ne path but that I knowe it  
wel, and therof ye may trust on me hardly.' 'By  
my feith,' said Raymondyn, 'gramercy, lady, of 8  
your curtoysye. And ye shal knowe it, my dere lady,  
sith that youre desyre is for to know it, I haue lost the  
high way syn almost yestirday none vnto now / and  
I ne wot where I am.' Thanne perceyued she that 12  
he<sup>2</sup> kept hys faytte secret fro her / and said to hym :  
'By god, fayre frend Raymondyn, ye shuld not hyde  
nothinge fro me, For I wot wel how it standeth with  
you.' And thenne whan Raymondyn herd that she 16  
named hym by hys owne name, he was so abashed  
that he wyst not what he shuld ansuere. And she pat  
sawe wel that he was shamfuH of that she had named  
hym, and that she wyst so moche of hys secret & 20  
CounseyH, sayd to hym in this manere: 'Forsouthe,  
Raymondyn, I am she after god that may best coun-  
seylle the / and that may furthre and enhaunse the in  
this mortal lyf. and all thin aduersytees & mysdedes 24  
most be tourned in to wele / nought auaylleth to the  
for to hyde them from me. For wel I wot that thou  
hast slayn thy lord / as moche by myshap / as wyl-  
fully / how be it that at that ooure thou supposest not 28  
to haue doon it. and I wot wel all the wordes that he  
told vnto þe of the arte of Astronome, wherin duryng  
hys lyf he was right expert.' Whan Raymondyn  
herde this he was more abashed than he was tofore / 32  
and said to the lady: 'Right dere lady, ye telle to me  
the trouth of alle thinges that ye say; but moche I  
meruaylle me how ye may so certaynly knowe it / and

<sup>2</sup> 'she' in MS.



who told it so soone to you?' And she ansuerd to  
 hym in this manere: 'Be not thou abasshed therof,  
 For I knowe the full trouth of thy faytte. And wene  
 4 nor suppose thou nat that it be fauntesye or dyuels  
 werk of me and of my wordes, For I certyfy the,  
 Raymodyn,<sup>1</sup> that I am of god, and my byleue is / as  
 a Catholique byleue oughte for to be. and I lete the  
 8 to wete that *without* me and my counseyll / thou  
 mayst not *comme* to thende of thy faytte. but yf thou  
 wilt byleue stedfastly all that thyn vncle Emerye said  
 vnto the, hit shalbe profytable to the, *with* the help of  
 12 god and of me. And I say so moche that I shal make  
 the for to be the gretest lord that euer was of thy  
 lynage, and the gretest and best lyuelod<sup>2</sup> man of them  
 aH.' Whan Raymodyn vnderstod<sup>3</sup> the promysse of  
 16 the lady / he remembred the wordes that hys lord  
 told vnto hym. And consydering *with*in hym self the  
 grete parels<sup>3</sup> wherin he was as exilled and banysshed  
 out of hys Countre & fro his frendes, said [to hym-  
 20 self]<sup>4</sup> that he shuld take thauenture for to byleue the  
 lady of all that she shuld doo or say to hym, For but  
 ones as he said he shuld passe the cruell paas of the  
 deth. And to the lady he ansuerde full humbly in  
 24 this manere: 'My right dere lady, I thanke you moche  
 of the promysse that ye do and proffre to me. For ye  
 shall see & knowe that this shal not abyde or tarye by  
 me for no traueyll that ye can aduyse / but that I  
 28 shall euer doo your playsire, yf it be possible to be  
 doo / and that a cristen man may, or ought to doo,  
*with* honour.' 'By my feyth, Raymondin,' said the  
 lady / 'that is said of free herte, For I shall not say  
 32 nor counseille you nothing / but that good & wele shal  
*comme* therof. but first of alle,' said she / 'ye most  
 promyse to me that ye shall take me to your wyf.  
 and make you no doubte of me / but that I am of

'Not by witch-  
craft,' she  
replies,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 16.

and advises him  
to believe what  
Earl Emery  
foretold,

and promises to  
make him a great  
lord.

He thanks her,

and undertakes  
to do her  
pleasure.

She asks him to  
marry her;

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *terrien*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *pérelz*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *s'advisa*.

god.’<sup>1</sup> And thanne Raymondyn yede & ganne say, & sware in this manere, ‘Lady dere / by my feith / sith that ye ensure me that it is soo / I shal doo afir<sup>2</sup> my power all that ye wyl commaunde me for to doo / And 4 indide I lawfully<sup>3</sup> promytte you that so shal I doo.’ ‘Yet Raymondyn,’ sayd she, ‘ye most swere another thinge.’ ‘What it is, my lady,’ said Raymondyn, ‘I am redy / yf it be thinge that goodly I may doo.’ 8 ‘ye,’ said she / ‘and it may not tourne to you to no domage<sup>4</sup> / but to all wele. Ye muste promytte to me, Raymondyn, vpon all the sacrements & othes that a man very catholouque & of good feith may doo and 12. swere, that neuer while I shalbe in your company, ye shal not payne ne force your self for to see me on the Satirday / nor by no manere ye shal not enquire that day of me, ne the place wher I shalbe.’ And whan 16 she had thus said to Raymondyn, he yet ageyn said to her in this manere : ‘On the parel of my sowle I swere to you / that neuer on þat day I ne shal doo nothing that may hyndre ne adomage<sup>5</sup> you in no manere of 20 wyse’ / ‘and I,’ said she, ‘ne shal doo nor thinke to none other thinge but in what manere I shall mowe best encresse in worship and honour, both you and your lynee.’ And Raymondyn yede & gan sey to her 24 in this manere, ‘Soo shall I doo it to the playsire of god.’/

‘**T**Hanne,’ said the lady / ‘I shal now telle how ye most doo / doubte you not of nothing! but goo 28 fourthwith vnto Poyters, And whan ye shal comme there / many one ye shal fynd commyng fro the chasse that shall axe to you tydynges of the Erle, your vncl. and to them ye shall ansuere in this manere / “how / 32 is he not yet comme ayen?” And they shal sey “nay.” and thanne ye shal say, “I neuer sawe hym syn that

<sup>2</sup> fol. 16 b.

he promises.

She asks him never to try to see her on Saturdays;

this he also promises.

The lady bids Raymondin go to Poitiers,

where the citizens will ask tidings of his uncle.

He is to say he has not seen him,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *de par Dieu*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *leaulment*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *prejudice*.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. *soit en vostre prejudice*.

- the chasse was at the strengest, and whan ye lost hym" / and semblaunt ye most mak to be abasshed more than eny other. And soone after shul comme the
- 4 hunters and other of hys meyne, and <sup>1</sup>shal brynge with them the corps deed *within* a litere / & his woundes shal seme to euery man aduys to be made by the wildbores teth. and they shal say alle, that the wildbore
- 8 hath slayn hym, And yet they shall say that the Erle kyled the sayd bore / and many one shal hold it for a hardy & valiaunt dede. thus the dolour & woo shal bygynne to be moche grete. The Erle Bertrand, his
- 12 sone, & hys doughtir Blanche, & alle oper of hys meyne, bothe lesse & grete togidre, shal make grete sorowe / and so shall ye doo *with* them. and ye shall putte on you the blak gowne as they shall. And afir
- 16 this nobly doon, and the terme assigned & take whan the barons shall comme for to doo theire obeysaunce & homage vnto the yong<sup>r</sup> Erle, ye shal retourne hither to me the day byfore the lordes & barons make theire
- 20 homage / and that tyme att this same place ye shaft fynde me.' Thanne as Raymondyn wold haue departed from Melusyne to haue take hys leve of her / she said to hym in this manere: 'Hold, my redoubted frend' /
- 24 for to bygynne & assemble our loue, I gyue you these two rynges, of whiche the stones ben of grette vertue. For the one hath suche appropriété, that he to whomne hit shal be gyuen by paramours<sup>2</sup> or loue, shal not dey
- 28 by no stroke of no manere of wepen, ne by none armes / as longe as he shal bere it on hym / And the other is of suche vertue, that he that bereth it on hym shal haue victory of all his euyl willers or enemyes / al
- 32 be it pletyng in Courtes, or fyghtyng<sup>r</sup> in feldes,<sup>3</sup> or ellis whersoever it be: and thus, my frend, ye may goo surely.' Thanne toke Raymondin leue of the lady, and embraced & kyssed her swetly & moch frendly

and to feign surprise at his absence.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 17.

When Emery's body is found they will think the boar killed him,

and will mourn,

which Raymondin must do too.

After doing homage to the new earl

he is to return to the Fountain.

Before Raymondin leaves Melusine she gives him two rings;

one has power to keep him safe from hurt,

the other will insure victory to the wearer.

Then Raymondin leaves his lady .

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *par amours*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *en plaidoirie ou meslée*.

fol. 17 b.

<sup>1</sup>as she on whom all hys hoop was leyd. For he was as thenne<sup>2</sup> so moche esprised<sup>3</sup> of her loue / that al that she sayd / doubtles he held it for trouth. and raison it was,<sup>4</sup> as ye shall here hereafter in thystorye./ 4

Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers.

and rides fast to Poitiers.

**R**aymondyn lepte vpon his hors, and the lady dressed and putte hym in to the high way of 8 Poytiers, and [he] departed fro the lady. And at departyng Raymondyn was ful sory, For he loued alredey so moche her felawship, that wel he wold euer haue be with her. Thenne thinkynge, he byganne 12 fast to ryde toward the Cite of Poyters. And the said lady retourned toward the said Fontaynne, where the two other ladyes were, & abode her there / of which ladyes thystory leueth here to speke/. 16

\* fol. 18.

When he arrives they ask for his lord;

he answers that he has not seen him since the great chase began.

Others arrive,

**N**ow saith thystorye, that Raymondyn rode so fast that soone he was comme into Poytiers, where he <sup>5</sup>founde many one that were retourned fro the chasse, which demanded of hym, 'where is my lord?' 20 'how,'<sup>6</sup> said thanne Raymondyn / 'is he not comme?' / and they ansuerd 'nay.' And he said to them, 'I sawe hym neuer syn that the grete chasse bygan, and that the bore scaped fro the houndes.' And while that 24 they spak of this matere amonge them alle / the hunters & other folk arryued there fro the chasse, som now and thenne, the whiche all said as Raymondyn had sayd. And som said that neuer they had seen suche 28 & so meruayllous a chasse, ne so horryble a bore. And many one said that the bore was comme fro somme other land, For none so grete / nor that ranne so fast sawe they neuer. Thanne was euery man meruaylled / how 32

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *desjà*.<sup>3</sup> Fr. *surprins*.<sup>4</sup> Fr. *il avoit raison*.<sup>6</sup> Fr. *comment*.



the Erle taryed so longe. and they went to the yate  
 for to see if he *camme*, & abode hym *per* a longe space.  
 and euer *camme* folk that said as the other had sayd /  
 4 and that they lay all that nyght in the sayd Forest, For  
 they had lost theyre way. Thanne was all the people  
 of Poyters woofull & heuy for loue of theyr lord, that  
 taryed so longe / and specyally the Countesse, the said  
 8 Erlis wyf. but more woofull & heuyer they were  
 within a lytel while after/.

but still no Earl  
 Emery,

whereat the  
 people mourn.

Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought  
 vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttre.

12 **T**Hystorye <sup>1</sup>telleth vnto vs, that so long they abode  
 at the gate with Raymondyn, that they sawe  
 commynge toward the Cite a grete multitude of people.  
 and as they dide approuch & *camme* nygh, they herd  
 16 and vnderstod the piteous voyces of them, wherof they  
 were all meruaylled / and bygan many one to doubte  
 lest that they shuld haue hadd som trouble or somme  
 empeschement.<sup>2</sup> And so longe they abod, that they  
 20 whiche bare the corps of their lord *camme* vnto them,  
 sore lamentyng & piteously waylyng, sayeng to them  
 in this manere: 'wepe ye, and wepe ayen, & clothe  
 you all in blak, For the bore hath slayn our good lord,  
 24 the Erle Emerye.' And after the corps *camme* two  
 hunters, that bare the grette bore. and thus they  
 entred into the Cite, makyng grete sorowe. And alle  
 the people of the Cite, seeyng theyre lord deed, by-  
 28 ganne pyteously to crye / sayeng in this manere: 'Ha /  
 ha, cursed be he of god that first anonced this chasse.'  
 The sorow & dolour was there so grete that no man sawe  
<sup>2</sup>neuer no greter. And making suche sorowe *camme*  
 32 vnto the Palleys / and there was the Corps leyd. And  
 bycause one ought not to kepe ne mayntenne longe

<sup>1</sup> fol. 185.

A crowd is seen  
 approaching the  
 city gate;

their piteous  
 voices make the  
 townsmen  
 marvel.

They arrive, bear-  
 ing their lord's  
 body;

two hunters fol-  
 low, bearing the  
 boar.

The citizens,  
 weeping,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 19.

arrive at the  
 palace, where  
 they lay their  
 lord,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *empeschement*.



and all the people sorrow.

Raymondin sorrows more than any other.

The Earl's obsequy is done in the Church,

afterwards the boar is burnt.

Four days after the Barons try to comfort the Earl's family.

Soon after the Barons are sent for, to do homage to their new lord,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 19 b.  
on knowledge of which Raymondin returns to his land.

sorowe, I passe it ouer lyghtly. The Countesse & her children made ouergrete sorow / and so dide the Barons and all the Comynaltee of the land. And knowe ye also / that so dide Raymondyn, as it foloweth. / 4

Raymondyn made grete sorowe and greter than eny other, and sore repented hym of hys mysdede, And so moche / that yf it had not be the hoop & comfort of his lady, he had not mowe withhold hym self, 8 but þat he had sayd vnto them al hys auenture, for cause of the grete contricion that he had of the deth of hys vncle and lord. But I wil not spek long of this matere. Soone thobsequye was doon moche nobly & 12 richely within the Chirche of our lady of Poytiers, after the custome that was at that tyme, And ye muste knowe that the good folk of the land that had lost þeir lord were full of heuynes and of sorow / and they 16 fourthwith toke the said bore, and byfore the said Chirch of our lady they brent it / And as it is wel trouth that there nys so grete a sorowe, but that within foure dayes<sup>1</sup> it is somewhat peased / the barons of the 20 land thaune yede and swetly comforted the Countesse and her two children afir their power / and so moche they dide that her grete sorowe was somewhat peased. But þe sorowe of Raymondyn grew & wexed more and 24 more, as wel bycause of his grete mysdede / as for the grete loue of whiche he loued hys vncle. It was thanne ordeyned & concluded by the Counseyll that alle the Barons of the land shuld be sente fore, & boden to 28 comme at a certayn day for to doo their homage to theyre gracyous lord, the sone of the said late Erle. And assone<sup>2</sup> as Raymondyn knew of it, he toke hys hors and alone yssued out of Poytiers and entred within the 32 Forest, for to goo & hold hys couenaunt vnto his lady. /

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *trois jours*.

Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward  
hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer  
he had seen before./

- 4 **T**Hystory telleth to vs that so longe rode Ray-  
mondyn that he camme into the Forest of Cou-  
lombiers, & passed through the lytel toun, & went vpon  
the mountayne and yede so longe that he perceyued  
8 the medowes whiche were vnder the roche, that was  
about the Fontayne of Soyf, and sawe a hous made of  
stone in a manere of a ChapeH. And knowe ye that Ray-  
mondyn had be there many [a] tyme, but neuer tofore  
12 he had seen it / and went neuer to hit; And before the  
place he perceyued many ladyes, knyghtes, & Squyers  
whiche made to hym grete feste and praysed hym  
gretly. Wherfor he meruaylled gretly, For one of them  
16 said to hymme: <sup>1</sup>‘Sire, alight & come toward my lady  
that abydeth astir you within her payllon or tente.’  
‘By my feyth,’ sayd Raymondyn / ‘hit plaiseth me wel  
so for to doo.’ Soone he descendid from hys hors &  
20 yede with them, which conueyed hym toward the lady  
moche honourably. And thanne the lady camme to  
mete hym, & toke hym by the hand and ledd hym  
into her tente, And satte both vpon a bed<sup>2</sup> of parent  
24 moche ryche / and all the other abode without. Thanne  
byganne the lady for to raisonne<sup>3</sup> with Raymondyn, &  
said to hym in this manere: ‘My dere frende, wel I  
wote that wel ye haue hold<sup>4</sup> alle that I introduysed, or  
28 taught you of, And therefore fro hens fourthon I shall  
trust you the more.’ ‘Lady dere,’ sayd Raymondyn /  
‘I haue founde so good a bygynnyng in your wordes,  
that nothing ye shall commande to me that humayn  
32 body may or oughte to comprehende or vndertake /  
but that I wyl & shal doo it after your playsire.’  
‘Raymondyn,’ said she / ‘for me ye shall vndertake

Raymondin rides  
to Coulombiers,

where he sees a  
new chapel,

and knights and  
ladies.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 20.

He is asked to  
dismount,

and is led by his  
lady to a tent.

His lady ex-  
presses confi-  
dence in him,

and he in her.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *couche*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *à arçonner*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *tenu*.

A knight announces dinner ;

Raymondin marvels at the great company,

1 fol. 20 b.

and asks his lady whence they come.

She tells him they are at his service.

After dinner his lady leads Raymondin beside the bed ;

where she tells of the homage that is to be done to Earl Bertrand.

Raymondin is to go to Poitiers, but to let every one do homage before he does,

no thing; but that of it ye shal comme to your worship /.' Thenne camme there a knyght whiche kneled before her / and after his reuerence made / dressed hys wordes toward her, & said : ' My lady, al thing is 4 redy / ye shal comme whan it playse you.' And the lady ansuerde & said / ' Couere your heed, fayre sire.' Thanne the lady & Raymondyn wesshe theire handes & sette them at a moche ryche table. and within the 8 sayd pauyllon were many other tables dressed, where dide sette many knightes and ladyes / and whan Raymondyn saw this appareyll, he meruaylled moche / and demanded of hys lady fro whens so grete a felawship 12 was comme vnto her. And to hys demande the lady ansuerd nothing. Wherefore Raymondyn asked of her ayen, ' My lady, fro <sup>1</sup>whens are comme vnto you so many of gentyl men and ladyes?' ' By my feyth, Raymondyn, 16 my frend,' sayd the lady, ' it is no nede to you for to be meruaylled therof, For they be all at your commandement, & redy for to serue you / & many other also that now ye see not.' Thanne held Raymondyn 20 hys peas / and so many courses & of dyuerse metes were before them brought, that meruayll it was to see it. And whan they had dyned, they weshe theire handes / and graces said & all thinges doon / the lady 24 toke Raymondyn by the hand & ledd hym beside the beed, & euerychon voyded the pauyllon, and wheras they lyst went, or wher they oughten for to haue goo, eche one aftir theyre estate /.

28

**T**Hanne said the lady to Raymondyn : ' My frend, to morowe is the day that the barons shal comme for to doo theire homage vnto the yong Erle Bertrand. And know you, my frend, that there must ye be / & 32 shal doo as I shal telle you, yf it playse you so to doo / Now vnderstand & reteyne wel my wordes. Ye shal abyde per vnto the tyme that all the Baronnes shal haue doo their homages, and thenne ye shal putte your self 36

- fourth byfore the said Bertrand, and of hym ye shal  
 demande a yefte, for the salary & remuneracioun of  
 alle the *seruyse* that euer ye dide vnto his fader. And  
 4 telle to hym wel, how that ye ne demande of hym  
 nothre toun, ne Castel, nor other thing of no grete  
 value. and I wote wel that he shal acorde or graunt it  
 to you. For the barons shalle counseylle hym for to  
 8 doo soo, And as soone as he shal haue graunted your  
 requeste / demande of hym to haue on this roche &  
 about it / as moche of ground as the hyd or skynne of  
 a hert may comprehende. / and freely he shal gyue it  
 12 to you. In so moche that none shal now lette nor  
 empesche you therof, by reason of <sup>1</sup>homage, nother by  
 charge of rente or other ordynauce, and whan he  
 shall haue graunted it to you, take perof his *lettres*,  
 16 vnder hys grete Seele, and vnder the seelles of the  
 peris,<sup>2</sup> or lordes pryncipal of the land. And whan  
 that al this ye shal haue doo / on the morow next  
 folowing after that / as ye shalbe comyng homward  
 20 agayn / ye shal mete on your way a good man, which  
 shal bere within a sac the skynne of a hert / and ye  
 shall bye it / and for it ye shal pay asmoche as the said  
 man shal aske you for it / and after ye shall make it  
 24 for to be cutte in the smallest and narrowest waye that  
 is possible for to be cutte, after the manere of a thonge.  
 And after, lette your place be delyuered vnto you /  
 the whiche ye shal fynd all marked & kerued, and all  
 28 the trees pulled to the ground, there as it shal please  
 me for to be / And as for to bryng the two endes of  
 the sayd thong<sup>3</sup> of the hyd togidre about the said  
 place / yf it happe that greter ground may be com-  
 32 prysed within it ye shall doo it to be leyd downward  
 vnto the valey / & there, at both thendes of the said  
 thonge or leder / shal spryng out of the roche a fayre fon-  
 tayne, whiche in tyme to comme shalbe full necessary

and at last he is  
 to ask from  
 Bertrand a gift

of the rock, and  
 as much land as  
 a hart's skin can  
 cover,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 21.

and to get a char-  
 ter for it, signed  
 and sealed.

Raymondin is to  
 buy a skin of a  
 man he will meet,

and have it cut  
 into a thong,  
 then get the land  
 delivered,

and lay the thong  
 down, when a  
 fountain will  
 spring out where  
 the ends meet.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *pers*.

<sup>3</sup> *courroie*.



Then he is to  
return.

Raymondin sets  
out for Poitiers.  
1 fol. 21 b.

and conuenable. Goo penne fourth, my dere frend /  
and doo hardly doubtles all that I haue said. For all  
your werkes shalbe of good expedicioun, and *without* eny  
trouble or lettynge / and on the mornne next after that 4  
your yeste shalbe graunted and your lettres deliuered  
to you, ye shall retourne hither to me.' Raymondyn  
thanne ansuerde, 'My lady, after my power I shal  
fulfille al your playsire' / And thenne they embraced 8  
and kyssed eche other / and toke leue one of other./  
Here cesseth thystory of them / and begynneth for to  
spek of Raymondyn, whiche toke hys hors, and rode  
toward Poitiers as <sup>1</sup>hastly as he myght./ 12

\* \* \* \* \*

Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the  
barons had doon their homage vnto the  
yonge Erle / demanded of the Erle a yeste,  
the whiche he graunted to hym./ 16

Raymondin rides  
to Poitiers,

where he finds  
many barons,

2 fol. 22.

who render hom-  
age to the young  
Earl.

**T**Hystorye telleth to vs, that Raymondyn rode so  
longe that he camme vnto Poytiers, wheras he  
founded many a high baron, which were comme there for  
to make homage to the yonge Erle Bertrand / and they 20  
dyde grete honour and reuerence to Raymondyn, and  
preysed hym right moche. And the next morow they  
yede all togidre vnto Saynt Hylary of Poyters, where  
the deuyn seruyse was doon right worshipfully, And 24  
atte that seruyse was the yonge Erle requested lyke a  
Chanoyne, as theyre prymat or Abbot / and dyde hys  
deuoyre as it apparteyned / and that of custome was  
for to be doo. Thenne cam the barons <sup>2</sup>tofore hym / 28  
and there one after another, and eche one after hys  
degre rendred to hym hys homage. And thenne,  
after alle these thinges were doon / Raymondin putte  
hymself fourth before the barons / and *with* meke & 32  
humble contenance or manere, said to them: 'Emonge



- you, my lordes, nobles, Barons of the Countre<sup>1</sup> or Erle-  
 dom of Poytwo, vouchesaf ye to here & knowe the  
 requeste whiche I wyl putte & make vnto my lord  
 4 the Erle. and yf it seme you<sup>2</sup> to be lawfull & raison-  
 nable / I beseche that it playse you for to pray hym to  
 graunt it to me.' And the Barons ansuerd *with* right  
 a good wiſt, 'we shall doo it.' Thanne they altogidre  
 8 went before the Erle, to whom Raymondyn spake  
 first moche humbly, sayeng in this manere: 'Right  
 dere sire, humbly I beseche and requere you, that in  
 remuneracion, or reward, of alle the seruyses that ever  
 12 I dide vnto my lord, your fader / on whos sowle god  
 haue mercy, ye vouchesaf of your benigne & noble  
 grace for to gyve to me a yefte, the whiche shall cost  
 you but lityl. For knowe you, Sire, that I ne demande  
 16 of you neyther tounne, Castel, nor fortresse, ne nothinge  
 of grette valew.' Thanne ansuerde the Erle, 'yf it  
 playseth to my barons / ful wel it playseth to me.'  
 And the Barons said to hym in this manere: 'Sire,  
 20 syn it is thyng<sup>3</sup> of so lytyl valewe, as he speketh of,  
 ye oughte not to refuse it to hym / For he is wel  
 worthy therof, and wel he hath deserued it.' And the  
 Erle said to them, 'Syn it pleseth to you for to coun-  
 24 seyll me soo / I graunt it' / 'demande now,' said the  
 Erles to Raymondyn, 'what ye wyl.' 'Sire,' said he,  
 'gramercy.<sup>3</sup> Other yefte I ne axe of you, but þat ye  
 wyl gyue to me, about the fontaynne of soif that is  
 28 nygh to the roches & wodes / as moche of grounde as the  
 hyde or leder of a hert shall mow comprehende or <sup>4</sup>goo  
 aboute, bothe of lengthe & brede.' 'Forsouthe,' said  
 þenne the Erle / 'this I ought not to refuse to you.  
 32 I gyue it to you,' said the Erle, 'freely, without rede-  
 uauance nor homage to be doon to me, nor to my  
 successours for euermore.' Thenne Raymondyn kneeled

Raymondin tells  
 the barons he  
 intends to make  
 a request to the  
 Earl.

He says he asks  
 nothing of great  
 value,

only as much  
 land as a hart's  
 skin can com-  
 pass.

<sup>4</sup> fol. 22 b.

The Earl grants  
 the request,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *messieurs, nobles barons de la conté.*

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *se il vous semble.*

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *grans mercis.*

& thanked hym ryght humbly / and requyred of hym  
 and gives letters of gift, *lettres* of hys gyfte, the which were graunted & made  
 in the best and moost surest wyse that could be  
 denysed / and were Seelled of the grette Seal of the 4  
 Erle, by thassent and relacion of alle the Barons of  
 sealed by the Earl and Barons. the land / whiche also dide putte theire Seelles therto.  
 Thanne they departed fro the chirche of Saynt Hylary  
 of Poytiers, and yede fourth vnto the halle, where the 8  
 feste was grete and joyous, and swete melody was there  
 herd of almaner Instruments of Musyque. and of many  
 They hold a feast & dyuerse meets they were serued at the table. And  
 after dyner the Erle gaaf grette yeftes / And wel trouth 12  
 it is, that it was sayd perof many one, that amongt alle  
 the other Raymondyn was the moost curtoys / moost  
 grayous, and of fayrest contenance. And thus  
 passed the day tyl the nyght camme that euerychon 16  
 went to take hys reste. And on the mornne next they  
 roos and yede for to here masse vnto the Abbey of  
 until they go to rest. Montiers / and there Raymondyn prayed god deuoutly  
 that he wold help hym att his nede, and to brynge hys 20  
 At mass Raymondyn prays for a good end to his enterprise.  
 enterpryse to a good ende, and to the saluacion of his  
 sowle & prouffyt of hys body. And he abode within  
 the chirche, makynge hys prayers vnto thoure of  
 Pryme./

24

Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man  
 that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert /  
 and how he bought it /

<sup>1</sup> fol. 23.

<sup>1</sup> NOW telleth thystorye to vs, that whan Ray- 28  
 mondyn had herd hys masse, and that he had  
 ended his prayere / he went out of the chirche / and  
 at thyssue of thabbey byond the Castel he found a  
 Raymondyn finds a man with a hart's skin to sell, man whiche bare within a sac vpon hys bak the hyde 32  
 of an hert, which man camme toward Raymondyn, and  
 said to hym in this manere. 'Sire, wyl ye bye this

hertis skynne that I haue within my sack, for to  
 make good huntyng cordes for your hunters.' 'By my  
 feyth,' said Raymondyn / 'ye / yf thou wilt selle it;  
 4 and at one word<sup>1</sup> what shall I paye for hit?' 'By my  
 feyth, sire,' said the man, 'ye shall paye to me for it  
 ten shelynges, or ellis ye shall not haue it.' 'Frend,'  
 said thanne Raymondyn to the said man / 'bryng it  
 8 home with me and I shall pay the there.' And he  
 answerd, 'With a good wille.' Thanne he folowed  
 Raymondyn vnto his hous, and there he delyuered hys  
 hyde / and Raymondyn payed hym for it. And anone  
 12 after, Raymondyn sent for a Sadelmaker,<sup>2</sup> to whom he  
 said: 'My frend, yf it pleseth<sup>3</sup> you, ye muste cutte this  
 hyde in fourme of a thonge, in the narrowest & smallest  
 wyse that is possible to be doo.' The Sadler dide cutte  
 16 it, and after they leyed it agayn within the sac thus  
 cutte. What shuld I nowe prolonge the matere.<sup>4</sup>  
 It is trouthe that they whiche were commytted for to  
 delyuere to Ramondyn his yefte, rode, and Ray-  
 20 mondyn with them, toward the fontayne of soyf, so  
 longe that they cam vnto the roche that standeth over  
 the said fontayne, where as grett tranchis or keruyng<sup>5</sup>  
 was made within the harde roche / and they fond al  
 24 about it grete trees throwen down to the ground,  
 wherof they were gretly meruaylled, For it was out of  
 mans mynde that euer trees were cutte there aboute.  
 Raymondyn, that thanne wel knewe that his lady had  
 28 wrought there, held hys peas. And whan they were  
 within the medowe they toke the thonge out of the  
 sac /.

which he buys  
 for ten shillings,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 23 b.

and has it made  
 into a thong by a  
 saddlemaker.

Raymondin and  
 the Earl's men  
 ride to the foun-  
 tain,

where they mar-  
 vel to find trees  
 cut and rocks  
 hewed.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *en ung mot*.      <sup>2</sup> Fr. *sellier*.

<sup>4</sup> *Que feroye ores plus long prolongation.*

Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned *comme*  
and delyuered to Raymondyn his yefte ./

<sup>1</sup> fol. 24.

The Earl's men  
are abashed at  
the length of the  
thong.

Two men appear  
to help them;

they set stakes  
to hold the  
thong;

it compasses the  
rock and part of  
the valley.

At the end of  
the thong a  
fountain springs  
forth.

The men are  
abashed at the  
fountain and the  
great compass of  
the thong.

<sup>1</sup> **W**Han they that shuld delyuer the yefte saw  
the hyde cutte so smalle, they were of it alle 4  
abasshed / and said to Raymondyn þat they wyst not  
what to doo / And there incontynent *comme* to them two  
men clothed with cours cloth / the whiche said in this  
manere. 'We are *comme* hither for to helpe you.' Thanne 8  
they toke out of the sack the hyde and bare it vnto  
the bottomme of the valley, as nigh the roche as they  
coude / and there they dide sette a stake in the erthe,  
and to this stake they fasted the one ende of the hyde / 12  
and as they went they sette stakes for to hold with the  
said thonge rounde aboute the roche / and whan they  
were *comme* ayen to the first stake, there was yet agrete  
remenant of the thong / and for to sette and fournysshe 16  
it they drew it downward to the valey / and so fer  
they went with it, that they *comme* to the ende of it.  
And ye must knowe that after that, it is said in the  
Countre, and as the very and true history witnesseth / 20  
there sprange at [the] ende of the said thong a fayr  
fontayn, the which rendred so moche of watre that a  
ryuere wexed or grew therof. Wherof many a mylle  
dyde grynde corne / and yet now grynden. Thanne 24  
they that were there sent for to delyuere to Raymondyn  
the place, were moche abasshed / aswel of the fontayne  
that they see spryng<sup>1</sup> sodaynly before them, as of the  
grete compace of the ledder, whiche conteyned wel the 28  
space of two mylles of grounde./

**T**Historye to vs recounteth that they whiche were  
ordonned for to delyuere the said yefte, as byfore  
is said, were moche abasshed whan they sawe the 32  
watre spryng<sup>1</sup> sodaynly & ranne al along<sup>2</sup> fourth by  
the valey. And also they were meruaylled of the grete  
grounde that the thonge compassed. but neuertheles

<sup>2</sup> fol. 21 b.



they delyuered to Raymondyn the ground that was gyuen to hym after the texte or tenour of hys *lettres*.

They deliver the land to Raymondin.

And as soone as they had delyuered it, they wyst neuer  
4 where the said two men that were comme there for to helpe hem becamme, ne whither they were goon.

**T**hanne they departed alle togidre, for to haue re-  
toured vnto Poyters, where as whan they were

The Earl's men return to Poitiers,

8 comme, they dide telle and recouute vnto the Erle and to his moder this meruayllous auenture. And thanne the lady said to her sonne in this manere: 'Byleue thou neuer of no thinge me / of that I shall say<sup>1</sup> / but yf

and recount to him the adventure.

12 Raymondyn hath founde somme auenture in the Forest of Coulombyers, For the same Forest is somtyme full of moche meruayllous auentures.' And the Erle answered: 'by my feyth my lady / I byleue well that

The Earl and his mother speak of the marvels that have happened in the forest.

16 ye say trouth / and long syn I haue herd say that aboute the fontayne that is vnder the same roche, men hath seen faht & happ many a wounder and meruayllous aduentures. but as to hym, I pray to god

20 that he may enjoye it to hys honour and prouffyt.' 'Amen,' said the ladye. As they spake thus togidre,

Raymondin arrives and thanks the Earl for his gift;

Raymondin arryued / whiche kneeled soone byfore the Erle and thanked hym of the worship & curtoysy that

24 he had doon to hym. 'By my feyth, Raymondyn,' said the Erle, 'ye thanke me of a lytil thing, but betre I shall doo to you, *with* godis grace, in tyme to comme.' 'Now, my frend Raymondyn,' said the Erle,

the Earl promises him more favours.

28 'it is told to me of a grete and meruayllous auenture whiche is happed as of present in the place that I haue doon to be delyuered to you by my yeste. Wherefore I pray you that ye wil telle to me the pure & very

32 trouth of hit.' 'My feyth,' sayd Raymondyn. 'My right dere lord / yf they that at <sup>2</sup>your commandement haue delyuered the place to me haue not told you of more than they haue seen / they haue doo wel.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 25.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Ne me croy jamais de chose que je die.*



Raymondin tells  
of the marvellous  
spring, and the  
compass of the  
thong,

Neuertheless it is trouth that the space of grounde  
compassed aboute *with* the hyde conteyneth two mylles.  
And as for the two men whiche *camme* there clothed  
with cours cloth, and haue helped for to compasse & to 4  
mesure the place / and also of the ryuere whiche  
sourdred<sup>1</sup> sodaynly / of alle this, my lord, it is pure  
trouth.' 'By my feith, Raymondyn,' sayd the Erle,  
'ye telle to vs a grete meruaylle /. In good feyth, 8  
Raymondyn, lyke as it semeth to vs and supposen, ye  
most nedes haue founde som aduenture, and I pray  
you that ye wyl declare it vnto vs, for to haue vs out  
of the melencolye of it.' 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 12  
'yet haue I not founde but wel & honour / but my  
ryght dere lord, I loue my self for to be & there to  
dwellle more than in eny other place, bycause that it is  
commonly renommed<sup>2</sup> auenturous and welhappy coun- 16  
tre / and so I hope that god shall send to me some good  
auenture whiche by hys plaisire shall be to me worship-  
full & prouffitable bothe to my sowle and to my body.  
And, my ryght dere lord, enquire ye me nomore therof / 20  
For certaynly, as of present, I can telle you nomore of  
it /.' Thanne the Erle, that moche loued hym, held  
therof hys peas, bycause that he wold not angre hym.  
And this doon, Raymondyn toke hys leue of the Erle 24  
and of his moder. And for as now I shall say no  
more of them, And shall say how Raymondyn re-  
toured toward his lady, where as he wyst that he had  
lefte her /. 28

and says that he  
loves to dwell by  
the fountain ;

then bids adieu  
to the Earl,

and returns to  
his lady.

Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue  
of the Erle of Poitiers & retoured toward  
his lady./

<sup>s</sup> fol. 25 b.

<sup>3</sup> IN this partye, to vs telleth thistorye that Ray- 32  
mondyn, whiche was moche enamoured of his

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *est sours*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *renommé*.

lady, departed at this ooure fro Poytiers hastily al alone,  
 and rode tyl he camme vnto the high Forest of Coulom-  
 biers, and descended fro þe hylle down in to the valey  
 4 and camme to the fontayne where [he founde]<sup>1</sup> his lady,  
 that moche joyously receyued hym, and said to hym  
 in this manere: 'My frend, ye begynne wel for to kepe  
 and hyde oure secretes: and yf ye perseuere thus, grete  
 8 wele shall therof comme to you / and soone ye shall see  
 and perceyue of it.' Thanne spake Raymondyn and  
 sayd in this manere: 'Dere lady, I am & shalbe euer  
 redy for to doo aftir my power all your playsires.'  
 12 'In dede, Raymondyn,' said the lady / 'tyl ye haue  
 wedded me / ye ne may no ferther see ne know of my  
 secretes.' 'Lady dere,' said Raymondyn, 'I am alredey  
 therto.' 'not yet,' said the lady / 'For first ye must goo  
 16 vnto Poitiers for to pray the Erle and his moder and alle  
 your other parentes and frendes,<sup>2</sup> that they wil comme  
 and honoure you with their personnes at youre wed-  
 dyng, in this place, on monday next commyng. to  
 20 thende that they see the noblesses that I think and  
 purpose for to doo for to enhaunce you in honour &  
 worship / and that they take no suspecion but that ye  
 be maryed after your estate and degree. And wel ye  
 24 may tell to them that ye shall wedd the doughter of a  
 kinge / but no ferther ye shall not dyscouere of it. and  
 therfro kepe you as dere as ye haue the lone of me.'  
 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn, 'doubte you not therof.'  
 28 'Frend,' sayd the lady, 'haue ye noo care that for what  
 folke that ye can bryng / but that they all shalbe  
 wel and honourably receyued & wel lodged and wel  
 festyed / botho of delycyous meetes and drynkes, and  
 32 of allmaner athyng acordyng / as wel to them as to  
 theire horses. Therefore, my frend, goo surely and be  
 not doubteous of nothing.' They thenne kyssed eche  
 other / & Raymondyn departed fro the lady / of whiche

His lady joyously  
 receives him;

but tells him,  
 that he can know  
 no more of her  
 secrets until he  
 marries her,  
 which he pro-  
 mises to do  
 at once.

\* fol. 26.

His lady tells  
 him to go to  
 Poitiers and in-  
 vite the Earl and  
 his friends to the  
 wedding,

and to tell them  
 that he is to  
 marry a king's  
 daughter.

<sup>1</sup> omitted in MS. Fr. où il trouva.

Raymondin goes to Poitiers, thisthory sylenceth / and bygynneth to spek of Raymondyn which goth toward Poytiers./

where he finds the Earl with many of his barons,

Raymondin invites the Earl to his wedding at the Fountain of Soyf;

1 fol. 26 b.

The Earl is abashed at not being taken into confidence before.

But Raymondin says that love has done what it liked with him.

They ask his lady's lineage,

which he cannot tell.

**N**OW telleth to vs thisthorye that so longe rode Raymondyn after that he was departed fro his lady that he camme to Poitiers, wher he fonde the Erle and his moder & grete foyson of Barons with them, whiche were right wel glad of his commyng / and demanded of hym fro whens he camme. And he ansuerde 8 to them that he camme fro his dysporte. And after that they had spoken longe tyme of one thing and of other, Raymondyn yede byfore the Erle & kneled & sayd to hym thus: 'Right dere lord, I moche humbly besech 12 you, on alle the seruyses that euer I shall mow doo to you, þat ye vouchesaaf for to doo to me so moche of honour as to comme on monday next to my weddyng, to the fontayn of Soyf. and that it playse you to 16 bryng thither with <sup>1</sup>you my lady your moder, and alle your barons also.' And whan the Erle vnderstode hym he was moche abasshed. 'How,' said the Erle, 'fayre Cousyn Raymondyn, are ye as now so straunged 20 of vs that ye marye you without that we know therof tyl the day of weddyng? For certayn we gyue vs thereof grette meruaylle, For we wende yf your wyll had be to take a wyf / to haue be they of whom ye 24 shuld first haue taken counseyll.' Thanne ansuerd Raymondin, 'My right dere lord, dysplayse you nat therefore, For loue is of so grete puyssaunce that she maketh thinges to be graunted and doon as it playseth 28 to her / and so ferfourth I haue goo in this matere that I may not flee it; but neuertheles all were it soo that I myght doo soo / yet by myn assent I shuld not be fro it.' 'Now thanne,' said the Erle, 'telle vs what 32 she is and of what lynee.' 'By my feyth,' said Raymondyn, 'ye demande of me a thing / to the whiche I can not gyue none ansuere, for neuer in my lyf I ne dide enqyre me therof.' 'Forsouthe,' said the Erle, 'it is 36

grett meruaylle. Raymondyn taketh a wyf that he knoweth not, ne also the lynage that she commeth of.'

This abashes the Earl.

'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 'sith it suffyseth me as  
4 therof, ye oughte wel to be playsed, For I take no wyf  
that shall brawle or stryue with you / but only *with*  
me / and I alone shall bere eyther joye or sorowe for  
it, after that it shall please to god.' 'By my feyth,'

8 sayd the Erle to Raymondin, 'ye say right wel / and  
as for me I ne wil kepe you therfro / but sith it is soo,  
I pray to god deuoutly that he wil send you peas &  
good auenture togidre / and right gladly we shall goo

The Earl wishes Raymondin good luck,

12 to your weddyng, and *with* vs shall *comme* thither  
my lady and many other ladyes and damoysselles of  
our baronye.' And Raymondyn ansuered, 'My lord,

and promises to attend the wedding;

16 shalbe there and shal see the lady / ye <sup>1</sup>shalbe pleased  
of her.' And thenne they lefte to speke of this matere,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 27.

and spake of one thing<sup>1</sup> and of other so long, that tyme  
of souper *comme*. And notwithstanding, the Erle

20 thought euer on Raymondyn and his lady, and said  
in hym self that *somme* Fortune he had fonde at the  
fontayne of soyl.

but ever wonders about Raymondin and his lady, and their fortune.

24 **I**N this manere thoughte longe the Erle, so moche  
that the styward<sup>2</sup> cam and said to hym: 'My  
lord, all is redy, yf it plesse you for to *comme*.' 'For-  
south,' said he, 'it plaiseth me well.' Thanne they  
weshe theyre handes, sette at the table / and wel they

28 were serued. And aftir souper they spak of many  
materes, & after they went to bed. On the morowe  
erly, the Erle aroos & herd<sup>3</sup> his masse and made the  
barons to be manded & boden for to goo *with* hym to

After mass the Earl bids his barons to the wedding,

32 the weddyng of Raymondin / and they *comme* incon-  
tinent. And the said Erle sent hys message for the  
Erle of Forestz, whiche was brother to Raymondyn.  
In this meane while<sup>3</sup> made the said lady alle redy in

and sends word to the Earl of Forests.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *maistre d'hostel*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *demantiers*.



Melusine makes  
ready in a  
meadow a noble  
feast.

The Earl and his  
company set out  
to the wedding;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 27 b.

he inquires about  
Raymondin's  
wife, but can find  
out nothing.

At last they  
come to the  
fountain,

and then to the  
meadow,

at which they  
marvel,

because of the  
many tents,  
knights,

ladies, cooks,

and the fair  
chapel.

the medowe vnder the Fontayne of Soyf, and suche  
appareill was there made, so grete & so noble, that for  
to say trouth / nothing<sup>1</sup> acordyng for suche a Feste  
fawted ne waunted there, but honourably might a 4  
kinge *with* alle his estate haue be receyued therat. The  
sonday camme that alle made them self redy for to  
goo to the fontayne of Soyf, at the weddyng of Ray-  
mondyn. The night passed & the day camme. And 8  
thanne the Erle *with* hys moder / her ladyes & damoy-  
selles / and *with* alle the barons, ladyes, & damoysselles  
of the lande / toke hys way toward the fontayne. And  
as they rode thither the Erle enquired of Raymondyn 12  
the estate of hys wyf, but nothings he would telle <sup>1</sup>to  
hym therof. Wherof the Erle was sorowfull, And so  
longe they yede talking togidre that they camme vpon  
the hille, where they sawe the grete trenchis or keruyng 16  
in the harde roche that sodaynly were made / and the  
fontayne also whiche sourdred<sup>2</sup> & sprang<sup>3</sup> ther habound-  
auntly. Thenne meruaylled therof euerychone, how so  
sodaynly that might haue be doo. And they yede 20  
fourth and biheld dounne toward the medowe and  
sawe grete plente of fayre & riche pauillons or tentes,  
righ[t] high<sup>3</sup> / so grete, so noble, and so meruayl-  
lously facyoned that euery man awondred therof. and 24  
namely,<sup>4</sup> whan they dide see & perceyued so grete  
company of noble folke, as of knightes & squyers, that  
went vp & down in the medowe and *without*, for to  
goo fetche suche thinges as neded to the feste. And 28  
also might they see there right grete foyson of ladyes  
& damoysselles richely apparayled & arayed, many  
horses, palfreys, & coursers were there. There might  
they see kychons & Cookes within, dressing meetes of 32  
dyuerse maneres. And ouer the fontayne they sawe a  
fayre chappel of our lady & ymages *within* right  
connyngly kerued & entaylled, and of almener of

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *sourdît*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *si treshaultz*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *par especial*.



ornamentes so richely ordeyned, that neuer so grete richesse they had seen before that tyme in no church, wherof they meruaylled moche, and said oon to other.  
 4 'I ne wot what it shall befall of the remenaunt, but here is a fayre bygynnyng grete, & shewyng grete noblesse & worship.' /

Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme

8 to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land.

<sup>1</sup> **N**O[w] telleth to vs thystorye, that whan the Erle & hys folk were descended doun fro the  
 12 montayne / an auneynt knyght, nobly & richely clothed and arayed, whiche rode on a fayre palfray, and had in hys felawship xxiiij<sup>u</sup> men of worship richely & nobly aourned<sup>2</sup> & wel horsed / camme  
 16 gladly & with mery contenaunce toward the Erle. First he mete with the Erle of Forest & with Raymondyn & theyre felawship, for they rode before. And whan he perceyued Raymondyn, whiche wel he  
 20 knew among other / he yede tofore hym & made to hym honour & reuerence, and his brother Erle of Forest he salued moche honourably, & theyre felawship also. And shortly to spek, this auneynt knight  
 24 receyued them worshipfully, sayeng to Raymondin in this manere: 'My lord, I pray you that I may be ledde before the Erle of Poitiers yf it playse you, <sup>3</sup>for I desyre to spek with hym.' And so Raymondyn made  
 28 hym to be ledde vnto the said Erle. And whan thauneynt knight camme before the Erle, he salewed hym swetly, sayeng, 'my lord, ye be welcomme.' And the Erle ansuerd / 'and ye are wel mete with me. nowe  
 32 telle ye to me why ye dide axe aftir me.' Thanne said the knight thus to the Erle: 'Sire, My lady Melusyne

<sup>1</sup> fol. 28.

An ancient knight comes to meet the company,

and salutes them.

He asks Raymondin to lead him before the Earl of Poitiers,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 28 b.

which Raymondin does.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *aourné*.

The ancient knight, on behalf of Melusine, thanks the Earl of Poitiers for his presence.

of Albany recommendeth her to you as moche as she may / and thanketh you of the gret & high honour that ye doo vnto Raymondyn your Cousin & also vnto her whan ye vouchesauf of your grace to comme hither 4 for to bere vnto them felawship att their weddingt.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'In this cas / as ye may telle to your lady / is no thanks to be had, for I am holden for to do vnto my Cousyn all worship & honour 8 possible to me to be doo.' 'Sire,' said thauncient knight, 'ye say full curtoisly / but my lady is sage for to knowe what she ought for to doo / and toward you she hath sent both me and my felawship also.' 'Sire 12 knight,' said the Erle, 'this playseth me wel. but knowe ye that I wende nat to haue found lodged so nygh to me so noble a lady as your is, ne that had so many of noble folk *with* her as she hath.' 'Ha, sire!' sayd the 16 knight, 'whan my lady wil she may haue of knightes & squyers more than she hath now *with* her / for she ne dare doo / but to commande.' And thus talking one to other, they camme vnto the pauyllon. And the 20 Erle was lodged there within the moost riche lodgys that euer he had seen before. After every man was lodged honourably after his estate / & they<sup>1</sup> said that within theire owne places at hom they were not so 24 wel lodged. Theire horses were lodged within the grett tentes / so at large & at theire ease / that no palfrener was there but that he was full wel played. And alle they meruailled fro whens so moch of goode 28 and suche plente of riches might come there so haboundantly. /

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider. /

32

The Earl of Poitiers' mother and other ladies arrive,

**A**fter them camme the Contesse moder vnto the said Erle, and blanche, her doughtir, and *with* them many ladyes & damoiselles. And

- thanne Melusyne, sage & wyse, sent toward<sup>r</sup> her  
 pauncyent knight, that had hold<sup>r</sup> companye to the  
 Erle, and also *with* hym she sent many ladyes<sup>1</sup> and  
 4 damoysselles of high and noble Estate that moche  
 honourably salued and honoured the Countesse and  
 her doughter / and ledde them to be lodged in a fayr  
 pauillon made of riche cloth of gold, richely set *with*  
 8 perlys & *with* precyous stones. And, shortly to spek,  
 they were alle so wel & so rychely lodged that moche  
 they meruaylled of the grete riches that they see  
*with*in the pauyllon. And there was the Countesse  
 12 receyued *with* moche grete and melodyous sowne of  
 almaner instruments and alle they in her companye  
 were honourably lodged. And whan the Countesse  
 had rested a lytil while, and that she was arayed *with*  
 16 her ryche rayments / also her doughtir Blanche.  
 Knyghtes & Squyers / ladyes and damoysselles of her  
 companye went into the chambre of the spouse, the  
 whiche Chambre was fayrer and passed of ryches alle  
 20 the other chambres, but whan they sawe Melusyne, &  
 perceyued her ryche tyres / her riche gowne, alle set  
*with* precious stones & perlys / the coler that she had  
 about her nek, hir gerde<sup>st</sup> & her other rayments, that  
 24 she had on her, they all meruaylled gretly / and  
 specially the Countesse, that said / consideryng that  
 grete estate / Neuer had I wende ne supposed that no  
 queene ne Emperesse had be in alle the world, that  
 28 might haue founde suche jewellis so riche & so grete in  
 value. What shuld I make long plee / the Erle of  
 poitiers and one of the moost hygh barons, that is to  
 wete, the Erle of Forest, addressed and ledde the  
 32 spouse vnto the said Chapelle of our lady, which was  
 so rychely aourned, & arayed so nobly that wonder it  
 was to see / as of parements & ornaments of cloth<sup>2</sup> of  
 gold, purfeld and sett *with* perlys and precyous stones,  
 36 so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

<sup>1</sup> fol. 29 b.and are wel-  
comed by the  
ancient knight,and so richly  
lodged that they  
marvel much.The Countess  
and her daughter  
are richly  
dressed,and go to Melu-  
sine's chamber,where they mar-  
vel much at her  
rich array.The Earls of  
Poitiers and  
Forest lead  
Melusine<sup>2</sup> fol. 30.to the richly  
adorned chapel,

where the wedding takes place.

meruaylle it was to loke on. fayre ymages straungely kerued / as of Crucifixe & figure of our lady, all of pure and fyn gold / and bokes were there, so wel writon and so riche that in alle the world rycher bokes 4 might nat haue be. And there was a byssshop that wedded them & songe masse before them.

### Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner. / 8

After divine service

the company dine.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 30 b.

They are served by squires,

and eat off gold and silver plate

divers meats.

**A**ftir that the deuyne seruise was doon they rested them, and soone after the dyner was redy *within* a moche riche and grete pauyllon in the myddes of the medowe. Eche one satte there 12 aftir hys degree. and *serued* they were of dyuerse & good meetes, and of many and dyuerse wynes, and haboundaunce of ypocras <sup>1</sup>was there. There serued the squyers richely clothed one lyke another, whiche 16 were grete in nombre. They were serued alle in plat of pure gold & syluer, wherof alle the companye was meruaylled. And assoone as one messe was taken fro the table, the othe[r] messe was redy. And so of 20 dyners meetes they were serued many a cours moche honourably. /

### Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted. 24

After dinner

the knights and squires arm and leap on horseback,  
the ladies go to the scaffold.

Jousting begins,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 31.

**A**Nd after that they had dyned, and the tables were take vp & graces said, and that they were serued with ypocras & spyces, the Knyghtes and Squyers went & armed them and lept on horsback. 28 And thenne the spouse & many other ladyes were sett vpon the scaffold or stalage. Thanne byganne the Joustyng / the Erle of Poytiers jousted moche wel and so dide the Erle of Forest and alle theire knightes 32 and <sup>2</sup>squyers. but the Knyghtes of the spouse dide



- meruaiH, For they ouerthrew bothe knightes and horses  
vnto the grounde. Thanne camme there Raymondyn  
that satte on a fayre & strong courser, alle in whyte,  
4 & at hys first cours he ouerthrew the Erle of Forestz,  
his brother / and so valyauntly he demened hym self  
that there ne was knight on both partyes but that  
he redoubted hym. And thann the Erle of Poitiers  
8 seeyng his appertyse of armes meruaylled what he  
was / and dressed hys sheld, & holding the speere  
alowe ranne ayenst hym / but Raymondyn that knew  
hym wel distourned hys hors and adressed his cours  
12 toward a knight of Poitou and suche a strok he gaaf  
hym, that both man & hors ouerthrew to the erth.  
And shortly to spek Raymondin dide that day so wel  
that euery man said that the knight *wit*h the white  
16 armes had jousted right strongly. The night camme  
and the justyng ended. Wherfore eche of them went  
agayn in to theire pauyllons where they toke alitil  
reste / but soone after was the souper redy. And  
20 thanne they yede in to the grete tente / and after they  
had wasshen they set them at table & wel and richely  
they were serued / and after souper were the tables  
take vp / and they wesshed theyre handes. & graces  
24 were said. This doon the ladyes wente asyde pryuely  
and toke other gownes on them & camme agayn for to  
daunse. The feste was fayre / and the worship was  
there grete / so that the Erle and alle they that were  
28 *comme* with hym meruaylled gretly <sup>1</sup>of the grette  
ryches & honour that they sawe there. And whan it  
was tyme they ledd the spouse to bed / mochi honour-  
ably *wit*hin a wonder meruayllous & riche pauyllon.  
32 And there the Erles of Potiers and of Forests betoke  
her vnto the ladyes handes. And thanne the Coun-  
tesse of Poitiers and other grete ladyes had the spouse  
to bed, and dide endoctryne her in suche thinges that  
36 she oughte for to doo / how be it that she was ynough

Melusine's men  
being victorious.

Raymondin over-  
throws the Earl  
of Forest,  
and demeans  
himself so that  
all are afraid of  
him.

The Earl of Poi-  
tiers runs against  
him,

but Raymondin  
turns aside and  
fells a knight of  
Poitou.

Every man  
praises the  
prowess of Ray-  
mondin.

They have sup-  
per in the great  
tent,

then they have a  
dance.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 31 b.

They lead the  
spouse to bed,

the Countess  
tells her what to  
do,

but finds she  
knows every-  
thing.

The ladies wait  
for Raymondin,

who is speaking  
with the Earls.

A knight sent by  
the ladies

<sup>3</sup> fol. 32.

comes for Ray-  
mondin, and tells  
him that all is  
ready, whereat  
the company  
laugh.

purueyed therof. but notwithstanding she thanked them moche humbly therfore. And whan she was abed the ladyes abode there vnto tyme that Raymondin camme, whiche was yet talkyng<sup>t</sup> of oon thing<sup>t</sup> and of 4 other with the Erle of Poitiers & with his brother, whiche thanked Raymondyn of þat he first dide jouste with hym. ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle of Poytiers, ‘fayre Cousyn of Forests, ye haue longe syn herd say / 8 how somtyme the loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traueyll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses.’ ‘My lord,’ answerde the Erle of Forestz, ‘my brother shewed it wel this day to me.’ And Raymondyn, that 12 was somewhat ashamed / said in this manere: ‘Fayre lordes, stryk of the flatte<sup>1</sup> / and gyue not to me so moche praysing. For I am not he which I mene<sup>2</sup> that dide soo / For I am not he that bare the whyte armes / 16 but fayne I wold that god had sent to me the grace to doo so wel.’ And at thoo wordes camme there a knight, whiche by the ladyes was sent thither / and said to them: ‘Faire lordes, Jape not ouermoche, For knowe 20 you wel <sup>3</sup>that as now on other thing he most think.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle of Poytiers, ‘ye say trew as I byleue.’ And yet agayn said the knight: ‘my lordes, comme & brynge with you Raymondyn, For the ladyes 24 axen after hym / for his partye is al redy.’ And þerof byganne they to lawghe / and said that he muste haue witnes therof / and that they byleued it wel.

Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the 28  
bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne  
laye.

Raymondin is  
led to the bridal  
chamber and  
brought to bed;

**A**T thoo wordes they went and ledde Raymondyn in the pauyllon and soone he was brought to 32 bed. And thanne camme there þe Bysshop that had

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *frappez du plat.*

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *je ne suys mie celluy que.*

spoused them and dide halowe theire bed. and after that euerychon toke his leue / and the courteyns were drawen aboute the bed. And of this matere recounteth

then the bishop hallowes the bed, the curtains are drawn,

4 no ferther thystorye, but speketh of the other, of which som went to bed,<sup>1</sup> and som went agayn to the daunse and ellis wher them lyste for to goo. And after thystory I shaH speke of Raymondyn and of the  
8 lady, how the[y] gouerned them bothe togidre. and what wordes they had among<sup>r</sup> them two as the[y] laye togidre.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 32 b.

and the company retires.

12 **T**Hystorye telleth to vs in this partye that whan they euerychon departed and goon out of the Pauyllon and the stakes of hit joyned & shette, Melusyne spak and said to Raymondyn in this manere:

After the tent is closed

16 ‘My right dere lord and frend, I thanke you of the grete honour that hath be doo to me at this day of your parents & frendes / and of that also / that ye kepe so secretly that which ye promysed<sup>r</sup> me at oure first couenaunte,<sup>2</sup> and ye moste know for certayn that yf

Melusine thanks her lord for his friends' presence at the wedding,

20 ye kepe it euer thus wel, ye shalbe the moost mighty & moost honoured that euer was of your lynage. And ye doo the contrary, bothe you & your heyres shall faH litil & litil in decaye & fro your estate. Ne of the  
24 land that ye shall holde & possesse, that tyme ye hold not your promysse / yf it be so that ye doo it, whiche god forbede, hit shal neuer be aftir possessed ne holden alle hoH by you ne by your heysr.’ And thanne to her

and for him keeping his promise,

28 ansuerd Raymondyn: ‘My right dere lady, doubte you not of hit, For yf it playseth to god / that shall neuer befaH by me.’ And the lady ansuerd to hym in this maner: ‘My right dere frend / sith it is soo that

and foretells honour to him and his if he remains faithful, but woe if he be false;

32 so ferfourth I haue putte my self I most abyde the wylle of god, trustyng euer of your promesse. Kepe you thanne wel, my fayre frend & felawe that yo<sup>3</sup> fawte not your Couenaunt. For ye shuld be he,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 33.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *convenant*.

upon which Raymondin pledges himself again to keep the covenant.

They beget that night Uryan, afterwards king of Cyprus.

after me, that moost shuld lese by it.' 'Ha / Ha, lady dere,' said Raymondin, 'therof ye oughte not to be in doubte / For that day, faylle to me god, whan I fawte of Couenant.'<sup>1</sup> 'Now my dere frend,' said the lady, 4  
'lete vs leue our talkyng therof. For certaynly as for my part there shal be no fawte. but that ye shal be the moost fortunat & happy that ever was of your lynce, and more puyssaunt thanne any of them shalbe / 8  
without it be for fawte of your self.' And thus lefte they theyre talkyng. And as thystorye reherceth, was that nyght engendred or begoten of them both the valyaunt Uryan. whiche aftirward was kynge of 12  
Chipre, as ye shall here hereafter.

Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of 16  
Melusyne. /

<sup>2</sup> fol. 33 b.

When the sun is high the lovers rise.

Raymondin dresses and goes with the Earls to mass,

after which the feasting and revelling begins again.

The ladies dress Melusine and go with her to mass.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 34.

<sup>2</sup> **T**Hystorye telleth to vs in this partye that so longe abode these two louers, beyng abed, that the sonne was hye. Thanne aroos Raymondyn and made 20  
hym redy, and yssued out of the Pauillon. And as thenne were alle redy, both therles of Poyters and of Forests waytyng aftir Raymondyn, whiche they ledd to the Chapell and there they herde their masse deuoutly / 24  
and after they retourned vnto the medowe, where the feste & reueñ bygan of new, moche grete. but therof we leue to speke. and shall say of the Countesse & other ladyes, which aourned & made redy Melusyne. 28  
And after they yede and ledd melusine moche honourably vnto the Chapel <sup>3</sup>for said. And there they herd masse. thoffertory of whiche was grete and riche. And after that the deuyne seruyse was doon, they 32  
retourned vnto the Pauillon. What shuld I make

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *convenant*.



long tale herof; the feste was grete and noble, and lasted XV dayes complete & hole. And Melusyne gaaf many grete yeftes and jewels both to the ladies & damoysselles, also to knightes & squyers. And after the feste the Erle, and the Countesse his moder, and alle the barons, ladies, and damoiselles of theire felawship, toke leue of Melusyne, whiche conueyed the said Countesse and her doughter vnto & byonde the lital tounne of Coulombiers. And at departyng Melusyne gaf to the Countesse a fayre & moche riche owche of gold, in value vnestymable. and to blanche her doughter, a gerland all set with perlys with saphirs rubyes and with many other precyous stones in grete nombre. And alle they that sawe the said owche and gerland, meruaylled gretly of the beaulte goodnes & value of it. And ye moste knowe, that so moche gaf Melusyne bothe to more & lesse, that none there was at the feste / but that he preysed gretly Melusyne of her yeftes. and alle abasshed & meruaylled they were of her grete ryches. and they alle sayd that Raymondyn was gretly mightily and valiauntly marryed. And after that all these thinges were doon and perfourmed, Melusyne toke leue of <sup>1</sup>the Erle and of the Countesse moche honourably, and of alle the Baronye. and with a fayre and noble compayny retourned to her pauillon. And Raymondin conueyed euer the Erle. And as they rode on theire way, the Erle of Poytiers said to him in this manere: 'Fayr Cousyn telle me, yf ye goodly may, of what lynce or kynred is your wyf / how be it that thauncyent knight dide thanke us of thonour & worship that we bare to you by hys lady Melusyne of Albanye. but yet I demande it of you / bycause that we gladly wold knowe the certaynte of it. For of asmoche that we may perceyue by her estate & behauyng, nedes it muste be, that she be yssued & comme fro moch noble ryche and mighty lynce. And

Melusine gives great gifts to the company,

and conveys the Countess and her daughter beyond Coulombiers,

and gives them rich jewels.

All the company are abashed at the richness of Melusine's gifts, and say that Raymondin has married well.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 34 b.

As Raymondin accompanies the Earl of Poitiers,

the Earl asks the lineage of his wife,

because he is  
afraid he has not  
paid her due  
honour.

the cause whiche moeueth vs for to desyre and be  
willing to knowe it / is bycause that we doubte to haue  
mesprysed anenst thonour that apparteyneth to be doo  
vnto her noble & goodly personne' / 'But my feyth,' 4  
said the Erle of Forest, 'al thus was my wylle to haue  
said soo.'

Raymondin is  
wroth at the  
question,

**T**hystorye saith that thanne Raymondin was  
gretly wroth, whan he herd the requeste 8  
that the Erle of Poytiers, his lord, made  
vnto him / and also likewyse the erle of  
Forest hys brother. For he loued / doubted and  
preysed so moche his lady / that he hated alle thinges 12  
whiche he demed desagreable to her. Not withstand-  
ing he ansuerd to them full softe & fayr : ' By my feyth,  
my lord / and you my brother, <sup>1</sup>playse it to you to  
knowe / that by rayson naturel fro whosoever I hyd 16  
my secrete / fro you I ought not to hyde it / yf it were  
suche thinge that I knew of, or might say. and ther-  
fore I shall answere to you, to that ye haue demanded  
of me / after that I knowe of it. Ye thanne muste 20  
knowe, that neuer I ne demanded ne dyde enquire me  
so fer of it / as now redyly ye haue demanded & en-  
quyred of me, / but so moche I knowe, and may wel  
say of her, that she is a kyngis doughter, mighty & 24  
high terryen, And by the state, behauyng, & gouerne-  
ment that ye haue seen in her, ye may perceyue  
ynough, that she nys ne haue be norysshed in mendy-  
cite or pouerte / but in superfluyte of honour & largesse, 28  
and amongst plente of goodes. And I requyre you as to  
my lordes and frendes, that ye ne enquire nomore  
therof. For none other thinge ye ne may knowe  
therof by me. and suche as she is, she playseth me 32  
wel, and am right wel content of her. And wel I  
knowe that she is the rote of alle myn erthly goodes  
present & to comme.' Thenne ansuerd the Erle of  
Poytiers : ' By my feyth, fayr Cousin, as for my part I 36

but answers  
fairly  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 35.

that he did not  
ask her, and so

only knows  
that she is a  
king's daughter ;

which can easily  
be seen from her  
behaviour.

He requests that  
they will not ask  
him again about  
her lineage,

think not to enquire of you nomore therof, For as ye  
 haue putte vnto vs wysely the high honours, riches,  
 maneres, and behauiing of my Cousin, your wyf, we  
 4 oughte to conceyue of ourself, that she is of noble birth  
 & extraction, and of right high and mighty lynce.' 'By  
 my feyth, my lord,' said the Erle of Forest, 'ye say  
 southe. and of my part I thinke nat to enquire, ne  
 8 demande of hym eny<sup>1</sup> thing more therof / how be it  
 that he is my broper. For certaynly I hold hym right  
 wel ensuered perof aftir myn aduys.' But, helas! he  
 aftirward faylled Couenaunt. wherfore Raymoundyn lost  
 12 his lady, and also the Erle of Forest toke deth therefore  
 by Geffray with the grete tothe, Whereof it shal be  
 spoken hereafter more playnly. Raymoundyn thenne  
 toke leue of the Erle, & of his brother, and of the  
 16 barons, and retourned to the fontayne of Soyf. And  
 also the Erle of Forest toke leue of the erle of Poytiers,  
 of hys moder, and of hys sustir, and of all the barons  
 right honourably, and panked them alle of thonour  
 20 that they had doon to him at hys brothers weddyng.  
 And thanne therle of Potyers, his moder, and hys  
 Suster, with alle theirow felawship & meyne retourned  
 to poitiers, and euery one of the Barons retourned to  
 24 their Countrees. but there ne was none of them / but  
 that he merueylled & gretly wondred of the grete riches  
 that they had seen at the wedding of Raymoundyn.  
 And here resteth thystorye to spek of them / and shal  
 28 spek of Raymoundyn & of his lady, how they were  
 after the departyng<sup>1</sup> of theire parents and frendes. /

**T**hystory recounteth to vs that whan Raymoundyn  
 was retourned toward his lady / he founde the  
 32 feste greter than it was before / and also greter plente  
 of noble folk than neuer was there before. Alle whiche  
 folke yede, & said to hym with a high voyce: 'My  
 lord ye be welcomme as he to whom we are seruauents,  
 36 & whom we wyl obey.' And pis said the ladyes as

whiche they pro-  
 mise;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 33 b.

but, alas, they  
 do not keep it,  
 so Raymoundyn  
 loses his lady,  
 and the Earl of  
 Forest his life.

The company  
 break up,

and return to  
 their countries,

and they marvel  
 at the great  
 richness of the  
 wedding.

Raymoundyn re-  
 turns to his lady,

and finds the  
 feast still going  
 on, and many  
 noble folk at it,

who greet him,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 36.  
which Ray-  
mondin thanks  
them for.

Melusine takes  
him apart,

and thanks him  
for his demean-  
our to his brother  
and the Earl,

and promises to  
make all goods  
to abound.

She next day  
sends away many  
of her people.

When the feast  
was over

Melusine got a  
great many  
workmen,

who felled the  
trees and cleaned  
the rock,

on which they  
prepared a  
foundation,

where they build-  
ed so quickly  
that every one  
wondered;

<sup>2</sup> fol. 36 b.

but no one knew  
whence the work-  
men came.

The fortress was  
strongly built  
with two double  
walls and wards

wel the lordes. And thanne Raymondin ansuerd to them, 'gramercy of the <sup>1</sup>honour that ye proffre to me.' And there thanne camme Melusyne, who moche honourably sayd to hym: 'welcomme be ye' / and had <sup>4</sup> hym apart, & reherced to hym word by word alle the talking that was betwix the Erle and hym. and also what his brother, Erle of Forest, had said, And yet said the lady to hym: 'Dere frende Raymondin / as <sup>8</sup> longe as ye shal contynue soo / alle goodes shall habounde to you. Fayre frende, I shall to morowe gyue leue to the moost partye of our folk that ben here comme to our feste. For other thinges we must <sup>12</sup> ordeyne.' Raymondyn ansuerd: 'ladye, so as it shall playse you.' And whan the morowe camme Melusyne departed her folke / grete quantyte went their way / and suche as she wold abode there. And now resteth <sup>16</sup> thystory of the thinges byfore said. and begynne to treate how the lady bygan to bylde the noble fortresse of Lusignen. /

**I**N this partye telleth thenne thystory that whan the <sup>20</sup> feste was ended and that suche as she wold were goon / she anoone aftir made to comme grete foyson of werkmen / as massons, Carpenters, and suche that can dygge & delue. Whyche at her commandement fylled <sup>24</sup> dounne the grete trees, and made the roche fayre and clene. There Melusyne sett euery man to werk. eche one dide his Crafte. they encysed the roche & made a depe & brode fundament. and in few dayes they <sup>28</sup> brought the werk so ferfourth / that euery man wondred of suche a fayre and stronge bylding so soone doon. And euery Satirday Melusyne payed truly her werkmen / and meet & drynk they had <sup>32</sup> in haboundaunce. <sup>32</sup> but trouth it is / that no body knew from whens these werkmen were. and wete it that soone was the Fortres made up / not only *with* one warde / but two strong wardes, *with* double walles were there, or oon coude <sup>36</sup>



- have *comme* to the stronge donjon of it. Round about  
the walles were gret tours machecolyd, & strong pos-  
ternes / and also barreres or wayes gooyng out fourth  
4 encysed and kerued *within* the hard roche. The Erle  
of Poytiers / the barons and alle the peple *meruaylled*  
moche of the said werke that so soone was doon, so  
grete, so stronge, & so fayre. Then the lady Melusyne  
8 and her husband Raymondyn lodged them *within* it.  
and anoone after Raymondin made to calle to a feste  
there, alle the noble men therabout. There *camme* the  
erle of Poytiers, both hys moder and hys suster / the  
12 Erle of Forestz, the Barons & noble men of theire  
landes, also of other countres and nacions. And also  
there was so many laydes & damoyselles, that they  
wel might suffyse att that day. There was jousting,  
16 dauncyng, and grete joye made *with* frendly and  
curtoys deeling. And whan Melusyne sawe tyme and  
place conuenable, she presented herself before the two  
Erles / barons and noble men, and humbly said to  
20 them in this manere: 'My fayre and good lordes, we  
thanke you moche of the high honoure that ye haue  
doon to us now at this feste—and the cause why we  
haue prayed you to *comme* I shal declare it to you.' /  
24 '**L** Ordes,' said the lady, 'here I haue assembled your  
noble personnes, for to haue your Counseil  
<sup>1</sup>how this fortresse shall be called. for that it be in  
mynd how that it hath be happely bylded & made.'  
28 'By my feyth, fayre Cousyn,' said the Erle of Poitiers,  
'we as in general sayen to you, as oure wylle is / that  
ye your owneself shall / as right is / gyue name to it.  
For emong we alle is not so moch wyt as in you alone  
32 that haue bylded up & achyeuyd so strong and fayre a  
place as thesame is / and wete it, that none of us  
shall entremete hym to doo that ye spek of.' Thanne  
said Melusyne: 'Dere Sire, Wyfully and for the nones  
36 ye haue kept pis ansuere for to jape with me, but what

protecting the  
donjon.

Every one mar-  
velled at its  
beauty and  
strength.

Raymondin gives  
a feast,

at which was  
jousting and  
dancing;

and at a conve-  
nient time Melu-  
sine declares why  
the feast is  
given:

it is to name the  
fortress.  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 37.

The Earl of Poi-  
tiers says she  
should name it,  
because of her  
wisdom;

she answers that  
they mock her,

therof is, I requyre and pray you that therof ye telle to me your entencion.' 'Certaynly, dere Cosyn,' sayd the Erle of Poytiers, 'none of us alle shal medle with all byfore you. For by reason / sethen ye haue so moche doon as to haue achyeued & made the moste strong and fayre place that ever man sawe in this Countree / ye owe to gyue name to it your owne self after your playsire.' 'Ha / ha, my lord,' said Melusyne, 'sith it ne may none otherwise be, / and that I see your playsire is that I gyue name to it, hit shalbe called after myn owne name, Lusygnen.' 'But my feyth,' said the Erle, 'the name setteth full wel to it for two causes, First bycause ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek language is as moch for to say / as thing meruayllous or commyng fro grete merueylle, and also this place is bylded and made meruayllously. For byleue not other wyse / but that as longe as the world shal laste <sup>1</sup>shall there be founde & seen somme Wonder & meruayllous thinge.' Thanne they alle ansuerd in this manere: 'My lord, no man in the world might gyue betre name, that bettre shuld sette to it than she hath doo after manere of the place / also aftir the interpretyng made by you of her owne name.' and on this oppynyon & worde were alle of one acorde. Whiche name within few dayes was so publyed, that it was knowen thugh alle the land. and yet at this day it is called soo. They soone aftir toke leue, and Melusyne and Raymondin also gaaf hem dyuers & riche yestes at theire departyng. And hereafter sheweth thystory how Raymondin and Melusyne / right wysly, mightily and honorably lyued togidre. /

**A**fter the feste was ended, Melusyne, that was grete with child, bare her fruyte unto þe tyme that alle wymen owen to be delyured of their birthe. and thanne she was delyuered of a man child, whiche was moche fayre, and wel proporcyoned or shapen in alle

but the Earl replies, that as she has built the best castle in the land, she must name it.

Melusine then names it Lusignan.

Which the Earl says is a good one, because it means 'marvellous' in Greek.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 37 b.

All the company think it a good name.

And it was published abroad, and even unto this day the castle is so called.

The company breaks up, taking with them many rich gifts.

Melusine has a son,

hys membres / except his vysage that was short and  
 large / one ey he had rede, and the other blew. he  
 was baptysed, & named was Uryan, and wete it that  
 4 he had the gretest eerys that euer were seen on eny  
 child of hys age / and whan they were ouergrowen,  
 they were as grete as the handlyng of a fan. Melusyne  
 penne called to hym Raymondin, and to hym she said  
 8 in this manere: 'My ryght swete felawe & frend, I  
 wold not see thyn owne herytage to be lost / which by  
 raison thou oughtest to haue by vertue of <sup>1</sup>patrymonye,  
 for Guerrende Penycence and all the marches aboute  
 12 apparteynen to the & to' py brother / goo thanne  
 thither, and make the king of Bretons to be sommed  
 that he wyl receyue you in your ryght & enherytance /  
 shewyng to hym how your fader slew his newew in  
 16 deffense & warde of hys owne body. For which  
 encheson doubting the sayd kyng / lefte the Countrey,  
 and neuer durst retourne / and yf he wyl not receyue  
 you to ryght, be not therof abasshed. For afterward  
 20 he shal be glad, & fayne whan he shal mow doo it.'  
 Thenne ansuerd Raymondyn, 'there nys nothing that  
 ye commande me, but that I shall doo after my power.  
 For wel I considere & see that all your werkes ne  
 24 tenden but to wele & worship.' 'Frende,' sayd the lady,  
 'it is wel rayson, sith that all your trust ye putte on  
 me that I hold to you trouth. It is trouth that your  
 fader, by hys predecessors, oweth to haue many grete  
 28 thinges in bretayne, the whiche shulle be declared unto  
 you whan ye be there. It muste thanne be by you  
 understand, that Henry of Leon, your fader, that tyme  
 he was in Bretayn for hys worthynes, grete policye &  
 32 valiauntnes, and as he that drad no man that owed hym  
 euyl wyH, he was moche loued with the kinge there /  
 in so moche that the said kyng made hym hys  
 Seneschall & Captayn general ouer alle his men of  
 36 werre. This king of Bretons had a newew / but no

fair of body, but  
 of short visage,  
 and one eye red,  
 and the other  
 blue.  
 He is named  
 Urian,

and he had ears  
 as large as a fan  
 handle.

Melusine tells  
 Raymondin of  
 his patrimony,

1 fol. 38.

and bids him go  
 to the king of  
 Britain, to enter  
 into his inherit-  
 ance.

He promises to  
 go.

Henry of Leon,  
 Raymondin's  
 father,

was Seneschal  
 and Captain-  
 General to the  
 king of Britain,

who had a  
nephew as his  
heir.

1 fol. 38 b.

This heir was  
made jealous of  
Henry,

by mischief-  
makers telling  
him that Henry  
was to take his  
place;

and by Josselin  
Dupont,

who told him  
that letters of  
grant had been  
made secretly in  
favour of Henry.

2 fol. 39.

child begoten of his body he had. Whyche newew, by  
the introduction of som, had grete enuye on Henry,  
your fader. For to<sup>1</sup> hym they said in this manere:  
“Ha! Ha! right-full heyre of Breytayne. Woo is us to 4  
see your grete damage / that is / you to be putte down  
fro the noble enherytaunce of Bretayne. yf by fawte  
& lak of courage ye suffre it, what shal men say?  
pey poyntyng you *with* the fynger shal sey, Loo, 8  
yonder is the fole that for his feynted herte hath be  
putte out of so noble enherytaunce as is the royaume of  
Bretayne.” And whan he understode the said enjurous  
wordes, he said: “Who is he that dare vsurpe & take 12  
fro me my right, I knowe none / but that god wyl  
haue me to be punysshed. and wel I wot, *pat* the  
kinge, my lord & oncle, wyl not take any other to be  
hys heyre than my self.” Thenne sayd one of them to 16  
hym: “By my feyth, ye are [not] enfourmed in this  
matere, For the kinge, your oncle, hath made &  
ordeyned hys heyre, Henry of Leon, and as now  
letters of graunt ben therof made.” Whan the yong man 20  
herd these wordes, he as wood wroth ansuerd to them,  
“wete it for certeyn / that if I knew these wordes to  
be trew, I shuld putte hastily remedy thereto / in so  
moche that neuer he shold hold land ne no possession.” 24  
And thenne ansuerde to hym a knight named Josselyn  
Dupont: “certaynly it is soo / and for we wold haue  
none other to be kyng in brytayne but you, after the  
decees of *pe* kinge, we warne you therof. For this 28  
hath the kyng your oncle doon secretly, for ye shuld  
not knowe of it. and wete it that alle we that now are  
here, were present whan that couenaunt was made.  
aske my felawes yf I say trouth<sup>2</sup> or not.” he demanded 32  
of them yf it was so, And they ansuerd “ye.”

‘**T**he yongman thanne said, “Fayre lordes, I thanke  
you of your good wylle whiche ye shewe to me,  
goo youre way. For wel I shall kepe Henry therfro.” 36



They toke theyre leue, For they rought not for no  
 thing that might fall therof, so that they might see  
 your faders deth. For enuyous and wroth they were  
 4 that the kinge louyd hym so wel, and for nought sette  
 they were by hym. knowe ye muste, that on the  
 sonday next, in the morning, the kingis newew armed  
 hym self / yede in to the wod of Leon Castel, and  
 8 there wayted tyl your fader passed by, whiche he  
 perceyued gooyng alone to hys dysport about hys  
 Castel of Leon / thinkynge on none euyl ne harme /  
 and sodaynly cryed on hym, "Now shalt thou dey, false  
 12 traytour, that fro me woldest haue and vsurpe myn  
 herytage" / and foynyng at hym with hys swerd, wold  
 haue ouerthrawn youre fader. but he glanced asyde /  
 and so the kyngis newew / for he recountred ayenst  
 16 nothing, fell down to the grounde, and the swerd  
 seaped fro hys hand that then your fader toke up, the  
 sayd newew that sawe hys wepen lost, toke a lytil knyf  
 that he had and ranne ayenst hym / but your fader,  
 20 with the pomel of the swerd, gaaf to hym suche a  
 stroke on the heed / that notwithstanding hys yron  
 hat, he broke hys heed so that he felt down deed, but  
 1 whan he knew that it was he / he was sory and woo /  
 24 retourned home / toke all hys hauoyr and goodes  
 meuable, and came in to the Shyre that men now call  
 Forests, and grette help & comfort he founde in a lady,  
 of whyche as now I kepe me styl to spek ony ferther.  
 28 And after the departyng of her fro hym, he toke by  
 maryage the sustir of hym that thoo dayes gouerned  
 the erledome of Poytiers, on whyche he gate many  
 children of the whyche ye are one. /  
 32 'Frend,' said Melusyne, 'now haue I deuysed and  
 reherced to you how your fader departed fro  
 Bretayn, and lefte hys landes and possessyons voyde,  
 without lord, whiche owen to be yours. You thenne  
 36 shal goo toward an vncle of yours whiche is called

The Sunday after  
 hearing this,  
 the king's  
 nephew laid in  
 wait for Henry,

surprised and  
 attacked him,

but was killed  
 by your father,  
 Henry of Leen,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 39 b.

who was sory,  
 and left the  
 country for the  
 Shire of Forests,  
 where he  
 married.

Melusine tells  
 Raymondin to  
 go to his uncle,

Alain of Quingant,  
and to tell him  
the tale,

and get one of  
his sons to call  
Josselyn before  
his king,  
and there accuse  
him of his deed.

Oliver Dupont  
is to fight Ray-  
mondin,  
but he is to lose,  
and he and his  
father are to be  
strangled,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 40.

and Raymondin  
is to get posses-  
sion of his land.

Raymondin with  
many men goes  
to Brut Britain,

where they pay  
their way.

The king sends  
to learn

Alayn of Quingant / and ye shal make you to be  
knownen of hym / and he shal byleue you ynough of  
aH that ye shall sey. he hath two wrorthy knightes  
to hys sones, the whiche are grete men *with* the kinge, 4  
and loueth hem wel. by one of them, your Cousyns,  
ye shall make Josselyn Dupont, that as yet is alyue,  
to be called byfore the kyng, and there ye shalle accuse  
hym of the treson by hym & other machyned / through 8  
whiche the kyngis newew, willing to haue destroyed  
your fader, was hym self slayn. And ye muste knowe  
that on this quareH his sone, called Olyuer Dupont,  
shall fyght ayenst you therfore. but ye shall haue the 12  
vyctory ouer hym / and bothe fader and sone shal be  
condampned to hang and to be strangled. For the  
fader shaH<sup>1</sup> vtte and knowe alle the treson / and aH  
your grounde and enherytaunce shalbe adiuged to you. 16  
And thus shall ye be putte in pacyfyque or peesable  
possessyon of it by the Peerys or lordes pryncypal  
of the land. Now my ryght swete frend & felawe,  
douteles goo surely. For certaynly god shal helpe you 20  
in all your juste & true dedes.'

**T**hanne ansuerd Raymondyn: 'Madame, I shall  
endeuoyre me to achyeue & fulfiH your com-  
mandement.' Raymondyn toke leue of Melusyne / 24  
and acompanyed *with* grete nombre of knightes and  
squyers, rode fourth so long on hys way, tyl they  
came in Brut Brytayne, wher the people was abasshed  
& moche wondred what suche grete nombre of 28  
straungers wold haue. But for they payed wel &  
largely for that they toke, they were ensured that they  
wold & sought but good. For thauncyent knight of  
the meyne of Melusyne rewled and gyded them alle 32  
in aH honour & goodnes. And for they were not so  
vnpurueyed / but that *with* them they had armures,  
with them yf nede were to arme them *with* / the  
kinge that knew of it, sent to them to wete what they 36

sought, whiche message demanded of Raymondyn yf hee  
 owed euyl wyth to the kyng & to hys royaume. In this  
 messagery or embassade were sent two wyse knyghtes,  
 4 whiche wysly enquired of Raymondyn as byfore is  
 sayd what he sought and what he wold. to whome  
 Raymondin full curtoysly ansuered thus. 'Fayre  
 lordes, ye shaft tell to my liege that I come but<sup>1</sup> for  
 8 good and wele, and for to haue the lawful right in  
 hys Court of suche thinges as belongen to me, For the  
 whiche I shall presente myn owne personne byfore hys  
 mageste, the same requyryng of socour and help.' 'For-  
 12 south,' ansuerd the two knyghtes, 'ye shalbe welcome  
 whan it shal playse you to do soo. and wete it wel that  
 the kyng, our liege, is rightwyse & juste / and nothing  
 as fer as right requyreth shal not be by hym denyed  
 16 by any wyse. but telle vs yf it lyke you whither ye  
 are now bounde.' 'Certaynly,' said Raymondyn, 'I  
 wold I were at Quyingant.' Thanne ansuerd one of  
 them, 'ye are wel on the way toward it, and wete that  
 20 ye shall fynd there Aleyn of Leon, whiche shaft make  
 you good chere. and also ye shaft fynd there two  
 knyghtes, men of wele and honour, and hold straye  
 this way and ye shal not mys of it, and with your leue  
 24 we retourne on our way toward oure liege.'

if Raymondin  
 intends evil to  
 him.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 40 b.

Raymondin tells  
 the messengers  
 that he comes to  
 obtain his rights,

on which he is  
 welcomed.

He tells them  
 he is going to  
 Quingant.

The messengers  
 leave.

**W**hanne these two knyghtes were fer fro Ray-  
 mondyn and hys felawship an halfmyle, they  
 byganne to say one to other: 'By my feyth, yonder  
 28 are gentyl and curtoys folkes, worshipfuH & honour-  
 able. For certayn they come not into this land with-  
 out it is for some grete matere.' and yet sayd, 'lete  
 vs go through Quyngan; and to aleyn we shaft anounce  
 32 theyre commyng.' they toke the way toward it, and  
 rode so fast that soone they came there where they  
 found Alayn, to whome they said & announced the  
 commyng of Raymondyn<sup>2</sup> and of his men. Whiche  
 36 Alayn wondred mochi of it. And thanne the trew

and on their way  
 home praise Ray-  
 mondin and his  
 men,

and pass by  
 Quingant,  
 where they an-  
 nounce to Alayn  
 the coming of  
 Raymondin's  
 party.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 41.

Alain sends his  
sons to meet and  
attend to them.

The ancient  
knight gets a  
stock of food,

and pitches the  
tents,

and pays well for  
everything.

The brethren  
meet Raymon-  
din,

and invite him  
to the castle of  
Quingant.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 41 b.

The invitation is  
accepted,

and they ride on  
to the town,  
where the  
ancient knight  
comes to them;

man dide calle to hym hys two sones, of whiche one  
was called Alayn & was eldest, and that other yongest  
had to name Henry, and he sayd to them in this  
manere: 'My good children, lepe on horsbak and ryde 4  
on your way to mete yonde straungers / receyue ye  
them worshipfully, and see that they be wel and  
honestly lodged. For it is told to me, that they be  
six houndred horses or therabout.' but for nought he 8  
spak. For thauncyent knyght of Melusyne was come  
before that / and seeyng the tounne was to lityl for to  
haue herberowed so moche peple in it / had made to  
be dressed tentes & pauyllons, and sent aboute in the 12  
Countre for suche thinges that necessary were to them,  
which he payed or mayd to be payd largely, in so moche  
that more vytayH was there brought than þey neded of.  
And thanne Alayn was aH abasshed whan he herd of 16  
that grete hanoyr & appareyH that they made there,  
and wyst not what therof he shuld thinke or say.

**N**ow sayth thystory, that so long rode the two  
brethern *with* theyre felawship togidre, that 20  
they mete *with* Raymondin, & fuH curtoysly wel-  
commed hym, and prayed hym by bydding of Alayn,  
theyre fader, that he vouchesauf to comme and be  
lodged *within* the Fort or Castel of Qyngant with 24  
theyre fader, that shuld make hym good chere. 'Fayre  
lordes,' said Raymondyn, 'gramercy to your fader, and  
thanked be you of your curtoysy that ye thus proffre  
to me,<sup>1</sup> But at your requeste I shall goo toward your 28  
fader for to rendre to hym reuerence. For glad &  
fayn I were to see hym, for the wele & honour that I  
have herde say by hym.' Contynuyng suche wordes  
& *oper* they rode tyl they came nygh the toun. And 32  
thann came there thauncyent knight to Raymondyn,  
and sayd: 'Sire, I have made your pauyllon to be  
dressed vp, and tentes ynoughe for to lodge you & al  
your men, and thanked be god we are wel purueyed.' 36



'Ye haue doo wel,' sayd Raymondin / 'goo and make  
 ye mery and chere my men, and loke not for me this  
 nyght, For I goo to the Fortresse *with* this two gentyl-  
 4 men.' And thenne departed he fro thauncyent knight /  
 toke *with* hym a few of hys moost famyler men, and  
 yede to the Fortresse wher the lord of the place aborde  
 for hym styll at the gate. Whan Raymondyn thanne  
 8 sawe hym as to hys lord and vnclē he made reuerence  
 & salewed hym mekely. Wherto shulde I vse prolixē  
 or longe wordes of theyre acoyntaunce. but of the  
 faitt or matere whiche I owe to uttre and say, Lete vs  
 12 penne say. Whan they had souped / wessen & graces  
 said / the lord of the place toke Raymondyn by the  
 hand / had hym apart upon a bench / there to deuysē  
 both togidre, whyle that the other souped / the whiche  
 16 þe two bretheren chered & honestly seruyd. The lord  
 Alayn thanne wyse and subtyl, and that knewe moche  
 of wel and honour, bygan to raissonne *with* Raymondin  
 in this manere: 'Sir knight, grete joye I haue of your  
 20 commyng hither, For certaynly ye are full lyke to a  
 brother of myn whiche was valyaunt, full wyse and  
 worthy. he departed <sup>1</sup>fro this land xl. yere goon, for  
 a stryf that befell betwix the nevew of the kinge that  
 24 reigned at that tyme and hym, and wete it that this  
 is the iiij<sup>th</sup> kyngē that haue reyned syn that tyme vnto  
 now. And bycause that, to me seemeth ye resemble  
 my brother, I am the more glad & fayne to see you.'  
 28 'Sire,' said Raymondyn, 'therof I mercy & thanke  
 you / and or I departe from you I shall make you certayn  
 wherfore and by what inconuenience the stryf that ye  
 spek of happed betwixt the nevew of the kyng and  
 32 youre brother. For wete it, that for none other cause  
 I come hither. but for to shewe publiquely the pure  
 trowth & certeyntee thereof.'

36 **W**han Alayn herd these wordes he was moche  
 abasshed, and loked on Raymondyn moche

and Raymondin  
tells him that he  
will stay at the  
Castle.

He rides to the  
Castle, and  
makes reverence  
to his uncle.

After supping  
his uncle takes  
him aside,

and tells how  
glad he is to see  
him,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 42.

because of his  
likeness to his  
lost brother.

Raymondin tells  
his uncle he  
comes about the  
strife between  
his uncle's  
brother and  
the late king's  
nephew,  
which abashes  
Alain;

who asks how he  
knows about the  
strife.

Raymondin asks  
if any counsellor  
of the late king  
yet lives,

and is told of one

<sup>1</sup> fol. 42 b.

whose son was  
lately dubbed a  
knight;

whereupon Ray-  
mondin tells  
their names to  
be Josselin  
Dupont the  
father, and  
Oliver the son,

and promises to  
tell Alain more  
if he will go to  
court.

Alain grants  
Raymondin's  
request.

ententyfly, and after sayd, 'and how shal that mowe be?  
ye haue not yet the age of xxx yere / by you may not  
be recounted the faytte, the trouthe of whiche none  
might neuer knowe. For whan the stroke of the 4  
mysdede happed. my brother sodaynly departed / so  
that I ne none other herd neuer syn whither he was  
become.' 'Sire, yf ye vouchesaf / telle mee yf there  
is as now yet lyuyng eny man that had on that tyme 8  
auctorite or rewle aboute the kinge that regned whan  
the stryf befeh.' 'By my feyth,' said Alayn, 'one and  
no more I knowe, that had gouernaunce in Court that  
same tyme, and he hym self vsurpeth & holdeth my 12  
brothers landes as his owne enherytaunce. For the  
kyng gaaf it to hym, for hys first begoten sone to  
enjoye it for euermore, the which <sup>1</sup>hys sone is now of  
late dowbed & made knight.' 'For southe,' sayd thenne 16  
Raymondyn, 'wel I wote hys name.' 'And how know  
ye hyt?' said Alayn. 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondin,  
'he is called Josselin Dupont / and hys sone hys named  
Olyuyer.' 'Sire knight,' sayd Alayn, 'ye say trouth. 20  
But telle me how ye this may knowe.' 'Sire,' sayd  
Raymondyn, 'no ferther ye shaH as now know therof.  
but ye vouchesaf to come & your two sones *with* me,  
unto the kinges Court / wete it that I shall declare 24  
vnto you the quarrell & stryf so clerly that, yf ye  
euer loued your brother, Henry of Leon, ye shal be  
thereof fayn & glad.' And thanne Alayn heryng the  
name of hys brother called, he was more abashed than 28  
before. For he wend none other but that hys brother  
had be long deed. And thenne he thoughte longe in  
hymself or he ansuerd any word.

**T**hus, as I haue sayd to you / moche long thought 32  
Alayne, and aftir he ansuerd: 'Sire knight, I  
graunt & acorde me to your requeste / sethen that here  
I ne may knowe your wyH. For therat I lang moche.  
I gladly shall hold you company vnto the kynges 36

Court.' 'gramerey,' sayd Raymondyn, 'and wel I shal  
 kepe you fro domage.' Wherto shuld I make long  
 proces, Alayn manded or sent for a grete foyson of hys  
 4 frendes, & made hym redy in grete estate for to goo to  
 the court. The kyng that knew theire commyng  
 departed fro Storyon, where he laye, & came to  
 Nantes. For the two knightes whiche the kinge sente  
 8 Raymondyn were retourned, & had recounted to the  
 kinge the ansuere of Raymondyn, and the maner of his  
 estate. And therfore the kinge was come to Nantes  
 and manded a part of hys baronye, For he wold not  
 12 that Raymondyn shuld fynd hym vnpurueyd of men.  
 And amonge other he sent for Josselin Dupont for<sup>1</sup> to  
 haue his CounseyH on the demande that Raymondyn  
 wold make. For he was moche sage. What shuld I  
 16 saye more? thauneyent knight came before & made  
 to be dressed bothe pauillons & tentes & purueyed for  
 all thinges necessary. Wherfore the folke of the  
 tonne were moche abasshed of the grete appareyl that  
 20 he caused to be made / Thenne came Raymondyn,  
 Alayn, and bothe his sones, and descended into the  
 chief Pauillon, where they made them redy and arayed  
 them full richely, for to goo toward the kinge / and  
 24 after they departed fro the tentes, acompanyed with  
 xl knightes wel horsed and honestly arayed that  
 wonder was to see / and had his barons with hym. And  
 whan they come to the kinges place they descended  
 28 fro their horses / and Raymondyn / Alayn and his  
 two sones entred within the halle, there the kyng  
 was acompanyed with his barons / made to the kinge  
 reuerence / after siewyng, salewed the barons & lordes,  
 32 the kinge welcommed & receyued pem joyously / called  
 to hym Alayn, and said to hym in this manere :

'It gyueth me grete wonder,' said the kinge to Alayn,  
 'of this gracyous straunge knight, with whome  
 36 ye are so acoynted / What he seketh in this land.' 'Ha /

Alain sends for  
 his frendes ;

the king comes  
 from Nantes and  
 sends for some  
 of his barony,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 43.  
 and for Josselin.

The ancient  
 knight prepares  
 tents for Ray-  
 mondin,

In which Alain  
 and his sons  
 dress themselves  
 to go before the  
 king.

They set out with  
 forty barons ;

arriving, are  
 welcomed by the  
 king,

who asks Alain  
 about his friend,  
 the strange  
 gracious knight.

Alain tells the king that he marvels at the knight's sayings,

but believes that all will be made plain soon.

Raymondin learns that Josselyn is present,

1 fol. 43 b.

with his son Oliver.

Raymondin addresses the king, and praises his justice;

the king asks why?

ha, sire,' ansuerd Alayn. 'I am an houndred tymes more meruaylled of the wordes that he yestirday shewed vnto me / than ye are of his commyng, but soone shu<sup>ll</sup> be declared al that we lang aftir & desire 4 to knowe.' Thenne Raymondyn, dressyng hys wordes to theldest sone of Alayn, sayd softly in this manere, 'Sire knight, say me of your Curtoysye, yf one called Josselyn Dupont be now in this company or nat.' 8 Thanne sayd Alayn, 'ye—and wold to god so that the kyng shuld not be dyspleased that I had slayn hym. For he enjoyeth <sup>1</sup>therytage that apparteyneth to one our oncle which we shuld haue.' And after these wordes 12 Alayn sayd to Raymondin / 'it is yond auncient knight that sitteth by the kinge. And wete it for certayn that he is replenysshed *with* all falshed & malyce / and yonder is his son Olyuyer that weyeth not an 16 ownee lasse in a<sup>ll</sup> wykkednes & euy<sup>ll</sup>.' 'By my feyth, Sire knight,' sayd Raymondin / 'ye soone shal be auenged of hym yf god wyl.' And lenyng theire talkyng, Raymondin hadd hymself fourth before the 20 kinge, to whom he said in this manere: 'ha, high sire & mighty kinge, It is wel trouth that common renoumee ranneth thurgh alle landes. that your Court is so noble & so raysonnable that it may be called fountayne 24 of Justice & raison / and that none ne commeth to your Court but that ye shew & gyue to hym good Justice and raysonnable after the good right that he hath.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said the kinge / 28 'it is trouth. but wherfore say you so, fayn I wold wete it.' 'Forsonthe, sire,' said Raymondin, 'for to vttre & shew it vnto you / I am come hither / & for none other cause. but, Sire, yf it please you / or I telle it you / 32 ye sha<sup>ll</sup> promyse me that ye sha<sup>ll</sup> susteyne me ayenst alle personnes after right & raison. For that / that I shal say is in a part your wele prouffyt & honour. For no kinge acompanyed of a traytour is not wel 36



lodged no sure of his personne.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'ye say trouth / say on hardily. For I swere to you by aH that I hold of god, that I shal doo to you  
 4 alle Justice & rayson after the good right that ye shaH haue / and that shal I doo doubteles / yf it were ayenst my brother.' 'Sire,' said Raymondin, 'an houndred thousand thankes & merceyes / ye say as a valyaunt kyng  
 8 & <sup>1</sup>trew man. For first were kynges stablysshed for to rendre or yeld to euerbody juste jugement in alle thinges.'

and promises to do justice to Raymondin,

for which Raymondin thanks him.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 44.

'Noble mighty kinge,' said Raymondin / 'it is wel  
 12 **T**routh that one, your predecessour kyng, reyned somtyme moche mightily & valyauntly that was in the tyme of Josselin Dupont and of Alayn, whiche bothe are here now present before your majeste / this  
 16 kyng whiche I spek of, had a moche fayre & noble yong man to his newew. that tyme was in this Countre a baron whiche was called Henry of Leon, the whiche was brother to Alayn here present.' 'By my feyth, sire,'  
 20 said thanne Josselyn, 'he saith trouth. and ouermore the same Henry of Leon slew the newew of your predecessour by treson / fledd out of this land, and neuer syn came hither ayen. And then the kinge seased  
 24 his landes and possessyons, and anoone after gaf them to me.' The kinge thanne ansuered, 'we haue herd ynoughe of this matere / but suffre this knight fynyshe his raison which he hath bygonne.'

Raymondin speaks to the king of Josselin, Alain,

and of Henry of Leon;

whereupon Josselin says that Henry slew the nephew of the king's predecessor, and fled the land;

but the king orders him to let Raymondin finish his story.

28 **T**O this ansuerd Raymondyn, 'Sire kinge, he hath wel raison to speke of hit, For ferthermore he shal be constrayned to say / how be it that as now he hath said amys & not trouth of that he saith that  
 32 Henry of leon slew the kinges newew in treson, For he knew wel why & wherfore it was, and there nys no man lynying that can say the trouth of it but he alone, For they that were of his acorde and conspiracion ben  
 36 al deed. Therefore sire kyng, vouchesaf to command

Raymondin denies what Josselin said,

but asserts that Josselin alone knows the truth of the matter,

and asks the king to bid Josselin tell all.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 44 b.

This abashes Josselin, who asks if Raymondin has come to dishonour him.

Raymondin tells the king of the treachery of Josselin toward his father, Henry of Leon.

How Josselin told the king's nephew that he was disinherited

because of Henry,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 45.

hym telle trouth al on hye, that eueryone here may  
<sup>1</sup> here it.' And whan Josselin vnderstode that word,  
 he wexed sore abasshed; neuertheles, he ansuered in  
 this manere: 'Sire knight, are you come into this 4  
 land forto vndertake eny thinge in dyshonour of me?'  
 And Raymondin ansuerd appertly: 'Fals traytour, he  
 fourueyeth nat that saith the playn trouth.' Thanne  
 he said agayn to the kynge: 'Sire, it is wel trouth that 8  
 Henry of Leon was a moche valiaunt & hardy knight,  
 curteys and wel condicyoned, & moche was beloved  
 bothe of the kinge and of his newew / and vsed the  
 kynge moche of his counseil, For he was he on whom 12  
 he trusted most. It haped that dyuerse traytours beyng  
 that time about the kinge, of which Josselin here  
 present was one, as chef causer of the mysdede that  
 tyme perpetred or doon / came to said kingis newew, 16  
 & to hym they said in this manere: "Gentyl Squyer,  
 alle we that are here byfore your presence ben sory &  
 woo of your grete damage and shamfuH losse whan  
 ye shall be dysherytred of so noble a land as is the 20  
 royame of Brytayne" / and he ansuered to them / "how  
 shuld that mowe be doo? the kynge hath none heyre  
 but my self." "On my god," said thanne yond Josselin  
 to hym, "Wete it pat he hath made & stablissed his 24  
 heyre, Henry of Leon, and I byleue that this Henry  
 hath enchaunted hym and the barons of the land also,  
 For therof ben lettres passed & sealled with their  
 sealles annexed to the kingis grete seall / and al this 28  
 they aH togider affermed on their feyth for trouth."  
 "By my feith," said the squyer thanne / "here is grete  
 inconuenyence yf that be trew that ye telle me." <sup>2</sup>And  
 thanne Josselin with his complices alle with an acorde 32  
 sware yet ayen to hym that it was trouth. Wherefore  
 the said yonge squyer was sory and woo. Josselin  
 thenne seeying that he byleued their falsed to be  
 certayn, said yet agayn to the squyer in this manere: 36

- “ Yf in you lyeth so moch hardynes that ye dare vnder-  
take to auenge the wrong doon to you by Henry of  
Leon, We alle shal helpe you therto.” And the squyer  
4 ansuerd, “ my courage and wylle ben agreed to do  
soo.” Thenne said Josselin, “ goo thanne & arme you  
in a manner vnknowen, and we shaH abyde you with  
out the tounne, and shaH ledd you in to suche a place  
8 where ye shal auenge you at your ease.” O noble &  
mighty kinge, sethen I fynde now myself in Court of  
right & iustice / and that I may see myn enemye, I  
wyl no more be hyd, but lete euery man knowe that  
12 I am the sone of Henry of Leon.’ Thenne they were  
alle abasshed of that word, but they held them styl /  
and Raymondyn spake fourth in this manere. /
- ‘ Sire kinge, it is trouthe that my fader had take leue  
16 of the kinge, and was goon in to hys Countrey /  
and was wonnt euery mornynge for to goo in a wode  
nygh by his fortesse to dysporte hym, sayeng hys  
matyns alone. And this fals traytour Josselin, with his  
20 complices, ledd the said kingis nevew and embusshed  
them there. My fader, that thoughte no harme, came  
that same ooure / and whan Josselin perceyued hym  
commyng he said to the squyer / “ now it is tyme to  
24 auenge you, For he is without eny armure or wepen /  
he may not escape you / and yf we see that ye nede of  
help<sup>1</sup> we shall helpe you.” The squyer, thanne espryed  
with euyl desire, departed fro them and ranne toward  
28 my fader and escryed hym to deth / and as he wold  
haue thrested the swerd thugh my faders body. my  
fader glunched asyde / and as god wold he that fyersly  
ranne felH to the ground. My fader penne toke the  
32 swerde that scaped fro the squyers hand, and with the  
pomel of it smote hym under the eere by suche  
strengthe that the squyer felH doun ded. And thenne  
whan my fader saw hym lyeng on the ground deed he  
36 dyscouered his face, and anone he knew hym, wherfore

and urged him  
to auenge him-  
self,

and promised to  
aid him.

Raymondin  
declares that he  
is the son of  
Henry, which  
abashes them all.

He continnes the  
story of Josse-  
lin's treachery :

how an ambush  
was laid,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 45 b.

and how the  
king's nephew  
tried to slay his  
father,

but was slain  
himself.

How Henry fled  
from the land on  
recognizing his  
enemy, fearing  
the king's ire ;

which pleased  
Josselin,

who thought he  
would then be  
able to rule the  
king.

Raymondin  
challenges Jos-  
selin,

1 fol. 46.

his son Oliver,  
and one of his  
friends ;

but no one ac-  
cepts the  
challenge.

Alain, under-  
standing now  
who Raymondin  
is,

embraces him.

he made grete sorow and was sory and woo / and after  
the dede & euylhap, doubtyng the furour & yre of the  
king, yede there hys hauoir was / toke it and fledd  
with aȝ from þis land. And thanne Josselin the fals 4  
traytour sayd to hys complices and felawes : " Now are  
we come to our entencion & wylle. For the kinges  
nevew is deed, and yf Henry be take he may not scape  
fro deth. Now shal we gouerne and doo with the king 8  
that we lyst after our guyse / lete vs not meve us tyl  
he be ferre from vs / and after we shal take the corps  
& putte it in a byere that we shal make with braunches  
& leues, and so we shal bere it toward the king, to 12  
whom we shal say that Henry of Leon slew hym in  
treson." Ha / ha, noble king, aȝ euen, so as I say, dide  
that yonder fals traytour / and yf he say nay / here I  
presente & cast my gage of bataill agenst hym. And 16  
bycause, sire kinge, that I wil lete euery man knowe  
that I doo vndertake þis not for auarice / but for to  
kepe my right and enherytaunce / and for to declare,  
manyfeste, and <sup>1</sup>shewe the vylonny and euyl treson 20  
that this fals traytour Josselin and hys complices dyde  
to Henry of Leon, my fader, for to haue hym out of  
conceytte, and to be putte fro the kingis Court, I  
besech your highnes that he may take hys sone Olyuer 24  
and another yet of his frendes / and I shal fight ayenst  
them thre without fawte, prouyded alwayes the noble  
and juste jugement of your Court / one after another' /  
and sayeng these wordes he kyst his gage. but there 28  
was none that spake or ansuerd ony word. And whan  
Alayn and his two sones vnderstode alle that Raymon-  
dyn had said / what for joye to see theire faders nevew  
and Cousyn to them / and what for pyte to hero telle 32  
the trayson so machyned ayenst theyre faders brother  
& vncle to them / ranne to kysse and embrased  
Raymondyn.



**W**han the king of the Bretons sawe that no body  
 ansuerd to these wordes so proferid in hys  
 presence / sayd al on high that euery one there might  
 4 here hym, 'how now, Josselin, are ye deaf? / I now per-  
 céyue wel & see that the prouerbe that is said commonly  
 is trew / that is / "that olde synne reneweth shame,"  
 For this knight straunger bringeth you tylynges,  
 8 moche straunge and a wonder medecyne fro ferre land /  
 aduyse you of that ye shal ansuere.' Thanne ansuerd  
 Josselyn to the kyng: 'Sire kinge, I am not he *pat*  
 from hens fourth oweth to ansuere such thinges. And  
 12 also wel I byleue that he saith it but in jape & sport.'  
 Thanne ansuerd Raymondin, 'the mocke fals<sup>1</sup> traytour  
 shal tourne on the. I now requyre you, noble king,  
 that this matere may be discuted / lete him haue as  
 16 raison requyreth for his treson / and I to be punysshed  
 yf in eny poynt forsayd [I] haue myssaid or mesprysed.'  
 Thenne said the kinge, 'doubt not of it, For so shal  
 I doo. Josselyn,' said the kinge, 'ye muste ansuere to  
 20 this quareH & acusacion.' Whan thenne his sone  
 Olyuyer herd what the kyng said to his fader / he  
 ansuerd to his wordes: 'Sire, that knight is so sore  
 adrad that he trembleth for fere / he weneth as mo  
 24 semeth to take the cranes flihing, by my feith he  
 shall wel fayH & mysse of that he hath said, For my  
 fader is a true man in aH his dedes / and I vouchesauf  
 & graunt the bataiH as he hath ordonned / and there  
 28 is my gage / he shal be wel happy yf he dyscomfyte  
 me and another of my lynage suche as I shaH chese. /'

**W**han the king herd that word he was moche  
 wroth, & ansuerd in this manere / 'that shaH  
 32 nat happe in my Court as long as I shaH lyue *pat* one  
 knight alone shal fyght ayenst two for oo maner  
 quareH / and grete shame is to you / only to haue  
 thought it in your herte / and wete it / that by  
 36 semblaunt ye shew nat your fader to haue good quareH.

The king orders  
Josselin to de-  
fend himself,

who says that  
he believes that  
Raymondin is  
joking.

1 fol. 46 b.

Raymondin  
denies it,  
and asks the  
king to bring  
the matter to  
an issue.

In answer to  
the king, Josse-  
lin's son Oliver  
agrees to fight  
Raymondin,  
helped by  
another of his  
lineage.

The king is  
wroth at the  
proposal to pair  
two knights  
against one,

and gives Ray-  
mondin choice  
of a day of  
battle;

Raymondin  
desires to fight  
now,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 47.

and is en-  
couraged by  
Alain and his  
sons.

The king, know-  
ing the might of  
the parties,

makes arrange-  
ments to prevent  
disorder,

and declares the  
quarrel to be one  
of life and death  
on both sides.

And fro this ooure fourthon I gyue you journey of  
batayH at the requeste of the knight straunger on suche  
day that he shaH assigne.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne  
Raymondin, 'I am euen now redy therto, for myn 4  
armures are not ferre. and thanked be your highnesse  
an hondred tymes of your lawfuH graunt.' There had  
ye herd grete rumoure made on aH sydes, for aH said,  
'yonder is the moste valyaunt knight that euer we sawe 8  
requyryng his ryght.' but what so euer was woofull  
therof, Alayn of Quyngant & his two sones were fayn  
& glad that so shuld be doo / & said to Raymondin,  
'Fayre Cousin, be not <sup>1</sup>abasshed of nothing in the 12  
world. take boldly the bataiH for you, and for us  
both ayenst that same fals traytour / For yf god wil  
we shaH soone haue worship therof.' 'Fayre lordes,'  
said Raymondin, 'take who wil bataiH for hymself. 16  
For the same I shal haue for my part, and doubte you  
not but that I shal bring it to a good & worshipful  
ende god before with the good right that I haue  
therto.' 20

**W**hilles the rumour was among the folk, the  
kinge, moche wyse & subtyl / for that the  
parties were of grete & high parentage & lynee /  
doubtyng of some grete inconuenience that might happe 24  
among them / commanded sodaynly the gates to be  
shette that none might entre ne yssue / & ordonned  
men armed to kepe euery man therfro. and aftir callid  
his ConseiH apart / shewed to them and reherced aH 28  
the quareH. and they counseilled hym of that was  
nedefuH to be doo. Thanne retourned the kinge vnto  
the halle, where he made to be commanded by hym,  
that none there, on payne of deth, should be so hardy 32  
to spek any word but þat he were commanded. The  
kinge thenne spak & said, 'now, fayre lordes, ye muste  
vnderstand how this quareH is now not litel, for it is  
for lyf or grete dyshonour for euermore to the one 36

- partye. and wete it for certayn that I ne owe ne also  
 wyl not refuse ryght to be doo in my Court. Olyuier,  
 said the king, 'wil you deffende your fader of this  
 4 treson?' 'Sire,' said he / 'ye certaynly,' / . and thenne  
 the king ansuerd / 'the lystes ben alredy dressed, and  
 therefore I ordeyne the bataiH to be to morow exploited.  
 And wete it / that yf ye be dyscomfited & ouercome,  
 8 bothe your fader and ye shul be hanged. and not lesse  
 shal haue your partye aduerse, yf the<sup>1</sup> cas myshappeth  
 to hym. Make you thanne redy toward / and gyue in  
 oure hand hostages & pledges / and first your fader  
 12 shaH abyde.' and thenne the king made Josselin to be  
 ledde in to pryson in a stronge toure. and thanne said  
 the king to Raymondin, 'Sire knight, whome shul ye  
 gyue vs for hostage?' Alayn and his two sones came  
 16 thanne fourth & said, 'sire, we pledge hym.' 'By my  
 feyth,' said the king, 'it suffyseth vs wel. and therefore  
 ye shaH not hold pryson. For wel I wote that the  
 knight had not emprysed the bataiH without he wold  
 20 perfourme it.' And thus departed bothe parties fro the  
 presence of the kinge. and Raymondyn *with* hys folk,  
 accompanyed of hys vncle & Cousins, yede toward his  
 pauillons, and aboute euen tyme he went in to the  
 24 chirch CathedraH, and there he watched, making hys  
 prayers to god *with* grete deuocyon / And Olyuer also  
 came to hys hous *with* grete foyson of them of hys  
 lynee, and made his hors & harneys redy. On the  
 28 morowe they herd masse, and after armed them / and  
 the king and the Barons of the land were sette on the  
 scafoldes rounde aboute the listes / and gardes to the  
 champ or feld were ordeyned, and the Chayers sette.  
 32 And about the ooure of pryme came Raymondin *with*  
 fayre felawship, armed moche goodly & richely / the  
 spere on the rest, and on hym hys cote of armes,  
 browded *with* syluer & azure / and entred the lystes  
 36 vpon a grete destrier wel harneyed vnto the nayle of  
 MELUSINE.

Oliver under-  
takes to fight.

The king ap-  
points next day  
for the battle,

and tells that  
the loser shall be  
hanged.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 47 b.

Pledges are  
taken from the  
combatants,

and both parties  
leave the king.

The combatants  
pray and hear  
mass.

On the morrow  
the lists are  
guarded,

and at noon Ray-  
mondin appears  
richly armed and  
well mounted,  
with his com-  
panions, and  
enters the lists;



and makes reverence to the king and barons;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 48.

dismounts and waits for his adversary,

who at last appears nobly armed with his father.

Raymondin swears the justice of his cause on the Gospels,

and likewise Josselin and Oliver, but very timorously.

A herald proclaims that no signs are to be made:

the lists clear.

A herald shouts 'Do your duty' to the combatants.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. 48 b.

the foot / as for gage of bataille / and there he made reuerence & salewed the king & the Barons. 'By my feith,' said eueryone / 'it is long syn we sawe so fayre man of armes ne of so fayr contenance / he hath not 4 beste werke that hath such<sup>1</sup> a man in hand to joust or fyght with hym.' Thenne descended Raymondin fro the destrer as appertly as he had be vnarmed, and sette hym in the chayer abydyng after his aduersary. 8 It is trouth that long after that came Olyuer, right wel & nobly armed, and sett on a moche ryche destrier / and wel he semed man of grete fayttes / and so was he / & before hym came Josselin, his fader, on 12 a palfray, and made reuerence to the kinge & hys barons. Moche semed Josselin abasshed as thanne / For that euery man said he had euyl cause. What shuld I make long tale / the holy Euangiles were there 16 brought, wheron Raymondin swore that Josselyn had euyl cause, and that he had doon the treson as he had byfore declared / and after he kneled & kyssed the book, and sette hym self ayen on the chayere. And 20 after Josselin sware, but he stakered, and so timorous he was that he coude not touche the boke / and also Olyuer, which knew wel the trouth of aH, swore full feyntly / and that doon he sette hym self agayn in his 24 chayere. and fourthwith a herault cryded with an high voyce on the kingis byhalfe / that none, on peyne of deth, shuld be so hardy to speke any worde ne to make eny signe or token that eny of the Champyons might 28 vnderstand or perceyue. And thenne eueryman voyded the place, saaf only they that were stablissed to the garde of the champ & Josselin. And anoone Raymondyn lepte on horsbak moch appertly and toke hys 32 spere, and on the other syde Olyuer had hys destrier redy, and lepte on lightly, and toke hys spere with sharp yron / and thenne cryded a herault thryes. 'lete ranne your horses & <sup>2</sup> doo your deuoyre.' 36



Here saith the veray hystory, that whan the cry  
 was made Raymondin had leyd the ende of  
 hys spere to the grounde alonge the hors nek, and  
 4 thryes he made the signe of the crosse. and while he  
 dede so hys enemy ranne at hym, and *with* hys spere  
 hytte Raymondin on the brest or he was ware of hit  
 moche rudely, For dooyng so he putte to it alle his  
 8 strengthe & myght, but Raymondin bowed neuer  
 therfore / and the spere of Olyuer brak in to pieces,  
 and *with* that strok the speere of Raymondyn fell to  
 the ground. 'Ha, traytour,' said then Raymondyn /  
 12 'thou folowest wel the right euyl lynce of whiche thou  
 yssued. but that may not auaylle the.' and toke the  
 sterope that hynged at sadelbowe, that had thre poyntes  
 wel assured, eche of them seuen ench long. and at  
 16 retourne that Olyuer supposed to haue doo, Raymon-  
 dyn smote hym on the helmet with the sterop that oo  
 poynte of it entred & perced the helmet so that the  
 nayl of the vmbrel brake, and the vysere hing at oo  
 20 syde / and the visage of Olyuyer abode aH dyscouered,  
 wherfore he was moche agast and abasshed. Neuerthe-  
 les he drew out hys swerde & wel shewed contenaunce  
 of a knight that lytil redoubteth hys enemye. and so  
 24 they faught long space togidre and gaaf eche other  
 grete strokes / and there might men see grete appertyse  
 of armes. At last Raymondin alighted on foot and  
 toke vp hys spere that laye at ground & came *with*  
 28 grete paas toward his foo mortall, whiche the best wyse  
 that he coude dystourned fro Raymondin that he made  
 to goo after hym alonge the Champ. For he dide *with*  
 hys hors what he wold,<sup>1</sup> and by that manere dooyng  
 32 he supposed to haue made Raymondyn very that nedes  
 he muste reste hym, and so the day shuld be soone  
 passed. But Raymondin whiche that perceyued, yede &  
 appertly to[ke]<sup>2</sup> hys hors that he ledde *with* one hand, &

Raymondin, his  
 spear couched,

making the sign  
 of the cross, is  
 struck fiercely on  
 the breast by  
 Oliver's spear;

but he does not  
 bow;  
 Oliver's spear  
 shivers, and  
 Raymondin's  
 falls.

Upon which  
 Raymondin  
 breaks Oliver's  
 helmet with his  
 stirrup;

his visor falling  
 discovers his  
 face.

They continue  
 to fight fiercely  
 with swords

until Raymondin  
 alights from his  
 horse and takes  
 his spear, and  
 goes to attack his  
 foe,  
 who runs away  
 from him.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 49.

Raymondin then,  
 leading his horse

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *prinst*.

and carrying his  
spear,  
approaches  
Oliver,

who suddenly  
spurs his horse  
against Ray-  
mondin,

but has it  
stunned by a  
blow from the  
stirrup,

and is dis-  
mounted by a  
spear stroke,  
and wounded and  
beaten ;

and held by the  
throat, Raymon-  
din kneeling on  
him.

After a time  
Raymondin asks  
him to yield, or  
die.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 49 b.

He replies he  
would prefer to  
die by Raymon-  
din's hand ;

who pities him,  
and asks if he  
knew of his  
father's treason.

He says he did  
not ;

toke the spere at other hand / and softly one pas after another came towarde hys enemye. And whan Olyuyer sawe hym come, perceyuyng his manere he wist not how ne in what manere Raymondyn wold assayn 4 hym / and sodaynly spored his horse, wenyng to haue come & hurted Raymondyn as he had doon byfore. but Raymondin kyst at hym yet ayen the sterop by grete anger, and hitte Olyuyer hors at foreheed with 8 suche strength that the chaunfreyn entred deep within the hors heed, so that it bowed the legges behind to therthe. Olyuyer thanne sporid his destrier, but as the hors redressed hym, Raymondyn with hys spere 12 smote Olyuyer at right syde of hym, so that he ouerthrew hym to therthe, and so wonderly a strok he gaf hym betwix the mayn panser & the Corset that the spere heed entred deep in hys body / and ar he might 16 be deluyered Raymondyn cast on hym so many strokes that he might no more meue hym self, and by force plucked the helmet fro the heed of hym, and putte hys knee on his naue, and the hand senester at hys nek, 20 and held hym in suche destresse that by no manere waye he might not meue hym.

**T**hystory telleth in this partye that Raymondin held Olyuyer as aboue is said long espace of 24 tyme, and whan he sawe that he had the best ouer hym he drew a knife<sup>1</sup> that heng<sup>2</sup> at his right side and said to hym, 'False traytour, yeld thyself vaynquyssed, or ellis thou art but deed.' 'By my feith,' said Olyuyer, 28 'I have leuer dye by the hand of suche a valyaunt knight as ye be than of another.' Raymondyn thanne toke grete pite on hym and demanded of hym, vpon parel of the sowle of hym / yf he nothing knew of 32 the treson that Josselin his fader had doon / and he ansuerd nay, and he was not yet borne þat tyme that this treson happed. and how be it that it pleased to

<sup>1</sup> Knight in MS. Fr. version *coustel*.

god that Fortune were as thenne contrary to hym,  
 notwithstanding yet he held his fader for a trew man /  
 lawful and not gilty of that same dede. And thanne  
 4 whan Raymondyn, that wel wyst the contrary, herd  
 hym, he was sorowful & woo, and bete hym so moche  
 on the temples *with* hys fust armed with his gantlet  
 that he made hym so astonyed that he ne saw ne herd  
 8 ne wyst what he dide to hym / And thanne stode  
 vp Raymondin and toke hym by the feet and drew  
 hym vnto the lystes, And syn he putte hym *without*  
 fourth / and retourned & came before the scaffold of  
 12 the kinge, the visere lyfte on hys, & said : 'Sire, haue  
 I doo my deuoir, For yf I haue eny thing more to doo  
 I am redy to it to the regarde of your Court &  
 ordynaunce?' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'sire knight,  
 16 ye haue quytted your self full wel.' And the king  
 penne commanded that Josselin and his sone shuld be  
 bothe hanged, and they to whom the king comanded  
 this execucion to be doo wente soone, & *without* delay  
 20 they seasid Josselin, who anoone cryed to the king  
 piteously for mercy. And pen the king yede and said  
 to hym that he shulde <sup>1</sup>telle the trouthe of the quarell,  
 and peradventure he night haue grace.

24 **T**henne said Josselin, 'Sire, to hyd the trouth it  
 auaylleth not / haue pite on me yf it please you,  
 For certaynly it was doon in the manere & fourme as  
 the knight hat purposed & said / and wete it pat my  
 28 sone Olyuyer was not yet borne.' 'By my feith, Josselin,  
 said the kinge, 'here is grete falshed, and yf it ne had  
 be goddis playsire that ye shuld be therof punysshed,  
 he had not lefte you lyue so long in this world. and  
 32 as to my part, ye shall not fayt of the punycyon.'  
 Thanne he said all on high to them that were ordeyned,  
 that anoone bothe fader & sone shuld be hanged. And  
 thenne came fourth Raymondin & said to the king :  
 36 'Sire, I thanke you as I may of the good justice that ye

but Raymondin,  
 knowing he lied,  
 beats him on the  
 temples.

Then Raymondin  
 asked the king if  
 he had done his  
 duty;

who said he had  
 well,

and commanded  
 Josselin and his  
 son to be put to  
 death.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 50.

Josselin  
 confesses his  
 treachery.

Raymondin  
pleads for Oli-  
ver's life, as he  
is brave and  
valiant,

and free from  
the guilt of the  
treason;

and for Josselin's,  
because he is so  
old, desiring only  
that he should  
make restitution  
of the estate,

the money to be  
used to found a  
priory.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 50 b.

But the king  
orders them to  
be hanged,  
and restores  
Raymondin his  
estates, and gives  
him all Josselin's  
land,  
for which Ray-  
mondin does  
homage.

Raymondin is  
feasted by the  
king of Brut  
Britain,

haue doon to me / but, sire, I moued with pite requyre  
you of your mysericorde to be shewed on Olyuyer. For  
seeying his valyauntise & worthynes, also consideryng  
that he is not gilty of the treson it were grete damage 4  
of hys deth. For yet shall he mow doo wel. And as to  
the fader, for this that I see hym olde & feble / of my  
part, sire king, yf ye vouchesauf to graunt hym grace  
therof I shuld be fayn & glad, soo that I haue myn 8  
herytage to my behouf, and that the prouffytes &  
fruytes that he hath leuyed & receyued of it, syn he  
had therytage in hys handes, be by extimacion reualued  
in money. that same payment to be by you, sire king, 12  
ordeyned to edefye or bigge a pryorye, & monkes  
therin to be rented with reuenues & possessyons after  
the quantyte of the said money to be regarde of you  
and of your Counsell. the said monkes to pray for the 16  
sowle of the kinges newew perpetuely.' The kinge  
thanne said to his barons, 'Fayr<sup>1</sup> Sires, here ye may  
see the free courage of a knight that prayeth to me to  
respyte hys enemys fro deth. but by the feyth that I 20  
owe to god Josselin nor his sone shal neuer doo treson  
ne cause no man to goo out of my land as exiled.' and  
fourthwith he made them to be hanged, and rendred to  
Raymondin his enherytaunce and al Josselyn's land 24  
with all. Wherof Raymondin thanked hym moche  
humbly and made to hym his homage. After byganne  
the feste to be moche grete, and held the king grete &  
noble Court open to al men, & was moche glad of that 28  
he had recouered & goten so noble a knight in his  
land. but for nought he made joye, For soone ynoughe  
he shall see that Raymondyn had no grete wylle to  
abyde and dwelle in Bretayne, for moch longed to hym 32  
the sight of Melusyne.

**N**ow in this parte telleth thystorye that Raymondyn  
was moche wel festyed of the king of the brut  
Bretayne that held grete & honourable Court for loue 36



of Raymondin, and the barons of Bretayne made grete  
 joye for his commyng, and specyally his vncle Alayn  
 and hys two children, & they of his lynage. And  
 4 thanne came Raymondin to the king and said to  
 hym thus: 'Sire king, I pray you & beseche that ye  
 vouchsaf to graunte & acorde that I gyue the Baronye  
 of Leon. that was to Henry my fader, on whos sowle  
 8 god haue mercy, to Henry my Cousyn / and so the  
 land shal bere the name of his ryghtful lord / and  
 you the name of your liege man, For he is of the  
 right lynce.' 'By my feyth,' sayd þe kinge, 'sire, sith  
 12 it playseth you thus wel it pleseth vs so to be.' Thenne  
 the kyng called Henry, For he loued hym wel and said  
 to hym: 'Henry, receyue the name of the baronye of  
 Leon, which your Cousyn gyue you, and make homage  
 16 to me therof' / and so he dide and thanked moche the  
 king & Raymondyn.<sup>1</sup> And this doon Raymondin  
 called to hym Alayn his Cousyn: 'I gyue you the  
 land that the king hath gyuen me that late was  
 20 longyng to Josselin Dupont, and make your homage to  
 the king': / and he thanked hym moche humbly and  
 knelyng made hys homage to the kinge that moche  
 joyfully receyued hym to it. But the Barons of the  
 24 land byganne thanne to make rumour among them and  
 said: 'By my feyth, this knight is not come into this  
 lande for couetyse ne auarice. But only he hath putte  
 his lyf in grete auenture & parel for to conquere his  
 28 heritage. Whan so soone he demysed hymself therof.  
 it muste wel be that grete ryches he hath some where' /  
 Thanne came thauncyent knight to Raymondin. and  
 whan Raymondin sawe hym he said to hym that he  
 32 shuld delyuere hym self of that his lady had com-  
 manded hym / and he ansuerd, 'my lord, therefore  
 I am come toward you.' and thanne he presented  
 fro hys lady to the kyng a grete Coupe of gold sette  
 36 with many precyous stone. and after gaf to all the

and made wel-  
 come by the  
 barons.

Raymondin asks  
 the king to allow  
 him to give his  
 barony to his  
 cousin Henry,

which request is  
 granted.

The barony is  
 given, and Henry  
 does homage for  
 it.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 51.

Raymondin  
 gives the con-  
 fiscated lands  
 of Josselin to  
 Alain, who does  
 homage to the  
 king for them.

The barons of  
 Britain wonder  
 at the riches of  
 Raymondin, who  
 gives away the  
 land just won.

The ancient  
 knight brings  
 gifts from Melu-  
 sine for the king  
 and the barons,

Barons in the forsaid name many ryche jewelles. Wherof aH were meruaylled of whens might come such a riches / and aH they said that Raymondin muste be moche riche & mighty in some other Coun- 4 tree. Wherefore the feest was greter than afore. And Alayn and his two sones demened suche joye that none shuld mow think it. but yet duryng theire joye was on other syde made grete sorow of the parents 8 & frendes of Josselin that had not forgeten þe deth of hym / as hereafter ye shal here reherce. <sup>1</sup>And here resteth thystorye to speke of this feste & folowyng the matere saith how Melusyne gouerned her self while 12 that Raymodyn was in his vyage.

who reioice  
much, and keep  
up the feast;

but all the time  
much sorrow  
prevails among  
Josselin's  
friends.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 51 b.

In Raymondin's  
absence Melu-  
sine builds Lu-  
signan, and walls  
it;

also builds a  
high watch  
tower, with walls  
twenty feet  
thick.

**T**hystory telleth vs that whiles Raymodyn was in bretayne, Melusyne made to be byld up the tounne of Lusynen, and walled it with strong walles & 16 toures one nygh another,<sup>2</sup> and deep diches dide doo make about it. A toure she dide to be made betwixt the Fortresse & the tounne walled with a waH of xx foot thikk. This toure was ouer hye / and ordeyned 20 men that shuld be styl both day & nyght, at leste one vpon the vpermost batelments of it with a trompe in his hand, that shuld blow at euery tyme he perceyued & sawe men othre on foot or on horsbak togidre aboute 24 the nombre of xx<sup>ii</sup> commyng toward the said tounne or Castel / and that same toure she called the tromped toure. Now retourneth thistory to spek of the kyng & of Raymondin, and of the feest & chere that euery 28 one made to Raymondin.

The feest con-  
tinued at Nantes,

**I**N this partye reherceth thystorye that mochi was the feest grete at Nantes and the king honoured moche Raymondin, and there jousted gentilmen one 32 ayenst other byfore the ladyes & gentyl wemen wher Raymondin bare hym fuH valiauntly & goodly that euery man spak wele of hym, sayeng that he was

<sup>2</sup> + Fr. *pour deffendre a couvert tous les archiers.*

worthy to be lord of a grete land. And moche were they abashed of the grete riches that they sawe euery day about Raymondin / but who someuer made feest  
 4 for Raymondyn, the Chastelayn of Aruah, that was neuw to Josselin Dupont, made all the contrary. For he sodaynly sent to alle the parentes frendes and affyns of Josselin, letyng <sup>1</sup>them to knowe how it was  
 8 of theire frend Josselyn, and that they shuld be at a certayn day that he assigned to them at a certayn retrette that was within the forest of Guerrende that was of his owne. And whan they vnderstode the  
 12 deth of Josselin þey were sorowfull & woo, and assembled them togider about ii C men of armes, and pryuely yede & came to the said retrette, where the said Chastelayn had manded them to come. And thanne  
 16 the Chastelayn in the moost secrete wyse that he coude, departed fro the kinges court without leue of the king ne of the Barons / but there he lefte thre squyers of his for to loke & aspye whiche waye Raymondin shuld  
 20 take, and that they shuld anounce it to hym to the retrette borsaid. So long rode the Castelleyn that he cam to the retrette where he found them of his lynage, and he reherced to þem all the manere of  
 24 thaduenture / and how Josselin & his sone were hanged / and asked of them what they thoughte & proposed to doo / yf they shuld auenge them on Raymondin that was causer of it / and to them grete  
 28 blame & shame for euermore was bycause of hym imputed / or elles to lete hym goo free. Thenne ansuered for al the lynage an vnwyse & hasty knight that was sone to the Cousyn of Josselin. 'cousyn  
 32 castellayne, we wol that ye wete & knowe that thus shal nat this oultrageous werk be lefte. For we alle of one accorde & wyll wil putte hym to deth that to vs hath doo suche vitupere & dyshonour.' 'By  
 36 my feith,' said thanne the Castellayne, 'I hold & repute

while Josselin's nephew advised his kindred of their loss,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 52.

and summoned them to a retreat in the forest of Guerrende.

They assemble two hundred strong,

and are informed of the mishap by Josselin's nephew,

and are asked if they intend to avenge themselves.

They declare they will put Raymondin to death;

fol. 52 b.

upon which the  
nephew promises  
to assist them,

by spying which  
way Raymondin  
leaves the  
country.

The feast con-  
tinued fifteen  
days longer ;

then Raymondin  
took leave,

and accompanied  
with Alain rode  
to Leon,

where the  
ancient knight  
had already pre-  
pared for them.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 53.

the wele & honour wel employed that Josselin dide <sup>1</sup>to you in tyme passed. And anoone I shall putte you in the way and place where we shal wel acomplisse our wylle on hym that suche shame hath doon to vs. For 4 by what someuer side he yssueth out of Bretayne he may not scape fro vs. For therto we haue good wayters, & espyes that soone shafl anounce his way to vs whan tyme shalbe.' And they ansuerd alle with 8 an voys /—'Blessed be you. and wete it that whatsom-euer fafl therof / this enterpryse shalbe brought to an end, and we shal slee that false knight that hath imposed to vs alle vylounye & shame.' And here spekeþ 12 no more thistorye of them, and retourneth to spek of the king & of Raymondyn. and how he departed fro the king moch honorably.

**T**hystory saith that the feest dured wel xv dayes & 16 more. the king of Bretons & hys baronye made grete honour to Raymondyn in so moche that I can nat reherce it. Raymondin thanne toke leue of the king & of his Barons and humbly mereyed the king 20 of his good justice that he had doon to hym in his noble Court, and departed fro them moche honourably. And wete it that bothe the king & many his barons were sory for his departing. And thus Ray- 24 mondyn acompanyed of his vncle Alayn his two sones & all theyre meyne rode toward Leon. But it is trouth that pauncyent knight was departed & goon byfore / and had doo sette vp bothe tentes & pauillons 28 and all other thinges necessary he ordeyned & made redy. And thanne Raymondin / hys vncle with his two <sup>1</sup>sones and the moost nere of his kynne to hym lodged them togidre in the Castel. and the other 32 herberowed them in the toun. Whan the peple of the Countre knew the commyng of theyre owne lordes sone they were joyfull & glad, and made to hym many fayr presentes after the vse & custome of the Countre / 36



- as of wyn, of bothe flesh & fysshe, hey & ootys, and of many other thinges, and they were fayn & glad sith it playseed not Raymondin to abyde & hold the land, that  
 4 they were befaH in the sayd lynce of theire lord, and that they were quytte & exempted fro the subgection & boundage of the lynce of Jossellin. Raymondin thanne panked them curtoysly of theire presentes &  
 8 yestes. commanded & prayed them that they wold be true & feythfuH subgets to Henry hys Cousin to whom he had gyue the land. and they ansuered that pey shuld doo soo. Of them resteth thistorye, and speketh  
 12 of the spyes that wayted there / of which one went to the retrette where the Castellayne of AruaH and the lynce of Josselin were aH redy / and the two other spyes abode for to knowe what way Raymondyn shuld hold /  
 16 **I**N this partye telleth to vs thistory that Raymondin departed fro Leon, and toke leue of al hys parents & frendes there, & went to Quyngant where the feste was grete, and there after the feeste was ended Ray-  
 20 mondyn wold haue take leue of hys vncle Alayn & of all his lynage / but they dide putte the moost remedy they coude for to hold hym there a seuene nyght more. Wherefore Raymondyn obtempering to them / ye /  
 24 ayenst his entent & courage <sup>1</sup>fullfyllled theire willes. And in the meane while came to Henry hys Cousyn, a man that told hym that as he passed fourth by the said retrette where the Castellayne of AruaH was with wel  
 28 two houndred men in armes, that they abode for some folke to whom they owed no good wyll. but he told hym not whom they aspyed & watched for. And whan Henry understode this he toke a squyer of his  
 32 and bad hym goo thither & knowe what it was. and he that was moche dilygent dyde so that he knew the moost parte of theyre purpos and entent & what nombre pey were. Soone after he retourned to Henry  
 36 and reherced to hym all that he had found, and that

The folk of the place bring presents to Raymondin,

and are glad to be freed of allegiance to Josselin;

and promise to be faithful to Henry, the cousin of Raymondin, their new lord.

Spies leave, and tell the kindred of Josselin of Raymondin's doings.

Leaving Leon, Raymondin goes to Quingant, where he is feasted.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 53 b.

A man advises Henry of Leon of the assembling of Josselin's kindred in the forest.

Henry dispatches a spy,

who returns with the information

that five or six  
hundred men are  
assembled.

Henry enjoins  
silence on the  
spy,

and tells his  
brother what he  
has learnt.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 54.

The brothers  
gather four hun-  
dred men of  
arms,

and accompany  
Raymondin  
when he leaves  
Quingant,

until they ap-  
proach the forest  
where Josselin's  
kindred are hid.  
Josselin's  
nephew, the  
Castellain of  
Arvall, learns  
from his spies  
the approach of  
Raymondin;

they were wel fyue or six houndred fighting men.  
And this tydinges herd / Henry deffendid to the  
messanger moche expresly that to no body he shuld  
spek of it. And soone he called his brother Alayn 4  
and some other of the moost noble of hys lynage and  
reherced to them alle this werk. 'By my feyth,' said  
they, 'we ne cannot thinke what they entende to doo,  
but that they wold auenge them on Raymondin our 8  
Cousyn or ellis to meve werre ayenst vs for the said  
quarelle. but alwayes it is good to be purueyed of  
remedye ·lete vs therfore send for alle our frendes and  
kepe vs secretly togidre tyl we see what they haue 12  
purposed to doo / to thende yf they come on vs that  
they fynde vs not discouered & vnpurueyed ·also yf  
Raymondin departeth that he be not surprysed of  
them / and yf they entende to doo hym euyl / it is 16  
but for to take the lyf <sup>1</sup>fro hym.' 'By my feyth,' said  
the other, 'that is trouth. Now lete vs hye & delyuere  
vs that our mandement be doo of light & secretly.'  
And so did they / in so moche that *within* the second 20  
day after / they were gadred togidre about foure  
houndred in nombre men of armes what of theyre lynee  
and what of theirre affynyte & alyed / & made them  
to be lodged in a wod so that few men knew of it. It 24  
happd thanne that Raymondyn wold no lenger abyde /  
and toke leue of Alayn hys vncle pat abode styl at  
Quyngant moche woofutt & sory of hys departyng /  
and hys two sones companyed hym & conueyed *with* 28  
grete foyson of theyre lynee. And neuer wold lete  
hym goo byfore, but made theyre men to be on eche  
side of hym, and so long they rode that they approched  
the Forest where the Castellayne and his felawship 32  
were in his retrette which Castellayn knew by his  
spydes the commyng of Raymondyn & his men and  
told it to hys parents sayeng in this maner: 'Now shal  
be seen & knowen who euer loued Josselin and Olyuer 36

hys sone. For here we may putte to deth alle the  
 lynage of hym self þat to vs hath doon suche a shame.  
 And they ansuered to hym that none shuld scape, but  
 4 alle shuld be putte to deth. But as the prouerbe saith,  
 ‘Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it’ / <sup>1</sup>  
 and so it was of the Castellayne & hys parents. In this  
 meane while came þauncyent knight to Raymondin  
 8 and said to hym in this manere: ‘Sire, ye<sup>2</sup> myster wel  
 for to <sup>3</sup>be armed gooyng thugh the Forest. For the  
 lynage of Josselin that ye haue dystroyed loueth you  
 not, and they might bere bothe to your personne and  
 12 to your felawship & meyne grete damage yf they  
 found you vnpurueyed / and my herte gyueth me that  
 soone we shaft fynd hem’ / and Henry & Alayn his  
 brother and aH theire lynage were armed all redy, and  
 16 had sent aH theire meyne byfore to make embushe  
 within half a mylle fro the retrette. Thenne whan  
 Raymondyn / had commanded hys men to take theire  
 armures on hem & sawe them of his lynage that were  
 20 alle armed, he ne wyst what say but þe two brethern  
 his cousyns told hym how they had sent in embusshe  
 byfore wel iiii. C. of their men for to kepe hym fro hys  
 enemyes / and they reherced to hym aH the trouthe.  
 24 ‘By my feyth,’ said Raymondin, ‘curtoyse oweth not to  
 be forgotten / and for it shal not as to my parte fro hens  
 fourthon. For yf in tyme to come ye haue nede of  
 me / I am he that shal at al tymes be redy after my  
 28 power to fulfyll your wille.’ And so longe they rode  
 that they entred the Forest /.

**T**hystorye saith that the Castellayne was in his  
 retrette and abode for the spye that last he  
 32 had sent to wete whan Raymondyn shuld entre the  
 Forest. the whiche exploited so that he came nigh  
 Raymondin / and thanne he lightly retourned toward

and on him tell-  
 ing his men, they  
 promise to put  
 Raymondin and  
 his kindred to  
 death.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 54 b.

The ancient  
 knight warns  
 Raymondin of  
 his danger,

who, seeing his  
 cousin's men all  
 armed,

thanks them,  
 and promises  
 to help them  
 should they ever  
 want him.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Tel cuide venger sa honte qui l'acroit.*

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Et bien mestier.*

The Chastellain, hearing from his spy of Raymondin's appearance, cries on his men to follow him.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 55.

They mount, and are allowed to pass by the men of Henry of Leon, who are hidden in the forest,

until they meet Raymondin.

They run upon Raymondin's men;

and when Raymondin comes in sight,

the Chastellain and his three cousins attack him.

the retrette and to the Castellayn he said: 'Sire, ye may see hym come yonder.' And whan the Castellayn vnderstod hym he bygan to crye *with* a hye voys / 'on horsbak, & who that euer loued Josselin & his sone 4  
lete hym <sup>1</sup>folowe me.' Thanne styed euery man on horsbak / & they were so encressyd in nombre that they were wel viii C & moo fighting men, and rode fourth in ordynaunce ayenst Raymondin, and passed 8  
by the embusshe that Henry and his parents had sent. whiche lete them passe fourth *without* they discouered themself. and soone after þey rode after them. So longe rode the Castelayn & his folke that they per- 12  
ceyued nygh them þe foreward of Raymondin. but abashed he was whan he sawe them armed gooyng by ordynaunce / though they were but a few seruaunts and a C. men of armes / they <sup>2</sup>escryed them to the deth / 16  
And whan they vnderstode it they yede apart & made to blowe theire trompettes and ranne vpon Raymondyns folke whiche were sore dommagged or he coude come to helpe them, the whiche rode as fast as the hors 20  
might walope, and hauyng the spere on the rest launched among his enemyes / and the first that he encountred he ouerthrew hym down to therthe & aftir drew out high [his] swerde and smote trauersing here 24  
& there and in a lytel tyme he moche dommagged hys enemyes. But whan the Castellayn saw hym he was fuþ woo & sory / and he shewed hym to thre hys Cousyns sayeng / 'loke yonder is the knyght that 28  
hath shamed aþ our lynage / yf we had our wylle of hym aþ the other shuld be soone ouercome & vayn- quysshed.' thanne þey spored theire horses, and aþ foure ranne ayenst hym / and *with* theire speeris 32  
recountred hym, soo that they ouer threw bothe man

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *et leur escrivoient: A mort à mort, mal acointastes celluy qui nous a fait la honte et le dommage de Josselin notre cousin.*



& hors <sup>1</sup>to the erthe and passed al foure fourth. But  
 whan Raymondyn saw hym ouer thrawn he spooryd  
 hys hors, and the hors that was swyft and strong  
 4 releuyd hym on hys knees and soo fourth on his feet  
 so pertly þat Raymondyn neuer lost sterop fro the  
 foot ne swerd fro the hand. And thanne he tourned  
 toward the Chastellayn & so mightily smote hym on  
 8 the helmet with hys swerd that he so stakerid that he  
 lost bothe steropes / and as Raymondyn passed by  
 hym he hurtelyd hym soo with the sholder that he  
 felþ doune to the erthe / and the pres came there so  
 12 grete that he was sore tradde with hors feet. Thenne  
 begane the bataill grete & felþ and sore damaged  
 were bothe partes. And thanne came there also  
 thauncyent knight and Henry & Alayn hys brother,  
 16 and foughte strongly ayenst theyre enemyes. There  
 Raymondin made grete fayttes of armes and sore  
 damaged hys enemys. but the Chastelayn was had  
 out of the pres and hys men toke hym another hors.  
 20 Thanne toke the party aduerse, herte & courage &  
 stoutly fought they ayenst Raymondyn & his folke.  
 and there were many one slayn of both sydes. And  
 wete it that Raymondyn & his folke susteyned heuy  
 24 weyght. For hys aduerse party was mochi strong &  
 moche wel they fought & valyauntly. but the em-  
 busshe of Henry came by the bake syde on them and  
 assaylled them on all sydes so that þey wyst not  
 28 what they shuld doo / how they shuld defende them  
 self nor where they shuld flee / Thenne was the  
 Chastellayn taken & brought before Raymondin / and  
 he commanded thauncient knight to kepe hym. And  
 32 in conclusion all the other were soone after outhro  
 take or deed. And this doon they came to the retrette  
 where Raymondyn said to hys parents: 'Now lordes  
 I owe wel<sup>2</sup> to loue and thanke you of the grete  
 36 socoure that ye haue doon to me this day. For

<sup>1</sup> fol. 55 b.Raymondin  
smites the  
Chastellain,

and fells him.

Assistance comes  
in the persona of  
Henry, Alain,  
and the auclent  
knight,and the ambush  
of Henry;and routs the  
Chastellain's  
companions,  
who are all taken  
prisoners or  
slain.<sup>2</sup> fol. 56.

Raymondin  
thanks his  
kindred for their  
help;

who propose  
to take the  
Chastellain, and  
all others of  
Josselin's  
kindred to the  
king of Brut  
Britain for judg-  
ment.

The prisoners  
who are not Jos-  
selin's kindred  
are hung,

and the Chas-  
tellain and the  
rest are taken  
bound before the  
king.

Alain tells the  
king the treason  
wrought,

and says that  
Raymondin has  
sent the Chastel-  
lain and his  
kindred to  
receive punish-  
ment.

1 fol. 56 b.

The king asks  
the Chastellain  
why he has done  
such a shameful  
deed.

certainly I wote that yf it had not be the help of  
god and of you this traytour had putte me to deth by  
treson, now haue regarde what best is for to doo.'  
'Sire,' said Henry, 'as your wyl shaH graunte we alle 4  
assent therto.' 'I shaH saye you,' said Raymondin,  
'what we shal doo. lete vs take and assemble aH the  
lynee of Josselin to-gidre / and bothe the Chastellayn  
and alle the other his parents we shaH sende to the 8  
kinge. Whiche hauyng regarde to theire grete falshed  
and treson shal punysshe aftir his good wylle.' Alle  
other thanne said / 'forsouthe, sire, ye say wel.' Thenne  
were chosen out aH the prysonners that were not of 12  
the lynage of Josselin. and att yate of the said retrette  
some were hanged / some at wyndowes & some at  
batelments of it. And the Chastellayn and alle his  
parents there were bounde bothe hand & feet as 16  
traytours and prysonners. the whiche Alayn acom-  
panied with thre houndred spere men lede them toard  
the kinge. and first Alayn presented to þe kinge the  
Chastelayne of AruaH as he that had conspired & 20  
machined that treson / and al other after. and to hym  
reherced Alayn aH how it was happed. and how Ray-  
mondyn recommanded hym to his good grace / and  
that he wold not be dysplaysed yf he had take venge- 24  
aunce on hys mortal enmyes that wend to haue  
murdred hym with treson, and that he sent to hym the  
Chastellayn chief causer and other his complices for to  
knowe by them the trouthe of the faytte and for to 28  
punysshe them at his plaisure and wylle / 'And how,  
Chastellayn,' said the kinge 'haue ye be so <sup>1</sup>hardy to doo  
suche treson and so shamefuH dede for the raisonnable  
justice that late we dide in our reaueme / seeing & also 32  
considering the grete treson that Josselin your vncle  
knowleched & confessed to haue doo?' 'By god,' said  
the king, 'ye were therof surquydous,<sup>2</sup> & it is wel right

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *moult oultre cuide*.

yf euyl is comme to you therof.' 'Ha, noble kinge,'  
said thanne the chasteleyn, 'for your pite lete falle  
your mysericorde on me caytyue personne. For the  
4 grete sorowe & woo that I had of the dyshonour that  
Raymondin had doon to our lynage hath caused me  
to doo soo.'

The Chastellain  
begs for mercy,

8 **B**y my feith,' said the king, 'it is euyl companye of  
a traytour / and good it is to shette the stable  
before the hors be lost, wel I wyl that ye knowe that  
neuer ye shall haue suche purpos as to wyl slee no  
gentylman with treson, For neuër I shaH ete tyl that ye  
12 be hanged with your vnele, for ye shaH hold hym  
felawship, and also aH them that are of your cohortacion.'  
The kinge made to be take aHe them of hys cohorte or  
company, and were aH hanged / and the Chastelayn he  
16 sent to Nantes, and there he was hanged nyghe to his  
vnele Josselin & Olyuyer hys Cousyn. And thus kepte  
wel the king of Bretons Justice in his time regnyng in  
Breytayne.

but the king says  
he will not eat  
till they be hung;

which judgment  
is executed.

20 **H**ere sayth thistory that whan Alayn was retourned  
to Raymondin unto the retrette, and that he  
hadd to hym and to the other reherced this pat the  
kyng had doon / they said that the kyng had doo right  
24 wel as a valyaunt & lawfuH justiser shuld doo. Thenne  
called Raymondyn to hym Henry Alayn & other of his  
lynee and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre cousyns  
& good frendes, I enjoyne & charge you that ye doo  
28 edefye or bigge a pryorye with viii monkes, and that  
ye reueste them with rentes and reuenues such that  
honestly & goodly they may lyue on for euerniore /  
they to pray there for the sowle of <sup>1</sup>my fader / for the  
32 kingis newew sowle and for the sowles of them that are  
slayn & ded in this quareH.' And they alle said 'they  
shuld soo doo. And Raymondyn prayed them to  
recommende hym to the kingis good grace to hys  
36 barons and to Alayn their fader. And thanne he toke

Raymondin  
praises the king's  
justice,

and asks his  
cousin to build  
a priory for  
eight monks,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 57.

to pray for the  
souls of those  
killed in the  
quarrel.

Raymondin  
parts from his  
cousins, who

return to their  
father.

leue of them / and they were sorowfull of their  
departement / and also of this that he wold nat lete  
them goo no ferther with hym. They retourned to  
Quyngant. And Raymondin yede on his way and 4  
cam to guerrende · and wel he was there festyed and  
worshipfully cheryed of them of the toun. And here  
resteth thistorye of Raymondyn · and shaH recounte  
how Henry & Alayn toke leue of theyre lynce and cam 8  
ayen to theyre fader.

Henry and Alain  
tell their fader  
the news,

and how they  
have to build a  
priory.

The father is  
glad to hear of  
the clearance  
of Josselin's  
friends,

and advises his  
sons to ask land  
from the king to  
build the priory.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 57 b.

They set out to  
the king,

and find him by  
a tree in the  
forest of Sassi-  
mon, waiting  
for a hart;  
but hide them-  
selves till it is  
captured.

**T**historye saith in this paas that Henry and Alayn  
toke leue of theyre lynage & came to their  
fader and recounted to hym aH thaduenture of the 12  
Chastellayn, how they were departed fro þeyr consyn,  
and how he hadd commanded & charged them to  
fownde a pryory. 'By my feith,' said þeire fader. 'Alayn,  
now is the land wel clene delynered of the lynage of 16  
Josselin; god on theyre sowles haue mercy, how be it  
they loued vs neuer. Now fayre sones I shaH saye  
you what ye shal doo. First ye shal goo to the kinge  
& requyre hym that it plese hym to gyue you a place 20  
for to edefye the Pryorye / and telle hym the maner  
how ye be commanded of your Cousyn to fownde it.  
and I byleue he shal gyue you a good ansuer.' And  
they said that thus shuld they doo. And thanne they 24  
departed fro their fader, and so long they rode that  
they camme to Vannes and founde the kinge departed  
& was goon to <sup>1</sup>Sassymon for to dysporte hym at  
Chasse. And they mounted on horsbak and came to 28  
the gate and passed & entred the Forest and rode so  
long tyl they came to the Castel. and founde the kyng  
goon to the park to the chasse / and the two brethren  
yed after & founde the king nyghe a grete tree by a 32  
staung where he abode aftir the herte that houndes  
chassed. Thenne the two bretheren drew them self aparte  
bycause they wold not lette the kyng to see the dysporte /  
who perceyued them wel<sup>2</sup> & coude them good thanke 36

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *leur en sceut moult bon gré.*



- therefore. and not long after þe herte came that ranne  
 in to the staung / and there he was take by chaas of  
 dogges / and was hadd out of the watre / and the  
 4 curree made & gyue to the houndes as custome is to  
 doo. Thenne Henry and Alayn his brother drew them  
 self byfore the king and salewed hym moche honour-  
 ably / and made wel theire message as theyre Cousin  
 8 had charged them. And the king welcommed hem &  
 moche enquiryed of them thestate of Raymondin and  
 they told hym alle that they had seen of hit / and  
 after they recounted to hym how he enjoyned & charged  
 12 them to edyfy & make vp a Priorye of eyghte monkes.  
 them to reueste & empossesse *with* landis, reuenues &  
 rents, they to syng & pray therfore for the sowle of the  
 kingis newew / for Henry his faders sowle, and for the  
 16 sowles of alle them that had receyued deth in this  
 quarelle. Also how at hys instaunce they shuld pray  
 hym for a place where they shuld edefye the said  
 pryorye. 'By my feith,' said the king. 'the requeste  
 20 is wel lawfull & raysonable. and euen now <sup>1</sup>I shall  
 lede you to the place where I wyl that it be fownded  
 and made vp.' Thanne they came out of the wareyne  
 and came aß by the walle to thende of the clos. and  
 24 thenne said the king: 'Fair lordes, make here to be  
 edyfyed a Pryory & take asmoche of grounde as ye  
 lyketh / and I gyue liberte & habaundonne you the  
 forest for to cutte there the wode. and whan the  
 28 monkes shal be stablysshed there, I enlyberte &  
 habaundonne it to them for theire vse and to alle  
 thider commyng & dwelling. And I graunte to them  
 the fysshing in the see that is nygh to this place a  
 32 quarter of a legge, and to take in the Forest birdes. &  
 wild beestes for theire lyuyng & sustenance of theire  
 household. and also I gyue to them all the landes erable  
 that are her about half a legge' / and of alle this he  
 36 made & gaf to them good & suffisaunt patents. and of

They come out  
and salute the  
king,

are welcomed,

and tell him of  
Raymondin and  
his will about  
the priory;

and ask for land  
to build it on.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 58.

The king leads  
them to a spot,

where he gives  
them as much  
land as they  
require;

and grants to the  
monks the right  
of fishing, hunt-  
ing, shooting,  
and wood cutting  
in the forest;

and gives some  
arable land, all  
on good patents.

The priory is  
built for eight  
white monks,

who have an  
azure ✠ on their  
outside robe.

1 fol. 58 b.

Raymondin  
reconciles two  
barons of Guer-  
rend;

and leaves for  
Poitou, where  
he found many  
parts unin-  
habited,

having dis-  
mantled castles  
and other ruins,  
caused by past  
wars.

He arrives at  
the abbey of  
Mailleses,

and dwells there  
three days,  
gives jewels to  
the abbey  
church,

all these graunts & gestes the two brethern thanked the king moche humbly whiche made massons, carpenters, & other, to come, and in short tyme they made the chirche & the priorye. and there they stablysshed 4 whyte monkes. vnto the nombre of VIII. religious personnes, the which bere on their vtterist habyte a crosse of Azure / and enpossessed them wel for their sustenance & cotidiane lynyng / as now yet is. And 8 now resteth thystorye to spek of the king of Bretons and of the two bretheren. and retourneth to recounte how Raymondin gouerned hym self syn after.

**N**ow telleth thystorye that so long abode Raymon- 12  
din in the land of Guerrende <sup>1</sup>that he peased and acorded togidre two barons of the lande that long byfore hated eche other to deth. In so moche that he made them to be good frendes togidre, and their 16 Countrees in peas and rest. And after he toke his leue of the barons & of the people, which sorowed moche for his departing. and so long he rode that he came into the land of Poytou, wher he found many grete 20 forests vnhabyted / and in some places he sawe many wyld bestes, as hertes, hynd, & roo, wyld bores, and other beestes ynough. and in other places many fayre playnes & champaynes. many fayre medowes & ryuers. 24 ‘By my feyth,’ said thanne Raymondin, ‘it is grete pyte & domage that suche a commodiouse Countre is nat enhabyted with people.’ and many a fayre manoyr and places were on the ryueres there that soone might be 28 redressed as hym semed whiche had be ouerthrowen in tyme of warre. And thus rydyng fourth he came to an auneynt Abbey called Maylleses, and therein were comprised thabbot and an houndred monkkis, beside 32 the Convers. and there herberowed Raymondyn for the grete playsaunce that he toke of it. and per he dwelled thre dayes and thre nightes. and gaf to the chirch there many fayre jewelles. After he departed and 36

came rydyng tyl he aprouched & came nygh Lusynen. and first he perceyued & sawe the tromped toure and the new toun, and thenne he supposed not  
4 to be there as he was. For he knew not the place for cause of the said toure & toun new made of late, and moche he meruaylled whan he herd <sup>1</sup> the sowne of the trompes *within* the toure /.

and continues his journey to Lusignan, but does not recognize it, because of the new tower and town built by Melusine.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 59.

8 **I**n this part saith to vs thystorye that whan Raymondin came aboute Lusynen, & he perceyued the toun walled round aboute with strong walles and fortifyed *with* deep dyches & grete. 'how,' said he to  
12 thauncyent knight, 'What may this be; mesemed right now that I was forwayed of my way to come to lusygnen / and yet me semeth soo?' thenne began thauncyent knight to lawhe. And Raymondin said  
16 to hym: 'How, sir knight, jape you *with* me / I telle you for certayn yf it were not the toure and the toun that I see I shuld haue wend to be this nyght in Lusynen.' 'By my feyth,' said thauncient knight,  
20 'soone ye shal fynde yourself there yf god wyl *with* grete joye.' Now I shaft sey you some of Raymondyn's *seruaunts* were sent before by thauncyent knight to anounce Melusyne the commyng of Raymondin. and  
24 how be it she byleued them wel / she made no semblaunt *perof* / but soone she caused the people to be redy for to goo & mete *with* Raymondyn. and she herself, accompanied *with* many ladyes & damoyselles,  
28 yede to mete & welcome hym wel horsed & arayed honorably and rychnely. Thenne Raymondin loked fourth byfore hym and sawe the peple commyng fro the valey vpward ayenst hym two & two togidre in  
32 fayre ordynauce, wherof he moche meruaylled. and whan they aproched they bygan to crye *with* a high voys, 'ha, ha, dere lord, welcome may you be.' And thenne Raymondin knew som of them that were comme  
36 <sup>2</sup> ayenst hym / and demanded of them, 'Fayre lordes,

He expresses his doubts to the anoient knight,

who tells him he'll soon be home.

Melusine, advised of Raymondin's arrival, makes herself and people ready to meet him.

Raymondin sees them,

and hears them cry 'Welcome';

<sup>2</sup> fol. 59 b.

recognizing  
them, he asks  
how far Lusig-  
nan is.  
They, seeing his  
mistake,

tell him of it,  
and how it is  
caused by the  
new buildings,

which abashes  
him.

Melusine greets  
him,

tells him she  
knows all,  
and praises his  
doings.

They enter Lu-  
signan together,  
and hold a great  
feast;

afterwards Ray-  
mondin visits the  
Earl of Poitiers,

recounts the  
news,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 60.

and returns  
home.

Melusine bears  
her second son  
Edon, who had a  
very great ear;

fro whens come you?' 'My lord,' sayd they, 'we com  
fro lusynen.' 'thenne,' said Raymondin, 'is Lusynen  
ferre hens?' They thanne, seeying that he mysknewe  
the place for cause of the new toun & toure / said : 4  
'My lord, ye be at it, but ye mysknowe the place  
bycause that my lady syn your departyng hath doo  
made and byld this toun & that high toure. and  
yonder ye may see her commyng ayenst you.' Thenne 8  
was Raymondin moche abashed / and said not all  
that he thoughte. but when he remembred how she  
dyde doo make the Castel of Lusynen in so short tyme  
he gaf hym self no meruayll yf she had doon soo. 12  
Thenne is come to hym Melusyne that honorably wel-  
commed hym, sayeng in this manere : 'My lord, I am  
right fayn & glad of that ye haue so wel wrought  
& doon so honourably in your vyage. For al thinges 16  
haue be reherced to me alredey.' And Raymondin  
ansuerd to her : 'Madame, it is by the grace of god  
and of you.' And talking togidre of this matere they  
entred Lusynen and alighted. Ther was the feste 20  
grete that lasted eighte dayes, And was there the Erle  
of Forest that said to Raymondin, 'ye be welcome.'  
And after the feest they departed fro Lusynen and  
came to Poytiers toward the Erle that receyued þem 24  
benygnely, and demanded of Raymondin where he had  
be so long. and he recorded to hym alle his auenture.  
And shortly to say, the Erle Bertran was therof joyful  
& glad. <sup>1</sup> And that doon, the brethern toke leue of 28  
hym / and the one yede toward forests, and Raymondin  
toward his wyf & lady, which thenne was grete with  
child, and bare her terme / the which expired, she  
made a fayre child that was her second sone / he was 32  
soone baptised and imposed to name Edon,<sup>2</sup> and hadd  
an eere greter without comparyson than that other  
was / but all hys other membres were replenysshed

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Odon*.



with beaute, the which Edon had syn to hys wyf the Erle of Marchis doughtir. And of hym resteth thistorye / and speketh farthermore of Melusyne & of  
4 Raymondyn her lord.

he was after-ward married to the daughter of the Earl of March.

**T**historye sayth & certifyeth that whan the lady had ended the terme of her childbed, and that she was releuyd / the feste was made grete / and many  
8 noble men, ladyes, and damoyelles were there, the whiche, after the feest full honourably toke their leue & departed. And that same tyme the lady Melusyne bylded bothe the Castel & toune of Melle. Also she  
12 dide doo make Vouant & Mernant.<sup>1</sup> and after she made the bourgh & toure of saynt Maxence, and bygan the Abbey there. and moche good she dide to poure folk.

Melusine gives a feast.

builds the castles and towns of Melle and Maxence, and begins the abbey there.

**T**he second yere after folowyng she hadd a sone that was named guyon, & [he] was a moche fayre child / but he had an ey higher than that other. And wete it that Melusyne had euer so good nouryces, and  
20 had so grete care for her children that they mendid & grewe so wel that euery one that saw them meruaylled. <sup>2</sup> And that tyme Melusyne bigged & fownd many a fayre place thrughe the lande of Poytou unto  
24 the duchie of Guyenne. She bilded the Castel and þe burgh of Partenay so strong and so fayre without comparyson. after that she dide doo make þe Toures of Rochelle & the Castel also, & bygan a part of the  
28 toune, and thre legthes thens was a grete toure & bigge, whiche Julius Cesar dide doo make, and men called it the Egles toure, bycause that Julius Cesar bare an Egles in hys banere as emperour. That toure made the lady  
32 to be walled & fortyfyed round aboute with grete toures machecolyd, and made it to be called the Castel Eglon. And afterward she edefyed Pons in Poytou and fortyfyed Xaintes<sup>3</sup> that was called at that tyme

Melusine has her third son Guyon, who has one eye higher than the other;

her children are so well tended, that they grow so that folk marvel at them.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 60 b.

She builds much in Poitou: the castle and town of Parthenay,

and of Rochelle.

She fortifies the Eagle's Tower, said to have been built by Julius Cæsar.

She builds Pons, fortifies Saintes,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Waviront et Mermant*.

<sup>3</sup> *Saintes*.

builds Tallemounte, and many other towns and fortresses.

Lynges / and after she made Tallemounte and Tallemondoys and many other townes & fortres. And gate & acqyred so moche Raymondin thurgh the polycye & good gouernaunce of Melusyne, what in Bretayne, 4 what in Gascoynne & in Guyenne as in Poytou, that no prynce was about hym / but he doubted to dysplaise hym.

Melusine has her fourth son Anthony, who

**S**oone after Melusyne was delyuered of her foureth 8 man child, whiche hight Anthony, none fayrer was seen before that tyme. but in his birth he brought a token along his chyke, that was the foot of a lyon, wherof they that sawe hym wondred, & moche were 12 abasshed.

has a lion's claw growing from his cheek.

Her fifth son Raynald has only one eye, but so

**H**ere saith thistorye, that the vij<sup>th</sup> yere after Melusyne bare the fyfte child, of whiche at thende of ix monethes she was delyuered, & was named ray- 16 nald. none fayrer child might men see, but he was borne only <sup>1</sup>with one eye / but it was so bright & so clere that he sawe the ship thre kennynge ferre on the sea, that is, one & twenty legges ferre / and lyke- 20 wyse on erthe, whatsoener it was. That same Anthony was full gracypous & curteys, as ye shal here in thystory hereafter.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 61.

bright and clear that he can see ships twenty leagues off (sixty-three miles).

Her sixth son Geffrey had a tooth that protruded an inch and more, so he

**F**urthermore saith thistory, that the eight yere 24 Melusyne childed the vi. child, that was a sone, and had to name Geffray, Whiche at his birth brought in hys mouth a grete & long toth, that apyered without an ench long & more / and therefore men 28 added to his propre name Geffray with the grete toth. and he was moch grete & hye, and wel formed & strong, merueylously hardy & cruel, In so moche that euery man fered & dradde hym whan he was in 32 age / he made in his tyme many wonders & merueylles, as heraftir ye shal here in thystorye.

was called Geffrey with the Great Tooth;

he was very strong,

and did many wonders in his time,

Her seventh son Froimond had a

**T**hystorye sayth that the ix<sup>th</sup> yere after Melusyne had a sone, that was the vij<sup>th</sup>, & hight Froy- 36

mond, that was fayre ynoughe, but he had on hys nose<sup>1</sup> a top of heeris, and in his tyme he was moche deuoute. and afterward, by thassent of bothe hys  
4 fader & moder, he was made monke in the abbey of Maylleses, of whom ye shall here hereafter thystorye.

tuft of hair on  
his nose,

**I**n this part sayth to vs thistorye that Melusyne was  
two yere without birth of child, but true it is that  
8 in the xj<sup>th</sup> yere she had her<sup>2</sup> x<sup>th</sup> sone, and was grete merueyllously / and he brought at hys birth thre eyen, one of the which was in the mydel of his forhed.  
he was so euyl & so <sup>3</sup>cruel that at the foureth yere of  
12 his age he slew two of hys nourryces.

and became a  
monk in the  
abbey of Mail-  
leses.

Her tenth son  
Horrible had  
three eyes, one  
in the middle  
of his forehead,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 61 b.  
and was very  
cruel.

**T**He veray hystory saith that so long norryshed  
Melusyne her children, that Vryan, whiche was  
theldest & first born, was xvij yere old. he was grete  
16 and fayre, & wonderly strong, and made grete apperlyse in armes, so that euery man & woman had pyte of hys dyfformytee; for his vysage was short & large, hys one eye was red & the other blew, and hys eerys were as  
20 grete as the handlynges of a Fan. and Edon his brother was of xvij yere of age. and Guyon had of yeres xvj, and loued Eche other wel Vryan & Guyon / and so pert & swyft they were, that alle thoo that sawe  
24 them gaf hemself grete wonder & meruayH. they were beloued of all the nobles of the land, & made many faytes & appertyses of armes in Joustes, tournoyeng, & in Lystes.

Melusine's  
eldest-born  
Urian is now  
eighteen,  
and is fair and  
strong,

though his face  
is strange, and  
his ears large.

Edon is seven-  
teen,  
Guyon is six-  
teen;  
Urian and  
Guyon love one  
another much.

28 It happed that same tyme that two knyghtes of Poytoun came fro Jherusalem agayn / and recounted there as they passed, how the sawdan of Damask had besieged the king of Cypre in hys Cite of Famagoce, &  
32 that he held hym therin in grete dystres. and put same kyng ne had to hys heyre but only a doughter, whiche was moche fayre. and these tydinges were

Two Poitevin  
knights return  
from Jerusalem,

and tell of the  
Sultan of Damas-  
cus besieging the  
King of Cyprus;  
and in what dis-  
tress the king is,  
and how his heir  
is a daughter.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *une petite tache rousse*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *huitiesme*, and so in Harleian MS. 418.

Urian hearing  
the tale, speaks  
to Guyon,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 62.

and proposes to  
him to do some  
deeds of arms.

The knights  
from Jerusalem  
are sent for,

and are ques-  
tioned about  
where they have  
been.

Urian expresses  
his surprise that  
they did not stay  
and help the  
Christian king.

They explain  
that it was im-  
possible to enter  
the town,  
as it was be-  
sieged by  
eighty thousand  
pagans.

ferfourth brought in the land, that Vryan knew of it.  
and he thenne said to his brother Guyon: 'By my  
feith, fayre brother, it were grete almese to socoure that  
kyng ayenst the Paynemys. We ben al redy eyght 4  
bretherne. the land of our fader may not remayne  
without heyre, though we were bothe deed. Wherefore  
we owe the more to enterprise <sup>1</sup>vyages, and see where  
we may doo some faytes of armes, to be therwith en- 8  
haunced in worship & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said  
Guyon, 'ye said trouth. but what cause you to say  
soo, seeyng that euer I am redy to doo as ye wyl doo?'  
'Southly,' said Vryan, 'ye say full wel. Lete we send 12  
for the two knightes that be come fro the holy vyage,  
to be ensured of them more playnly of the trouth.'  
they sent to the two knightes that they wold come &  
spek with them, the which gladly dyde so. And 16  
whan they were come, the two brethern welcommed  
& receyued them goodly. and aftir they bygan  
tenquyre of them the manere of theire vyage / of the  
vse & maneres of the land where they had be. and 20  
they said to them the playn trouth. 'We vnderstand,'  
said Vryan, 'that ye haue passed through an yle wher a  
king cristen regneth, which is oppressid ouermoch of  
the paynemys / & wonder is vs that ye abode nat in 24  
the werre with that Cristen kyng, for to help &  
comforte hym, ye that are so renoumed, Worthy and  
valyaunt knightes, consyderyng as it semeth to vs that  
alle good cristens are hold & bound to helpe eche 28  
other specially ayenst the paynemys.' To this ansuered  
the two knightes: 'By my feith, gentil squyer & lord,  
wel we wyl that ye knowe that yf by eny manere we  
myght haue entred the toun without deth, & saf, 32  
gladly we had doo so as ye say. but wel ye wote that  
two knyghtes may not susteyne & bere the weight  
ayenst wel Lxxx. or houndred thousand paynemys,  
that theinne had besieged the toun wherin the said 36



- king was. For ye oweth to wete that <sup>1</sup>wel fole is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd, wenyng to make hym be styH.' 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'your excusacion  
 4 is good & iuste. but tell me yf men myghty to reyse & lede *with* them a xxij<sup>th</sup> or xxv<sup>th</sup> thousand men of armes, myght doo eny faytte there to help & socoure the sayd kyng?' Thenne ansuerd one of the knightes :  
 8 'By my feyth, sire, ye / seen & considered that the Cite is strong, and the kyng *with*in valiaunt, hardy & worthy fighter of his personne / and he is acompanyed with many good men of armes, & the toun wel  
 12 vytaylled / and yet ther be many Fortresses where they of Rodes come to refresshe themself, of the whiche the kyng & they in the Cite haue grete recomforte / and wete it that moche easely & wel they might goo  
 16 thider / and wold to god suche a felawship as ye spek of wer. redy, and that my felawe & I shuld take thaduenture *with* them.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne Vryan, 'my brother & I shaH receyue you, & lede you  
 20 thither, god before, and that shortly.' And whan they vnderstode hym say soo, they were moche glad, sayeng that yf they soo dyde, hit moned them of valyaunt courage & grete noblesse of herte. Here resteth thistorye  
 24 of these two knightes, and yet fether speketh of Vryan & Guyon.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 62 b.

Urian asks if a force of twenty-five thousand men would be any use to succour the town?

the knights think so.

Urian promises to lead them there,

for which the knights thank him.

Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the  
 28 help that they had of þem.

- <sup>2</sup> In this partye sayth thistorye that Vryan and his brother Guyon cam to Melusyne thaire moder, and to her said Vryan in this manere: 'Madame, yf  
 32 ye vouchesaaf, it were wel tyme that we shuld go fourth to our vyage, for to knowe the Countrees ferre & straunge, Wherby we may acyure honour & good

<sup>2</sup> fol. 63.

Urian and Guyon ask Melusine to let them go abroad to seek their fortunes,

renomme in straunge marches, to thend that we lerne  
 & vnderstand the dyuerse langages of the world. Also  
 yf Fortune and good auenture wyl be propyce &  
 conuenable to vs, we haue wel the wyll & courage to 4  
 subdue & conquere Countrees & landes; For we con-  
 sidere & see that alre dy we be eyghte bretheren / and  
 are lyke, yf god wyl, to be yet as many moo in tyme  
 commyng. and to say that your landes & possessions 8  
 were parted in so many partes for our sustenance &  
 gouernement / he that shuld enheryte the chyef lyfod  
 shuld not be able to kepe no grete houshold, ne to be  
 of grete estate, to the <sup>1</sup>Regard of the high blood & 12  
 grete noblesse that we come of / also consideryng as  
 now your grete estate. Wherefore as to my brother & I  
 my self, we quytte our parte / except alonely your  
 good grace, through thayde that ye now shaft doo to vs 16  
 for our vyage, yf god wyl gyue vs grace to acomplysshe.  
 ‘By my feyth, children,’ said thenne Melusyne, ‘your  
 requeste is caused of grete worthynes and courageous  
 herte, and therefore it oweth not to be refused ne gayn- 20  
 sayd. and vpon this matere I shaft entreate your  
 faders, For *without* hys counseyll I owe not to accorde  
 your requeste.’ Thanne fourthwith came Melusyne to  
 Raymondin / and shewed hym the requeste & wyll 24  
 of theire two sones; the whiche ansuerd & sayd, ‘By  
 my feyth, madame, yf it lyke you good they doo soo, I  
 assent gladly therto.’ ‘Sire,’ said Melusyne, ‘ye say  
 wel; and wete it that they shal do noþing in theire 28  
 vyage but that it shaft tourne to theire grete lawde  
 & honour, yf god wyl.’ Then came ayen Melusyne to  
 her two sones, and thus she said to them: ‘Fayre  
 children, thinke from hensfourthon to doo wel; For 32  
 your fader hath graunted youre requeste, & so doo I.  
 and care you not for no þing, For *within* short tyme  
 I shall ordeyne & purveye for your faytte *with* goddis  
 grace & help / in such wise that ye shaft konne me 36

because there are  
 eight sons, and

if the lands are  
 divided, the  
 estates would  
 not be great.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 63 b.

Melusine  
 promises to ask  
 their father's  
 permission,

who assents  
 gladly.

Melusine tells  
 them that their  
 father has  
 granted their  
 request, and so  
 has she;  
 and promises to  
 provide an outfit  
 for them.

good gree & thanke therfore. but telle me whether & to what part of the world ye wyl & purpose to goo, to thende I purvey of suche thinges that shalbe necessary  
 4 to you therfore.' Thanne ansuerd Vryan: 'Madame, wel it is true & certayn that we haue herd certayn tydynges that the kyng of Cypre is besiged <sup>1</sup>by the Sawdan within hys Cyte of Famagoce / and thither, yf  
 8 it playse god, we entende & purpose to go for to ayde & socoure hym ayenst the fals & mysbyleuers pay-nemys.' Thanne gan say Melusyne, 'herto muste be purueyed / As wel for the see as for the land; and  
 12 *wit*h goddis grace, my dere children, I shaH ordeyne therof in suche manere that ye shal be remembred of me: and this shal I doo shortly.' The two bretheren thenne kneled down byfore theyre moder / and thanked  
 16 her moche humbly of her purveyaunce & good wyll. And the lady toke hem vp, and sore wepyng she kyssed them bothe, For grete sorowe she had in her herte / though she made *wit*houtfourth chere of their  
 20 departyng. For she loued them with moderly loue, as she that had nourysshed them.

**T**hystorye sayth that Melusyne was full curyous and besy to make al thinges redy *pat* were  
 24 necessary to her sones for their vyage. She made Galeyes, Carrykes, and other grete shippes to be vytaylled & redy to sayH / and þe nauye was so grete in nombre that it was suffysaunt for foure score thou-  
 28 sand men of armes to sayH in. And in the meane while the two bretheren sent for the two forsaid knightes, & said to them that they shuld be redy to meue fourth shortly, as they had promysed to them.  
 32 And they ansuered: 'Lordes, we be all redy. and many gentylmen that we knowe ben shapen & redy to go with you in your felawship, and we alle be desyrous to serue you and to doo your playsir.' 'By my feyth,'  
 36 said Vryan, 'right grete gramercy to you. We shaH

<sup>1</sup> fol. 64.

They tell their mother they intend succouring the King of Cyprus,

so she promises to provide what is necessary for sea and land.

They thank her;

and she, weeping, kisses them both,

for she loves them with motherly love.

Melusine prepares galleys, carracks, and other ships, and victuals them,

enough for eighty thousand men of arms.

The Jerusalem knights are sent for,

and tell the brothers they are ready to go with them.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 64 b.

The armament ready, Melusine appoints four barons to look after her two sons.

The men and stores are put on board the fleet; the banners are waved, trumpets sounded, and every one enjoys the scene.

The brethren bid their friends farewell,

and are accompanied to their ships by their parents. Melusine draws them apart,

and gives them each a magic ring,

which, whilst they wear it and remain true,

they will never lose in a good quarrel,

nor be hurt by magical arts or poison.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 65.

The brothers thank their mother,

who advises them always to hear divine service before doing any work;

1 I led them wel, yf god wyl and you also.' Now thenne, shortly to saye, Melusyne dyde so moche that al was redy, and had foure Barons to whome she be-  
toke the kepyng & gouernaunce of her two sones. and 4  
had grete foyson of gentylmen knightes & squyers,  
vnto the nombre of <sup>2</sup> two thousand V<sup>c</sup> men of armes, &  
fyue houndred archers / and as many men with crosse-  
bowes. And thenne the vytaylles, artylery, harneys & 8  
horses were charged in to the vesselles, an syn mounted  
the men into the same. There were seen baners &  
standarts / and the sowne of trompes & tambours and  
of many other instruments was herd, that euery one 12  
enjoyed that sawe it / And the two brethern toke leue  
of peire bretheren and frendes, & of the peple of the  
land, that moche tenderly wept for theire departyng.  
And Raymondin & Melusyne conueyed theire children 16  
vnto the see; and whan they come there Melusyne  
drew hem apart, and said to them: 'Dere children,  
vnderstand this that I wil tell you & commande.' /

'Children,' sayd Melusyne, 'here be two rynge 20  
that I gyue you / of whiche the stones ben of  
one lyke vertue. and wete it that as long that ye  
shaH vse of feythfulnes, without to think eny euyl, ne  
doo trychery or hynderaunce to other / hauyng alwayes 24  
the said rynge & stones vpon you, ye shall not be  
dyscomfyted ne ouercome in no faytte of armes, yf ye  
haue good quareH. ne also sort or enchauntment of  
art Magique, ne poysons of whatsomeuer manere shul 28  
not lette ne greue you / but that assoone as ye shaH see  
<sup>3</sup> them they shaH lese theyre strengthe.' and she  
delyuered to eyther of hem one / and they thanked  
her moch, kneelyng to therthe. And yet said Melusyne 32  
to them in this manere: 'My dere & beloued children,  
I wol & charge you that wher so euer ye be, ye here  
the deuyne seruyse or euer ye doo eny oþer werk.  
<sup>2</sup> Fr. *quatre mille hommes d'armes*; no particulars given. 36



- also that in all your affayres & dedes ye clayme & calle thayde & help of our Creatour, and serue hym diligently, and loue & dredde hym as your god & to call on God for help, and to serve and fear Him;
- 4 your maker. and that allwayes ye honoure & worship with all your power holy church, beyng her champyons, the same to susteyne & withstand ayenst alle her euyl wyllers. Help ye & counseyll the pouere wydowes, to honour and sustain holy Church;
- 8 nourysshe or doo to be norysshed the pouere orphenyns, both faderles and moderles / and worship al ladyes / gyne ayde and comforte vnto alle good maydens that men wol haue dysherytet vnlawfully. loue the gentyl- to frequent the company of gentlemen;
- 12 men, and hold them good companye. / be meke, humble, swete, curtoys & humayne, both vnto grete & lesse. and yf ye see a man of armes pouere, & faill in decaye by hap & fortune of juste werre, re- to be courteous to all;
- 16 fresshe hym of some of your goodes. be large vnto the good folke / and whan ye gyue eny thing, lett hym not tary long for it; but wel loke & considere how moche & why / and yf the personne is worthy to to help the unfortunate;
- 20 have it, and yf ye gyue for playsaunce, loke & kepe wel that prodigalite or folysshe largenes surpryse you not / so that after men mocke not with you. For they that haue wel deserued to be of you rewarded to be thrifty;
- 24 shuld not be wel apayed ne content therof / and the straungers shuld mocke you behinde your backe. and kepe ye promyse, or behighte no thing but that ye may fournysshe & hold it. and yf ye promyse eny 1 fol. 65 b.
- 28 thing, tary not the delyneraunce of it, For long taryng quenchith moche the vertu of the yefte. kepe wel ye raunysshe no woman / ne be conceytous of other mens wyues, of whom ye wil be loued and hold for your to abstain from ill-using women;
- 32 frendes. believe not the Counseyll of none / but first ye knowe his manere, deeling & condycyons. also beleue not the counseyll of Flatterers, and enuyous, & auarycyous / ne suche putte not in none office aboute to beware of flatterers and envious persons;
- 36 you, For they cause rather to their maister dyshonour

& shame, than any worship or prouffyt. kepe wel ye  
 borow nothing but that ye may yeld it ayen / and yf  
 for nede ye be constrayned for to borow / as soone as ye  
 may / make restitucion of it / And þus ye shal mowe 4  
 be without danger, & lede honourable lyf. And yf  
 god graunte that Fortune be to you good & propyce in  
 subduyng your enmyes & theire landes, gouerne wel  
 your folke and people after the nature & condycion 8  
 that they be of. and yf they be rebeH, kepe wel that  
 ye surmounte & ouercome hem without to lese any  
 suche ryght that longith to your lordship & seignourye /  
 and that ye euer make good wache vnto tyme ye haue 12  
 vaynquysshed at your wyll. For yf ye ouertredde  
 your self / nedes ye muste rule your self after theire  
 wyll. but alwayes kepe wel, whether they be euyl &  
 hard, or debonnaire, that ye ne haunce & sette new 16  
 customes that be vnraysonnable / and of them take  
 only your dute and ryght, without to retayH þem  
 1 fol. 66. 1 without and ayenst raison. For yf the peple is  
 pouere / the lord shal be vnhappy / and yf werr came 20  
 he shuld not mowe be holpe of them att hys nede /  
 wherfore he might fall into grete daunger & seruytude.  
 For wete it wel / that a flyes of a yere is more  
 prouffyttable / than the flyes þat is shorne twyes or 24  
 thryes in a yere. now, my children, yet I deffende &  
 forbede you that ye byleue not the Counseill of none  
 to beware of the 28  
 advice of exiles ; exilled and flemed fro his land, in this that may touche  
 the hynderyng or dommage of them that haue exilled 28  
 hym / yf there nys good, right & lawfuH cause / and  
 ye to haue good reason to help hym, For that shuld  
 mowe lette you to come to the degree of worship &  
 honour. And aboue all thinges I forbede you pryde / 32  
 to be just ; and commande you to doo & kepe justice, yeldyng  
 right aswel to the leste as to the moost / and desyre  
 not to be auenged at vttermost of all the wronges don  
 to you by some other / but take suffisaunt & raysonn- 36

- able amendes of hym that offreth it. Dyspreyse not  
 your enmyes though they be litel, but make euer good  
 watche. and kepe wel as long ye be conqueryng, that  
 4 atwix your felawes ye mayntene nat yourself as lord  
 & sire / but be commyn & pryue bothe to more &  
 lesse / and ye owe to hold them company after the  
 qualite & vocacyon that they be of, now to one & now  
 8 to other. For al this causeth the hertes of creatures to  
 drawe vnto the loue of them that are humayn, meke &  
 curteys in theire dignite & seignouryes. Haue an  
 herte as a fyers Lyon ayenst your <sup>1</sup>enemyes / and shew  
 12 to them your puyssaunce and valyauntyse. and yf god  
 endoweth you with some goodes, departe som of it to  
 your felawes after he hath deserued. And as to the  
 werre, byleue the counsey<sup>H</sup> of the valyaunt & worthy  
 16 men that haue haunted & vsed it. Also I defende  
 you that no grete treatee ye make with your enmyes,  
 For in long treatee lyeth somtyme grete falshed. For  
 alwayes wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther;  
 20 and whan the sage seeth þat he is not able to resyste  
 ayenst the strengthe of his enemyes, he seketh &  
 purchaceth alwayes a treatee, for to dyssymyle vnto  
 tyme he seeth hymself mighty ynough for them / and  
 24 thanne anoone of lyght they fynd waye & manere  
 wherby the treatees ben of none effect ne value.  
 Wherefore loke ye, forbere not your enemyes there, as  
 ye may putte them vnder your subgection with honour.  
 28 And thenne yf ye shew them fauour & curtoysye, that  
 shal tourne to your grete honour / and leue ye to doo  
 for them by treatee or appoyntement. For though no  
 falshed or decepcion be founde in none of bothe sydes /  
 32 yet shuld mow some men say or thinke that ye  
 somewhat doubted them / how be it, I say not that  
 men owe to reffuse good traytee, who that may haue  
 it' / Thus, as ye here, chastysed & endoctryned Melu-  
 36 syne her two sones, Vryan & Guyon, whiche thanked  
 MELUSINE.

to be watchful  
of enemies, no  
matter how  
small;

to be on familiar  
terms with their  
men;

to have a lion-  
heart towards  
their enemies;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 66 b.

to share their  
spoils with their  
men;

to make no long  
treaties,

for they are  
liable to be am-  
biguous.

The brothers  
thank their  
mother for her  
advice.

1 fol. 67.

Melusine tells  
them she has  
well stored their  
ships;

and giving them  
to God's care,  
bids them re-  
member her  
advice, and act  
on it.

her moche humbly. and thenne she sayd : ' Children,  
I haue sent gold & syluer ynoughe in to your ship for  
to hold & maynten your estate, and to pay therwith  
your men for foure yere. <sup>1</sup>And haue no doubte or 4  
care for bred, byscuyte, Freshe watre, vynaigre, Flessh  
salted, fyssh ynough, & good wyne suffysaunt to long  
tyme, For therof ben your shippes wel fylled & pur-  
ueyed. goo thanne fourth on your waye, vnder the 8  
sauегarde of god / who kepe you / lede & retourne you  
agayn with joye. and I pray you that ye thinke &  
remembre what I haue sayd to you, to fulfyll it after  
your power.' /

12

### Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of their moder Melusyne and entred their ship. /

The brothers bid  
farewell to their  
parents,

weigh their  
anchors,

2 fol. 67 b.

and after prayer

they put to sea.

Their parents  
leave for Eglon  
Castle.

**T**henne they toke leue of theyre fader and moder 16  
and entred their vessel. This doon, the  
ancres were had in, & the saylles haled vp, the  
patrons made their recommendacions to god as cus-  
tomed it is, to <sup>2</sup>that by hys benygne grace he wyl 20  
graunte to them good ryuage, and accomplysshing of  
theyre vyage without lettyng or empeschement. The  
wyndes were for them propyce & good / and in short  
tyme they were ferre cast on the see so that they were 24  
out of sight / .

Thanne departed Raymodyn & Melusyne, and  
theyre meyne with them, and came to the Castel  
Eglon. And here resteth thystorye of them, and re- 28  
tourneth to spek of Vryan and Guyon hys brother, and  
of theyre felawship that saylled on the see, holding  
their way toward Cypre. /

Uryan and Guyon  
sail

**T**hystory sayth that whan Uryan and Guyon were 32  
departed fro Rochelle they saylled long on the



see, and passed by many yles, & refresshed them in many places; and so long they rowed *pat* they sawe many vesselles that chased two galeyes / and thenne  
 4 the Patron shewed them to *pe* two brethern / and they ansuered, and demanded of them what was best to doo.  
 'By my feyth,' sayd the Patron, 'it were good we send a galeye to wete what folke they be / and in the meane  
 8 while we shal make our men to take theyre armes & harneys on them at al auauntures.' 'By my feith,' said Vryan, 'that I vouchesaf' / and they dide soo.  
 And thanne the galeye departed abrode, and saylled  
 12 toward the straungers / and escryed *pem*, & demanded of them what they were, and they ansuerd, 'We be two galeyes of Rodes that haue be found of the paynemys that foloweth & chaceth vs, and we see wel  
 16 ye be Cristen, and so are all <sup>1</sup>they that come after you.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they of the galeye, 'we ben as ye suppose and saye.' 'By my heed,' said one of the patrons of Rodes galeyes / 'goo & haste your  
 20 felawship, For ye haue found fayre auenture. yonder be of the sawdans folke that goo to the siege of Famagosse / and who might dystroye them, he shuld doo grete socoure to the king of Cypre / and to the sawdan  
 24 of Damaske grete *dommage*.' Whan thenne they of the galeye herd this / they sodaynly retourned & announced it to the two bretheren / and to their folke whiche anon yede vp to the Castels of their shippes,  
 28 and clymed vp to the toppes of them, hauyng speere & darts, stones, & wild fyre alrede / also bowes & arowes in their handes / gonne & pouldre to shote with.  
 There bygan tompes to blowe vp, & rowed mightily  
 32 toward the paynemys. And whan the Infideles & paynemys perceyued so grete nombre of shippes rowyng toward them they ne wyst not what to thinke, For they had neuer supposed that so grete puyssaunce &  
 36 strengthe of cristen men had be so nygh them / but

till they see two galleyes being chased.

They send to see who are in them.

The messengers find the galleyes to be from Rhodes,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 63.

and that the vessels that chase them are the Sultan's of Damaseus, who is on his way to Famagosse, to fight the King of Cyprus.

On hearing this news, Urian and Guion prepare their ships to fight,

and row towards the paynim Sultan.

The infidels, surprised at the numbers of the Christians,

retreat, but prepare for attack.

The Christian galleys open fire,

upon which the paynims try to send a fire-ship amongst them,

1 fol. 68 b.

but they evade it.

The Christians are victorious,

take their enemies' ships, and put the men to death.

They row to Rhodes, where they refresh themselves, and give the captured ships to the Rhodians.

The Master of Rhodes invites them to his city,

asks why they come,

and of what nation they are.

They answer, and ask the Master of Rhodes to help them to assist the King of Cyprus.

always they putte hem self in aray gooyng abacke,  
but oure galeyces aduyronned them round about on al  
sydes, and bygan of al partes to shutte theire gonnes.  
And whan the paynemys sawe this / and that they 4  
myght not flee, they toke a vessel whiche they had  
take fro them of rodes, and had cast the folke that was  
in it into the see / and fylled it with wode, oyle, &  
talowe, and with sulphre & brymstone. and whan they 8  
sawe our folk approuched nygh them they sette it  
afyre. and whan the fyre was wel kyndled <sup>1</sup>they lefte  
it behynd them to mete first with our folke / but as  
god wold they were warned therof & kept / themself 12  
wel therfro / and assaylled theire enmyes at the other  
syde right vygourously. There was grete shotyng of  
crosbowes & gonnes / and soone after our folk entred  
byforce and strengthe of armes the shippes of the 16  
paynemys / and fynally they were take & dyscomfyted,  
and putte to deth. and our folke gate there grete good  
whiche the two brethern departed, and gaf to theire  
felawes and to them that wer within the two galeyces of 20  
Rodes / and syn rowed & saylled both so long that  
they arryued in the yle of Rodes. And there they  
refresshed them, & gaf to the brethern of the religyon  
the fustes & galeyces that they had taken vpon the 24  
paynemys, and they soiurned there foure dayes. And  
the maister of Rodes prayd them that they wold come  
into the Cite / and they dide soo / and were there  
honourably receyued / and the said maister demanded 28  
them of the cause of their commyng. And the two  
brethern told hym that they were come forto socoure  
the king of Cypre / And he asked them full humbly of  
what land they were, and what they were / and the 32  
two brethern told to hym all the trouth. Thenne made  
the maister to them greter chere than tofore / and said  
to them that he shuld send for som of his bretheren / &  
that he shuld goo with hem to helpe & socoure the 36

king of Chipre. And the two bretheren thanked hym moche humbly therefore. /

4 **N**ow sayth thystorye that so long abode, & so iourned the two brethern at Rodes tyl the maister had assembled his folke, and vytaylled & laden with good <sup>1</sup>men of armes, & archers six galeys, & saylled with Uryan & Guyon so long that they arryued 8 nygh to the yle of Coles, & apperceyued grete lyght. Thenne the grete maister of Rodes that was in Uryan's galeye, said to the two bretheren: 'Sires, in good feyth it were good & wel doon to send a Carueñ vnto yonder 12 yle, to knowe & aspye what folke is there.' 'I vouchsaf it,' said Vryan. The Rampyn then, or Carueñ, saylled thither, & arryued in to the said yle, & some of þem descended & founde many grete fyres & lodgis, 16 and by the experience that they sawe, they extimed them þat had lodged there to the nombre of xxx thousand men / and that they myght wel haue dwelled þer foure or fyue dayes. For they found without the lodgys grete 20 foyson of oxen hornes & of other bestes. And then they came ayen in to theire Vesseñ, and retourned toward our folke / & recounted to them the trouth of all that they had found. 'By my feith,' said thenne 24 the maister of Rodes, 'I wene they be paynemys that are gooyng toward the sawdan at the siege, and that they whiche ye haue dyscomfyted were of theire felawship, & abode for them in that same yle' / and for 28 certayn they were soo / and of them they sayled & rowed fourth tyl they sawe an abbey on the see coste, where men sought & worshiped saynt Andrew / and men saith that there is the potence or cros wheron the 32 good thef Dysmas was crucefyed whan our lord was nayled to the Cros for our redempcion. 'Sire,' said the maister, 'it were good that we should entre that lytil hauen Vnto tyme that we had sent to Lymasson 36 for to knowe tydinges, & for to wete yf they wyl

The Master of Rhodes arms six galleys,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 69.

and sails with the brethren to Coles, where they see lights.

Men are sent in a carvell to spy,

and discover a camp of thirty thousand strong.

They return with their news.

The Master of Rhodes believes it to be a camp of paynims, friends of those just defeated in the sea-fight.

The company continues their voyage till they come to an abbey on the coast.

i fol. 69 b.

They put into the  
harbour,  
and send a  
message to the  
Abbot,

who is glad to  
hear of their  
arrival.

The Captain of  
the place rows  
to our folk,

sees Urian,  
Guion, and the  
Master of  
Rhodes,

and is abashed at  
Urian's appear-  
ance.

Being assured  
that Urian has  
come to help the  
King of Cyprus,  
he promises to  
open the country  
to him, and

give his vessels  
anchorage.

receyue vs for to putte our nauye in <sup>1</sup>surete within  
theyre clos.' 'Maister,' said Uryan, 'let it be doon in  
the name of god after your playsire.' Thenne they  
arryued, and entred the port or hauen / and sent 4  
wordes to thabbot ther, that they shuld not doubte, For  
they were theire frendes. And the maister of Rodes  
with other went thider. And whan thabbot & monkes  
knew the tydinges and the commyng of the two 8  
brethern, they were joyous & glad, & sent some of  
theire bretheren to Lymas to announce & telle þe socours  
that was arryued at theire porte. Thenne whan a  
knyght, Captayn of the place, herde these tydinges he 12  
was fayn & glad, and made fourthwith a galyotte to  
be shipped redy, and came toward our folke, and  
demanded after the lord of that armee /. and he to  
whome he asked it lede hym where Uryan / Guyon 16  
his brother / the master of Rodes, & many other barons  
were in a ryche pauyllon, that they had don to be  
dressed on the streyte of the porte / and shewed to  
hym Vryan that satte on a couche with hym his 20  
brother, and the maister of Rodes. And whan he saw  
hym he was abashed of the valeur & of the grete fyerste  
of hym, & neuerþeles he yede & salued hym honour-  
ably, and Vryan receyued him goodly & benyngly. 24  
'Sire,' said the Knight, 'ye be welcome in to this  
land.' 'Fayre sirs,' said Vryan, 'moche grete thanks  
to you.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is don me to  
vnderstand that ye departed fro your Countrie to 28  
thentent to come ayde & help the king of Cypre.'  
'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'it is trouth.' 'Then, sire,'  
said the knight, 'it is reson that al be open byfore you,  
where ye wyl by aH the royalme of Cypre, through aH 32  
tounnes, Cites, & Castels there as ye shal be please to  
goo, but as to the same, which is to my ryght redoubted  
lord the king of cypre, hit shal be soone appareylled &  
open to you, whan it shaH lyke you, & also the porte 36



to putte your vessels <sup>1</sup>in saute.' 'By my feyth,' said  
 Uryan, 'ye say right wel, & gramercy to you. Sire  
 knight, it is tyme to meve, For my brother and I haue  
 4 grete langyng to approche nygh the paynemys / not for  
 theire prouffyt, but for theire dommage, if it please god  
 that we so doo.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is good  
 ye doo to be had out some of your horses as many  
 8 as it lyke you / and take som of your men *with* you,  
 and we sha<sup>ll</sup> goo by land.' 'By my feith,' sayd Uryan,  
 'ye say right wel' / and thus it was doon / and Uryan  
 made some of hys men to be armed, vnto the nombre  
 12 of foure hundred gentylmen of the moost hye barons,  
 knightes & squyers. and he himself, & his brother  
 armed them and mounted on horsbak / and the banere  
 dysployed, rode fourth in moch fayre ordynaunce / and  
 16 the maister of Rodes & the other shipped them on the  
 see & rowed toward the porte. And Vryan and his  
 felawship rode *with* the said knight that guyded hym  
 so long that they came & entred in to the toune, and  
 20 were right well lodged. And then came the nauye,  
 & arryued to the porte, and the horses were a<sup>ll</sup> had out  
 of the shippes, and the folke descendid to land, and  
 lodged them in *pe* feld *without* the toune *within*  
 24 tentes & pauyllons / and they that had none, made  
 theire lodgis the best wyse they coude. and was moche  
 grete playsaunce to see thoost whan they were alle  
 lodged. The moost hye barons lodgyd them *within*  
 28 the toune / and the nauye was draw, & had in to the  
 clos in saute / and they commytted good folke to  
 deffende & kepe it, yf Sarasyns or paynemys came  
 there for to doo som euyl. Now shal I leue to speke  
 32 of Uryan, & shal say of the Captayn of the toune  
 that moche wel aduysed thoost and the maynten of the  
 folke, & moche preysed it in his herte / and said wel  
 they were folke of faytte <sup>2</sup>and of grete enterpryse, whan  
 36 so few people enterprysed for to haue the vycory ouer

<sup>1</sup> fol. 70.

Four hundred  
 of Urian's barons  
 go ashore, armed  
 and horsed,

and ride to the  
 town;

the ships mean-  
 while row to the  
 harbour, and the  
 horses and men  
 land.

Guards are set  
 to defend the  
 navy against the  
 Saracens.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 70 b.

The Captain of the town is surprised at the bravery of Urian, who thinks of conquering the mighty host of the Saracens with so few men;

but Urian's bold looks assure him, and he thanks God that Urian has been sent to help the king.

The Captain of the place indites a letter to the King of Cyprus, telling of Urian's arrival and of his forces,

the sawdan, that had with hym more than houndred thousand paynemys. And for to say trouth, Vryan had not yet comprised the men of the maister of Rodes, eyghte thousand fyghtyng men / and therfore the 4 knight mernaylled, and held it to grete audacite & hardynes of herte, and to grete valyaunce. And whan he considered the grandeur & the facion of Vryan, & the fyerste of hys vysage, and also of guyon hys 8 brother / he said to his folke / 'thoo same are worthy for to subdue & conquere all the world.' and he said to hymself, *pat* god had sent hem thither of his benyng grace for to socoure the kyng, and for to enhaunce the 12 cristen feyth, and that he shuld lete it to be knowen to the kyng by certayn message.

**T**hystorye sayth that the knight made a *lettre*, the tenour of whiche conteyned al the matere of 16 Uryan, & of his brother, of theire men, & of theire *commyng*, and how the two bretheren had to name, and of what countre they were / and syn he called one hys nevew, & said to hym in this manere, 'ye muste 20 bere this *lettre* to Famagosse, and gyue it to the kyng / and whatsoever it happeth that god forbede, but al good to you, nedes ye muste doo it.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said he / 'ye shall putte bothe the *lettres* & 24 myself in grete jeopardye & auenture, For if by some myschief, as it happeth ofte, wherof god *preserue* me I were taken of our enemyes, of my lyf is nothing / and ye wote it wel / but for the loue of you, myn vncler & 28 of the kyng, to doo hym comfort, & to gyue hym herte & hoop to be putte & delyuered fro hys enemyes, & fro the mortal paryl wherin he is now, I shall putte myself in aduenture / and I pray <sup>1</sup>to god deuoutly, that it 32 please hym of his benigne grace to lede me gooyng & *commyng* in sauete.' / 'Thus owe men to serue theire lord,' said the Captayne, 'and yf god wyl ye shalbe wel rewarded therof.' and anoone he toke the *lettre*, & 36

<sup>1</sup> fol. 71.

delyuered it to his newew / þat mounted on horsbacke,  
& rode fourthon his way. But as for now I shaH reste  
of hym / and I shal retourne there I leste to spek of

4 Vryan / and shal say howe he gouerned hymself whiles  
the messenger yede toward the king. how wel he knew  
nat of it. /

8 **T**hystory saith that Vryan called to hym the maister  
S of Rodes and the Captayn of the place, and de-  
manded of them thus: 'Fayre lordes, is the sawdan  
somewhat yong, ne of grete enterpryse' / and they an-  
suerd, 'that ye for certayn' / 'and how,' said Vryan,  
12 'was he neuer byfore this place to make warre than  
now?' / they ansuerd that, 'nay' / 'and what thenne,'  
said Vryan, 'hath caused hym to passe the see now?  
sith he is man of enterpryse, I merveyH that so long  
16 he held hym styl, seeyng ye be his nigh neygbours,  
and also that he hath so grete puissaunce, as it is told  
me.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the Captayne, 'it is  
veray & trouth that our kyng hath a moch fayr dough-  
20 ter of the age of .xv. yere, the which the saudan wold  
haue had by force / and our kyng wold not acorde her  
to hym without he wold be baptysed. And wete it  
that euer here tofore we had trewes togidre of so long  
24 tyme that no mynde is of þe contrarye. and whan the  
sawdan hath seen that our king wold not graunt to  
hym his doughter, he sent ageyn to hym the trewes  
with a deffyaunce or chalengyng, and was redy on the  
28 see with a .C. & fyfty thousand paynemys, and came &  
made soone his harneys to be had out on erthe, & wente  
and layd siege tofore Famagoce, where he found <sup>1</sup>the  
kyng all vnpurveyed of his baronye, that knew not of  
32 his comyng / but syn there be entred moche folke  
within the Cite ayenst his euyl gree, & there is now  
fayre scarmysshing where grete losse hath be on both  
partes / and syn the paynymes have refresshed them-  
36 self twyes of new folke, in so moch that they ben yet

and despatches  
his nephew on  
horseback to the  
King at Fama-  
gosse.

Urian asks about  
the Sultan of  
Damascus,

and ascertains  
that he fights to  
get the king's  
beautiful  
daughter, now  
fifteen,  
refused him  
because he  
would not be  
baptised.

The Sultan  
challenged the  
king, and laid  
siege to Fama-  
gosse, which was  
unprepared;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 71 b.

but now rein-  
forcements have  
entered the  
town, and there  
is fair skirmish-  
ing.

The Saracens are  
a hundred thou-  
sand strong;  
but they lost  
some vessels,

as was learnt  
from one of our  
ships, who saw  
them pass,  
chasing two  
Rhodian galleys,

but saw no more  
of them.

The Master of  
Rhodes tells  
the Captain of  
Urian's victory,  
which explains  
their non-appear-  
ance.

Urian, learning  
that love has  
made the Sultan  
fight,

says that he is  
the more to be  
feared, because  
love is so power-  
ful that it makes  
even cowards  
brave,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 72.

and states that  
next day, after  
divine service,  
he will set out in  
quest of him.

At the third  
sound of the  
trumpets they  
march.

wel a .C<sup>ml</sup>. / but at this last vyage they haue lost a  
parte of theire shippes & of theire folke, which they  
abode fore in the yle of Coles, For one of our galleyes  
of the blakke hylle that pursyewed them told it to vs, 4  
& how they chaced two galleyes of the hospytal of  
Rodes / and wete it that pey ne wote not where they  
bycame syn, For they taryed after wel by the space  
of six dayes in the said yle / but whan they sawe that 8  
they came not, they departed thens & came byfore  
famagoce at siege.' 'By my feyth, sire,' sayd the  
maister of Rodes, 'this might wel be veray trouth. but  
see here my lord Vryan and hys brother, that shuld 12  
wel ansuere therof, For they haue be aȝ dyscomfyted  
& slayn by theire strengthe & valiauntis, and they haue  
gyuen to vs theire fustes & their nauye.' 'In good  
feyth,' sayd the knight, 'that playseth me wel, and 16  
blessid be god therof.' 'My lord,' said the Captayn,  
'now haue I recounted to you why the werre is meued,  
and wherefore the saudan of Damaske hath passed the  
see.' 'In the name of god,' said Vryan, 'loue hath 20  
wel so moche & more of puyssaunce than of suche  
enterpryse to doo. And wete that syn the sawdan is  
enterprysed of force of loue, the more he is to be  
doubted / For veray soth it is / that loue hath so moche 24  
of myght that it maketh coward to be hardy and to  
doo right grete enterpryse / & that byfore he durst not  
passe. And therefore thenne it is aȝ certayn to this,  
that the sawdan is hardy & enterprenaunt <sup>1</sup>the more 28  
he doth hym to be doubted / but alwayes be doo the  
wyll of god. For we shaȝ departe hens to the playsire  
of god to morow by tymes after the deuyne seruyce  
for to goo & vysyte them.' And then he made to be 32  
eryed & proclaimed *with* the trompette that euery man  
shuld make redy hys harneys. and they departed after  
the thirde sowne of the trompette in goodly & fayre  
ordynaunce, euerone vnder his banere / and bade them 36



- to siew the vanward / and so they dide. here I shaft  
 leue to spek of them / and shaft retourne there as I  
 lefte to speke of the Captayns newew that moche  
 4 strongly rode toward Famagoce / and so moche ex-  
 ployted his way that he came about midnyght to the  
 Cornere of the wode, vpon a lytil mountayn, & loked  
 down into the valeye, and then he bygan to perceyue  
 8 & see the oost of the paynemys, where as was grete  
 lyght of fyres that were made by the lodgys; and he  
 sawe the Cite so aduyronned al about with paynemys,  
 that he ne wyst which way to draw for to entre the  
 12 toun. and there he was long tyme in grete poughthe.  
 It happed that about the spryng of the day foure score  
 basynets, straungers of dyuerse nacyons, yssued out at  
 a posterne of the Cyte, & commevyd al thoost by  
 16 manere of batayH / and that same ooure the watche  
 departed, & the moost part of them was retourned to  
 theyre lodgis / and they entred in the oost with some  
 of them that had watched without they were ware of  
 20 hem, & supposed they had be of theirre companye, and  
 came nygh to the tente of the sawdan / and thenne  
 they bygan to launche & smyte with speeres & with  
 swerdes on al the paynemys that they mete & re-  
 24 countred / and cutted cordes of pauyllons to grete  
 desray, & made moche horryble occysyon & slaghtir  
 of paynemys after the quantite <sup>1</sup>that they were of.  
 Thenne was al the host afrayd, and bygan to crye alarme  
 28 & to harneys / then bygan thoost to take on them theirre  
 armures. And whan the cristen men sawe the force &  
 strengthe of theirre enemyes that bygan to ryse, they  
 retourned with a lytel paas toward the Cite, fleeyng &  
 32 castyng to therthe al that they recountred on theirre  
 waye. And whan the messaunger sawe so grete affraye  
 & noyse he cam at al auenture & broched hys hors  
 with the spoorys, and passed without fourth the lodges  
 36 thugh out aH the oost of þe paynemys / and he had

The Captain's  
nephew, that  
carried the letter  
to the king,

arrived at the  
city of Fama-  
gosse, sees it  
surrounded with  
paynims, and  
does not know  
how to enter it.

At the spring  
of day, eighty  
basinets leave  
the city,

and when the  
paynims' watch-  
men are in their  
tents,

the basinets  
fall upon the  
paynims, cut  
their tent ropes,  
and slay many  
of them.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 72 b.

But on the host  
of the Saracens  
arming,

they run back  
towards the city.

The messenger  
seeing the ad-  
venture, spurs  
his horse, rides  
to the basinets,

and tells of the  
arrival of the  
Lusignans with  
eight thousand  
warriors,

which gladdens  
them,

and makes the  
Sultan sad and  
angry.

The flight con-  
tinues,  
but the paynims  
are driven back,  
and the Sultan  
sounds a retreat.

The messenger  
delivers his  
letter to the  
king,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 73.

who thanks God  
on reading it  
that he has not  
been forgotten.

The king orders  
the church bells  
to be rung, pro-  
cessions to be  
made,

not goo long whan he found hymself atwix the Cite &  
them that so had commoeuyd thoost, as said is. And  
then he knew them soone ynough that they were of the  
garnyson of the Cyte, and escryed them, saying: 'ha, 4  
ha, fayre lordes, thinke to doo wel, For I bryng you  
good tydynges; For the floure of the noble cheualrye  
of Crystyante cometh to socoure & helpe you / that is  
to wete the two damoyseaulx of Lusynen, that haue 8  
dyscomfyted alre dy a grete part of the Sodanis folke  
vpon the see / and they bryng *with* them wel eyght  
thousand men. And thenne whan they understode  
hym they made hym grete chere and were ryght joyfuH, 12  
and entred the toune ayen without eny losse. wherof  
the sawdan was moch wofuH & angry. And then he  
came & bygan the scarmoushe before the barers &  
many paynemys were there slayn & dede / and they 16  
of Cypre made theire enemyes to recule abacke *with*  
strengthe / and the saudan made the trompette to  
sowne & caH the retrette whan he sawe that he myght  
doo none other thing. And þen came the said mes- 20  
saunger byfore the kyng, & made the reuerence on  
hys vnclis byhalue, and presented the *lettre*. And the  
kyng receyued hym moche benyngly, & tok away the  
wax and opend the *lettre* & sawe the tenour <sup>1</sup>of hit. / 24  
and syn heued vp his handes joyntly toward heuen, &  
said: 'ha, a veray glorious god, Jhesu Criste, I þank  
regracye & mercye the ryght deuoutly & humbly of  
this, that thou hast not forgotten me that am thy pouere 28  
creature and thy pouere *seruaunt*, that haue long tyme  
lyued here *within* this Cite in grete doubte & feere, and  
in grete myserye of my pouere lyuyng and my folke also.'  
And thenne he made to be announced in al the chirches, 32  
that they shuld ryng theire belles, & that processyons  
shuld be made *with* crosses & baners, and *with* torches  
brennyng, lawdyng & preysyng the creator of creatures,  
prayeng hym moche humbly that he of his *mercyfuH* & 36

benyngre grace wyl kepe & preserue them fro the handes  
 & daunger of mysbyleuers paynmys. And thanne by-  
 gan the ryngyng to be grete, & was the joye ryght  
 4 grete whan the tydynges of the socours commyng to  
 them was knowen of aH. And whan the paynmys  
 vnderstode the gladnes & joye that they of the cyte  
 made, they were moche abasshed why they made &  
 8 demened so grete feeste. 'By my feyth,' sayd the  
 saudan, 'they have herd some tydynges that we wote  
 not / or ellis they doo so for to gyue vs vnderstandyng  
 that they haue folke ynoughe & vytaylles also for to  
 12 deffende & withstande ayenst vs.' And here resteth  
 thystorye of the soudan & bygynneth to speke of  
 Ermyne the kingis doughtir of Cypre, which herd  
 there as she was in her chambre the tydynges of the  
 16 socours that the children of Lusynen brought with  
 them. and the mayde had grete langyng & desyre to  
 knowe the veray trouth of aH.

and God thanked  
 and prayed to for  
 help.

The paynims are  
 abashed at the  
 rejoicings of the  
 Christians.

The King of  
 Cyprus's  
 daughter, Er-  
 mine,

**T**he hystorye saith to vs thus / that whan the  
 20 damoysselle knew of the socours & help that soone  
 she sent for hym that had brought the tydynges<sup>1</sup> therof,  
 and he came to her in hir chambre & made to her  
 the reuerence. 'Frend,' said Ermyne, 'ye be wel-  
 24 come to me; but now tell me of your tydynges.' and  
 he recounted to her al that was of it. 'Frende,' said  
 the mayde, 'have ye seen that folke that commeth to  
 socoure my fader?' 'By my feyth, ye,' said the mes-  
 28 sanger, 'they are the moost appert in armes, and the  
 fayrest men that euer entred in to this land, and the  
 best arayed & purueyed of aH thinges.' 'Now tell us,'  
 said the damoysselle, 'of what land they are, & who is  
 32 the chief Captayn & lord of them.' 'By my feyth, my  
 damoysselle, they be of Poytou, and lede them two  
 yong & fayre damoyseaulx brethren, that be named of  
 Lusynen, of whiche theldest is called Vryan, & that  
 36 youngest Guyon, which have not yet berde full growen.'

<sup>1</sup> fol. 73 b.

on hearing of the  
 help, sends for  
 the messenger,  
 and questions  
 him.

The messenger  
 tells of the men  
 who have come  
 to succour the  
 king;

of the captains  
 of them, Urian  
 and Guion,

and of their  
looks.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 74.

Ermine sends an  
ouch to Urian,  
and a ring to  
Guion, by the  
messenger,  
and bids him  
salute them on  
her behalf.

The king gives  
the messenger  
an answer to  
the letter he  
brought,

and to divert the  
attention of the  
enemy, orders  
another sortie.

Upon which the  
messenger goes  
out at another  
gate,

'Frende,' said the damoysele, 'be they so fayre damoyseaux as ye say?' 'By my feyth,' said the messenger / 'the eldest is moche grete & hye, strong & of fayre behauyng & maynten, but hys vysage is short & large 4 in trauerse / and hath one eye redde, & that other ey is perske & blew, and the eerys grete to merueyH. and wete it wel that of membres & of body he is the fayrest knight that euer I sawe / and the yongest is not of so 8 hye stature / but he is moche fayre & wel shapen of membres, & hath a face to deuysel, except that one of his eyen is hyer sette than the other is. and seye alle that see them, that they be worthy & noble to conquere 12 & subdue vnder them all the world.' 'Frende,' sayd Ermyne, 'shaH ye goo agayn soone toward them.' And he ansuerd, 'my damoysele, assoone as I may haue tyme & place conuenable & propyee for to yssue & go out of 16 the Cite, and that I see I may goodly escape fro the paynemys.' 'Frend,' said the damoysele, 'ye shal on my behalue salue the yong brethern, and ye shaH delyuere to the eldest this ouch, <sup>1</sup>and telle hym bere it 20 for the loue of me / and this ryng of gold with this dyamond ye shal take to be lesse, and ye shaH salew hym moche on my byhalf.' And he ansuered, 'my damoysele, I shall doo it righte gladly.' He thanne 24 departed fro her & came to the king that had doon writ his ansuere in a *lettre*, and made grete foyson of men of armes to arme them redyly, and them made he to yssue couertly out of the cyte and entred in to the 28 oost / and or the oost were armed they adommaged them sore. And þen yssued paynemys out of theire tentes without eny aray, that rechaced them vnto the barrers, where they had grete scarmusshyng & fyers, 32 and many men slayn & wounded of bothe partes. All thoost arryued where the scarmusshing was / and ther whyles was the said messenger putte out of the Cite att another gate, a bow shotte fro all the oost, so that 36



he was nat perceyued. And thenne he rode hastily toward hys vncle. For moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym all the tydynges.

and rides to his uncle

- 4 And dured not long the scarmoushe, For the sawdan made it to be cessed, For he sawe wel that he shuld more lese there than wyne. Now I shal leue to speke of this forsaid matere / and shafl retourne to speke of  
8 Vryan & of his brother.

The Sultan soon orders his men to retreat.

**I**n this parte telleth thistory that Uryan dide hys trompettes to be blowen at the spring of the day, & roos & commanded euery man to appareyh hym,

At the spring of the day, Urian commands his host to prepare to march.

- 12 and put saddelles on theire horses / and soone after the two brethern herd theire masse, & semblably dyde the other prynces & barons / and after the masse Vryan made to crye, that who wold drynk ones shuld drynk,  
16 and that ootis shuld be gyuen to the horses, and that at the other tyme that the trompette shuld be blowen, eueryman shuld be redy that was of the <sup>1</sup> Vanwarde.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 74 b.

- And they beyng in such estate, the Capteyns newew  
20 arryued there, and delyuered the *lettre* to hys vncle, that the kyng had taken to hym / and the Captayn toke & kyssed it fourthwith, openð it, and sawe by the tenour of it how the kyng commanded hym to putte

At that time the messenger returns from the king.

- 24 bothe the fortresse and the toun at the wyth & commandement of the two bretheren. Also that he shuld commande to all good tounnes, Castels, Fortresses, portes, hauens, & passages that they shuld gyue them  
28 entre & soiourne, and that they shuld obey to them.

The Captain reads the answer, which commands all the land to be given in charge of the brethren, Urian and Guion,

- And whan the Captayn sawe & vnderstode all þe substance & matere of it, he shewed the *lettre* to Vryan, & to guyon hys brother, the whiche redde it; & whan they  
32 knew the tenour of it they called to them the captayn, the maister of Rodes, & the two knightes, that had anonced to them thauenture of the siege, and redde to them the *lettre* on hye. 'Thenne,' said Uryan to the  
36 Captayn, 'we thanke moche the king of the worship

to whom the letter is shown.

Urian thanks  
the Captain for  
the king's inten-  
tions,

and asks what  
force the  
Cyprians have  
in all their  
fortresses;

because he  
wishes to fight  
the Sultan, and  
end the war.

The Captain  
says that would  
be hard to do,  
because the  
paynims have  
one hundred  
thousand men.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 75.

Urian replies  
they have a good  
cause,

that victory lies  
not on the side  
of numbers,

and that Alex-  
ander fought  
the world with  
twenty thousand  
men.

Which speech  
cheered the  
Captain,

who promised  
a company of  
eight thousand  
men;

which Urian says  
is enough.

that he doth to vs / but as to vs, our entencyon is not  
to entre in to thoos tounes ne castelles, yf we may  
goodly passe *without* fourth, For we thinke to kepe the  
feldes, yf god wyl, & make good werre ayenst the 4  
sodan, but telle vs what nombre of men may yssue out  
of all your garnysons the Fortresses alwayes kept / and  
wete it þat force is to vs to knowe it / and yf they be  
men of whom we dare trust and be assured / For god 8  
before we tende & purpose to gyue bataylle to the  
Sawdan, & to putte to termynacioun, & ende this warre.  
For therfore are we come hither.' 'By my faith,'  
said the Captayn, 'that shal be hard to doo, For þe 12  
paynemys are in nombre wel C<sup>ML</sup> and more.' 'Care  
you not, therefore,' said Vryan, 'For we haue good  
right in oure caas / they are come vpon vs *without*  
cause / and though we had goon on them <sup>1</sup>vnto their 16  
owne lande, we ought to doo soo, For they are enemyes  
of god / and doubteles though they be of grete nombre  
to the regarde of our felawship / yet one grayne of  
peper alone smertith more on mans tonge than doth 20  
a sacke full of whette / ne victorye also lyeth not in  
grette multitude of people / but in good rule & ordyn-  
*aunce*. And wel it is trouth that Alexander, that sub-  
dued so many & dyuerse landes, wold not haue *with* 24  
hym aboue the nombre of xx<sup>ti</sup> thousand fyghtyng men  
for one journey ayenst all the world. And thanne  
whan the Captayne herd hym speke so valyauntly, he  
held it to grete wele & valeur, and thoughte he was 28  
wel able & worthy to conquere & subdue many landes,  
and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I shaH enforce  
your oost *with* foure thousand fighting men, and of two  
thousand brygandyners & crosbowes, & other.' 'By 32  
my feyth,' said Vryan, 'that is ynoughe / now doo  
that we may haue hem to half a journey nygh oure  
enemyes,' and he ansuerd there shuld be no fawte of  
it. And then came there the Captayns newew, and 36

kneled byfore Vryan & Guyon, and said to them in  
 this manere: 'Noble damoyseaulx / the moost fayre  
 mayde / & the moost noble that I knowe salueth you  
 4 bothe, and sendeth you of her jewels' / and thenno he  
 toke the ouche of gold that was sette *with* many a ryche  
 & precyous stone / and said thus to Vryan: 'Sire, hold  
 & receyue this ouche of Ermynes byhalf, doughter to  
 8 my liege lord the kyng', that requyreth & besechep you  
 to were it on you for her sake.' Vryan toke it joy-  
 ously, and made it to be attached & sette it on his  
 cotte of armes, and said to hym: 'My frende, right  
 12 grete thankes & thousand mercys to the damoysele  
 tha so moche honour sheweth to me / Wete <sup>1</sup> it that I  
 shaH kepe it moche dere for her sake / and gramercy  
 to you messanger & brynger of it.' And after he pre-  
 16 sented and toke to Guyon the ring on the forsaid  
 damoysele byhalf / and that she prayed hym to bere  
 it for the loue & sake of her / And guyon ansuerd that  
 so shuld he doo, and putte it on his fynger / and  
 20 thanked moche the damoysele / and þe messager also /  
 and the brethern gaf moche ryche yeftis to the same  
 messager. And soone after the trompette blew, and  
 eueryman putte hym self fourth on hys way. and  
 24 there myght men be seen in fayre & good ordynaunce.  
 And the Captayn sent to aH the Fortresses & tounes,  
 and made to yssue out & assemble togidre aH the men  
 of armes / and wel were of them aboue the nombre  
 28 that the Captayn had sayd to the two bretheren fyue  
 hondred more. Vryan thenne lodged hym and hys  
 felawship on a lytil ryuere / and on the morne erly  
 they departed, and went fourth tyl they came a lytil  
 32 byfore mydday, in a fayre medowe, nygh to a grete  
 ryuere / and there were foyson of trees / also there was  
 a quarter of a leghe thens a grete bridge, where they  
 muste passe / and fro that bridge vnto Famagoce were  
 36 but seuen leghes / and there made Vryan hys folke to

MELUSINE.

The messenger  
 presents Urian  
 with the ouche  
 from Ermine,

who takes it  
 joyfully, and  
 attaches it to his  
 coat of arms,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 75 b.

and says he will  
 keep it for her  
 sake.

Guion is pre-  
 sented with the  
 ring, and puts it  
 on his finger.

The brethern  
 give rich gifts to  
 the messenger.  
 The trumpets  
 are sounded,  
 and the men get  
 under arms.

The captain  
 assembles from  
 the fortresses  
 the company he  
 promised,

and Urian  
 marches his  
 army within  
 seven leagues of  
 Famagosse,  
 nigh a great  
 bridge,

where they  
abide for the  
night.

Some knights go  
to the bridge,  
and see fifteen  
armed men,

and on the other  
side of it four  
hundred.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 76.

The fifteen, on  
being asked,  
say that they are  
Christians,  
and the other  
company pay-  
nimus, who have  
fought them,  
and killed one  
hundred of their  
company.

Urian's knights  
help the small  
company of  
Christians;

be lodged, and said he wold abyð þere the said Captayn  
and his men that he shuld bring *with* hym. There  
they laye that nyght, and abode tyl the morne noone.  
but alwayes some knightes were goon for their dys- 4  
porte vnto the said bridge, and aspyed there about xv  
men of armes that were descended therat / and had  
their speeris in their fystes, and the salades after the  
guyse that they armed them in that Countre / and of 8  
another syde they sawe come about foure hundred  
men <sup>1</sup>of armes, that peyned them self moche for to  
passe ouer for to greue them of the other side / thanne  
came one of our Knightes that escryed them, & de- 12  
manded of them what they were / and one of them  
ansuerd, 'we are Cristen / and they that ye see at the  
other side of the watre are paynemys, that come for  
fourrage about the Countre / they haue mete & faught 16  
*with* vs, and they haue slayn wel an C good men that  
were of our felawship.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said oure  
knyght, 'yf ye can hold you, ye shal soone haue socours  
& ayde.' And thenne the knight broched his hors, 20  
and waloped toward his felawes, and recounted to  
them shortly all thauenture. And whan they vnder-  
stode this they hastily came to the oost, and mete  
*with* xx<sup>ti</sup> crosbowes men, to whom they bade they 24  
shuld hye þem toward the bridge for to help the xv  
men of armes that were there ayenst thenmyes. And  
whan they vnderstode this they walked fast, & cam  
nigh to the bridge, and sawe thre cristen that were 28  
ouerthrowen on the bridge by strokkes of speeris.  
'Fourth,' said then one of them, 'we tary to longe /  
perceyue you not how this Dogges oppresen vylaynly  
these valyaunt & worthy crystens?' / and anone they 32  
bended þeir crosbowes, & shot all at ones / and ouer-  
threwe down on the bridge fro their horses with that  
first shotte xxii<sup>ti</sup> paynemys. Whan the mysbyleuers  
paynemys sawe this they were sore abashed, and 36



- withdrew themself somewhat backward fro the bridge.  
 Thenne yede the cristen men, and releuyd vp their  
 felawes that were ouerthrawn on the bridge / and  
 4 thenne they made grete joye & toke good herte / and  
 the <sup>1</sup>Crosbowe men shote so ofte & so strong, that  
 there ne was so bold a paynem that durst putte his  
 foot on the bridghe / but made to come there theire  
 8 archers, & thenne bygan the scarmusshing strong &  
 grete and moche mortal. but betre had be to the  
 paynemys that they had *withd*rawe them self apart,  
 For the knightes came to the oost and reherced to  
 12 Uryan the tydings therof, the whiche moch appertly  
 armed hymself, and made hastily a thousand men of  
 armes to take theire harneys on them, & rode forth  
 toward the bridge / and ordeyned another thousand  
 16 men of armes, & C crosbowe men to folowe hym, yf he  
 nede had of them / aud commanded that all the oost  
 shuld be in ordynaunce of batayH, & betoke it to the  
 kepyng & gouernaunce of guyon his brother, and of  
 20 the maister of Rodes. Uryan thanne made the stand-  
 arde to passe fourth rydyng in batayH moche ordyn-  
 atly / and was Vryan before, hauyng a staf on hys  
 fyste, & held them wel togidre, and so vnyed, that  
 24 one marched nothing afore that other. But or they  
 were come to the bridge there were come eight thou-  
 sand paynemys, that moche strongly oppressed our  
 folke, and had putte them almost fro the bridge. but  
 28 anoone came there Vryan, whiche alyghted / toke hys  
 speere, & so dyde hys folke moche appertly / and  
 made hys banere to be dysployed abrode / and were  
 the crosbowe men on bothe sydes of hym vpon the  
 32 bridge / and then they marched fourth, and bygan to  
 oppresse and rebuke sore the paynemys, and made  
 them to *withd*rawe bakkwarde. And there Vryan  
 cryed 'Lusynen' *with* a hye voys & lowde, and yede  
 36 & marched ayenst hys enemys, hys banere euer byfore

and rescue some  
of their friends  
on the bridge  
from the pay-  
nims,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 76 b.

who retire  
to bring up their  
archers.

Urian hears of  
the skirmish,

and rides with a  
thousand men to  
the bridge,

leaving his host  
in charge of  
Guion.

Eight thousand  
paynims come  
against him,  
who at first press  
his company,

but are at last  
repulsed.  
Urian crying  
'Lusignan!'  
rushes with his  
men against the  
enemy,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 77.

drives them over  
the bridge,

presses them  
hard,

and gets his  
horses over  
the bridge.

His rear coming  
up frightens the  
paynims,

who flee toward  
their friends.

Urian's com-  
pany chase the  
pagans,

kill many,

and cause them  
to leave their  
spoil.  
The paynims  
rally with their  
friends upon a  
mountain,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 77 b.

hym. <sup>1</sup>and hys men after that assaylled the fals dogges  
moche asprely, Whiche of the other syde bygan to  
launche & to smyte. Uryan smote a paynem on þe  
brest with hys speere so demesurably, that hys spere 4  
apered at back syde of hym. they medled them  
fyersly togidre. but at last the paynemys lost the  
bridge, and many of them felH down in to the ryuere.  
And thenne passed the crystens the bridge lyghtly / 8.  
and there bygan the baytayH moche cruel, For many  
were there sore hurte & slayn on both partyes. but  
ouer the paynemys were putte abak, & lost moche of  
ground. Vryan made to passe the horses, for wel he <sup>12</sup>  
perceyued that his enemyes wold mounte on their  
horses to putte them self to flyght. Thenne came the  
arregarde that asprely passed ouer the bridge / and  
whan the paynemys perceyued them they were sore <sup>16</sup>  
affrayed / and who that myght flee, fledd toward their  
folke that lede theyre proye, oxen, kyn & shep, swynes  
& othre troussage. Uryan than lepte on horsback, and  
made hys folke to doo soo, & commanded the arrer- <sup>20</sup>  
garde that passed them ouer the bridge, that they  
shuld folowe hym in fayre ordynaunce of bataylle /  
and so they dyde / and Uryan & hys folke chased the  
paynemys that fledd sore chaffed & aferd, For al they <sup>24</sup>  
that were by Uryan, & they of hys felawship atteyned,  
were putte to deth / and endured the chasse with grete  
occysyon & slaughter þe space of fyue ooures & more.  
And thenne the paynemys ouertoke theyre folke, & <sup>28</sup>  
made them to leue behynd them alle theyre proy,  
& came vpon a grete mountayne toward Famagoce /  
and þer the paynemys reassembled, & putte them self  
in <sup>2</sup>ordynaunce. but there came Vryan & his folke, <sup>32</sup>  
their speris on their fystes alowe / at that recount-  
ryng were many one slayn & wounded sore, of one  
syde & of other / the paynemys susteyned the stoure  
strongly, For they were a grete nombre of folke. but <sup>36</sup>

Uryan assaylled them vygourously / and so moche he  
 dide there of armes that all were abasshed, and had  
 grete wonder of it. Then came thither the arregarde  
 4 that was of a thousand men of armes, & C crosbowe  
 men which entred, & marched sodaynly vpon theyre  
 enemyes, & faught so strongly that the paynemys were  
 putte abacke, & lost ground. and so fyersly was  
 8 shewed there the cheualry & hardynes of Cristen folke,  
 that soone they had the vycory, and putte theyre  
 enmys to flight, of whiche lay dede on the place foure  
 thousand & more, *without* them that were slayn at for-  
 12 sayd bridge / and the chasse endured vnto nygh the  
 oost & siege of the paynemys. Thenne Vryan made  
 hys folke to *with*drawe them, and ledd *with* them the  
 proye that the paynemys had lefte behynd. And  
 16 thus within a short while they eslongyd ferre one fro  
 other / and our folke retourned to the bridge / and the  
 paynemys went fourth to theire oost cryeng alarme.  
 Wherfore euery man went to harneys, & yssued out of  
 20 theire tentes / and thenne one of them recounted to  
 the sawdan all thaduenture *pat* happed to them. And  
 whan the sawdan herd of it, he wondred moch who  
 might haue brought *pat* folke, that so grete harme &  
 24 *dommage* had born vnto hym. Thanne was there grete  
 affray in thoost, & grete noyse of trompettes. Wherof  
 they of the Cite merueylled what thing it might be, &  
 armed them self / and eueryone was in his garde / and  
 28 there <sup>1</sup>came to the gate one of the knightes that were  
 at forsayd brydge, whiche had putte hym in auenture  
 to passe through all thoost, and knewe the convyne<sup>2</sup> of  
 one parte & of other, also the grete fayttes of armes that  
 32 Vryan had don / he escryed hye *with* a lowde voys /  
 'open the gate! For I bring you good tydynges.' And  
 thenne they demanded of hym what he was / and he  
 ansuerd, 'I am one of the knightes of the fortres of the

but Urian and  
 his guard

again put them  
 to flight,  
 and slay another  
 four thousand  
 of them;

after which  
 Urian retires  
 with the booty.

The paynims  
 alarm the  
 Sultan,  
 who is surprised,  
 and wonders who  
 can have so de-  
 feated his men;

he sounds his  
 trumpets,  
 which alarm the  
 people in Fama-  
 gosse, and they  
 arm themselves.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 78.

A knight of  
 Urian's arrives  
 at the town,

and tells them  
 that he brings  
 good tidings;

being led before  
the King of  
Cyprus,

he recounts the  
victory.

The king is glad,

and sends the  
knight to his  
daughter,

2 fol. 78 b.

who asks about  
the battle,  
and Urian.

The knight says  
Urian is the  
bravest and  
strongest knight  
he has ever  
seen.,

blak mountayne.' And thanne they opend the gate,  
and he entred, and they ledd hym toward the king,  
that soone knew hym. For other tyme he had seen  
hym. The knight then enclyned hym before the 4  
king, and made to hym the reuerence / and the kinge  
receyued hym moche benyngly / and demanded to hym  
som tydynges; and he reherced to hym worde by word  
all the faytte / and how Vryan dyde, & had rescued 8  
the proye / also of thauenture of the bridge, and alle  
other thinges, & how hys entencion & wylle was for to  
gyue batayll to the sawdan, and to reyse the siege / &  
that shortly / 'By my feyth,' sayd the kyng, 'that 12  
man ought me god wyll, for to rescue my land of the  
fel & cruel dogges paynemys / and for the holy feyth  
crysten to susteyne & enhaunse / and, certaynly, <sup>1</sup>I  
shaft to morne doo fele to the sawdan þat my socour 16  
& help is nygh redy to my behauf & playsire, & that  
I doubte hym not of nothing.' 'My frende,' said the  
kyng to the knyght, 'goo & say these good tydynges to  
my doughter.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'right gladly.' 20  
Then came he in to the chambre where the mayde  
was, and <sup>2</sup>moche humbly salued her, and reherced to  
her all the auenture. 'How, sire knight,' said she,  
'were ye at that bataylle?' 'By my feyth, damoyselle,' 24  
ansuerde the knight, 'ye.' 'And how,' sayd she, 'that  
knyght that hath so straunge a face, is he such a fyghter  
as men saye?' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, ye  
more than a houndred tymes / For he ne dreddeth no 28  
man, al be he neuer so grete & so pusysaunt. And  
wete it what that men saye to you of hym / he is one  
of the moost preu & hardy knightes that euer I sawe in  
my lyf.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the damoyselle, 'yf he 32  
had now hyerid you for to preyse & speke wel of hym,  
he hath wel employed hys coste.' 'By my feyth, my  
damoyselle, I spake neuer with hym. but yet he is betre

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Je ferai demain sentir.*



- worthy than I telle you.' Then she answered to the knight, <sup>1</sup>'goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte.' And here leueth thystorye to speke of the  
 4 mayde / and retourneth to Vryan, þat abode at the bridge, and founde hys oost lodged at this syde of the bridge / And also the Captayne þat had brought the men of armes, that he leuyed fro the garnysones & for-  
 8 tresses vnto the nombre of V<sup>ML</sup> men of armes, with two thousand V. C. crosbowe men / and also there were many footmen / And þey were alle lodged in the medowe at the other syde of the ryuere. Where  
 12 Vryan found his pauyllon dressed vp / and the other that had be at the pursyewte & chaas of the paynemys, they lodged þem that nyght the best wyse they coude, & made good watche. And here resteth thystory ther-  
 16 of, and bygynneth to speke of the kyng of Cypre, that was moche joyous & glad of the socours that was come to hym / and regrayed deuoutely our lord of it / and in that party passed the nyght. But who  
 20 someuer was glad that was Ermyne, For she coude not by no manere in the world haue out of her thoughte Vryan, <sup>2</sup>and desired moche to see hym for the well that it was said of hym / in so moche that she said in  
 24 herself, that yf he now had the vysage more straunge & more contrefaytte than he had / yet he is wel shappen for his proesse & bounte to haue the doughtir of the moost high kyng in the world to hys paramour. And  
 28 so thoughte the damoyselle al the nyght on Vryan, For loue by hys grete power had broughte her therto. Here resteth thystorye to speke of her, & bygynneth to speke of the kyng her fader.
- 32 **T**he hystorye recounteth here, that on the morne at the spryng of the day, the kyng had hys folke all redy, & yssued out of the Cyte with a thousand men of armes, and wel a thousand of Crosbowemen;

Urian rests that night in his tent.

The King of Cyprus was glad at the victory,

and his daughter Ermine thought ever of Urian,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 79.

his strange visage, and his bravery,

because love by its great power had hold of her.

In the morning the king with a host

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Amy, bonté vaulx mieulx que beaulté.*

went out of the  
city and fought  
the enemy,

giving no  
quarter.

The paynims  
come in great  
force,

and the King of  
Cyprus shows  
great bravery.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 79 b.

The Sultan,  
bearing a  
poisoned dart,  
comes with a  
great company,  
and seeing the  
king, strikes him  
on the left side  
with it,

which causes the  
king great  
anguish. He  
pulls out the  
dart, and throws  
it at the Sultan,  
but missing him  
it kills a paynim  
warrior.

and some brygandyners were embusshed at bothe  
thendes of the barrers, for to helpe & socoure hym yf  
he were to moche oppressyd by the paynemys. And  
pen the king entred in to thoost, & bare grete domage 4  
to hys enemys. For he had commanded vpon peyne  
of deth that none shuld take eny prysoner, but that  
they shuld putte aH to deth / and this dide he for  
cause they shuld not tende to the dyspoylle & proye, 8  
and that at laste he myght gader them ayen togidre for  
to withdrawe them without ony losse. And then the  
oost began to be mevyd / and who best coude of the  
paynemys came to the medlee. And whan the king 12  
perceyued that they cam with puyssaunce, he remysed  
hys folke togidre, and made to withdraw them al the  
lytil pas, and came behynde, the swerd in his fyst.  
And whan he sawe a knight approuche, he retourned 16  
& made hym to recule abacke. but yf he atteyned  
hym, he chastysed hym so that he no more had  
langyng to siew<sup>1</sup> hym. And there the kyng dide so  
wel & so valyauntly, that euery one sayd he was 20  
moche preu & worthy of his hand / and there ne <sup>2</sup>was  
so hardy payneme that oo stroke durst abyde. Then  
came the Sawdan with a grete route of paynemes,  
armed on a grete hors, that held a dart envenymed. 24  
And thaune whan he aspyed the king, that so enyl  
demened his folke, he cast at hym the darte yre, &  
hytte hym at the synester syde, in suche wyse that he  
perced hym thugh & thrughe, For hys harneys coude 28  
neuer waraunt hym / And soone after the kyng felt  
grete anguysshe, and drew the dart out of hys syde,  
and supposed to haue cast it agayn to the Sawdan / but  
the Sawdan tourned hys hors so appertly that the dart 32  
flough besyde hym, & smote a payneme thugh the  
body in suche wyse that he fell doune dede. And  
whan the sawdan, that ouermoeche had auanced hym

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *suyrir*.

self, wende to haue retourned, the kyng smote hym  
 with his swerd vpon the heed of hym, that he ouer-  
 threw hym to therthe. Thenne cam the paynemes  
 4 there so strong that they made the kyng & hys folke  
 to withdraw backe / and thenne was the sawdan  
 redressed & remounted agayn vpon a grete hors. And  
 thenne was þe prees grete, and the paynemes were  
 8 strong / in so moche that they made the kyng & his  
 folke to withdrawe vnto theire barrers. Thanne bygan  
 the Cyprians, that kept the passage there, to shote &  
 to launche on the paynemes so strong that they dyed  
 12 the place with the blood of theire enemyes. but so  
 strong were the paynemys, that they gaynstode the  
 crysten / and also the king had lost moche of hys  
 blood, & waxed feble, and hys folke bygane to be  
 16 abasshed. And how be it that the king suffred moche  
 dolour & payne, neuertheles he resioysshed moche hys  
 people & encouraged them, and so moche they dide  
 that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them /  
 20 but that they lost twyces <sup>1</sup>asmoche more / and was  
 the scarmusshing moche fyers & peryllous. And thus  
 the kyng of Cypre, by hys valyaunce & noble herte,  
 recomforted his folke. and though he felt grete payne  
 24 & woo, he full wel remysed hys folke into the toun.  
 And it was grete meruayll how so grete a lord, wounded  
 to the deth, myght sytte on horsbake / but the stroke  
 was noping mortall but for the venyme, For the dart  
 28 was envenymed / and wel it appered within a lytil  
 tyme after, For he deyde of that same stroke. but for  
 certayn he had the herte so full of valiauntnes, as the  
 faytte shewed it, that he ne dayned not make signe  
 32 of eny bewayllyng before his folke, vnto tyme that one  
 of the barons perceyued att his senyster syde dyed with  
 bloode / the whiche Baron sayd to the king: 'Sire,  
 ye abyde to long here / come & make your folke to  
 36 withdrawe them in to the toun or it be more late,

The Sultan, ad-  
 vancing too near  
 the king, is over-  
 thrown by him,

but is rescued by  
 his people,

who at last drive  
 the Cyprians  
 back;

but these shoot  
 so well that  
 many paynims  
 are killed.

The king now  
 begins to be faint  
 from loss of  
 blood.

His people are  
 abasshed, but,  
 encouraged by  
 him, they fight  
 well, and slay  
 many more of  
 their enemies.

1 fol. 80.

At last he con-  
 ducts his folk to  
 the town, still on  
 horseback.  
 Though suffer-  
 ing from the  
 poisoned wound,

he makes no sign  
 of pain, but a  
 baron seeing the  
 blood on his side  
 advises him to  
 withdraw.

This baron with  
some archers  
continues the  
fight,

which makes the  
Sultan angry,  
who calls on his  
people 'to do  
well,'

upon which  
they fight  
vigorously.

The king, though  
in great pain,  
comes to the  
rescue,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 80 b.

and the paynims  
are driven back;

afterwards the  
king and his  
people return  
to the town,  
where they learn  
of the king's  
wound; at which  
they mourn.

The king en-  
courages them,

and tells them  
he may soon be  
healed,

For the nyght approucheth / to thende that your  
enmyes putte not them self thurgh the medlee emong'  
vs.' The kyng, whiche felt grete sorowe, ansuerd to  
hym thus: 'Doo therof after your wylle.' This knyght 4  
thenne made a houndred men of armes, that were  
reffresshed, to come before the barriere, & made to  
bygynne ayen the scarmusshing with an C crosbowe  
men; and so were the paynemes sette abacke, wherof 8  
the sawdan was full of grete anger, and escryed to  
hys folke: 'fourth lordes & barons, peyne your self  
to doo wel, For the toun shalbe oures this day: hit  
may not escape vs.' And thenne enforced ayen the 12  
medlee. And there ye had see wel assaylled &  
ryght wel deffended, of that one part & of that other.  
But whan the kinge of Cypre sawe that the paynemes  
strengthened them soo, he toke courage grete, & ranne 16  
vpon them vygourously / and there he suffred so moche  
peyne pat all the synewes<sup>1</sup> of hys body were open,  
wherof, as some <sup>2</sup>sayen, his lyf was shorted / and by  
that same enuahissing were putte aback the paynemes, 20  
& many of them wer slayn & sore wounded. The nyght  
thenne approuched, and was nygh / and grete harme  
& losse was there of both partes. but alwayes the  
paynemes withdrew them vnto theire oost, For the 24  
king encouraged hys folk soo that they ne doubted no  
stroke nomore than yf pey had be of yron or of stele.  
And whan the paynemes were departed, the kinge &  
hys folke retourned in to the toun. And whan they 28  
knew the euyl auenture of theire king, they beganne to  
sorowe & to make grete dueil. And the kynge, that  
sawe this, sayd to them: 'My good folke, make no  
suche waymenting<sup>1</sup> ne sorowe, but thinke wel to def- 32  
fende you ayenst the Sawdan / and god our sauour  
shalbe at your ayde & helpe, For yf it playse hym I  
shaH soone be heeled.' Thenne was the people peased

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *raines*.



ayen. but neuerþeles, the kyng that said suche wordes  
 for to resioysshē hys peuple, felt in hym self that he  
 coude not escape fro deth. And thenne he commanded  
 4 to his folke they shuld make good watche, and gaf  
 hem leue, & came to the palleyes, and there alyghted  
 & yede in to hys chambre / And thenne came hys  
 doughter, that somewhat had vnderstand of hys mys-  
 8 aventure. but whan she perceyued that hys harneys  
 was all rede with bloode, and sawe his wounde, she  
 fell down in a swoune, & lay as she had be deed.  
 Thenne commanded the kyng that she shuld be borne  
 12 in to her chambre / and so it was doon. After the  
 Cyrurgiens came to see the kingis wounde, and was  
 leyed on his backe along his beed / and they told hym  
 that he was saaf fro perill of deth, and that he shuld  
 16 not be abasshed. 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I  
 wote wel how it is *with* me / the wylle of god be doo /  
 hit may not be kepte so secretly but that it shalbe  
 knowne thrughe the Cyte.' And thenne byganne þe  
 20 sorowe moche grete among the Cytezeyns & peple of  
 the Cyte, and more *without* comparacion than it was  
 byfore. But here resteth thystorye of the kyng & of  
 the siege / and shal speke of Vryan and of his brother,  
 24 and how they exployted afterward. /

**I**n this parte, saith thystorye, that on the morow  
 erly, that was thursday, was Vryan after hys masse  
 herde byfore hys tente / and there he made come,  
 28 one after other, all the Captayns & chieftayns *with*  
 their penons & standarts, and their folke vnder them  
 all armed of all pieces, for to behold & vysyte their  
 harneys, yf eny thing wanted / as wel the straungers /  
 32 as hys owne folke / and beheld wel the mayntene &  
 contenance of them. And after this was doo he  
 made them to be nombred / and they were founde by  
 extymacion about ix. or ten thousand fyghting men.  
 36 Thenne said to them Vryan: 'Lyste, all fayre lordes,

but at the same  
 time he knew  
 he was near  
 death.  
 The king orders  
 good watch to be  
 kept;

is visited by his  
 daughter,

who faints at the  
 sight of his  
 wound and the  
 blood on his  
 armour.

The surgeons  
 tell the king he  
 is safe;

but the king says  
 he knows well  
 how it is with  
 him.

1 fol. 81.

The people of  
 the city mourn  
 for their king.

In the morning  
 Urian hears  
 mass,

reviews and  
 numbers his  
 men,

finding between  
 nine or ten  
 thousand in all.

He addresses  
 them.

'It is their duty  
to maintain the  
faith of Christ,  
who died for  
them,

even at peril  
of life,

though our  
enemies are ten  
to one against us.

Alone, Christ  
fought for our  
redemption.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 81 b.

If you die,  
salvation and  
Paradise awaits  
you.

Soon I will  
march;

but if there be  
any whose heart  
is not steadfast,  
let him with-  
draw,

for one coward  
has often spoiled  
a great under-  
taking.

we are here assembled for to susteyne the feyth of Jeshu  
cryste, of the whiche he vs alle hath regenered and  
saued / as eche of vs knoweth wel ynoughe how he  
suffred cruel deth for the loue of vs, to thende he 4  
shuld bye vs ayen fro the peynes of helle. Wherefore  
lordis, seen & considered in our hertes that he hath  
doon to vs suche a grace, we ought not to reffuse the  
deth, or such auenture as he shal gyue vs, for to 8  
deffende & susteyne the holy sacraments that he hath  
admyntystred vs for the saluacion of our sowles /  
though that we now haue adoo with strong partye.  
For our enmys ben tene ayenst one to the regarde of 12  
vs / but what therof we haue good ryght, For they  
are come to assayll vs without cause vnto our right  
herytage / and also we ought not to resoynge ne  
dylaye therefore. For Jhesu Criste toke alone the warre 16  
for our redempcion, And by hys deth alle good folke  
that kepen his comman<sup>2</sup>dements shal be saued. ye  
oughte thenne to vnderstand aH certainly, that alle  
thoo that shuH dye in this quarelle, mayntenynge & 20  
enhaunsyng the feyth, shal be saued, & shal haue the  
glorye of Paradys / And perfore, fayre lordes, I tell you  
in generaH that I haue entencyon, god byfore, to meue  
presently for to approche our enmys, and to fyght 24  
with them as soone as I may. Wherefore, I praye you  
frendly, that yf there be ony man in this place that  
feleth not his herte ferme & stedfaste for to withstande  
& abyde thauenture, such as it shal playse to god to 28  
send vs / that he withdrawe hym self apart fro other,  
For by one only Cowarde & feynted herte is sometye  
lefte & loste al a hoole werke. and wete it that, al thoo  
that wyl not comme with their good wyH, as wel of 32  
my folke as of other,<sup>3</sup> I shaH gyue them money

<sup>3</sup> 'Wha will be a traitor-knave?

Wha can fill a coward's grave?

Wha sae base as be a slave?

Let him turn and flee!' (*Scots wha hae.*)

- ynoughe & syluer for theyre sustenaunce & fyndyng  
for to passe ouer the see ayen.' After these wordes he  
made hys banere to be dressed a bowe shote fro the  
4 valey, vpon the mounteyne, and ordeyned hys brother  
Guyon for to hold & bere it / and after he said, al on  
hye, in heryng of hys folke / 'Ah they that entenden,  
& haue deuocion for to auenge the deth of Jeshu  
8 criste, to thenhaunsyng of the holy feyth cristen, Also  
to ayde & helpe the kynge of Cypre, lete hym with-  
drawe hym self vnder my banere / and they that ben  
of contrary wyH, lete them passe ouer at the oþer syde  
12 of the bridge.' Thanne whan the noble hertes herde  
hym saye thoo wordes. they held it to grete wysedome  
of hym, & of grete prowessse & worthynes, & went alle  
in a companye togider vnder his banere, wepyng for  
16 Joye & for pyte of the wordes that Vryan had said /  
ne none delayed ne taryed for nothing, but yede aH  
vnder hys banere, as said is / Thenne was moche  
gladde Vryan, and joyous, and anone he made his  
20 trompettes to be blowen vp, and all was troussed<sup>1</sup> &  
putte them self on theire way. And thanne the  
<sup>2</sup>maister of Rodes, and the Captayne of Lymasson  
putte them self assembled togidre, and rode in fayre  
24 batayH, And said wel that ayenst Vryan and his folke  
no man shal endure / And thus they rode tyl they  
came nygh to the mountayne / and as half way to the  
place where the batayH had be the day byfore. 'By  
28 my feyth, lordes,' sayd Vryan, 'there nygh that yond  
ryuere were good that we went to be there lodged tyl  
we were refresshed. And in the meane while we shal  
see and aduyse how we shaft for the moost surest way  
32 hyndre & adommage our enmyes' / And they ansuerd  
that so was good to doo. They went thenne aH togider,  
to thende they were not founde abrode, & lodged þem  
self there. Now leueth here of them thystorye / and  
36 bygynneth to speke of the Sawdan. / <sup>1</sup> Fr. *troussé*.

Urian gives  
Guyon his  
banner,

and calls on all  
who want to  
avenge Christ's  
death,

and to help the  
King of Cyprus,  
to come under it,

and march across  
the bridge.

The noble hearts  
heard him,  
and were glad,  
and marched  
under his  
banner.

The trumpets  
are sounded,  
and the march  
begins;

<sup>2</sup> fol. 82.

they come to a  
mountain,

and halt for  
refreshment,  
and to hold  
council.

On the Sultan's  
spies telling him  
the state of the  
city,

and of the soc-  
cour coming,  
and of the illness  
of the king,

he orders an  
assault.

The townspeople  
defend them-  
selves by shoot-  
ing stones, pitch,  
hot oil,  
and overturning  
the enemy's  
scaling ladders.

The Sultan urges  
on the assault,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 82 b.

and promises the  
first man that  
enters the city his  
weight in silver.

They attack  
vigorously,  
and are pelted  
with logs of  
wood, burning  
oil, molten lead,  
quick lime,  
sulphur, and  
brimstone on fire,

and are obliged  
to retire,

Thystorye sayth that the Saudan had hys espyes  
within the Cite, whiche aspyed secretly þe Con-  
vyne of them of the toune. Wherby he knew that  
socours & help came to the kyng / and also how 4  
the kyng was sore wounded, wherof the people was  
gretly troubled. Thanne had the sawdan cause to do  
assayh the toune / and he made to blowe trompettes  
whan þe sonne was vp, and ordeyned his bataylles, and 8  
his Crosbowes & paueys,<sup>1</sup> and came vnto the dyches &  
barryers. There bygan the scarmusshing outrageously  
fyers / they shotte with Crosbowes demesurably of one  
part & of other. There were many paynemes slayn, 12  
For they within the toune shotte many gones,<sup>2</sup> &  
cast vpon them fro the batelments of their walles  
grete stones, pyche & grece brennyng hoot, and reuersed  
them fro the ladders vnto the botome of the dyches. 16  
Thenne came the Sawdan fourth, cryeng with a high  
voys, 'Now, lordes, deffende yourself worthily, & lete  
vs take toune or ony socours come to our enemyes,  
For on my god Machomete, he that first shaht entre 20  
<sup>3</sup>the toune, I shaht gyue hym hys pesaunnt or weyght  
of syluer in suche estate as he entre in to it.' Who  
thenne had see them assaylle & cleme vp to the  
walles, and putte them self in parellous passage, he 24  
shuld hane be meruaylled. But they that were vpon  
the walles within, fourth cast on them <sup>4</sup>grete logges of  
wode, brennyng oyle, lede molten / tonnes & barels  
full of vnquynched lyme, and vesselles full of flaxe 28  
greycyd with oyle and mixtyouned with brymstone and  
sulfer, al ardaunt & brennyng / so that magre them  
they were fayn to relenquyshe the place, and to  
remounte at another syde of the waht: and there 32

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *pavilliers*.      <sup>2</sup> Fr. *gros canons et d'esprin galles*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *pierres, pieux agus, huilles chaudes, plong fondu, poinsons plains de chaulx vive, tonneaux plains destouppes engressées et ensouffrées tous ardens*.



abode many paynemys al brent and sore hurt. And  
 thanne the Sawdan made thassawte to be strengthened  
 with new folke / but they *within* forth deffended them  
 4 ful valyauntly as pren & hardy. Also they were more  
 vygourous of herte, for that they knew theire socours  
 commyyng, that was nygh. Here I shall leue of pis  
 matere / and shal say how Vryan dide, whiche had  
 8 sent hys espyes to knowe how it was of the siege / And  
 they reported to hym how the saudan gaaf grete &  
 contynuel sawtes to the Cite / and that *without* shortly  
 it were socoured, they were *within* in grete daunger /  
 12 and how the kynge was syke & sore wounded. Whan  
 vryan and Guyon vnderstode these tydynges, they were  
*within* them self wel angry and fylled with sorowe /  
 but no grete semblaunt they made of it, to thende  
 16 theire folke shuld not be of lesse courage therfore. /

many burnt  
 and hurt.  
 The Sultan  
 renews the  
 assault, but  
 the townfolk,  
 knowing of the  
 socours, fight  
 vigorously.

Urian's spies tell  
 of the assault on  
 Famagosse,  
 and the sore  
 need of the  
 King of Cyprus,

at which he  
 sorrows, but dis-  
 sembles his grief.

## Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce.<sup>1</sup>

2 **I**n this parte sayth thystorye, that whan Vryan herde  
 20 the tydynges forsaide, he made to sowne his trom-  
 pettes, and made thoost to be armed, and departed it  
 in foure bataylles; wherof of the first batayll he hym-  
 self was conductour, hys brother lede the seconde, the  
 24 maister of Rodes was Chieftayn of the iii<sup>de</sup>; And the  
 foureth was conduyted & lede by the Captayn of  
 Lymas. And he made to abyde in the valey all the  
 sommage, and mad it to be kept with a houndred men  
 28 of armes and fyfty cros bowemen. And after they by-  
 gane to mounte the hille, And fro thens they sawe  
 how the paynemes assaylled moche strongly the Cite.  
 And thenne Vryan said to his folke / 'Lordes, that  
 32 folke is of grete nombre / but no doubte they be oures /

<sup>2</sup> fol. 83.

Urian sounds  
 to arms,  
 and marches his  
 host in four  
 battalions,

leaving the  
 baggage with a  
 guard in the  
 valley.

At the hill they  
 see the battle,  
 and the great  
 number of the  
 pagans.

<sup>1</sup> Famagusta (named by Augustus after the battle of Actium, Fama Augusta), on the west coast of Cyprus, south of the ancient Salamis, the only harbour in the island.

Urian encourages them to expect victory.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 83 b.

They march forward; the paynims at first take them for friends, but recognizing them, are sore afraid.

Urian's battalion enters the fight; two other battalions march forward between the enemy's watch and the city.

At last all four battalions march together against the enemy.

The Sultan learns that his camp is captured,

and sees the forces marching against him;

becomes angry, sounds for his warriors to retire.

But Urian's battalion falls: on them before they have time to do so,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 84.

and god before they shalbe dyscomfyted by vs / and that right soone. goo we thenne ayenst theire oost / and so fourth without dylayeng to them that sawten the Cite. <sup>1</sup>and I wene with goddis grace that they 4 shal not endure long ayenst vs.' And they ansuerd, 'that good it was for to doo soo.' Thenne he wold descende the mountayne and haue passed at back syde of the oost; but whan they supposed to haue passed 8 fourth, the paynemes perceyued that they were not of theire folke / they cryed alarme and were sore aferd. Thanne sayd Vryan to the Captayn, that with aH his bataiH he shuld entre thoost to fight ayenst them that 12 were there. There bygan a mortal medlee, And Vryan and the other two bataylles yede ferther, & putte them self atwix the watche & them that assaylled the Cite / and so long they sawted, that alle they that kepte theire 16 lodgis and of peire watche were slayn and dystroyed, and incontynent aH the foure bataylles in fayre ordyn- aunce marched fourth toward the other that strongly assaylled. But one came to the sawdan, and said to 20 hym how the tentes & pauyllons were take, and alle they that kepte them slayn / 'and they that haue doon pat faytte, ye may see them commyng hitherward, the moost strong and feH folke that euer I sawe ne herde 24 speke of.' The saudan thanne loked abacke, and sawe baners & standartes and hys ennyes commyng in fayre ordynaunce / and so nygh togider that they semed not in nombre to be as moche by the half as they were. 28 Thenne was the Saudan abasshed and wood angry / and made to sowne hys trompette to withdrawe & assemble his folke togider. But or they were half assembled, Vryan came first with hys batayH / and with a grete 32 courage ran vpon them moche asprely, And per began thoceysyon & slaughter moche grete / but for certayn the grettest losse tourned on the paynemes, For <sup>2</sup>they had no leser for to putte them self in aray of baytaylle, and 36

were sore wery of thassawte / & none of them were  
 vnder his banere whan Vryan and his folke ranne vpon  
 them, whiche were aspre & harde and fuþ wel wyst  
 4 the crafte of armes, wherfore many of the paynemes  
 putte them self to flight. But the sawdan, that was ful  
 of grete courage & of grete vasselage, realyed his folke  
 about hym, & delyuered & gaf ryght a grete sawte to  
 8 our folke moche proudly. There were many men slayn  
 & sore wounded / and made hym self to be redoubted  
 and dradde, For he held a two handes ax / and smote  
 with at lyfte syde and at the ryght syde that none  
 12 myght susteyne hys strokes that were about hym.  
 But whan Vryan perceyued hym þat so sore demened  
 his folke, he was fuþ woo, and said in hymself, ' By my  
 feyth, it is grete pyte & dommage that yonder Tureke  
 16 byleueth nat on god, For he is moche preu & valyaunt  
 of his hand ; but for the dommage that I see he doeth  
 on my folke, I ne haue cause to forbere hym ony more /  
 and also we be not in place where grete & many wordes  
 20 may be holden.' Thenne he braundysshed hys swerd  
 and with a fyers contenaunce rane vpon the Saudan /  
 And whan he sawe hym commyng he refused hym not,  
 but toke his ax and wende to haue smyten vryan withal  
 24 vpon the crosse of the heed / but Vryan eschiewed  
 the stroke ; the ax was pesaunt and heuy, and with that  
 vayne stroke it scaped fro the Saudans handes. And  
 thanne Vryan smote hym vpon the helmet a grete  
 28 stroke with all his might / and was the sawdan so sore  
 charged with that stroke that he was so astonyed and  
 amased that he neyther sawe nor herde, and lost the  
 brydel and the steropes, and the hors bare hym where  
 32 he wold. And Vryan <sup>1</sup>pursiewed hym nygh, and yet  
 agayn atteyned hym with his trenchaunt swerde betwix  
 the heed & the sholders, For his helmet was aþ vnaced  
 and his hawtepyece felt of with the forsaid stroke,  
 36 wherfore with his second stroke vryan made hys swerde

kills many of  
 them, and puts  
 others to flight.

The courageous  
 Sultan rallies  
 his people,  
 and assaults the  
 Christian folk  
 severely.

Urian seeing the  
 bravery of the  
 Sultan,

regrets he be-  
 lieves not in  
 God ;

but because of  
 the damage he is  
 doing,

rides against  
 him,

stuns him,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 84 b.

and with a  
second blow  
wounds him so  
that he falls from  
his horse.

At length the  
Sultan dies from  
loss of blood.

Urian, Guion and  
their followers  
fight so well

that in a short  
time they take  
or slay all their  
enemies.  
After the battle  
they lodge in the  
pagans' camp,

where the  
brethren fairly  
divide the booty.

to entre in the sawdants flesshe, in so moch that he  
detrenched & cutte the two maister vaynes of his nek,  
and feH doune fro hys hors to the erthe. And there  
was so grete prees of horses of one parte and of other, 4  
that the stoure of batayH was there so aspre and so  
mortaH that hys folke might not help hym / and lost  
so moche of hys blood that he most there deye in grete  
dystres & sorowe / And soone after that the paynemes 8  
knew that the saudan was deed they were affrayed and  
moche abasshed, and neuer aftir they fought with no  
good herte. Thanne Vryan and his brother Guyon  
esprouued themself there, & faught so strongly, gyuyng 12  
grete & pesaunt strokes, that wonder it was to see.  
And wete it wel þat bothe Cypryens & Poytevyngs dide  
so valyauntly that in short space of tyme they dystroyed  
theyre enmyes, whiche were aH slayn or take. And 16  
thenne Vryan & his folke lodged them self in the pay-  
nems lodgys / and was the sommage of the cristen sent  
fore / and the gardes and kepers of it, fayne & glad of  
the vycory, came & brought it in to thoost and lodged 20  
there / And the two brethern made the Butyn or con-  
queste to departe & deele so egaly after euery man had  
deseruyd & was worthy, þat none there was but he  
was full of Joye & content of it / And here resteth 24  
thystorye of Vryan / and shal speke of the capytayne  
of Lymas,<sup>1</sup> that soone came to Famagoce.

**I**n this parte telleth vs thystorye that after þe dys-  
comfyture of the batayH the Captayne <sup>2</sup>departed 28  
fro the two brethern, with hym xxx knightes of grete  
affayre, and came to the Cite, where the yates were  
opend to hym gladly, and entred and found the folke  
by the stretes, of whiche some made grete feeste, for 32  
þat they sawe them delyuered of their enmyes, and  
blessid the heure that euer the children of Lusignen  
were borne, and the heure also whan they entred the

<sup>2</sup> fol. 85.

The Captain of  
Lymas and thirty  
knights leave the  
brethren and go  
to the city,  
where they are  
received gladly,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Lymasson* :—Limassol, on S. coast of Cyprus.



land. And some folke made grete sorowe, grete wepynges, sore lawmentyng<sup>1</sup>, and grete bewaylling, for theire kyng þat was wounded to the deth. Wherefore  
 4 he wyst not what to thinke, For he knew not yet the kyng was hurt. And so moche he exployted that he came to the palleys, and there he alighted, where he found the people wel mate<sup>1</sup> / and he demanded of them  
 8 what they ayled, and yf they wanted of eny thing. 'By my feyth,' said one of them, 'ye / and that ynough; For we lese the moost true & valyaunt man that euer was borne in this royaume.' 'How thanne,' said the  
 12 Captayn, 'is the kyng syke?' 'Ha / a! sire,' ansuered to hym a knight, 'knowe you no more of it? We dide yssue yesterday, and enuahyssed our enmyes / and at retourne of it the sawdan smote our king with a  
 16 venymous darte, by so that no remedye nys founde therto / For we supposed euer that these two damoyseaulx had come to our ayde & help at that day, And wete it that the kingis doughtir demeneth suche  
 20 heuynes & sorowe, that grete pyte it is to see, For almost two dayes are passed that she ete no manere of mete / woo & euylhap shalbe to vs yf we lese both our king & our damoysele & lady, For yf that happed the  
 24 land were in grete orphanite of bothe lord & of lady.' 'Fayre lordes,' said the Captayne, 'aH is not yet lost that lyeth in pareH. Haue lost<sup>2</sup> in our lord Jhesu Criste, and he shall helpe you. I pray you lede me toward  
 28 the king.' 'By my feyth' / said <sup>3</sup>the knight, 'that shaH soone be doo, For he lyth in the next chambre, where euery man may goo as he had no harme / He hath alredy made hys testament, & hath ordeyned &  
 32 bequethed of hys owne good to his seruauents, so that euery one is content / and he is confessed & hath receyued our lord, and he is admynystred of aH his rightes & sacrements.' 'By my feyth,' said the Cap-

but find the folk weeping.

The Captain of Lymas proceeds to the palace,

where he learns that the King has been mortally wounded by a poisoned dart,

and that the King's daughter is sore depressed and will not eat.

The Captain asks an audience with the King,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 85 b.

who lies in the next chamber. It is granted.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *mat*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *fiance*.

On entering,  
the Captain  
makes his rever-  
ence, and is  
welcomed by the  
King,

who asks him to  
bring Urian and  
Guion, as he  
desires to reward  
them for the help  
they have given  
him.

The Captain  
promises to  
bring them,

and the King has  
the great street  
of the city  
decorated.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 86.

The Captain re-  
lates his news to  
the brethren,

and tells how the  
King wishes to  
reward them.

Urian protests

tayne, 'he is thanne in good caas / and he hath doon as  
a wyse man oughte to doo' / And thenne he entred in  
to the Chambre & enclyned hym self byfore the kyng  
that leye on his beed, and made to hym the reuerence. 4  
'Captayne,' said the kinge, 'ye be right welcome /  
and I thanke you of the good diligence that ye haue  
doo to haue accompanied these two noble men by  
whome my land is out of the subgection of the pay- 8:  
nemes, For I had no more puyssaunce to gouerne my  
folke ne my land / I pray you that ye goo & telle  
them on my behalf that pey vouchesaaf to come &  
see me or I be deed, For grete wylle I haue to make 12  
satisfaction to them to my power of the loue & cur-  
toysye that they haue shewed to me ; And also I haue  
grete desyre to see & speke with them, for certayn caas  
whiche I wyl declare vnto them.' 'My lord,' said the 16  
Captayne, 'gladly I shall doo your commandement.'  
'Now gooth thenne,' said the kyng, ' & lete hem be to  
morne with me by the houre of pryme.' The kinge  
thanne commanded that the grete strete where they 20  
shuld passe shuld be hanged richely vnto the paleys,  
and dyde doo make grete appareyl ayenst theire  
commynge. And here resteth thistory to speke of the  
king / and retourneth to saye of the Captayne. 24

**T**historye saith that so fast rode the Captayne that  
soone he came to the oost, and alighted at the  
<sup>1</sup>tente of the two brethern, that moche humbly receyued  
hym. And thenne he recounted to them how the king 28  
was sore hurt / and that affectuelly he prayed them  
that they vouchesaaf to come toward hym, so that he  
might thanke them of the noble socours that they  
had doon to hym, and to make satisfaction to them of 32  
theyre payne & dyspens to his power, and also for to  
speke with them of other matere. 'By my feyth,' said  
Uryan, 'we are not come hither for to take sawdees<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *souldoier pour argent*.

- ne for no syluer / but only to susteyne & enhaunse the  
*catholique* feyth. And we wol wel *pat* euery man  
 knowe that we haue hauoyr & syluer ynough for to pay  
 4 our folke / but alway we right gladly shaH goo toward  
 hym. And wete it that I purpose to goo toward the  
 king in suche a state as I departed fro the batayH; For  
 yf he vouchesaaf I wyl receyue of hym the ordre of  
 8 knighthode for the valyaunce & honour that euery man  
 sayth of hym. And ye, Captayn, ye may goo and telle  
 hym that to morne at that houre he hath poynted  
 bothe my brother and I and the maister of Rodes, god  
 12 before, we shal be toward hym, and a houndred of our  
 moost high barons *with* vs.' Thenne toke leue the  
 Captayne and came to the Cite, where he was receyued  
 moch honourably / and soone he came to the paleys,  
 16 where he fonde the kyng in also good poynte as he  
 lefte hym. And there was his doughter Ermyne, that  
 was fuH of sorowe for the euyl of her fader / but  
 that notwithstanding she recomforted her self moche of  
 20 this that men said to her, that the two damoyseaulx  
 shuld come there. And wete it that she moche desyred  
 to see Uryan. And thenne the Captayne salued the kyng.  
 'Ye be right welcomme,' said the kinge / 'what tydinges  
 24 bryng you of youre <sup>1</sup>message / shal I not see that two  
 gentil damoyseaulx?' 'Sire, ye,' said the Captayne /  
 'they and houndred more *with* them / and playse you  
 to knowe that they wil haue no recompense of you /  
 28 For as they saye they be not sawdyours for siluer / but  
 pay name them self sawdyours of our lord Jeshu criste.  
 And so moche, sire, hath told me Uryan / that to  
 morne, god before, or it be fullysshe pryne, he shal  
 32 come toward you in suche a poynt & state as he  
 came fro the baytaylle; For he wyl receyue thordre  
 of cheualrye and to be dowbed knight of your hand.'  
 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I lawde our lord Jeshu-  
 36 Criste, whan before my dayes be termyned, it playseth

that his only de-  
 sire is to support  
 the Catholic  
 faith,  
 and that he has  
 treasure enough;

he will however  
 go to the King  
 to be knighted.

The Captain re-  
 turns to the King,  
 who is still alive  
 and pleased to  
 see him,

as is his daugh-  
 ter, when she  
 learns that the  
 brethren are  
 coming to the  
 city

1 fol. 86 b.

The Captain  
 delivers his  
 message,

for which the  
 King thanks his  
 Saviour.

hym that I make & dowbe knight one so valyaunt & hye prynce / and wete it I shal therfore deye betre at ease.' And whan Ermyne herd of these tydinges she had so grete joye therfore in her herte, that she coulede 4 not holde her coutenaunce ne manere / but therof she made no grete semblaunt, but shewed to haue grete sorowe woo in her herte. She toke thanne leue of her fader / and sore weping kyssed hym moche swetly / 8 and she went into her chambre / and there she bygan to bewaylle her self sore / one heure for the doulour, & woo that she had for her fader / and another heure for the grete joye & desyre that she had of the sight of 12 Vryan, whos taryeng enjoyed her moche / & moche long she was in thoughte so argued and vexed therwith aH, that aH that night she coude not slepe /

**I**n this parte saith thistory, that on the morne erly 16 the king commanded that aH noble and vnnoble shuld make their houses to be appareylled <sup>1</sup> & hanged without forth euery one after his power, for to make feste & honour at the commyng of the two brethern and of 20 theyre folke / and that at euery corner of a strete shuld be trompettes and other dyuerse Instruments of musyque making grete melodye / And for certayn the peup'e endeuoyred them self wel / ye / more than the kyng had 24 commanded to be doo. What shuld I make long prologue / the two brethern within pryne came mounted moche nobly vpon two grete coursers / and Vryan was al armed, euen so as whan he came fro the batayH, 28 the swerd naked in his fyst. And Guyon, hys brother, had on a gown of fyn clothe of damaske, rychely fourred / and byfore them rode thretty of the moost hye barons in noble aray / and nygh to them was the 32 maister of Rodes and the Captayn of Lymas. And after the two bretheren came & folowed nygh thre score & ten knightes and their squyers & pages in her companye / and in fayre aray they entred in to the 36

Hermine rejoices at the news,

she kisses her father, and retires to her room, where she weeps for his wound,

and also for the joy of being about to see the brethren.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 87.

The King commands the inhabitants of the city to decorate their houses, and arranges for music in the streets.

Before prime (6 A.M.) the brethren on two coursers arrive with many of their men. Urien armed as he was at the battle, and Guion in a richly furred damask cloth gown.



- Cyte. There had ye seen the feste begynne moche grete / and the trompettes & menestrels dooyng<sup>r</sup> their crafte / And thurgh the stretes had ye sene folke of  
 4 grete honour that were moche wel and richely clothed, whiche cryed *with* a hye voys / 'ha / a welcomme be ye, prynce vycoryous, of whom we hold and are all sus-  
 cited of the cruel *seruytude* & boundage of thenemyes  
 8 of our lord Jeshu Cryst.' There had ye see ladyes & damoysselles at wyndowes in grete nombre / and thaun-  
 cyent gentylman & burgeys were merueylled of the grete fyerste of the noble Vryan, that was all armed,  
 12 the vysage dyscouered / a grene garland on his hed, an the swerd in his fyst. And the captain bare by-  
 fore hym hys helmet on a tronchon of a spere. And whan they perceyued his fyers visage <sup>1</sup>they said be-  
 16 twene them self togidre / 'that man is able and shappen for to subdue & putte vndre hym all the world.' 'By my feyth,' said the other, 'he sheweth it wel, For he is entred into this tounne lyke as he had conquerd it.'  
 20 'In name of god,' said other / 'the rescue of the daunger of whiche he hath kept vs fro is worth & ynough for a conqueste.' 'Certaynly,' said other, 'though his brother hath not so fyers a face, yet he semeth to be  
 24 man of wele & of faytte.' And so talkyng of one thing & of other they conueyed þem vnto the paleys, where they alighted. And here resteth thystorye to speke any more of the people / and bygynneth to speke how  
 28 the two brethern came before the king /

The welcome is great, what with music,

shouting, decorations, and the press of people.

The townfolk are surprised at Urian's fierceness,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 87 b.

and say he is able to subdue all the world.

At length the brethren arrive at the palace, where they alight.

Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came before the kinge, he beyng in his bed syke.

- <sup>2</sup>Thystorye sayth now that the two breþern moche  
 32 honourably came & made the reuerens to the kinge / and the kinge receyued them joyously / and thanked them moche graciously of their ayde & socours /

<sup>2</sup> fol. 88.

They make reverence to the King, who thanks them for the aid they have given him,

and says they  
have saved his  
people from  
being either slain  
or perverted,

and so he owes  
them a great  
reward.

Urian replies  
that he wants  
none,

as he desires only  
honour, and that  
the Catholic  
faith may be  
strengthened,  
and says he would  
consider himself  
well repaid if he  
and his brother  
were dubbed  
knights.

The King con-  
sents and orders  
mass to be said;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 88 b.

this done, Urian  
kneels before the  
King,

asking as his  
reward the hon-  
our of knight-  
hood for himself  
and brother.

and said to them / that after god / they were they by  
whom he & al his reaume was suscited fro the moost  
cruel passage, & more fel pan eny deth, For yf they  
had not be, the paynemys had dystroyed them aH / 4  
or had constrayned to be conuerted to theire fals lawe,  
whiche had be to vs wers & heuyer than ony deth cor-  
poraH. For they that to it had consented with herte,  
they had had for euermore dampnacion eternel / 'And 8  
therefore,' said the kyng, 'it is rayson that I rewarde  
you to my power, For I haue none other wyll than to  
endeuoyre me perto / how be it certayn that I may  
not acomplysshe to the regarde of the grete honour 12  
that ye haue me shewed / but lowly & humbly I be-  
seche you to take in worthe my lytil puyssaunce.'  
'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'of this ye ought not to  
doubte / For we be not come hither neyther to haue 16  
of you gold nor syluer / ne of your tounes, castels, ne  
landes / but only to seke honour and for to dystroye  
thenemyes of god, and to exalte the feyth catholical /  
and I wil, sire, that ye knowe that we hold our payne 20  
wel employed, yf ye vouchesaaf to doo vs so moche of  
honour that ye wyl dowbe my brother & me knightes  
of your hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'noble  
damoyseaulx, in asmoche as I am not worthy to acom- 24  
plysshe your requeste, I consent to it / but first shaH  
the masse be said.' 'Sire,' said Vryan, 'tha me semyth  
wel doon.' And thanne the chapellayne <sup>1</sup>was soone  
redy. And thenne Vryan, hys brother, and aH other 28  
deuoutly herde the messe & the seruyse deuyne, And  
after the deuyne seruyse Vryan came tofore the king.  
And thenne he drew the swerde out of the shede &  
kneled down byfore the kyng, where he laye, and sayd 32  
to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I requyre you, for alle  
the salary of my seruyce that I haue doo or may doo  
in tyme to come, that ye vouchesaf to dowbe me  
knight with this swerde / and so shuH ye haue wel 36

rewarded me of all that ye say that my brother & I  
 haue doo for you and for your realme; For of the hand  
 of a more valyaunt knyght and noble lord, I ne may  
 4 receyue the ordre of knighthe / than of yours.' 'By  
 my feyth,' said the kinge / 'damoyseau, ye shew me  
 more honour than ye owe me / and ye say moche more  
 of me than euer I deserued. but sene I considered  
 8 that grete honour is to me to dowbe you knight, I am  
 agreable therto / but after that I haue acomplysshed  
 your requeste, ye shall couenaunt with me yf it  
 playse you to graunte me a yefte, the whiche shal not  
 12 tourne you neyther to preiudice ne domage, but only  
 to your ryght grete prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,'  
 said Uryan, 'I am redy therto to acomplysse your wille  
 & playsire.' Thenne had the kyng grete joye, and  
 16 dressyng hym to sytte vp, and toke the swerde by the  
 pomel that Uryan toke hym, and therewith dowbed hym  
 knyght, sayeng, in this manere / 'In the name of god,  
 I adoube you & admytte you into thordre of a knyght,  
 20 prayeng god to putte from you all euyl.' And penne  
 gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makyng his wounde  
 opend, and out of it ranne blood through <sup>1</sup>the wrapper,  
 wherof Vryan was sory & woo, and so were all other  
 24 that sawe hym; but thenne the kyng layed hym self  
 ayen along in his bed sodaynly, and said he felt none  
 euyl. And after he commanded two knyghtes that  
 they shuld feteche hys doughter / and they dide soo /  
 28 and brought her at mandement of her fader. And  
 whan the kyng sawe her, he said thus / 'My doughter  
 thank & remercye these noble men of thayde and so-  
 coure that they haue doon to me & to you bothe, and  
 32 also to all our realme, For yf had not be the grace of  
 god & theire strengthe & puyssaunce we had be all  
 dystroyed, or at leste exilled out of our land / or ellis  
 vs to haue be conuertid to theire fals lawe that had be  
 36 wers and more importable to vs than to suffre deth

Before knight-  
 ing him the King  
 gets Urian to  
 promyse to give  
 him a gift, the  
 giving of which  
 will not impover-  
 ish Urian;

then in the name  
 of God, the King  
 dubs Urian  
 knight.  
 The exertion  
 opens the King's  
 wound,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 89.

but he is eased  
 by laying down;

then he sends for  
 Hermine,

and bids her  
 thank the  
 brethren;

temporaH' / And thenne she kneled byfore the two  
 which she does much humbly, bretheren & salued them, & thanked moche humbly  
 And wete it that she was in suche manere commouyd<sup>2</sup>  
 and is overcome by her feelings of sorrow for her father and love for Urian. as she had be rauysshed, and wyst not how to hold 4  
 contenaunce, what for the woo & sorowe that she had  
 at her herte of thanguyssh she that her fader felt / as of  
 the thoughtes that she toke for Uryan, in so moche  
 that she was as a personne that is awaked newly fro 8  
 her dreame. But thenne vryan, that wel perceyued that  
 she had her spiryte troubled, toke her vp ryght swetely,  
 and enclyned hymself byfore her, makynge moche  
 reuerence eche of them to other / and where as they 12  
 of the countre said / 'yf this noble man had take  
 oure damoysselle to his lady wel it shuld come to passe,  
 For thenne we shuld drede neyther payneme nor man  
 that wold doo vs hurt.' And thenne called the kyng 16  
 his doughtir, and to her said thus: 'My doughtir,  
 sette you here <sup>1</sup>by me, For I deme that ye shall not  
 long hold me company.' And she thanne wepyng satte  
 herself by hym. And thanne aH they that were there 20  
 bygan to sorowe & wepe for the pyte they had of the  
 kyng, And also of the sorow that they sawe the virgyne,  
 his daughter, made so pitously.

**T**hystory telleth vs that the kyng was sorowfuH 24  
 whan he sawe hys doughter take such heuynes,  
 and thenne he said amyably: 'My doughtir, lete be  
 your heuynes and your grete doulour that ye take, I  
 pray you, For that thing that may not be amended it 28  
 is folye to make therof grete sorowe / notwithstanding  
 it is raison naturel that eneryche creature be sorow-  
 fuH for hys frend & neyghbour whan that he lesith  
 hym. but, and it playse god, I shal puruey for you 32  
 so that ye shal hold you content, or I departe fro this  
 mortal world, and so shaft aH the baronye of my  
 realme' / And penne bygan the mayde to wepe more

Fr. esmeue.



haboundauntly than she dide to fore, And also all the  
 barons demened suche woo & sorowe that it was pyte-  
 4 of aH. and the kyng perceyuyng<sup>r</sup> theire doulour, he  
 said to them: 'Fayre doughter, and you, vryan and  
 guyon, this sorowe is not necessary to you, For ther-  
 with I preuaylle not nor you neyther in no manere /  
 8 but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I you com-  
 mande that ye cesse of this heuyne yf ye loue me,  
 and to haue me yet *with* you here alyue a lytil space  
 of tyme.' And thenne they bygan to cesse theyre  
 12 doulour in theire best manere, for the wordes that the  
 kyng<sup>r</sup> to them said. And ouer that spake the kyng  
 hym self dressyng to vryan, and thus said: 'Sire  
 knyght, thankyng be to you, ye cōuenaunted *with* me  
 16 a yefte whiche I purpose now to take / and *pat* shal  
 neyther touche your cheuauce nor honour.' 'By <sup>1</sup>my  
 feyth,' sayd Vryan, 'demande what it playse you, For  
 yf it be of that thing wherof I haue power I shal fulfyH  
 20 it voluntarily.' 'Gramercy sire,' sayd the kyng, 'wete  
 it that by this that I shal demande of you, shal retourne  
 to you a noble thing. Now, sire knight, I pray you  
 that it may playse you to take my doughter in mary-  
 24 age, and aH my royalme with her / And fro this tyme  
 fourth I gyue you full possessyon therof to doo ther-  
*with* your prouffyt' / And wel veray & trouth it is that  
 he had doo brought there the crowne / and with these  
 28 wordes he took it, & said / 'hold, Vryan, ne reffuse  
 not my requeste that I desyre of you.' Thenne were  
 the barons of the land so joyous that teeris fel fro  
 theire eyen for pyte & joye that they had therof. And  
 32 whan Vryan vnderstode these wordes, he called a lytel  
 remembraunce / and wete it wel he was sorowful &  
 dolaunt therof. For he was wylling to seke the straunge  
 countrees of the world and poursiewe for honour. But  
 36 alwayes for as moche as he was accorded *with* the kyng

Hermine's sor-  
row causes her to  
weep more,  
and all the  
Barons sympa-  
thize with her.

But the King  
tells them all

that their sorrow  
will not avail,  
and that it in-  
creases his pain,

and so they  
become calm.

The King re-  
minds Urian of  
the promised gift,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 90.

who says he is  
ready to fulfil  
his promise.

The King then  
asks Urian to  
take his daughter  
in marriage,  
and his kingdom  
in fee.

Urian wishing to  
see more of the  
world, hesitates.

The Baron asks him if he refuses the gift?

He replies, no;

and takes the crown and puts it in Hermine's lap,

which gladdens the King and Barons.

† fol. 90 b.

Hermine says she will see the end of her father's sickness before proceeding farther;

but the King upbraids her as desiring his death,

upon which she kneels at the King's feet, and promises to obey him.

The King bids her leave her sorrow and decorate the hall of the palace,

and prepare a feast,

of the yeste, he wold not gaynsaye it / And whan the barons sawe hym so pensefuH they cryed al with a hye voyce ryght pyteously / 'ha / a then, noble man, wilt thou reffuse the kinges requeste?' 'By my feyth, lordes 4 & barons,' said Uryan, 'no more shal I doo.' Thenne enclyned Uryan byfore the kyng wher he laye, and toke the croune and putte it in Ermynes lap, sayeng / 'Damoyselle, it is your, and sith it hath fortunied thus 8 with me, I shaH you helpe to kepe it my lyf naturel, yf it playse god ayenst al them that wold vsurpe it or putte it in subgection.' Thenne was the kinge joyful and glad, & so were al the barons. And after he dide 12 make come the archebyssshop of the Cite that asuryd them togidre. But Ermyne <sup>1</sup>said she wold see first the termynacion of her faders syknes or she shuld procide ony ferther. Thanne said Vryan, 'damoyselle, 16 sith that it playseth you to doo so I am agreable therto.' Thenne was the kyng woofuH & dolaunt, and said: 'Fayre doughter Ermyne, ye shew wel þat lytel ye loue me, whan that thinge which I desire moost to see afore 20 myn ende ye ne wyl acomplysshe. Now wel I see that ye desyre my deth.' Whan þe mayde vnderstode hym she was ryght dolaunt & sorowfuH / and wepyng kneeled byfore the king, hir fader, and said in this 24 manere: 'My right redoubted lord & fader / there nys thing in the world that I shuld reffuse you vnto myn owne deth / commande you me your playsire.' 'Ye say now,' said the king, 'as a true doughtir ought to 28 say, that is wylling for to kepe her fader from wrathe & fyre. I now thanne commande you that ye leue your sorowe, and lete this halle to be dressid and with ryehe clothes hanged, and make the masse to be said / 32 and aftir the deuyne seruise do make the tables to be couered, and after dyner make here byfore me the feste as that I were now on my feet; For wete it wel / that shal helpe & comferte me wel.' And thenne they aH 36

- endeuoyred them self to fulfyll this that he com-  
 manded. Thenne was the masse said, and sate them  
 self at dyner / & Ermyne was sette at a table that was  
 4 layed byfore her faders bedd / and Vryan with her,  
 And Guyon serued Ermyne of mete. Thanne had the  
 king grete joye, but he made betre semblaunt than his  
 herte was of power, For certayn what chere that he  
 8 made he felt grete payne & grete dolour, For the venym  
 that was within the wounde caused grete putrefyeng &  
 rotyng of his flesshe / but for to rejoye the baronnye  
 he made no semblaunt of no sorow ne <sup>1</sup>douleur / and  
 12 after dyner bygan the feest, and lasted til nyght came.  
 The king thanne called to hym vryan, and said, 'Fayre  
 sone, I wyl ye wedde my doughter to morne, and I  
 wyl delyuere vnto you the Crowne and Ceptre of this  
 16 realme, For wete it I may not long be alyue. Where-  
 fore I wil that alle the barons of þis land make their  
 homage to you byfore my deth.' 'Sire,' said vryan,  
 'sith that playseth you / your wylle & myne be one' /  
 20 And there was Ermyne present þat refussed not to  
 fulfyll her faders wyll.

After mass the  
company dine,

which pleases  
the King,

though he is in  
great pain from  
his wound.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 91.

The feast over,  
the King tells  
Urian that he  
wishes him to  
marry Hermine  
the next day,  
and to have the  
Barons make  
homage to him.

### Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre.

- 24 **O**N the morne next, about the hooore of tierce, was  
 the spouse appareylled & rychely arayed, and the  
 chappeH nobly hanged with riche cloth of gold, And  
 the Archebyssshop of Famagoce espoused them there.  
 28 And after came Vryan before the kyng <sup>2</sup>that toke the  
 Crowne, and ther withaH crowned vryan, that moche  
 of thankes rendred to the kyng therfore. Thenne  
 called the king to hym aH the barons of þe lande / and  
 32 commanded them to make their homage to kyng  
 Vryan, his sone / and they voluntarily dide soo. And  
 the masse than bygan, and after it was doo they satte

In the morning

the marriage  
takes place,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 91 b.

Urian is crowned,

and the Barons  
of the land  
render homage  
to him.



A great feast is  
given,

after which the  
espoused retire.

at dyner / and syn bygan the feste right grete, and en-  
dured tyl euen / and after souper begane ayen the  
feste / and whan tyme was the spouse was lede to  
bed / and anone aftir Vryan layed hym self by her / 4  
and the bysshop came & halowed the bed / And so  
thenne aH departed / some went to bed / and some re-  
toured ayen for to daunce. And Vryan laye *with* his  
wyf, and her acqueyntaunce toke curtoysly & wel / 8  
And on the morne they came ayen tofore the kyng /  
the masse anoone was bygone. And thither was the  
queene conueyed & lede of guyon her brother, and by  
one of the moost highe barons of the lande. 12

Urian and the  
Barons from  
Poitou visit the  
King,

who welcomes  
them.

**I**n this parte sheweth vs thistorye, that on þe next  
morne after about the hooore of pryme, kyng vryan.  
acompanied *with* the baronnye of poytou and of the  
royalme of Cipre, came byfore the king and enclyned 16  
hym self & salued hym right humbly. ‘Fayre sone, ye  
be welcome,’ said the kyng. ‘I am full joyous of your  
commynge / make my doughter to come, so shul we  
here the deuyne *seruyse*.’ Thenne came his doughtir 20  
Ermyne, wel nobly accompanied of many ladyes &  
damoysselles / and she come byfore her fader & salued  
hym full humbly. Thenne said he to her: ‘My wel  
beloued doughter, ye be welcome. I am right wel joy- 24  
ous whan god hath don to me suche a grace, that I have  
purueyed you of so hye a prynce & worthy knyght to  
your lord / and wete it that therfore I shal dey more  
easely sith that you and al my land is out <sup>1</sup>of the 28  
daunger of the paynemes, and no doubte ye haue to  
your protection and wraunt a prynce worthy & valyaunt,  
that right wel shal kepe and defende you ayenst aH  
your euyl willers, and in especial anenst thinfideles & 32  
enemys of Ieshucrist.’ And *with* that worde the Chape-  
layn bygan the masse. And whan the masse was  
celebred & said, the kyng callid to hym Vryan &  
Ermyne, & to them said in this manere: ‘My fayre 36

The King tells  
his daughter that  
he will die more  
easily,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 92.

having married  
her to a valiant  
prince.

Mass is said,



- children, ryght affettuously I pray you that ye thinke  
to loue, kepe, and honoure wel eche other / and to hold  
& bere good feyth one to other, For nomore I may  
4 hold you companye. Now thanne I recommande you  
to the blysfuH kyng of heuen, prayeng hym deuoutely  
that he gyue you peas & loue togidre, and honourable  
lyf & long.' And *with* these or semblable wordes he  
8 shette hys eyen and departed fro this mortal lyf so  
swetly that they supposed that he had be aslepe /  
But whan they were certayn of his deth the douleur  
& sorowe bygan to be grete. Thenne was Ermyne had  
12 in to her Chambre, For she demened such sorowe that  
grete pite it was to see. The kynge thenne was buried  
and his obsequyes doon ryally, and in the moost hon-  
ourable guyse that coude be deuysed after the vse and  
16 custome of the land. And wete it that all the peple  
was sorowfuH & dolaunt; but they took comfort of  
this, that they had founde & recouered a lord ful of so  
grete prowesse as Vryan was / and lytel & lytil cessed  
20 the lawmenting & heuynes. And soone after yede  
Vryan thugh al his realme to see and visite the places  
& fortres / and betoke one part of his folke to Guyon,  
his brother / and another part to the maister of Rodes,  
24 and made them to be shipped on the see, for to wete &  
knowe, for to here & knowe yf they shuld here ony  
tydynges that paynemes were on the see for to lande in  
his lande. 'For wete it wel,' said the king vryan,  
28 'that we purpose ne think not to abyde <sup>1</sup>vnto tyme  
they fetche vs, For we shaH & god before goo & vysyte  
them *within* short tyme, after that we haue ouerseen  
the rule & gouernaunce of our land.' And forasmoch  
32 departed Guyon & the maister of Rodes, & rowed on  
the see *with* thre thousand fyghting men. And here  
leueth thistorye of them / and bygynneth to shewe how  
Vryan & Ermyne went and vysited their land.

the dying King  
gives his blessing  
to his children,

and then departs  
this mortal life  
in peace.

Great sorrow is  
felt by all,  
especially by  
Hermine.

The King is  
buried,

and the people  
seeing the  
bravery of their  
new lord, cease  
their lamenting.

Urian visits the  
towns of his  
realm,

and sends some  
of his men  
to learn tidings  
of the pagans.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 92 b.

Urian and his wife are well received in their land,

and his subjects marvel at his strength.

He reappoints honest officers,

and commands Justice to be well kept.

Afterwards the King and Queen return to Famagoce.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 93.

Guion and the Master of Rhodes searching on the sea for the pagans,

Thystory saith that king Vryan, with Ermyne hys wyf, yede & vysited theire land al about, and full gladly & honourably they were receyued in euery burgh, toune, & Cite where they passed / and grete 4 yestes were presented to them / And wete it that Vryan purueyed ryght wel to all hys fortres, of all suche thinges that were necessary for the werre yf some thing befell in tyme to come. And for trouthe euery 8 one was meruaylled of his heyght, of his fyersnes, & of his puyssaunce & strengthe of body. And wel said the men of the Countree, that ferdfull & daungerous thing was to cause his wrath & anger. And thus went 12 Vrian fro place to place thurgh his royalm. And suche officers that made rayson & kept justice, he lefte them in their offices stil / but to al oper that operwyse dide than right requyreth, he purueyed of remede by 16 good & meure deliberacion of his counseill. And commanded euery one to make raison & Justice in al tymes, as wel to the leste as to the moost, without to bere eny fauour to ony of eyther partye / and yf they contrary 20 did to this hys wyll, he shuld punyssh them so cruelly that al other shuld take ensample therby. And thene he, his lady, & his folke retourned to Famagoce / and the quene was grete with child / And now resteth 24 thystorye of them, and speketh of Guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that rowed on the see by the Costes of Surye, of Damask, of Baruth, of Tuppel, & of Danette, for to knowe yf paynemes were on the see 28 or not.

<sup>1</sup> Now saith thystorye, that so long sailled & rowed the Crystens on the see, that they sawe aprouch as of a leghe nygh to them a certayn quantite of shippes, 32 but by liklyhode they might not be grete nombre. Thenne they sent a Galleye toward our folke that al redy were in ordynaunce to wete what they were / but the galey came so nygh that the cristens, our folke, 36

- toke it / and by them knew and vnderstode almaner of  
 tydynges. Oure folke thanne halid vp saylles hastily,  
 and saylled anone toward theire enmys. And whan the  
 4 paynemes perceyued them they were mochi abasshed,  
 and gretly aferd, and wend wel to haue withdraw them  
 self in to the hauen of Baruth / but our galeyes ad-  
 uaunced them, and ran vpon them by al sydes. There  
 8 was grete occysion / and shortly to say the paynemes  
 were dyscomfyted, and their nauye take / and aH were  
 cast ouerbord<sup>r</sup> or slayne. And the nauye was full of  
 grete goodes. And after our barons putte them self in  
 12 the see ayen for to haue retourned in to Cypre. but  
 by fortune & strengthe of wyndes they were cast to  
 Cruly<sup>1</sup> in Armanye. And whan the king of Armanye,  
 that was brother vnto the kinge of Cypre, knewe theire  
 16 commyng, he sent anone for to wete what folke they  
 were / And the master of Rodes said to them that  
 came to wete what they wer: 'Telle the kyng that it  
 is the brother of Vryan of Lusynen, kyng of Cypre,  
 20 that hath trauersed the see for to wete & knowe yf  
 paynemes were on it in armes, for to haue come vpon  
 the Cyprians for cause of the saudan that hath be  
 dycomfyted & slayn, and al his folke at the grete batayH  
 24 of Famagoce.' 'How,' said they of Armanye, 'is there  
 any other kyng in Cypre than our kingis brother?' 'By  
 my feyth,' said the maister of Rodes, 'ye / For the  
 king <sup>2</sup>was wounded with a dart enuenyed by the  
 28 sawdans hand in so mortal a wyse that he is deed  
 therof, and he beyng yet alyue, he gaf his doughtir in  
 maryage to Vrian of Lusynen, that slew the saudan  
 & dyscomfyted aH his folk.' Whan they thanne vnder-  
 32 stode hym, they yede & denounced it to theire kyng,  
 which was sorowfuH of the deth of his brother. but  
 not withstandyng, he came toward the see syde with  
 a grete company, and entred in to the vesseH where

take a galley and  
 learn the pagans'  
 whereabouts.

They set out for  
 the fight, and  
 gain a victory,

and set sail for  
 Cyprus;

but are driven  
 by wind to Cruly  
 in Armenia.

The King of the  
 land sends to  
 know who they  
 are,

and is sent word  
 that it is the  
 brother of the  
 King of Cyprus.

The King of  
 Armenia asks if  
 there is a new  
 King in Cyprus,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 93 b.

and the Master  
 of Rhodes relates  
 how Urian be-  
 came King there.

<sup>1</sup> *Truli* in Fr. ed. Afterwards spelt *Cruli*.

The King of  
Armenia visits  
the fleet of  
Guion,

and invites him  
to his palace,

which courtesy  
is accepted.

The King of  
Armenia is a  
widower, whose  
heir is Flory.

1 fol. 94.

This lady was  
joyful at the  
visit of the  
strangers,  
and dressed her-  
self and maids  
richly to receive  
them.

Guyon and the maister of Rodes were in. And whan  
guyon wyst of his commyng he went ayenst hym, and  
eche to oþer made grete reuerence. Thenne said the  
king to the grete Pryour of Rodes, 'Maister, sethen 4  
this yong damoyseau is brother vnto my nyghtis lord,  
I were vncurteys whan he is arryued in my land, yf I  
receyued hym not honourably as to hym apparteyneth.  
And of this I pray you, that ye vouchesaf to pray hym 8  
on my behalf, that it playse hym to come in to our  
paleys, and we shal doo to hym the best chere that we  
can.' 'By my feyth,' said the grete Pryour / 'that  
shal I doo gladly.' Thanne he spak therof to guyon, 12  
whiche ansuerd to hym right gladly, 'I wold doo a  
greter thinge yf it lay in my power for the kyngis sake.  
For good feyth & rayson requyreth it.' And thenne  
they went togider / and guyon lede with hym a fayre 16  
companye of knightes / but alwayes they had their  
cotes of stele on þem, and were in right good aray, as  
folke vsed to the faytte of armes. And here speke I  
no more of þem, And shal speke of Florye the 20  
doughter of the kyng of Armanye. /

**T**historye sayth that the kyng of Armanye had a  
doughter, and none other children / but here.  
1 And the quene, his wyf, was deed / and wete it þat 24  
this kyng and the kyng of Cypre had to their spouses  
the two susters that were doughters to the kyng of  
Malegres / and eche of them gate a doughtir on their  
wyues / of the whiche Ermyne that Vryan spoused 28  
was one / and that other was the pucelle florye of  
whome I haue bygonne to traytte. She was that tyme  
at Cruly ryght glad & joyous of the commyng of  
the straungers. She appareyllid and arayed her self 32  
moche richely, and so dide all her damoysselles. Soone  
after came the kyng her fader / guyon / the maister  
of Rodes, & their felawship, and entred in to the  
toun, and came to the palley in to the grete halle. 36



And thenne Florye, that moch desyred theire com-  
 myng, came there, and humbled herself moche ayenst  
 her fader / and the kyng said to her, 'Cherysshe and  
 4 doth feste to this noble men, & receyue them honour-  
 ably / and in especiall the brother of my nyghtis lord &  
 husband.' And whan the mayde vnderstode that, she  
 was full glad & joyous. She thenne came to guyon /  
 8 toke hym by the hand swetly, & sayd: 'Sire damoy-  
 seau, ye be right welcome in to my faders royalme.'  
 'Damoysselle,' sayd Guyon, 'gramerey to you.' There /  
 bygan thenne the feest right grete & fayre / and wel  
 12 they were festyed, & seruyd with dyuerse meetes &  
 wynes / and betwix guyon & Florye were many honeste  
 & gracyous talkyng. and wete it for certayn yf guyon  
 had had leyser, he had dyscouered his thoughte to  
 16 her. but while they were in that grete solace & joye, a  
 galeye arryued to the port that came fro Rodes / and  
 they that were within were receyued honourably of  
 them of the tounne / and joyful & right glad they were  
 20 whan they knew that theire maister was there. Wher-  
 fore one of them said to the people there, 'Sires,  
 vouchesauf to lede one of vs there <sup>1</sup>the lordes befor,  
 to aduertysse them of paynemes that ben vpon the see  
 24 in grete nombre.' Thanne was a knight brought there  
 the maister of Rodes was / and said to hym, that  
 paynemes with grete nauye were passed byfore the yle  
 of Rodes / and had taken the wind & waye toward  
 28 Cypre / and how men said that the Calyphe of Bandas  
 with all hys puyssaunce & power was there. Whan  
 the maister of Rodes vnderstode these tydynges, he  
 went & told Guyon of it. Wherfore, guyon seeyng  
 32 hym self as constrayned, humbly said to the pucelle,  
 'Damoysselle, right hertily I beseche you that ye  
 vouchesaf, sethen I moste departe your presens, to call  
 me ofte in your remembraunce / For as to my part,  
 36 your vassaill & seruaunt shal I euer be vnder the

She takes Guyon  
 by the hand,  
 and welcomes  
 him to the land.

A fair feast is  
 served,

and Guyon and  
 Flory have much  
 gracious speech  
 together.

News comes from  
 Rhodes

<sup>1</sup> fol. 94 b.

that the pagans  
 are at sea,

with a great navy  
 sailing towards  
 Cyprus.

Guyon, on learn-  
 ing this, bids  
 Flory farewell,

and asks her not  
 to forget him.

The sudden part-  
ing makes her  
sad.

Guion sets sail,

watched by Florye  
from a high  
tower.

The Caliph of  
Bandas and the  
King of Brandy-  
mount

resolve to avenge  
the slaughter of  
the Sultan.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 95.

Thinking there  
was no King in  
Cyprus,  
they sail there,

but are seen,  
and Urian is  
warned,  
and prepares to  
receive them.

standart of your gouernance.' Florye thanne knowyng  
for certayn his soudayn departyng, her herte was fylled  
with dueyl & sorowe / how wel she kept contenance  
in the best manere that she coude / and louyngly be- 4  
held guyon, whiche toke his leue of her fader, that  
conueyed hym to the see side, and grete peple with  
hym. There thenne entred guyon in to his ship, and  
commanded the sailles shuld be had vp to the wynde, 8  
that was good & propyce to them. And wete that  
Florye was mounted vp vnto the vppermost wyndowe  
of an hye tour, and neuer departed thens tyl she lost  
the sight of guyons vessel, prayeng god to preserue 12  
hym from al daunger. /

**T**hystorye recounteth & saith here that the Caliphe  
of Bandas, and the kinge of Brandymount in  
tharse, that was uncle to the saudan of Damaske, herde 16  
tydynges how the sawdan was slayn, and al his folke  
putte to grete dyscomfytur in the yle of Cypre. Where-  
fore they beyng full sory therof assembled anone theire  
power / and purposyng to auenge his deth entred theire 20  
shippes, and toke theire way toward Cypre / and <sup>1</sup>they  
supposyng the Cypriens had be without king, hyed  
them fast thitherward in suche manere that they shuld  
not be perceyued where as they shuld arryue. but þey 24  
of Rodes perceyued them, and made knowleche þerof  
vnto kyng Vryan, that alredy had assembled his peple,  
and putte them in aray for to receyue the batayll. and  
morouer had made good ordonnance and gardes for the 28  
portes, that assoone as they shuld perceyue them com-  
myng to the hauen, that they shuld make a token of  
fyre, wherby the Countrey might perceyue the commyng  
of theire enmyes, and euery man to be redy in armes 32  
thitherward / and so was the kingis proclamacion  
vpon deth. And wete it that the king kept the feldes  
in the myddes of the portes of his royalme for to  
be the sooner at the porte where the sarrasyns shuld 36

arrayue to take theire landing / And the king made so  
 grete moustre & semblaunt that he gaf his peple so  
 grete courage, that *with* hym & his enterpryse they  
 4 durst wel fight *with* the Caliphe, and *with* his puyss-  
 saunce. It happned so, by the grace of god, that the  
 see was enragid through the stormes and horryble  
 tempeste, that the sarrasyns were al dysmayed &  
 8 abashed / and the tempeste casted them in suche wyse  
 here & there, that *within* short tyme they ne wyst  
 where eyghte of theire galeyes were become. And on  
 the morowe about the hooore of pryme, thayer was al  
 12 clere, and the wynd cessed, and the sonne shone fayre  
 & clere / thenne the grete shippes of the paynemes  
 held them togidre, & toke theire way vnto the port  
 of Lymasson. And of them I leue to speke / and shal  
 16 shew you of the viii vessels that were sparpylled by  
 the tempeste, and what way they held / and in thoo  
 vessels was aH thartyllery of the paynemes, as gonnes,  
 bowes, arowes / ladders / pauys, & such habylements  
 20 of werre <sup>1</sup>as they had / and so it fortun-ed that guyon  
 and the maister of Rodes *with* theire puyssaunce re-  
 counted them, and perceyued eche other. but whan  
 oure peple knewe that they were sarasyns / and the  
 24 sarasyns knew that they were crysten people / they  
 bygane eche of them to lye and bord other *with*  
 shotte of gonnes & crosbowes / and whan they were  
 chayned togidre they threw darts as thikk as hayle  
 28 stones / and the batayH was so grete, hard, & stronge /  
 but guyon, the maister of Rodes, & theire puyssaunce  
 assaylled so manfully the paynemes that they knew  
 not to what part they shuld tourne them to defende,  
 32 For our people that were in the galeyes faught so  
 mightly that the paynemes were as dycomfyted. There  
 might men here them crye on theire goddes / nat that  
*withstanding* they were dyscomfyte & slayne. And  
 36 thanne whan theire admyraH, that was maister of the

A storm causes  
great damage to  
the Saracen  
fleet;

but on the mor-  
row they sail  
to the port of  
Lymasson.

Eight galleys full  
of stores, belong-  
ing to the Sara-  
cens, sparpylled  
by the tempest,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 95 b.

were met by the  
Master of  
Rhodes,

who attacked  
them, and fought  
so well as to  
defeat the pagan  
sailors.

The admiral  
seeing he is  
defeated,

leaves the fleet  
in a boat accom-  
panied with eight  
persons.

The Christians  
enter the ene-  
my's vessels,  
and throw over-  
board or take  
prisoners the  
Saracens.

The spoils are  
divided,

Guion sending  
his share to Flory,

1 fol. 96.

and to her father  
the King of  
Armenia.

The King wel-  
comes Guion's  
knight, who con-  
veys the present,  
and Flory is very  
joyful, for she  
loves Guion  
much.

The King of  
Armenia learns  
from his Saracen  
prisoners that  
their comrades  
have gone to  
Cyprus,

artylery, sawe the dycomfiture tourned vpon them /  
he made to be haused a lytel galyote out of the grete  
galeye *with* viii hores / and so entred he and eyghte  
personnes *with* hym of the secretest / and toke thanen- 4  
ture of the wynd / & rowed so mightly that *our* people  
meruaylled *þerof* / but they made neuer semblaunce to  
pursiew them / but entred into the paynemes vessels,  
& bygan to cast alle ouerbord. but they toke to the 8  
nombre of ij C sarasyns prysonners / wherof guyon gaf  
oo hondred to the maister of Rodes to make them  
cristen, and also two galeyes / and guyon toke the  
other hondred sarasyns and two of the moost richest 12  
vessels that they had wonne, and toke it to a knyght  
of Rodes / and thus said to hym, 'Conduyte me this  
two galeys, and þis houndred sarrasyns to Cruly, and  
recommand me to the kinge & his doughtir / and on 16  
my byhalve <sup>1</sup>presente to the pucelle Florye this two  
vessels as they are garnysshed / and to the kyng the  
houndred sarasyns.' Wherof the knyght toke the  
charge & departed, & hasted hym tyl he came to the 20  
Cite of Cruly / and dide his message as he was youen  
in commandement / and recounted to them the grete  
dyscomfiture and the valyaunt conduyte of guyon.  
'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'ye be welcome, and 24  
thankyng be to that noble damoyseau' / And the pucelle  
was so joyous of these nouuelles that she had neuer in  
her naturel lyf so grete joye. For knowe ye wel she  
loued so entierly guyon þat all her joye was of hym. 28  
The king thanne & his doughter yaf to the knight a  
riche jewel, wherof he thanked þem, and toke leue of  
them, & retourned hastily to Rodes. And anone, after  
hys departyng, the kyng of Armenye questyoned *with* 32  
the paynemes where the armee of the Calyphe was /  
and they said in Cipre to reuenge the deth of the  
sawdan of Damaske that the Cipryens had slayn in  
batayll. 'Par ma foy,' sayd the kyng, 'as for you, ye 36



haue faylled of your enterpryse' / And thenne he commanded that they shuld be feteryd with yrons, and to be putte in to parfounde pryson / and the two vessels  
 4 to be discharged, and all the goodes that were in to be borne into the Castel. It is now tyme that I speke  
 of guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that had questioned the sarasyns wher the Calyphe purposed to  
 8 land / and they said in Cypre. Guyon thenne by thauys and Counsey<sup>H</sup> of his barons for cause they had many vessels & lytel nombre of people / commanded that al thartylery that they had wonne shuld be putte  
 12 into theire shippes / and also al other thinges that were of nede to them / and the remanaunt & the vessels also /  
 he gaf to the maister of Rodes that sent them to Rodes. And whan this was don they saylled, & hasted þem  
 16 toward Cypre. And here leueth thystory to spek of them / and retourneth to speke of the galyote wher thadmyra<sup>H</sup> was in, where it became or toke porte. /

as does Guion.

Guion ships the spoils of the victory,

1 fol. 96 b.

and sets sail for Cyprus.

**T**hystory sayth that the kyng brandymount & the  
 20 Calyphe of Bandas were sorowfu<sup>H</sup> for þeir losse & grete damage / and so longe rowed thadmyral on the see that he perceyued the port of Lymasson, & sawe grete nauye byfore the toune. And whan he came  
 24 somewhat nygh he herd shotte of gonnys & sowne of trompettes, and soone after he knew that it was þe Calyphe of Bandas and his armee, & the puyssaunce of kyng brandymount of tharse,<sup>2</sup> that assaylled them of  
 28 the toune for to take it. But there was the Captayne of the place & his peple<sup>3</sup> wel paueysed, that valyauntly deffended the porte in so moche that the sarasyns gat there nought / but lost many of their men, and  
 32 wysshied ofte aftir theire galeyes with theire gonnys & artyllery that were sprad on the see by the tempeste / they wyst not where. Thenne came to them thadmyral that thus said on hye: 'By my feyth, Calyphe, woo

The boat containing the admiral and eight men is rowed to Lymasson,

where the sound of battle is heard.

The Captain of Lymasson defends his port well, and the Saracens wish for their artillery from the eight vessels, which they think are still at sea.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Tarche*.    <sup>3</sup> Fr. *v. p]atout bons parars*.

The admiral  
announces to the  
Caliph the defeat  
and loss of his  
vessels.

He is grieved,

and says that  
Fortune sleeps  
for them,  
but favours the  
Christians.

1 fol. 97.

The admiral ad-  
vises the Caliph  
not to show his  
grief for the  
reverse,  
else his army will  
lose courage;

and that he  
should withdraw  
to the port of St.  
Andrew,

where it will be  
easier to land.

The Caliph gives  
up the attack,  
and sets sail for  
St. Andrew,  
followed by a  
rampin from  
Lymasson,  
sent to learn the  
movements of  
the Saracens.

may be to you, For your nauye that I conduyted is lost  
& take, For the Cristen recountred vs vpon the see, and  
haue dyscomfyted vs / and none is scaped but only we  
that are here / and at oo word al is lost / for to hold 4  
you long compte therof that shuld preuayll you nought.  
Thenne whan the Calyphe vnderstode hym he was sorow-  
fuH & dolaunt. 'By my feyth,' said he / 'lordis, here  
ben heuy tydingses. For wel I see that Fortune slepeth 8  
as to our help / and so hath he doo long / but fauour-  
able & moche propice it is as now to crysten peple, For  
wel it appereth presently by vs / and so dide but of  
late by our Cousyn the saudan, the which & al hys 12  
people also haue be slayn or dyscomfyte in the same  
yle of Cypre.' Thenne said the admyral to hym : 'Sire,  
yf ye anounce or shew semblaunce of abasshement by-  
fore your folke that shal cause them to be half dyscom- 16  
fyte / and ouermore knowe ye to this that I perceyue  
of them of this porte & toune, that they be not shappen  
to lete you arryue & entre theire land without sore  
fyghting and grete sawtes gynyng. For they shew not 20  
to be aferd of your pyssauce. therefore I wold adnyse  
& counseyH you, that we shaH withdraw vs into the  
hye see, & lete coule them self / and about the spryng  
of the day we shalbe at a lytel porte that not ferre is 24  
hens called the port of saynt Andrew / and there with-  
out ony deffense or gaynsayeng we may take land.'  
And this they dide. And whan the Captayn of Lymas-  
son sawe hys enmyes departe, he made a rampyn or 28  
smal galeye to folow them of ferre, pat it coude not be  
perceyued of them / and aspyed how at euen they  
ancred aboute a myle nygh to saynt Andrews porte.  
Thanne retourned the rampyn hastily toward Lymas- 32  
son / and to the captayne recounted al that he had  
seen / Thenne made the captayn fyre to be putte high  
vpon the garde for manere of token / and whan they  
of the nerest garde or watching place sawe the token of 36

fyre / soone after fyre was made fro garde to garde,  
that knowleche was therof thurgh all the royalme.

The alarm is  
given throughout  
Cyprus,

Thenne euery man, what on foot & on horsbake, drew

4 them self to the place where kyng Vryan was, that al

redy had sent hys espyes to knowe wher the paynemes

shuld land, and manded to euery captayne they shuld

kepe & defend wel theire fortresses / 'For,' said he,

and spies are  
sent to learn  
where the Sara-  
cens will land.

8 'yf it playse god none of them shal not repasse the see.

And here resteth the <sup>1</sup>hystorye to speke of kyng

Vryan / and bygynneth to speke of the Caliphe. /

<sup>1</sup> fol. 97 b.

**I**n this partye sheweth thistorye / that the sarasyns

12 that were entred in to the see / as soone as þey

apperceyued the day spryng, they deceueryd, & toke

vp theire aneres, and came al in oo flotte to the porte,

& there landed. And wete it wel, that they of thabbey

The Saracens at  
daybreak  
weigh their  
anchors and land  
their men and  
artillery at St.  
Andrew.

16 of saynt andrew perceyued them wel, the whiche im-

mediatly made knowleche to Lymasson / and the Cap-

tayne of þe place gaf vnto the kyng knowlech ther-

of / the which had grete joye therof / and fourthwith

Word is at once  
sent to Urian of  
their landing;

20 bygan to apparayH hym to go to batayH. And the

Calyphe, hys enemy, made to be putte a land his

artylery out of the shippes / and dide make hys lodgis

therby, as it were half a leghe fro the port, vpon a

24 grete ryuere at a cornere of a lytel wode, to refresshe

hym & his peple also; and lefte foure thousand men

within the shippes, for theire sauegarde / and in the

meane saison guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire

28 peuple arryued to Lymasson / where men said to them

how the sarasyns had landed / and how theire nauye

was a leghe fro saynt Andrewes porte. 'By my feyth,'

sayd Guyon, 'we shal thanne goo & vysyte them / For

and Guion learns  
that their navy is  
unprotected,

32 who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of

them shuld neuer retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy' /

and in these wordes sayeng, they putte them in to the

see, & went lightly sayllyng, that they came so nygh

so sets out to  
capture the  
Saracen fleet,

36 the panemes that they sawe the porte of saynt Andrew,



and the grete nombre of shippes that were there. Thenne they putte themself in aray and in good ordyn-  
 aunce / and this done, they rane vpon their enemys  
 as thondre & tempeste, smyttyng vpon the shippes of 4  
 the sarasyns byforce of shotte so horribly, that yl  
 bestade were the sarasyns, that wel happy was he <sup>1</sup>that  
 myght recouere the land. And by that meane were  
 the shippes take / and al the sarasyns that were take 8  
 were putte to deth. Thanne guyon sent to the abbey  
 foyson of them that he had wonne of the sarasyns /  
 and brought to Lymasson with them as many galeyes  
 & shippes as there were laden with the goodes of the 12  
 sarasyns, except suche as they brent. And þe other  
 that escaped, came to thoost of their lord, cryeng with  
 a hye voys alarme / and recounted & said how the  
 Cristen had by force & strengthe discomfited them. 16  
 Thenne was the cost gretly mevyd, & came to the  
 port who best coude, and fonde many of their people  
 ded, and som were hyd in the busshes. And whan the  
 Calyphe perceyued & sawe this grete damage, he was 20  
 moche dolaunt. 'By machomet,' said he to kyng  
 Brandymount, 'these Cristen that are come hither fro  
 Fraunce, ben ouermuche hardy & appert men in armes,  
 and yf they sojourne long here it shal be to our grete 24  
 damage' / 'By machomet,' said the kyng Brandy-  
 mount, 'I shal neuer departe fro this land vnto tyme I  
 be al dyscomfyted, or þat I hane put them to flyght, &  
 brought to an euyl end.' 'No more shal I doo,' ansuerd 28  
 Caliphe. Thenne þey recouered there six of their  
 galeyes, & eschiewed þem fro the fyre, and lefte in it  
 good wardes for to kepe them; and after they retourned  
 to their people. And here cesseth thystorye of them / 32  
 and retourneth to speke of Vryan /

**N**ow sheweth thystorye how the kyng Vryan was  
 lodged in a fayre medow vpon a ryuere, in that  
 self place where the fourragers of the sawdan were 36

<sup>1</sup> fol. 98.

and succeeds,

taking many  
prisoners.

Fugitives arrive  
at the Caliph's  
camp with news  
of the defeat,

which makes  
him doleful.

He says that if  
the French  
knights stay they  
will do much  
harm.

King Brandy-  
mount swears  
he will remain to  
be either victor  
or conquered.

The Saracens  
save six galleys  
from the fire.



dyscomfyted at the brydge, as before is said. And had sent his espyes to haue knowlege where his enemyes had take theyre lodgys / And thenne came <sup>1</sup>the  
 4 maister of Rodes, whiche alighted byfore the kinges pauyllon, whom he made reuerence moche honourably. And the king, that was moche joyous of his commyng, receyued hym benyngly, and demanded of hym how  
 8 guyon his brother dyde. 'By my feyth, sire,' said the maister of Rodes, 'wel / as the moost assured man that euer I knew. Sire, he recommandeth hym to you as affectually as he may.' 'Nowe telle me,' said the king,  
 12 'how ye haue doo syn that ye departed from vs?' And the maister recounted hym fro braunche to braunche all thauentures that had happed to them. 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'ye haue worthyly vyaged; I  
 16 thanke & lawde my Creatour therof / and as for myn vncle, þe kyng of Armanye, I am moche glad that ye lefted hym in good prosperyte. but we most haue aduys of our Counseyll, to see how we may dystroye  
 20 the Sarasyns / and as touching me & my peple, I am redy to departe for to approuche to them, For to long they haue soiourned in our land without to haue assayed vs. goo thanne toward my brother, and telle hym that  
 24 I departe for to goo ayenst the paynemes.' The maister thanne toke leue of king Vryan, and hastily retourned to Lymasson / and immedyatly the king & his peuple marched fourth, tyl they came & lodged them a leghe  
 28 nygh to the Calyphes oost, vnknowyng the paynemes of it. And the maister of Rodes came to guyon, and told hym how the kyng was departed for to recountre & fyght with the sarasyns; wherfore guyon commanded  
 32 his trompettes to blow, and departed fro Lymasson in fayre aray; & came vnto a ryuere, and lodged hym therby, vpon the which ryuere were the paynemes lodged, & no distaunce or space was betwene them  
 36 & their enemyes, but a <sup>2</sup>high mountayne. And now

Urian sends  
 spies  
 to find his ene-  
 mies' camp.  
 1 fol. 98 b.

The Master of  
 Rhodes visits the  
 King,

and tells him of  
 Guion's bravery,  
 and brings  
 Guion's regards;

and also tells of  
 their adventures.

Urian says he  
 may have the  
 aduice of his  
 council how best  
 to overcome the  
 Saracens,

and sends back  
 the Master to  
 Guion.

King Urian  
 marches his peo-  
 ple within a  
 league of the  
 Saracen host.

The master of  
 Rhodes gives  
 Guion the King's  
 message,

and then Guion  
 also marches his  
 men near the  
 Saracens.

resteth thistorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of Vryan his brother.

**T**hystorye sayth that kyng Vryan desired mochi to knowe where the sarasyns were lodged / also to 4 haue true knowlege of theire conuyn; wherfore he called to hym a knyght, that knew wel al the Countrey, and said to hym : 'putte on your harneys, and take the surest hors that ye haue, and come alone here byfore 8 my payllon : and telle nobody of it / & ye shal come with me there as I shal lede you' / and anone the knight dide his commandement / and wel horsed & armed retourned to hym byfore hys tente, wher he 12 fonde king vryan redy on horsbak, the which said to some of his barons, 'Sires, meue not your self fro this place tyl ye haue tydinges of me / but yf I cam not hither ayen / loke ye doo that I shal lete you wete by 16 this knyght.' And they ansuerd that so shuld they doo / 'but take good hede,' sayd they agayn, 'where ye goo' / 'be not in doubte therfore,' said vryan to them / And thenne they departed ; and Vryan said to 20 the knight, 'conduyte me now the surest waye that ye can, tyl that I may see the porte where the sarasyns landed.' And the knyght lede hym vnto the hylle ryght high, & said : 'Sire, yonder is the porte that ye 24 desire to see.' 'And how,' said the kyng, 'it hath be said to me that theire nauye was al brent, and yet I see yonder some grete vessels? Fro whens myght they be come now?' / and thenne behild the king / at the 28 synester syde in to the founs<sup>1</sup> of the valey, and sawe his brothers oost, that was lodged vpon the ryuere / and at the ryght syde of the hille he sawe þe Caliphes oost, that were in grete nombre. 'By my feyth,' said 32 the kyng, 'yonder is grete multitude of peple pay-neme / them I knowe wel ynough; but þey <sup>2</sup>of this other syde I knowe not what they be. abyde me

Urian and a knight

prepare to reconnoitre.

Urian tells the barons that they are to obey the orders of the knight, who is with him, until his own return.

The knight leads the King to a high hill,

where he sees some vessels,

his brother's and the Saracen host.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 99 b.

He does not recognize his brother's army,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *font*.

- here, and I shaft goo wete what folke they be, yf I may.' The kyng thanne rode tyl he came nygh his bropers oost, and founde a knight on his way, which he  
 4 knew wel; and anoon called hym by hys name, and demaunded of hym yf his brother guyon was there /. Whan the knight vnderstode hys wordes, he beheld & knew hym, and soone kneeled byfore hym, say-  
 8 eng in this manere: 'My liege & souerayn lord, your brother guyon is yonder *with* al hys people, and the maister of Rodes also.' Thenne commanded hym the kyng that he shuld goo to Guyon hys brother, and  
 12 telle hym that he shuld come & speke *with* hym vpon the said mountayne. And the knight went & tolde these tydinges to guyon; wherfor he, and the maister of Rodes *with* hym, mounted on horsbak / toke  
 16 the way to the mountayneward, wher as Vryan retourned to his knyght, whome he said: 'Frend, wel it is *with* vs, For that is my brother guyon which is lodged yonder.' Thenne came per guyon & the maister of  
 20 Rodes where the two bretheren made moche, eche of oper. The kinge after shewed to them thoost of theire enemyes / and whan they sawe it / they said / 'we wyst not them so nygh to vs.' 'Now,' said vryan,  
 24 'they may not escape vs, yf it be not by the meanes of yonder galeyes,' wherof guyon was abasshed / 'For,' said he / 'these deuels haue brought moo vessels, For *within* these foure dayes last passed we toke & brent  
 28 al theyre nauye.' 'Thenne,' said the maister of Rodes, 'I suppose wel what that is / happely some of them were not fonde, which haue eschewed that few shippes fro the fyre.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'thus it  
 32 may wel be / but *perto* <sup>1</sup>We most puruey of gardes, For therby shuld mowe escape the chief lordes of theire oost, that happly might adommage vs in time to come.' 'How, sire,' said the maister of Rodes, 'it  
 36 semeth that ye haue dycomfyted them al, redy, and

and so rides to it.

On the way he meets a knight he knows well.

The knight kneels to him, and tells him to whom the host belongs.

King Urian sends for Guion,

who, accompanied with the Master of Rhodes, comes to the King.

Urian says that now the Saracens cannot escape, except by the vessels. Guion is abashed at the Saracens having vessels, as he believed he had burnt or captured them all, but the Master says, these are some saved from the fire.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 100.

The King orders guards to be ready to prevent any one embarking,

that it ne resteth more but to kepe the Calyphe and brandymount, that they scape not at þat porte.' 'Certaynly,' ansuerd the kynge, 'yf they be nomore than I see, we nede not so grete peple as god hap leued vs.' 4

and sends his knight with orders to his men to march to the foot of the mountaine.

The kinge thenne commanded his knight, þat he shuld goo to hys oost and make them to be putte in aray, and that he shuld conduyte them vnto þe foot of the said mountayne. The knight departed, & dide as it 8 was youen to hym in commandement / and al thoost obeyed hym, and came in fayre aray & good ordynauunce vnto the hille. Also guyon went and made hys peple to be armed, and brought þem at the other 12 syde of the ryuere, so nygh the paynemes oost that he might wel perceyue theire manyere & contenance.

Guion marches his men near the pagans.

The Master of Rhodes is ordered to prevent the Saracens withdrawing to their ships.

And the kyng commanded the maister of Rodes, that he with all hys peple shuld entre in to þe see / and 16 that they shuld trauerse, rowyng nygh the porte, to thende yf the sarasyns shuld putte & withdraw them self into theire shippes, that they might not escape / 'And I goo,' sayd vryan, 'putte my peple in aray, forto 20 gyue batayH to these paynemes.'

The King leads his forces in battle array towards the Saracens,

**T**he kynge thenne came to his oost, and made his archers & crosbowe men to marche & goo fourth ; and after folowed the wynges. & the arryergarde came 24 after in fayre ordonnance / and assoone as þe sarasyns perceyued them, they bygan alarme, and euery payneme armed hym self / but or they were all armed, Vryan sent vpon them a thousand 'good' men of armes wel 28 horsed, that moche adomniaged them, for they fonde them vnpurueyed & out of aray. But notwithstanding, they assembled them in batayH & aray. Thanne bygan the stoure fyers & cruel. For there had ye seen arowes 32 flee as thykk as motes in the sonne / and after Vryan and his auantgarde assembled to his enemys ; and so manfully they faught, that they made the sarasyns to withdraw bakward. For vryan made there so grete 36

<sup>1</sup> fol. 100 b.

and before they can arm sets a thousand men on to them.

At last the Saracens array themselves, and the fight becomes fierce.

The Saracens are driven back,



- fayttes of armes, and gaf so pesaunt & horryble strokes both to the lyft & right syde, that al them that he recountred he smote & threw down fro theire horses to  
 4 the erthe, in so mochi that his enemyes fled byfore hym as the partrych doth byfore the sperehauke. And whanne the Calyphe of Bandas perceyned hym, he shewed hym to kyng Brandymount, sayeng, 'yf we be  
 8 abashed and yl bestad of this man only, al the other shal preyse & doubte vs nought' / and sayeng these wordes, he broched his hors with hys sporys that blood rane out of bothe sydes / And know it wel, that this  
 12 Caliphe was one of the moost fyers & strengest man that was that tyme alyue / he casted hys targe behynd his bakk / toke hys swerd, & rane vpon vryan, the  
 whiche he recountred / and by grete yre gaf hym so runs upon Urian,  
 and gives him a  
 16 meruayllable a stroke vpon that one syde of hys helmet, that hys swerd redounded vpon hys hors nek by suche myght that nygh he cutte his throtte of. nearly killing  
 his horse ;  
 Thanne came kynge Brandymount vpon vryan, the King Brandy-  
 20 which, seeynge his hors almost deed, stood vpon hys feet, & lete goo hys swerd fro his hand, and embrased his enemy ; and by the strengthe of his two armes, and pulls the  
 Saracen King  
 pulled hym from his hors down to therthe. There was from his horse.  
 24 the prees grete, both of Sarasyns that wold rescue 1 fol. 101.  
 theyre lord / and of cyprians also, that wold haue holpen vryan theire kynge, to bryng hys enterpryse at  
 affect. The batayll was there mortall fyers & doubtfuls  
 28 for bothe partyes. but vryan drew a short knyff out of the shethe that hanged at his lyft syde, and threstid it vnder the gorgeret thurgh brandymontis nek, and thus he slewgh hym. Thanne stod vryan vpon his feet  
 32 ayen, and cryed with a high voys 'Lusynen, Lusynen' / and the Poyteuyns that herd that, putte them self in prees by suche vertu, gyuyng so grete strokes that the  
 sarrasyns that were about vryan lost & voyded the  
 36 place. Thenne was kyng vryan remounted vpon kyng

Urian doing great  
feats of arms.

The Caliph, a  
strong man with  
sword and shield,

runs upon Urian,

and gives him a  
heavy blow,

nearly killing  
his horse ;

King Brandy-  
mount rushes on  
him also,

Urian dismounts,  
and pulls the  
Saracen King  
from his horse.

The fighting  
becomes fierce at  
this point ;

but Urian stabs  
his foe in the  
neck, and so  
slays him ;

and his com-  
panions put to  
flight the Sara-  
cens,

then Urian pursues the Caliph.

Gnion on his side falls upon the Saracens,

and seeing his forces hemmed in, the Caliph with eleven men flies in a boat to his vessels,

weighs their anchors, and puts to sea.

The Saracens seeing Brandimount dead, and the Caliph fled,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 101 b.

lose heart, and try to escape;

but they are all slain,

and all their riches captured.

The Caliph swears he may yet live to avenge himself on the Cyprians;

brandymontis hors, and pursiewed the Caliphe of Bandas / and thus bygan ayen the batayH to be reforced, in so moche that grete occysyon was don on eyther partye. And in that meane season came guyon 4 with his people, and courageously rane vpon peire enemyes. And whan the Caliphe saw hym be surpysed on eche syde by his mortal enemyes / he with xi departed in the secretest manere that he coude out 8 of the batayH, and fled toward the see / where the admyraH of Damask was, whiche made them to entre into a lytel galyote, in whiche he escaped, as byfore is said / and soone aftir he made the nauye, that he saued 12 fro brennyng, to take vp theire ancores, & entred in the see. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of the batayH. /

**I**n this partye sheweth thystorye, & sayth þat whan 16 the sarasyns knew the deth of theyre kyng brandymount<sup>1</sup> / and how the Caliphe on whos prowes & strengthe was al theire hope & comfort <sup>2</sup>was thus departed and fled, they were aH abasshed, and bygan 20 strongly to breke their aray and to voyde the place, puttyng themself to flight.<sup>3</sup> What shuld I make you long compte / the paynemes were putt aH to deth, what in batayH, what fleyng as drowned in the see. 24 And after the chaas, retourned kyng vryan and hys barons to the paynemys lodgis, where they found in their tentes & pauyllons grete riches. And here thystorye cesseth of kyng vryan / and I shal shew vnto you 28 how the caliphe of Bandas dyde, the which swore by his machomet & his goddes, that yf he myght euer come to sauete in damask ayen, yet shuld he doo grete hyn-deraunce & enuye to the Cyprians. But as he was 32 rowyng in the see / and supposed to haue escaped al

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Brandimont de Tarse*.

<sup>3</sup> xviii. viii<sup>d</sup>. is noted in margin of MS. If it is price of copying up to this point, it would be about the rate of 1*d*. a page.

- parels / the maister of Rodes that kept the see and wayted after hym, as aboue is sayd, perceyued the sarasyns flote *pat* wold haue retourned to Damask / by-  
 4 gan to lye by them and sayd to his people in this manere: 'Fayre lordes and knightes of Ieshu Criste, our desyre and wysshying is brought to effect, for knowlege we haue ynough that the valyaunt & redoubted  
 8 kyng vryan hath obtayned the vycctory vpon his enemyes & oures / yf we be now men of faytte & valyaunt, none of them shal neuer see Damaske.' Who thanne had seen the Cristen putte them self in aray, and theire  
 12 meruayllable shottying with gounnes & arowes vpon the sarasyns, he shuld haue be meruaylled / and syn oure folke cheyned with them & casted darts & stones with suche strengthe & might, that wonder it was to see.  
 16 The sarasyns defendid hem self <sup>1</sup>manfully / but at last they were dyscomfyte. And the admyraH that sawe the grete myschief *pat* felt on them hallid vp saylles / rowed in hys galyote with eyght hores and so he  
 20 escaped. And the maister of Rodes and hys peple toke the galeyes of theire enemyes and aH slew or casted ouer bord / and brought them ayen to saynt andrews porte. Thanne the maister of Rodes acom-  
 24 panyed with C knightes, bretheren of his religyon, went toward king vryan & guyon his brother, and recounted to them aH theire good fortune. but sory was the king that the Caliphe and the admyral were so escaped.  
 28 kyng Vryan thenne departed & dalt emongr his people al the proye of his enemyes that he had wonne / sauf he reteyned for hym the artylery & some pauyllons & tentes, and gaf them leue to retourne in to theire  
 32 Countrees. These thinges thus don, kyng vryan in grete tryumphe & honour as vycctorious prynce, retourned to his cyte of Famagoe, acompayned of Guyon his brother, of the maister of Rodes, and of al the  
 36 barons, wher the quene Ermyne receyued them right

MELUSINE.

but his fleet is observed by the Master of Rhodes, who is on the watch.

He is attacked,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 102.  
and defeated,

but escapes with the admiral in an eight-oared boat.

The master of Rhodes captures the navy, slays or drowns all the Saracens, and takes the vessels back to St. Andrew's Port.

He recounts his victory to Urian, who is sorry at the caliph's escape.

Urian and his companions return to Famagoe.

honourably, thankynge god of the noble vycorye that they obteyned vpon his enemies. /

Urian's wife  
Hermine, being  
with child, he  
prepares to give  
a feast,

Now sayth thistorye, that Ermyne was grete with child & nygh her terme / and that vryan made 4 a feest to be cryed & proclaimed; For he wold in tyme of peas & rest haue festyed his barons of poytou and al other prynces estraungers & other his subgects. Eyght dayes toforne the feste, begane grete multitude 8 of people to come to the Cite, wherof the kyng was joyful, and made cryees vpon payne of deth that none shuld make derrer the vytaylles. And trouth it was that thre dayes tofore the feste the quene Ermyne 12 was <sup>1</sup>delyuered of a fayre sone. Thenne bygan the feste to wex grete / and the child baptised and named Henry, bycause of hys auncestre hight Henry. And so encreased the feest in ryches & in yfestes. And 16 there were some of the barons of poytou that toke theire leue of the king & of his brother, and of the quene, for to departe, whom the kynge yaf grete yfestes of riches. And they were in nombre six knightes and 20 peire companye, which putte them in to the see. Now wyl I cesse of them that are departed to the see / & shal shewe of the feste that was ryght noble and sumptuous, but soone it was turned to sorowe, bycause of 24 the tydinges of the kingis deth of Armenye that came to the Court. /

Twenty-one Ar-  
menian knights

come to Urian,

with news of the  
death of the King  
of Armenia,

Thystorye sheweth aft thus, whan the feest was at best, there came xxi<sup>u</sup>2 knightes of the moost 28 noblest barons of the royaume of armanye, al clothed in black / and it shewed wel by theire contenance that they were sorowful in herte. And whan they cam tofore the kyng they dide theire obeyssaunce ryght nobly / 32 and the kynge receyued them with grete honour / and they said to him: 'Sire, the kynge of armenje, your vncle, is passed out of this world, on whos sowle god



- haue mercy / and hath lefte to vs a ryght fayre pucello  
 begoten of his body by lawfuH maryage / and she is  
 alone hys heyre. Now knowe ye thenne, noble kyngo,  
 4 that in hys playn lyf he dide doo make this *lettre*, and  
 commanded vs to directe it to your noble grace / pray-  
 eng the same that the tenour of þe *lettre* ye vouchesaf  
 tacomplysshe.' 'By my feith, fayre lordes,' said Vryan /  
 8 'yf it be of the thing that I may goodly doo, I shal  
 fulfyH his wyH <sup>1</sup>right gladly.' Thenne toke Vryan  
 the *lettre* & redd it, of the whiche the tenour was this :  
 'Ryght dere lord and right wel beloued newew, I re-  
 12 commande me to you as ferfourth as I may / prayeng'  
 you right hertyly to haue me to my ryght dere & be-  
 loued nyghte your wyf to be recommanded. And  
 where by these my *lettres* I make to you the first re-  
 16 queste that euer I demanded of you / also consideryng'  
 that it shal be the last / For certaynly at the makyng  
 of thees my present *lettres*, I felt myself in such poynt  
 that in me was none hope of conualescence nor of lyf.  
 20 I hertyly beseche you that ye haue it not in reffus nor  
 in dysdayne. It is so thanne that none heyre I no  
 haue of my body, sauf only a doughter, the which  
 your brother guyon sawe but of late / whan he was  
 24 with me. Wherefore I pray you that ye vouchsaf to  
 entrette your said broþer in manere that it playse hym,  
 to take the cepter of my dignite rygh and my doughter  
 to hys lady, and thus to crowne hym self king of  
 28 armanye. And though she be not worthy to haue  
 hym to her lord, yet is she come of royal blood. con-  
 sideryng thanne her consanguinite haue pite on her /  
 and yf that mouyth not you to compassyon / yet re-  
 32 membre that ye be champion of Crist, exalting his  
 feyth. My royalmie is now cristen, and hath be long  
 soo / Woo were to me / yf for wantyng of a preu &  
 valyaunt man it shuld retourne in to the paynemes  
 36 handes. Wherefore, noble kyng, haue regarde to this

and that his  
 heir is a fair  
 maiden.

They bring  
 Urian a letter  
 from the de-  
 ceased king,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 103.

paying respects  
 to Urian and his  
 wife,

and intimating  
 his near end.

The king tells of  
 his daughter,  
 whom Guion had  
 seen,

and begs Urian  
 to entreat his  
 brother to marry  
 the heiress of  
 Armenia, and to  
 be king of the  
 country ;

as the land re-  
 quires a vallant  
 man to protect  
 it from the  
 Saracens.

that forsaide is,' &c. Whan vryan vnderstode the tenour  
of þe lētre he was moche dolaunt of the kingis deth /  
& mouyd by compassion & pyte, ansuerd to the <sup>1</sup>Arma-  
nyens, sayeng in this manere : ' Lordes & barons, I shall 4  
not fayH you at your nede, For yf my brother wyl not  
accorde therto, yet shaH I endeuoire my self to gyue  
you helpe, ayde, comfort, & counseyl, as ferre as my  
power shal reche.' Thanne called he to hym guyon, 8  
hys broþer, that thanne knew the kingis deth, wherof  
he was sorrowfuH / and vryan to hym sayd the wordes  
that here folowen : ' Guyon, receyue this yefte, For I  
make you heyre of armenye and possessour of the moost 12  
fayrest pucelle that is in aH the land / that is my  
Cousyn florye, doughter to the kyng<sup>e</sup> of Armanye, which  
by the wyH of god is passed out of this world / and I  
pray you that ye dayne to take this yefte, For it oughte 16  
not to be refused.' ' By my feyth, fayr brother and  
my lord,' said guyon, ' I thanke you moche therof, and  
hym also that is causer of hit, on whos sowle god haue  
mercy.' Thenne were the knyghtes of armanye joyfuH 20  
& glad. And as soone as guyon had consentid therto,  
they kneeled byfore hym & kyssed hys handes, after  
the custome of theire land / And thanne bygan ayen  
the feest greter than it was afore. And in that meane 24  
saison the king<sup>e</sup> dide doo make hys nauye redy, that  
was in to the porte of Lymasson, and in the vessels  
he made to be putte grete rychesses / and guyon hys  
brother, accompanied with the maister of Rodes, & with 28  
many barons of poytou and of Cypre, toke hys leue, &  
entred in to the see & saylled so long<sup>e</sup> that they arryued  
in Armenye,<sup>2</sup> where they were receyued honourably.<sup>3</sup>

fol. 103 b.

The letter causes  
Urian sorrow,  
and he promises  
to aid the Ar-  
menians.

Guion is sent for,  
and is told of the  
king's death.

He is offered  
the hand of the  
daughter of the  
king of Armenia.

He accepts it,  
and thanks his  
brother.

The Armenian  
knights are joy-  
ful, and kneel  
before Guion  
and kiss his  
hands.

The navy is  
prepared at Ly-  
masson, and  
Guion and many  
of his friends  
sail to Armenia,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Et tant allèrent, tant de jour comme de nuit, qu'ils apperceurent et visrent la ballet du Crub, qui est la maiestresse ville du royaume d'Armanie.*

<sup>3</sup> There is an omission here; the French version opens a new chapter, entitled *Comment Guion espousa la pucelle Florie et fut roy d'Armanie*, as follows:—*Adonc vung des*

- There was guyon wedded with Florye / and after the feste all the barons of the land came to Cruly & made theyre homage to guyon, whiche crownned himself 4 king & regned honourably. And after these thinges doon the maister of Rodes & the barons of Poytou toke theire leue of guyon, whiche yaf to them grete yestes of ryches, & they entred in to theire shippes and rowed 8 tyl they <sup>1</sup>cam at Rodes, where as the said maister festyed worshipfully the estraungers, and so dide al the knightes brotheren of hys relygyon. And at thende of viii dayes the barons of Poytou entred agayn in to 12 the see, and in short tyme they arryued in Cipre, And recounted to Vryan al the trouth of the fayt, and how his brother guyon was honourably receyued in armanye / and how he had wedded Florye, and was crowned 16 kyng of the land & loued of al the peple there, wherof moche thankes rendred guyon to god. Within few dayes after many of the knightes of poytou toke theire leue, and to them yaf vryan grete yestes of 20 ryches / and sent word by them in wrytyng to his fader & moder of al thestate & prosperous fortune of hym & of hys brother. And thus departed the barons & entred in to theire shippes, whiche they fonde wel 24 purueyed of al that was necessary to them, and toke theire way toward Rochelle in poytou.
- <sup>2</sup> Now sayth thystorye, that the barons of poytou sailled so long<sup>t</sup> that they perceyued & sawe 28 Rochelle, where they arryued with grete joye / and

where he weds Florye. The barons do their homage to him, and he is crowned, and reigns honorably.

His friends set sail to Rhodes, 1 fol. 104. where the Master entertains them,

and from thence to Cyprus, where they relate to Urian all the adventure.

Some knights of Poitou, after receiuing gifts from Urian, and a letter for his parents,

set sail for Rochelle.

They arrive,

*barons d'Armanie parla moult hault addressant sa parole à Guion, et dist: Sire, nous vous avons esté querir pour estre nostre seigneur et nostre roy; si est bon que nous vous deliurons tout ce que nous vous devons bailler. Et voiez cy ma damoiselle qui est toute preste de accomplir tout ce que nous vous avons promis et au roy Urian votre frère. Par foi, dist Guion, ce ne demourera mie à faire pour me; and continues then as above.*

<sup>2</sup> This begins a new chapter in the French version, entitled, *Comment les messagiers apportèrent les lettres à Raimondin et à Melusine de ses deux enfans qui estoient roiz.*

and three days  
after ride to  
Lusignan,

where Raymon-  
din and Melusine  
receive them  
with great joy.  
They deliver the  
letters from  
Urian and Guion,

which please  
their parents.

This year Melu-  
sine builds the  
Church of our  
Lady and many  
other abbeyes,

1 fol. 104 b.

and Odo marries  
the daughter  
of the Earl of  
March.

Anthony and  
Regnald, hearing  
of the brothers'  
success,

desire to follow  
their example ;

so they ask per-  
mission to go out  
into the world  
to earn the order  
of knighthood.

there they refreshed them self the space of thre dayes,  
and after mounted on theire horses & rode toward  
Lusynen, where they founde Raymondyn and Melusyne  
and theire other children with þem, whiche receyued 4  
them with grete joy. And þenne they delyuered to  
them the *lettres* of kynges Vryan & guyon theire sones.  
And whan they herde & vnderstoð the tenour of  
them they thanked god of the good auenture that he of 8  
his grace had youen to theire two sones / and yaf grete  
jewelles & ryche yestes to the barons that brought  
tydyngis of þem. And that same yere melusyne fownded  
the chircĥ of our lady in Lusynen & manie other 12  
abbeyes in þe <sup>1</sup>lande, and endowed them with grete pos-  
sessyons. And thenne was the trayttee of maryage  
made betwix Odon her sone and the Erle of marchis  
doughtir, And was the feest grete & noble holden in 16  
a medowe nygh to the Castel of Lusynen. /

**T**hystorye sheweth here, that Anthony & Regnald  
were right glad whan they vnderstode the ty-  
dinges of the fortune & noble fayttes of armes of theire 20  
two bretheren / and that in so short space of tyme they  
had sore adommed the enemyes of god, and said one  
to other, 'My ryght dere brother, it is now tyme that  
we goo seke auenture thurgh the world, For here to 24  
dweĥt any lenger we may not acqyre nor gete honour,  
as oure brethern Vryan & guyon haue don.' Wher-  
fore they come to theyre fader & moder, and to them  
said humbly in this manere, 'My lord and you my 28  
lady, yf ye vouchsaf it were tyme that we went thurgh  
the world at our auenture, for to gete & acquere  
thordre of knyghthode as our bretheren vryan &  
guyon haue don / how wel we be nat worthy to receyue 32  
it so nobly nor in so noble a place as they haue doo /  
but yf it playseth god our entencion is to endeuoire  
vs þerto.' Thenne ansuerd to them Melusyne theire  
moder, 'Fayre sones, yf that playseth wel your fader, 36



Their parents  
consent.

I me consent to your requeste.' 'By my feyth, lady,' said Raymondyn, 'doo your wyH therof, For what someuer ye wyl I me consent therto.' 'Sire,' said

4 Melusyne, 'it semeth to me good that from hens fourth they begynne to take on them som vyage for to knowe the world & the straunge marches / also to be renommed & knowen / and to knowe & discerne good from euyl.'

8 Thenne the two bretheren kneeled byfore theire fader & moder, & thanked them moeh humbly of the honour that they promysed them to <sup>1</sup>doo. And here ceaseth thystory to spek of them / and speketh of another

<sup>1</sup> fol. 105.

12 matere.

**I**n this partye sayth thistorye, that in the marches of Allemayne, betwene Lorayne & Ardane, was a noble Countrey, the which was somtyme called the

16 Erledome of Lucembourg, and now it is named a duchye. In that same Countree was some tyme a lord erle of the land, whiche after his decesse lefte a fayre doughter his heyre / she was clepyd Crystyne, and her

At the time  
when the ruler  
of Luxembourg  
was a maiden  
named Christine,

20 fader was named Asselyn. Alle the barons of the land made theire homage to her as to the rightfuH heyre of the lande. On that tyme was in Anssay a kynge whos wyf was deed in her child bed at the birthe of a

the wife of the  
King of Anssay  
died.

24 doughter, whiche the fader made to be baptised & named Melidee. Whan this kynge thanne herde how the Erle of Lucembourg was passed out of this world, and that none heyre he had but a doughter, whiche

28 was the fayrest damoyseH of aH the land / he sent in ambaxade to her the moost noble & secretest men of hys CounseyH, to speke & treate the maryage of hym with her. But the pucelle Crystyne wold neuer con-

He wished to  
marry again, and  
made proposals  
to Christine,

but was rejected.

32 sent therto / wherfore he wexed sorowfuH in herte / and sware god that outhre by force or by her wyH he shuld haue her, whatsoeuer it might faH therof. Thenne made he his mandement, & chalenged the mayde & alle

In revenge he  
swore he would  
have her by  
force, and chal-  
lenged her and  
her land.

36 her lande. Whan thanne the barons & noble men of

the lande & all the commynalte wyst it / they said  
 & sware that syth theyre lady wold not haue hym to  
 her lord / they shuld shewe to hym that he dide wrong  
 to the pucelle and to them also. And immediatly they 4  
 garnysshed theire Cites, tounes, & Fortresses. <sup>1</sup>And  
 the moost part of the barons drew themself to the  
 toun & Castel of Lucembourg *with* Cristyne, theire  
 owne propre lady. What shuld I make you long compte / 8  
 they were nat that tyme strong ne puyssaunt ynough for  
 to fyght ayenst the kyng of Anssay. For he came vpon  
 them *with* a grete puyssaunce of peple & moche adom-  
 maged the lande / and came al brennyng vnto byfore 12  
 the toun & Fortresse of Lucembourg, where he layed  
 siege. And of faytte theire was grete scarmysshing and  
 grete losse of one parte and of oþer. It happed thanne  
 that one of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche 16  
 had be *with* Vryan at the conqueste of the royaume of  
 Cipre, and euer was *with* hym at all the baytayhes that  
 he had ayenst the paynemes / the whiche was come  
 ayen with the barons of Poytou vnto Lusynen / and 20  
 had receyued of Melusyne riche jewels & grete yeftes  
 of ryches / and sawe there Regnald and Anthony, that  
 were moche strong and grete, & of fyers & hardy  
 contenaunce / and wel it semed to hym that they 24  
 shuld ensiew the condicions & maneres of theire  
 bretheren, and theire high prowes & enterpryse / drew  
 the noble men of the land apart, and said to them in  
 this manere: ‘Fayre lordes, ye may conceyue and wel 28  
 perceyue that we may not hold longe ayenst the puy-  
 saunce of the same kinge. Wherefore yf it seme you  
 good, myn oppynyon were to see a remedy be had to it  
 rather to fore than to late, For good it is to shette the 32  
 stable or euer the horses be lost.’ And they ansuerd,  
 ‘that is trouth / but we may not perceyue no remedy  
 therto *without* the grace of god be.’ ‘For southe,’ said  
 the forsaid baron, ‘*Without* godis grace none may but 36

1 fol. 105 b.

The people put  
 it in a state of  
 defence,

but they were  
 not strong  
 enough to with-  
 stand the King  
 of Anssay,  
 who came and  
 did them great  
 damage.

A baron, who  
 had been with  
 Urian when he  
 conquered  
 Cyprus,

takes the barons  
 of Luxembourg  
 apart,

lytel or nought doo, but with that it is good to take  
 ayde who that may <sup>1</sup>haue it.' 'Certaynly,' said the  
 barons, 'ye say right wel; yf ye thanne know some  
 4 gentylman worthy to haue our lady, and valyaunt &  
 preu to deffende vs ayenst our enemyes, lete vs knowe  
 hym. For ye be therto hold & bounden bycause of  
 your alygeaunce.' This gentylman thanne reherced to  
 8 them fro hed to hed how vryan & hys brother departed  
 fro Lusynen, and all thauenture of their vyage / also  
 thestate of their fader and moder / and ouermore, he  
 shewed to them the fayre maynten & countenaunce of  
 12 Anthony & Regnault / and that he knew for certayn /  
 that who so went to seke & requyre the socours and  
 helpe of the two bretheren, they shuld come with  
 grete puyssaunce, whan they shuld haue knowledge of  
 16 the faytte. 'By my feyth,' said the noblemen, 'ye say  
 full wel.' Thenne they fourthwith went tofore Cry-  
 styne their lady, and wordo to wordo they recounted  
 to her all this affayre. And she said to them, 'Fayre  
 20 lordes, I recommande you my land and yours / doo  
 what semeth you best to thonour of me and of you, for  
 the commyn wele of all my land. For wete it for  
 certayn, that for to dey or to be dyssheryted, I shal not  
 24 haue the kyng of Anssay to my lord / how be it he is  
 better than to me apparteyneth, but for asmoche that  
 he wyl haue by force me & my land.' And they  
 ansuerd to her / 'doubte you not therof, my lady, For  
 28 yf it playse god, he shal not haue so moche of puy-  
 sance as long as we shall mowe stere our owne bodyes.'  
 'Lordes,' said she, 'gramercy.' And thenne they departed  
 thens. Thenne said one of the barons to the forsaide  
 32 gentylman in this manere: 'ye that haue putte vs in  
 this quarelle / say now what best is for to doo.' 'By my  
 feyth,' said he, 'yf it lyke you good, ye shall delyuere  
 me two of you to goo with me to Lusynen, to wete yf  
 36 we can fynde there <sup>2</sup>ony thing to vs prouffitable.'

<sup>1</sup> fol. 106.and tells them  
of the bravery  
of Urian and  
Gulon,and of their two  
brothers, An-  
thony and Reg-  
nald, who would  
come to their  
assistance with  
great forces if  
they were asked.The barons have  
an audience with  
Christine.She puts herself  
in their handsand once more  
refuses the King  
of Anssay.They pledge  
themselves to  
defend her.<sup>2</sup> fol. 106 b.

Two wise and noble men are seht as messengers to Lusignan with Urian's knight.

Thenne they anoone chose among<sup>t</sup> them, that is to wete, two of the wysest & noblest men for to goo *with* hym. And they departed about the first slepe, mounted vpon good & lyght horses, and yssued out of a posterne, and 4 passed by that one side of thoost, so that they were neuer perceyued / and hasted them self on theire way toward Lusynen. And here cesseth thystorye of them, and spekethe of Meluysyne & her children, that is to wete, 8 of Anthony and of Regnald. /

During the great feast, at which Anthony and Regnald distinguish themselves in jousting,

**T**hystory sayth that the feste was right grete in the medowe byforsaid / and men jousted there valyauntly. but aboue alle the yonge squyers that 12 were there, Anthony and Regnald dyde best after the sayeng & commendacion of the ladyes and gentyl wymen that were there. And there were grete jewels gyuen. but alwayes Melusyne thoughte to purueye to 16 thestate of her children, and made to them fayre robes & ryche raymentes, and ordeyned and purueyed of men to goo *with* them, and in especial wyse, and noble men to endoctrine them, & shew to tham the way of good 20 gouernauce. Duryng yet the feste, came there the ambaxatours of Lucembourg / *pe* whiche made theire obeyssaunce to Raymondyn & to Melusyne ryght honourably, and also to alle the companye / And joyously 24 they were receyued / & soone was there knowen the knight that had be *with* vryan at the Conqueste of Cypre. and he was honourably festyed, and of hym demanded Anthony, for the wele that he herde saye of 28 hym, yf it playesd hym to goo *with* hym & *with* hys brother Regnald in som vyage where he purposed to goo, & to thayde of god, he shuld be wel rewarded. The knyght thanne demanded of Anthony: 'My lord, 32 & whither is your entencion for to goo?' And he ansuerd: 'At our auenture there as god shal conduyt vs, for to gete honour and cheualrye.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'I shal telle you the fayrest and the 36

the ambassadors from Luxembourg arrive,

and are welcomed.

Urian's knight is asked by Anthony if he will accompany him and his brother on a voyage

<sup>1</sup> fol. 107.

in search of honour.



moost honourable auenture that euer gentylman had  
that aduentured hym self, and the moost honourable  
enterpryse.' And whan the two damoyseaulx vnderstod

The knight tells  
of the fair ad-  
venture,

4 hym, they made moche of hym, & said in this manere :

'Noble man, vouchesauf to vttre to vs that noble  
enterpryse that ye speketh of.' 'By my feyth, lordes,'  
said the knight, 'in as moche that I were ryght joyous

and is asked by  
the brothers for  
full information.

8 you to see onhaunsed in honour, also for to susteyne  
ryght & reason, I shal ryght gladly shew to you all the  
matere therof.

12 **R** yght dere lordes, it is trouth that all thoo that  
loue ryghtwysnes and that be wylling to gete  
honour / they oughte to helpe and susteyne the wydowes  
an orphenyns. And forasmoche, fayre lordes, it is soo  
that in the marche of Lorayne & of Ardane is a moche

He relates that

16 ryche & noble Countree that clepen the duchye of Lucem-  
bourg, the whiche duchye a noble man gouerned long  
as hys owne propre herytage / the whiche valyaunt man  
passed to god but of late, and hath lefte a doughtir hys

the Duke of  
Luxembourg

20 heyre of the land / to the whiche right noble and fayre  
pucelle alle the nobles and barons of the land haue as  
now don theyre homage & obeyssaunce. And where

left his daughter  
his heir,

it is soo that the kynge of Anssay, knowyng the beaute-  
24 fulnes of the mayde, and her grete & noble enheryt-  
aunce, hath demanded her by maryage / but that pucelle  
reffused hym bycause he had be wedded tofore, & of  
late he was wydower. Wherefore this kynge of Anssay

and owing to  
her beauty and  
riches she is  
sought as wife  
by the King of  
Anssay, but be-  
cause he is a  
widower she has  
refused him.

28 hath deffyed her and al her land, and supposeth to  
haue her by force & ayenst her wylle / and he is entred  
in to the land / and hath brent & slayn al byfore hym  
vnto the toun & Castel <sup>1</sup>of Lucembourg, where as

In revenge war  
has been de-  
clared, and the  
king is trying to  
get her by force,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 107 b.

32 he hath now besieged the said lady, and hath sworne  
that he shaH neuer departe thens vnto tyme he hath  
his wylle of her, other by force or by loue. Wherefore,  
lordes, me semeth that in all the world nys more honour-

and now he is  
besieging her at  
Luxembourg.

36 able a vyage ne more raysonnable than that same is,

On hearing the story Anthony agrees to succour the maiden,

and the ambassadors promise to conduct Anthony and help him all in their power.

Anthony and Regnald relate the tidings to their parents, and ask for help.

Raymondin thinks it a good opportunity,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 108.

and Melusine promises to provide well for her sons.

She announces that any man prepared to serve under the brothers, should come to Lusignan.

For alle thoo that loue honour & gentylnesse ought to draw them self that part.' 'In good feyth,' said thenne anthony, 'ye say trouth / and wete it I shafl shew this matere to my lady my moder, to see what ayde and helpe my lord our fader and she wyl gyue vs / and how so euer it happeth, by thayde of god we shafl goo and socoure the pucelle that the kynge of Anssay wyl haue by force, wherof me semeth that he is euyl counseyll'd.' 'On my feyth, my lord,' sayd thenne the knight, 'yf ye vouchesauf to vndertake that vyage / I & my felawes, two knightes that be here come with me, shal conduyte & helpe you of al our power.' And þe two bretheren thanked them moche, & saide / 'no doubte we shal goo thither, yf it be the playsire of god' / And thenne they retourned toward their moder / and the knight toward his felawes / and reherced to them how he had exployted / and that no nede was to speke ne requere Raymondyn ne Melusyne therof. 'Now, veryly,' said the two barons, 'it is ryght wysly don of you / blessing be god therof.' /

**H**ere saith thistory, that Anthony & Regnald came to their fader & moder, and denounced to them these tydinges, and requyred them of help & ayde to accomplishe this enterpryse. Thenne spake Raymondyn to Melusyne, & said, 'Certainly, lady, herto they may haue a fayre begynnyng' in armes. Wherefore I pray you that ye purueye for them in suche wyse that we may haue therof honour & prouffyt.' 'For southe,' said Melusyne, 'Sire, for to accomplishe your wylle, I shafl endeouyre me so diligently therto, that bothe you & they also shal be content.' And thenne she made that ony man that wold take wages vnder Anthony & Regnald of Lusynen, that they shuld come at a certayn day to Lusynen, and there they shuld be payed of þeir wages for one yere / and also she made it to be cryed al about the marches of poytou. /

20

24

28

32

36

**I**N this partye reherceth thystorye, that *within* the  
 day that Melusyne made to be cryed and anonced  
 the said wages,<sup>1</sup> were assembled many gentylmen in a  
 4 meddowe bysyde Lusynen; and grete foyson men of  
 armes, to the nombre of foure thousand helmets and  
 fyue houndred, some archers & oþer crosbowe men /  
 and there were no pages, but al strong men / and were  
 8 al lodged in fayre tentes & pauyllons, and so purueyed  
 of all maner harneys & of al other thinges necessary to  
 þem, that euery man was content. And while Ray-  
 mondyn & melusyne payed them theire wages, &  
 12 purueyed for al thinges that were nedefuH to theyre  
 vyage / Anthony & Regnald araysonned & demanded  
 of the said knight and of his barons, hys felawes, of  
 the estate of the pucelle of the land / And they said to  
 16 them the very trouth / and were joyfuH in theire hertes  
 of the grete apparayH that they sawe so soone redy,  
 For wel they had take in thanke half of the same to  
 socoure *with* aH theire lady. Wherfor þey thanked  
 20 god & our lady his blessid moder, And sent fourth  
*with* a messenger toward the barons of Lucembourg,  
 for to anounce to them the noble socours <sup>2</sup>that god sent  
 to them. Wherof they were joyful & glad. And aftir  
 24 the barons went & told to theire lady the tydynges, of  
 the whyche she was mochi recomforted, and bygan  
 moche deuoutely to lawde god her creatour. And  
 whan the people knew therof, they had grete joye, and  
 28 thanked god, and made grete fyres, and cryed *with* a  
 mery voys, sayeng thus: 'Joye & victory to our  
 pucelle.' And whan theire enemyes *without*forth herd  
 them, they wondred mochi, & went & denounced it to  
 32 theire kynge, wherof he was abashed & pensefuH.  
 And thenne came tofore certayn personnes, that said  
 to hym: 'Sire, doo make good watche, For they of the  
 toun awayte dayly for socours.' 'By god,' said the

On the day  
appointed for  
the meeting,

4000 helmets  
and 500 archers  
assemble.

They are well  
armed;

and are paid  
their wages.

The barons  
describe the state  
of the land to the  
brothers,

and send word of  
the aid coming to  
Luxembourg,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 108 b.

wherent the  
barons, the lady  
Christine, and  
her people are  
glad.

The king of An-  
say is informed  
of the rejoicing,

<sup>1</sup> *waged* in MS.

but believes he  
will starve them  
out, not knowing  
of succour on  
the way.

kinge, 'I ne wot nor may knowe by no manere fro  
whens socours shuld come to them; I doubte not / but  
that I shal haue them at my wyH, other by strength  
or by honger and for lack of meete.' And thus the 4  
kyng of Anssay assured hym self, But aftirward he  
fondt hym self deceyued. Now I shal leue of hym,  
and shal retourne to speke of Melusyne and of her two  
sones.

8

Melusine calls  
Anthony and  
Regnald, and  
gives them part-  
ing advice.

Melusyne thenne called to her Anthony and Reg-  
nald, her two sones / and to them she said in  
this manere: 'Children, ye now wyl departe fro my  
lord your fader & fro me / and happely we shal neuer 12  
see you agayn. Wherefore I wyl teche & introdruyte  
you for your wele & honour. And I pray you that ye  
vnderstand & reteyne wel that I shaH say, For that  
shal be to you nedefuH in tyme to come. First, ye 16  
shal loue / doubte, & preyse god our creatour; ye shal  
fermely, iustly, & deuoutly hold the commandementes  
of our moder holy chirche / and stedfast shal you be in  
our feyth catholical. / be ye humble & curteys to good 20  
folke / fyers & sharp to the wicked & euyl folke / and  
be ye <sup>1</sup>alwayes of fayre ansueryng, bothe to moost and  
leste / and hold talkyng to euery one whan tyme  
requyreth, without eny dysdayn / promyse ne be- 24  
heyghte nothing but that ye may shortly acomplysshe  
it after your power; withdrawe not rapporteurs of  
wordes toward you / byleue not enuyous / nor beleue  
not to soone ne lyghtly / For that causeth somtyme 28  
the frend to wexe mortal foo; putte not in office  
auarycious nor fel folke / acoynte<sup>2</sup> you not with  
another mans wyf / departe or deele to your felawes of  
suche thinges that god shal gyue you; be swete & 32  
debonnaire to your subjects / and to your enemyes  
fyers & cruel vnto tyme they be subdued & vnder  
your puyssaunce / kepe your self fro auauntynge & fro

She tells them  
to love God  
and keep the  
commandments  
of holy Church,

to be courteous  
to all,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 109.

to be cautious  
in believing  
scandal,

to be fair to the  
comrades,

stern with their  
enemies,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *acointez*.



menace / but doo your faytte *with* few wordes this that  
 may be doo. Despyse neuer none enemy, though he  
 be lytel / but loke wel about and make good watche /  
 4 be not emonges your felawes as maister, but commyn  
*with* them / and worship euerychon after his degre /  
 and gyue to them after your power, & after that they  
 be worthy. <sup>1</sup>gyue to the good men of armes hors &  
 8 harneys & syluer as rayson requyreth. Now, my  
 children, I ne wot nat what I shuld more saye to you /  
 but that ye kepe euer trouthe in al your dedes &  
 affayres. Hold! I gyue eche of you a ryng of gold,  
 12 wherof the stones ben of one vertue. For wete it that  
 as long as ye haue good cause, ye shal neuer bo dys-  
 comfytet in batayH.' And thenne she kyssed them in  
 moderly wyse, whiche thanked her; and toke leue of  
 16 theire fader, that ryght dolaunt was of theire departyng.  
 They made thenne theire troompettes to be sowned &  
 blowen, and putte them self al byfore, & conduyted the  
 auauntgarde / and after folowed the sommage & the  
 20 grete batayH in fayre <sup>2</sup>aray / and the arryergarde also  
 marched forth in fayre ordynaunce. It was a good  
 sight to see the state of the vantgarde, whiche the two  
 bretheren delyuered to be conduyted to a noble baron  
 24 & valyaunt knight of poytou / and them self toke &  
 conduyted the gret baytayH / and by them rode the  
 ambaxadours of Lucembourg. And of the reregarde  
 were captayns the two knightes of poytou that ledd  
 28 vryan & guyon in to Cypre, and that first told to them  
 that the sawdan had besieged the Cite of Famagocce.  
 And to these two knightes Raymondyn & Melusyne  
 had recommanded the estate of theire two sones, Reg-

not to be given  
 to vain speaking  
 Not to despise  
 their foes, but  
 ever to keep  
 good watch.

To treat their  
 men-at-arms  
 well,

and above all  
 to keep to the  
 truth.  
 She gives them  
 each a ring,  
 which will pre-  
 vent them ever  
 being defeated in  
 battle in a good  
 cause.

The brothers  
 take leave of  
 their parents,

sound the trum-  
 pets,

\* fol. 109 b.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Donnez aux bons hommes d'armes, cheualx, cottes d'acier, bassines, des premiers, et argent selon raison, et vous se vous roiez ung bon homme de la main qui riennne devers vous mal vestu ou mal monté, si l'appellez moult humblement et luy donnez robes, chevaux et harnois, selon la valeur de sa personne et selon le pouvoir que vous avez alors.*

and march that  
night to Mirabel,

where they set  
good watch.

Anthony orders  
everyone to ride  
under his banner  
in battle array.

This wearies the  
men,

and in ten days  
the knight com-  
manding the  
vanguard

<sup>1</sup> fol. 110.

declares to the  
brothers that  
the people think  
there is no need  
to be so arrayed  
till they are in  
the enemies'  
country.

But Anthony  
replies that it is  
best they should  
learn themselves,

rather than that  
their enemies  
should teach  
them.

nald & Anthony. And trouth it is, that on the first  
nyght they lodged them nygh to a strong tounne vpon  
a lytel ryuere / and was that same tounne named  
Myrabel, þe whiche Melusyne founded / and that same 4  
nyght bygan the two brethern to make good watehe, as  
they had be alredy in land of enemyes, wherof many  
gaf themself grete merueyH; but they durst not reffuse  
it, For Anthony was so cruel that euery man drad 8.  
hym. On the morowe next after the masse was doo /  
the two bretheren made cryees vpon payne of hors &  
haryneys, & to be banysshed out of the felawship, þat  
eueryman shuld ryde armed vnder his banere, in good 12  
array of batayH. none durst not refuse it / but thus was  
it doo, Wherof they al merueyllled. And in this manere  
they rode by the space of ten dayes, & so long that  
they cam in champayne / and many one were wery & 16  
ennuyed of their harneys / as moche for þis that it  
was no nede / as bycause they were not acustomed of  
it / and som spake therof, wherfor the knight that con-  
duyted the vangarde cam to the two brethern, & thus 20  
said to them: 'My lordes, the moost part of your  
people is euyl apayed & content bycause that ye <sup>1</sup>con-  
strayne them to bere their harneys; For them semeth  
no nede to doo soo tyl that they come nygh to the 24  
marches of your enemyes.' 'And how, sire,' said  
Anthony, 'thinke you not that the thinge which is  
acustomed of long tyme be bettre knowen of them that  
exercise it, & lesse greuable than that thinge which is 28  
newly lerned?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the knyght,  
'ye say wel.' 'morouer,' said Anthony, 'It is bettre  
for þem to lerne the payne for to susteyne their  
harneys in tyme, that surely they may so doo at their 32  
ease, & to refresshe them surely for to essaye them  
self, and knowe the manere how they myght easy  
susteyn & suffre it whan nede shalbe. For yf they  
muste be thaught of their enemyes / their payne 36

should be greter & doubtoys / and ye wote ynough, that  
 who lerneth not his crafte in his yougtho, with grete  
 peyne & hard it shal be for hym to be a good werke-  
 4 man in his old age.' 'Certaynly, my lord,' said the  
 knyght, 'ye saye the playne trowth of it, and your  
 reason is full good.' And thenne he departed fro  
 hym, and anonced to many one this rayson, in so  
 8 moche that knowlech of it they had thorough al thoost,  
 wherof euery man held hym self wel apayed & content /  
 and al sayd that the two bretheren might not fayn to  
 haue grete wele, yf god wold send to them long lyf,  
 12 and that they shuld come to grete perfection of honour.

The answer  
 satisfies the  
 host, and the  
 men say that  
 the brothers will  
 come to great  
 honour.

**T**hystorye sayth in this partye, that the same nyght  
 the oost was lodged vpon a ryuere that men  
 called aisne / and about the first slepe, the two bretheren  
 16 made to be cryed alarme through the oost right ferfully.

When the host  
 was lodged on  
 the Aisne that  
 night an alarm  
 was raised by  
 the brothers.

Thenne was there grete trouble, and in euery syde they  
 armed them, puttyng themselves in fayre aray of batayn.  
 euery man vnder his banere byfore theire tentes. And  
 20 wete it wel, that it<sup>1</sup> was grete beaute to see the good  
 contenauce & the noble<sup>2</sup> ordynaunce & fayre aray of  
 the men of armes, and of the two bretheren, that went  
 fro batain to batayn / and there as fawte was of  
 24 ordynaunce, they redressid theire peple to it. And  
 the thre barons, ambaxadours of Lucembourgh, beheld  
 wel theire maner & contenauce, & said that one to  
 that other: 'On my feyth, these two children ben wel  
 28 chappen to subdue & conquere yet a grete part of the  
 world / now wel may say the king of Anssay, that  
 dere he shal abyce his folye & proude enterpryse, and  
 the dommage that he hath borne to our lady, & to  
 32 her land & subgets.' In suche party they were long  
 tyme, tyl the espyes that secretly were departed fro the  
 oost to dyscouere & ouersee the Countre about, yf  
 enemyes were nygh / came agayn, & sayd that pey

<sup>2</sup> fol. 110 b.

The forces  
 arrayed them-  
 selves for battle,

and spies were  
 sent over the  
 country to find  
 the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> is in MS.

They returned with the news that no enemy was in sight. At last it was known to be a false alarm.

The captains of the van and rear guards complained of the trouble,

but Anthony told them he did it to test the troops.

\* fol. 111.

The next day they marched to Dam Castle,

which is twelve leagues from the besieged town.

The ambassadors advise the brethren to halt and refresh their men.

aspyed no personne; where[f] al gaf them self grete wonder of that alarme & affray, but at last it was wel knowen that the two bretheren caused it. Thenne came the two knightes, captayns of the arryergarde, 4 & also the Captayne of the vantgarde, to the two bretheren, & said to them in this manere: 'My lordes, grete symplenes it is to you thus to traueylle your people for nought.' 'How,' said Anthony to them / 8 'whan ye doo make a new rayment, be it harneys or clothing, make ye not it to be essayed, for to knowe yf any fawte is fonde in it, and to haue it mended & sette as it shuld be?' / And they al ansuerd, 'For certayn, 12 sire, ye / and that is ryght.' Thenne sayd Anthony, 'yf I wold haue assayed my felawes to fore that it had be tyme, for to knowe how I shuld fynd them redy at my nede / sene & consydered that we approuche our 16 enemyes / to thend, yf any fawte we had fond, to haue purueyed of conuenable remedy therto, at our lesse dompage / than yf in dede it had be.' Whane they [heard<sup>1</sup>] that word / they ansuerd, 'my lord, ye 20 say but rayson' / and they wondred moche of <sup>2</sup>theire gouvernement, and of theire subtylte & wyt / sayeng betwene them self / that they shuld yet come to grete perfection. Soone after the day was come, the masse 24 was said and the trompettes sowned; at which sowne the vantgarde marched fourth, and the sommage and Cartes folowed / and after the grete oost deslodged, & went so long by theire journeyes that they came & 28 lodged them vpon a ryuere named Meuse, vnder a Fortresse named Damcastel / And fro thens vnto the siege tofore lucembourgh, were not past two days journey for them. Therne came the barons ambaxadours of 32 Lucembourgh to the two bretheren, & said: 'My lord, we haue no more but xij leghis vnto the siege, it were good that ye shuld refresshe your peple here vpon this

<sup>1</sup> Word scraped out of MS.



fayre ryuer; For here is good soiourne & good abydyng' /  
and also is good to take aduys & Counseyl how ye wyl  
doo.' /

- 4 **T**hanne ansuerd Anthony ryght boldly: 'By my  
feyth, fayre lordes, thaduys is ouerlong take,  
For assoone that my brother & I haue sent toward the  
kyng of Anssay, yf he wyl not doo after our wyll, he  
8 may hold hym sure to haue batayll / and the vycory  
shal send god to whom it playse hym / but what / me  
semeth we haue good quarell, And therfor we haue  
hope on our lord that he shal helpe vs / and also we  
12 shal, or euer we fyght, demande of hym ryght &  
rayson / but it muste be aduysed who shal goo on the  
message.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the Captayne of the  
vantgarde, 'I shal be your messenger, yf it please you,  
16 and the gentylman that knoweth the Countre shal lede  
me thither.' 'In the name of god,' said anthony /  
'that playseth me ryght wel / but that shal not be tyl  
myn oost be but thre legthes ferre fro them / to thende,  
20 yf þe batayll muste be that we may be nere them for  
to fyght, and haue thayde of the toun with vs.  
1For yf he wyl the batayll we wold be alredy by  
hym.' And thus they lefte to speke of this matere.  
24 And on the morne erly, after that the masse was doo,  
thoost marched, & passed the ryuere vnder Damcastel  
in fayre ordynaunce / and so long they rode that they  
arryued on an euen betwene vertone and Lucem-  
28 bourgh, and there lodged them self. And on the  
morow erly Anthony sent the Captayne of the vant-  
garde, and the said gentylman toward the kyng of  
Anssay, to whom they said the wordes that hereafter  
32 folowe. Thenne they hasted them so moche that they  
came to the siege, and were brought as messagers  
tofore the kyng, whome they salued, & made reuer-  
ence as they oughte / and aftir the knyght captayn  
36 said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, hither we be sent

But Anthony declines to do so, and says he will send to the King of Anssay, and if he accepts not their terms they will fight.

The captain of the vanguard volunteers to be the messenger.

Anthony says he will send when they are as near as three leagues to the enemy.

1 fol. 111 b.

In the morning after mass the army marches beyond Virton, and rests there.

Next morning Anthony sends the captain of the vanguard and the gentleman to the King of Anssay.

The captain, after making reverence to the king,

says he has been sent to show the outrage that has been committed on the noble lady of Luxembourg.

If the king will make amends for the wrongs he has done and depart, he can do so; if not he must fight.

The King of Anssay mocks the knight,

1 fol. 112.

who now demands a speedy answer.

The king replies that he cares not a straw for the knight's masters; whereupon the knight defies the king on behalf of his lords.

from our redoubted lordes, Anthony & Regnald, of Lusynen bretheren, for to shew vnto you the fawte & grete oultrage that ye doo to the noble damoyselle lady of Luxembourg / the which our lordes redoubted 4 mande, & lete you knowe by vs that yf ye wyl restablysshe the dommage, & to make raysounable & lawful amendes of the Iniury & vylonnye that ye haue don to her / to her subgets & to her propre enherytaunce, 8 and after to departe out of her land ye shal doo wel, and they make them strong<sup>i</sup> to make your peas with her / and yf ye wyl not so deele with her / their entencion is for to take reparacion vpon you of the 12 dommages beforseyd by strengthe of their armes & by batayH. and gyue to vs an ansuere what your wyH is to doo / and after morouer I shal telle you as I am commanded to doo.' 'How, sire knyght,' said the 16 kyng, 'are ye come hither for to preche vs / by my feith lytel or nought ye may gete here. For as to your lettres ne to your preching<sup>i</sup>, I shal not be letted of myn entencion / but as long ye may preche as ye wyl, For I 20 vouchesaf. <sup>1</sup>For I take my dysport in your talkyng & prechement. And also I trow that ye ne doo or saye suche thinges but for dysport.' 'By my heed, sire,' said the Captayne, that was angry / 'yf ye doo not 24 promptly & anoone this that our lordes mande by vs vnto you / the dysport that ye speke of / shal hastily tourne you to grete myschief & sorowe.' 'Sire knight,' said the kyng, 'of menaces ye may gyue vs ynoughe. 28 For other thing<sup>i</sup> ye shal not haue ne withbere fro me, For your maisters, nor your menaces I preyse not worth a strawe.' 'Thenne, king<sup>i</sup> of Anssay, I deffye you on my ryght redoubted lordes byhalf.' 'Wel 32 thanne,' said the kyng, 'I shal kepe me fro mystakyng & fro losse & dommage, yf I may' / 'By <sup>2</sup> my sowle,' answerd the Captayne, 'grete nede ye shal haue to do

<sup>2</sup> MS. read *My*.

soo.' And *without* any moo wordes they departed / And  
 whan they were out of thoost or siege / the gentylman  
 toke leue of the Captayne, and secretly entred in to  
 4 the tounse for to recounte the tydynges of the two  
 brethern / and whan he came to the gate he was  
 anone knowen, and the yate was opened to hym, &  
 gladly he was welcommed of eueryone / and they  
 8 demanded tydynges of hym / whiche ansuerd to them.  
 'Sires, make good chere, For soone ye shal haue the  
 moost noblest socours that euer was seen / and wete it  
 wel that the king of Anssay abydeth so long, that he  
 12 shal be certaynly othre slayn or take, & his people al  
 dyscomfyted, take, or putte to deth.' Thenne byganne  
 the joye to be so grete thurgh the tounse that they with-  
 outforth herd the bruyt therof, and woundred moche  
 16 what it might be / and announced it to the kyng.  
 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'they recomforte them-  
 self for the commyng of thoo two children by whome  
 that knyght hath deffyed vs, For <sup>1</sup>as I trow, they  
 20 haue herd some tydynges therof, and perfor they make  
 suche joye.' 'In the name of god,' said an auneynt  
 knight, 'al this may be / but good were to take heede  
 therto / For there nys none litel enmy, but we ought  
 24 to haue doubte therof. For I know them wel ynough  
 by semblaunt. For or euer they come hyther from  
 poytou we shold haue brought about a parte of our  
 wyll.' Now I shal leue to spek of the kynge / and shal  
 28 retourne to speke of hym that brought tydynges of the  
 two bretheren in to the tounse. Whan the knyght  
 thanne was entred as byfore is said, he went fourth  
 vnto the Castel where the pucelle Cristyne was / and  
 32 after hys obeyssaunce don vnto her, he reherced to her  
 al the playn trouthe of the mayntene & countenaunce of  
 the two bretheren / and he said to her / 'how Anthony  
 bare a claw of a Lyon in his face' / and shewed to her  
 36 hys grete fyerste & his grete strengthe / Also how

The captain and the gentleman leave the king. The gentleman secretly enters the town to give tidings of the brethren.

He tells the people that the King of Anssay will be either slain or taken, and his people overcome;

whereat they make a joyful noise.

The King of Anssay says they rejoice because of the succour of

<sup>1</sup> fol. 112 b.

the children who have defied him.

An ancient knight advises the king to take heed of the report.

The Luxembourg knight goes to the castle where the maid Christine dwells,

and describes Anthony and Regnald to her.



Regnald had but one eye / and the beaulte of theyre bodyes & of theire membres / wherof she merueylled moche, & said that it was grete dommage, Whan eny contreyfayture was in the membres of suche noble men. 4 And now cesse thystory to speke of them / and retourneth to tell of the captayne that retourneth to thoost toward Anthony and Regnald. /

The captain arrives at the two brethren and their host,

and recounts the king's proud answer, and how the knight left him to go to Luxembourg.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 118.

The brethren send word through the host that those who have no will to fight can go home,

but the host cries, 'Let us go forth upon your enemies.'

The host marches forward to a little river,

where they rest, sup, and appoint a good watch.

At day-spring they are ready; 200 men of arms and 100 cross-bowmen are left to take charge of the camp.

Thystorye sayth that so long rode the Captayne 8 that he came in to thoost of the two bretheren, & recorded to them how he had fulfilled hys message, & recounted word by word the proude ansuere of the king, and how he had deffied hym in theire byhalf / 12 and also how the knyght was departed fro hym, & was gon to Lucembourg to tell there <sup>1</sup>of theire commyng / And whan the two bretheren herd hym they were full joyous / and soone made cryees thrughe theyre oost, 16 that al they that had no wyll for to fyght & abyde the batayll shuld draw themself aparte, & gaf to them leue to retourne agayn in theire Countrey / but they escryed them self *with* an hye voys. 'Ha / a, franc 20 demoyseaux make your trompettes to be sowned, & lete vs go forth vpon your enemyes / For we ben not come in your companye / but for to take thauenture *with* you suche as god shal send vs / Ha, lordes, goo we 24 & renne vpon our enemyes, For *with* goddes grace, & *with* the good wyll that we be of, they shal soone be dyscomfyted.' Whan thenne the two bretheren herd the ansuerd of theire peple they were joyfull, and made 28 theire oost to departe, & came & lodged vpon a lytel ryuere / and the vantgarde & the grete bataill lodged togidre, bycause they might goo no ferþer / and they souppd togidre, and after went to reste them, & made 32 good watche / and at day spryng they were al redy / and lefte to kepe their lodgis two houndred men of armes *with* an  $\text{¶}$  crosbowes / and thenne the oost in fayre aray marched forth. There myght men see 36



baners & standarts in the wynd, and vnder them the  
 flour of cheualrye in good aray & fayre ordynauce /  
 there had ye sene salades & helmets shynyng clere /  
 4 and harneys knokyng togidre that grete beaute it was  
 to see. They kept & marched nygh togidre, so that  
 one passed not that other. And Anthony and Regnauld  
 rode at the first frount, mounted vpon two grete horses  
 8 armed of aH pieces. And <sup>1</sup>in that estate and aray they  
 went tyl they came vpon a lytel mountayne / and  
 sawe fro thens in the valey the toun & Castel of  
 Lucembourgh, and the gret siege that aduyrouned it  
 12 about. And wete it pat they of the siege had not yet  
 perceyued thoost of the two bretheren / but they were  
 all asured pat they shuld haue the batayH. Thenne  
 sent anthony foure houndred helmets for to scarmysshe  
 16 the siege / and the oost folowed with lytel paas  
 in fayr aray of batayH / And on the wynges of  
 thoost were knightes and Crosbowes in fayre ordy-  
 nauce. Now tel we of the foure houndred fyghting  
 20 men that went for to scarmyssh with them of the  
 siege. /

They march forth  
 in good order ;  
 Anthony and  
 Regnauld in  
 front on two  
 great horses.  
 1 fol. 113 b.

They come to a  
 little mountain,  
 from which they  
 see the town and  
 castle of Luxem-  
 bourg and the  
 siege around it.  
 The besiegers do  
 not see the  
 relieving host.

Anthony  
 sends 400 skir-  
 mishers in  
 advance.

**T**hystory saith that the foure houndred fyghtyng  
 men entred vpon their enemyes, and slew &  
 24 hew doune aH that they recountred / And whan they  
 were come nygh to the kingis tente, they of the night  
 watche that were not yet vnarmed went ayenst them, for  
 the cry that they made that was 'Lusynen' / many sperys  
 28 were putte there aH to pieces, and many one cast doune  
 to the ground / and the gretest damage tourned vpon  
 them of the siege / but sodaynly the kyng armed hym  
 self, and putte hym vnder his banere byfore his tente /  
 32 and whiles they held foot alle thoost was armed, &  
 drew them toward the kyngis banere. And he de-  
 manded of them, 'Fayre lordes, what affray is this?'  
 'By my feyth,' said a knight, 'they are men of armes  
 36 that entred in your oost ryght fyersly, and they caH

These knights  
 slay all they  
 encounter,

and come nigh  
 the king's tent,  
 which was de-  
 fended by his  
 night watch.

The king arms  
 himself,

and asks his  
 men what affray  
 is this?

A knight answers  
 that men of  
 arms have

damaged them  
sore, but the  
night watch has  
driven them  
back.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 114.

Anthony with his  
men comes up in  
battle array,

and the king  
comes forth to  
meet him.

The battle  
begins, and  
much blood is  
spilt.

Anthony fights  
so well

that the most  
hardy dare not  
abide him.

Regnald also  
does great feats  
of arms.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 114 b.

Lusynen, and they haue adommaged you sore / and yf  
it had not be the nyght watche the losse had be greter,  
For they haue faught *with* them valyauntly / and haue  
made <sup>1</sup>them to goo back by force.' 'By my feyth,' said 4  
the kyng / 'these damoyseaulx, in whos behalf I am  
deffyed, haue not taryed long to come & bere dom-  
mage to me / but wel I think for to auenge me therof.'  
Thenne is come Anthony and his batayH, which made 8  
his trompettes to be sowned clerly. And whan the  
kyng perceyued them he came *with*forth the lodgis  
in fayre aray & batayH renged. And thenne the  
bataylles recountred eche other / and archers & cros- 12  
bowemen approuched & bygan to shoote, and there were  
slayne & hurt many one of the king of Anssays party,  
and neuertheles the grete batayH assembled togidre /  
and there was grete occysion & fyers medlee. And 16  
thenne anthony broched his hors *with* the sporys, the  
spere alowed, & smote a knyght by such vertue that the  
targe nor his cote of stele might not warauntyse hym,  
but that he threw hym doune to therthe al deed. 20  
And thenne he drew out his swerd, and smote on the  
lyfte syde & on the ryght syde, gyuyng grete & pesaunt  
strokes, in so moche that in a short while he was so  
knowne thugh al the batayH that the moost hardy 24  
of them alle durst not abyde hym. Thenne came  
Regnald mounted vpon a grete Courser calling 'Lusy-  
nen,' which made so grete appertyse of armes that alle  
his enemyes redoubted hym. Thenne was the baytayH 28  
fyers, cruel, and mortal on bothe partyes / but alwayes  
the gretest losse & domage tourned vpon the kyng of  
Anssay & his peple, which was moche dolaunt & sorow-  
ful, & envertued hym self strong, and made with his 32  
handes grete vasselage / but al that preuaylled hym  
nought, For the poyteuins <sup>2</sup>were ryght strong, hard, &  
fel lyke lyons / and theire were the two lordes so  
puyssaunt that none so bold was there that durst abyde 36

them. Thenne sawe wel the kyng by the puyssaunce & strenght of the two brethern, that he myght no lenger suffre theire force.

The King of Anssay sees he cannot withstand them.

4 Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kyng of Anssay tofore lucembourg / and how he was take.

8 **T**he kyng<sup>1</sup> thenne, which was a valyaunt man & strong, cryed with a hye voys 'Anssay, Anssay, lordes & barons be not abashed, For the batayll is oures' / and at his callyng<sup>1</sup> his people toke courage, & assembled them self ayen togidre about theire kyng, 12 and made a fyers enuahye<sup>1</sup> vpon the poyteuyns / there was many man slayn / hewen & sore hurte with grete douleur. That mornynge<sup>1</sup> was fayre & clere, & the soonne shoone bright vpon the helmets / and caused 16 the gold & syluer ther on to <sup>2</sup>resplendysse, that fayre it was to see. And they of the tounes that herde this grete affray, toke theire armes; & eche of them made good watche, For they were ryght ferdful & doubtful 20 of treson. And the knyght which anonced to them the socours of the two brepern was with the pucelle Crystyne in a hye toure, & loked out at a wyndowe / and he knew wel that it was Anthony & Regnald, that 24 were come for to fight ayenst the king and his peple, & anon called with an hye voys, 'My lady, come hither & see the floure of knyghthod, of prowesse & hardynes / come & see honour in his siege royall, & 28 in his mageste / come & see the god of armes in propre figure.' 'Frend,' said the pucelle / 'what is that ye say to me?' 'I calle you,' sayd the knight, 'to come hither & see the flour of noblesse & of all 32 curtoysye, that fro<sup>3</sup> ferre land is come hither for to fyght with your enemyes for to kepe your honour,

He encourages his people,

they rally and again fiercely attack the Poitevins.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 115.

The noise of the battle is heard by the townsfolk, and by the knight messenger who is with the maid Christine.

He asks her to look at her champions,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *envaye* = attack.

<sup>3</sup> *for* in MS.

the children of  
Lusignan.

When the maid  
sees the slaughter

she is full of  
grief for being  
the cause of  
such deeds.

fol. 115 b.

Anthony, seeing  
the havoc made  
on his host,

resolves to fight  
the King of  
Anssay.

He rushes upon  
the king,  
smites him,

and casts him  
from his horse.

He makes him  
prisoner.  
Four knights are  
appointed to  
guard him.

your lande, & your peple / this are the two children of  
Lusynen, that be cōme for to deffend you ayenst the  
king<sup>e</sup> of Anssay & aH his puyssaunce, and to putte  
theire honour & lyf in auenture for to kepe your 4  
honour sauf.' Thenne came the mayde at the wyn-  
dowe, & beheld the mortal batayH & horryble medlee /  
sayeng in this manere: 'O Veray god, what shaft doo  
this pouere orphenym / better it had be that I had 8  
drowned myself, or that I had be putte to deth in  
some other wyse, or elles that I had be deed whan I  
yssued out of my moders wombe / than so many  
creatures shuld be slayne & perysshe for myn owne 12  
synne.' Moche dolaunt & heuy was the yong<sup>e</sup> damoy-  
selle of the grete myschief that she sawe, For in  
certayn thoccysyon was grete on both partyes, For the  
king recomforted his peple by his wo[r]py conten- 16  
aunce & valyaunt maynten; For with his propre swerd<sup>e</sup>  
he moch adommaged his enemys poyteuyns. <sup>1</sup>But  
Anthony, seeyng the grete dommage that the kynge  
bare vpon his peple / he was dysplaysed with, & sayd 20  
in hym self: 'By my feyth, thy lyf or myn shal not  
be long<sup>e</sup>, For rather I wold dey than to suffre & see my  
peuple so murdryd before me.' Thenne he sporyd hys  
hors / and fyersly as a lyon rane vpon the king<sup>e</sup>. and 24  
with his swerd<sup>e</sup> of stele smote hym vpon the hiest part  
of his helmet by suche strength & vertue that he made  
hym to be enclyned vpon þe hors neck, so sore astonyed  
that he ne wyst wheþer it was nyght or day, nor he 28  
had no force ne power to helpe ne redresse hymself  
vpward / and Anthony that this sawe, putte his swerd<sup>e</sup>  
in the shethe ayen; & toke the king by the middes of  
the body / drew hym fro the hors, & so rudely cast 32  
hym to therthe that vnnethe hys herte brake within  
his bely / and after toke hym to foure knightes, and  
charged them on their lyues that they shuld kepe  
hym, so that þey myght ansuere hym of it. And they 36



- said that so shuld they doo / and they thanne bonde hym & lede hym out of the batayH, and called xxv<sup>ii</sup> archers with them. And after these thinges thus doon
- 4 Anthony retourned in the prees, callyng<sup>i</sup> 'Lusynen' with a hyc voys, & said: 'Now lordes & barons, gyue grete strokes, & spare none, For the journey is ours thankynge be to god; For I haue take the kynge of
- 8 Anssay my prysonner, that so grete vylonny hap don to the gentyl pucelle Cristyne.' Thenne was the medlee rude & paryllous / and there dide the bretheren so moche of armes, that al tho that saw them said, that
- 12 they sawe neuer two so valyaunt knyghtes. What shuld preuayH you long compte. <sup>1</sup>Whan the Anssays people knew that theire kynge was take, they neuer syn made no deffense / but wer alle outhre slayne or
- 16 take. And there gate the poytevyngs grete conqueste & noble proye, and lodged them self in the pauyllons & tentes of the king of Anssay & of hys peple. And was the kinge brought in Anthonys tente, which a
- 20 lytel byfore was hys owne propre tente; wherfore the king<sup>i</sup> myght not hold his owne tonge, but said: 'By my feyth, damoyseaulx, wel sayth he trouth that sayth / "that god doth / he doth anoone" / For this day, in
- 24 the mornynge, men had doo here within but lytel for your commandement.' 'Sire,' sayd Anthony, 'your folyshnes & synne is cause therof; For tofore ye wold rauysshe by force the pucelle Crystyne lady of this
- 28 toune / but therof ye shaft be payed after your deserte, For I shal yeld your self vnder her subgection.' Thenne whanne the kyng<sup>i</sup> vnderstode hym, he was shamfast & woofuH / and as dysolate & dyscomfyte,
- 32 fuH heuylly ansuerd in this manere: 'Sith now it is thus vnfortunatly happed with me, rather I wyl dey than to lyue.' 'Nay,' sayd Anthony, 'ye shal delyuere your self / no doubte of / vnto þe mercy & subgection
- 36 of the pucelle.'

They lead him out of the battle.

Anthony now urges his men to give great strokes, and to spare none, and tells them he has made the king prisoner.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 116.

The king's people give up hope after he is taken.

He is brought to Anthony, and confesses that 'that god doth, he doth anoone.'

Anthony tells the king that he is to blame for desiring to seize Christine,

and announces that he is to be delivered into her hands.

# Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 116 b.

Anthony despatches the King of Anssay under guard to Christine,

<sup>1</sup>Thenne called Anthony to hym the two barons, ambaxadours that were come to Lusynen, with 4 the said gentylman fro Lucembourgh and xx<sup>ti</sup> other knyghtes of poytou, and to them said in this manere: 'Now lede me this kinge tofore þe damoyselle Crystyne, and recommande vs moche vnto her / and that we send 8 her / her enemy prysonner, for to do with hym her wyH.' And thenne they departed, & lede the king as they were youen in commandement / and came to the toune, where they were wel festyed & honourably 12 receyued. And thenne the Citezeyns conduyted them toward the pucelle, theire lady Crystyne, with grete joye. 'Noble lady,' said the messagers, 'the two yong damoyseaulx of Lusynen recommande them hertyly 16 vnto you, <sup>2</sup>and send you this kyng your enemy prysonner, to doo with hym after your dyscrecyon & wylle.' 'Fayre lordis,' ansuerd the damoyselle / 'herto behoueth gret guerdon / but I am not puyssaunt 20 ynough for to reward them as they haue deseruyd. I pray to god deuoutely that of hys grace he wyl rewarde them to whom I am moch bonden / and I pray you, fayre lordes, that on my behalf ye wyl pray my two 24 yong lordes that they vouchesauf to come and lodge them self here within, & as many of theyre barons with them as it shal lyke them good. & in þe meane while men shal burye the deed bodyes, & the deed 28 horses shal be brent / and also they of my Counseyl shal take theire best aduys to see how I shal reward them of theire grete peyne & traueyl, that they haue suffred for me vnworthy perof, and to recompense 32 them of theire grete expenses & dommages in the best wyse that we can or shal mowe. And ye, kyng of Anssay, ye swere vnto vs by your ryalte that ye shal

<sup>2</sup> fol. 117.

who gives great thanks,

and hopes God will reward them.

She says her council will consider how to recompense her deliverers,

and binds the king to promise that he will stay

- not departe from hens without the wyll & gree of the  
 two noble damoyseaulx, that here haue sent you toward  
 me. For yet so moch I knowe / thankyng to god /  
 4 that I shuld mysdoo to cast you in pryson / not for  
 your sake / but for loue of them that hither haue sent  
 you.' Whan theenne the kynge vnderstode the wordes  
 of the pucelle, he ansuerd al ashamed, ' Noble damoy-  
 8 selle, I swere you on my feyth that neuer hens I shal  
 departe without your leue & theirs also ; For so moch  
 of wele / of honour & of valyauntnes I haue sene in  
 them, that moche I desyre to be acoynted with them /  
 12 how be it that grete domage they haue borne vnto  
 me & my men.' And theenne the noble mayde made  
 hym to be putte into a fayre chambre & riche, & with  
 hym ladyes & damoysselles, <sup>1</sup>also knyghtis & squyers,  
 16 for to make hym to forgete his losse, & forto reioye &  
 haue hym out of melencolye. And thus don, the  
 messagers retourned toward the tentes, & reported the  
 mandement & prayer of the pucelle Cristyne vnto the  
 20 two bretheren, whiche were counseilled to goo thither ;  
 and ordeyned the mareshal of the oost for to gouerne  
 their peple vnto tyme that they came agayn / and  
 also he commanded hym to make the deed bodyes to  
 24 be buried, & to make the place clene where as the  
 batayll had be. Theenne they departed, acompanyed  
 with their baronnye / and ayenst them came, in their  
 best wyse, an houndred gentylmen / and also the  
 28 barons of the land mete with them, & made their  
 obeyssaunce full honourably vnto the two brethern,  
 prayeng them yet agayn, on their ladys behalf, that  
 they vouchesauf to come & lodge them in the tounne /  
 32 And they ansuerd that gladly they wold doo soo.  
 Anthony was mounted vpon a grete Courser / and he  
 had on hym a jacke of Cramesyn velvet, all brouded &  
 sette with perlis, and held a grete vyreton in his hand.  
 36 And in lyke & semblable manere went hys brother

in the town until  
 the brethren are  
 satisfied.

This done  
 he is given a fair  
 chamber.  
 Knights and  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 117 b.

ladies are sent  
 to keep him  
 company.

The guard of the  
 king returns to  
 the brethren,

who leave their  
 army in charge  
 of the marshal,

and accompanied  
 with their barons  
 go towards the  
 town.

The barons of Luxembourg, who come to meet them, are astonished at the appearance of the brethren,

and marvel at Anthony's claw,

and at Regnald's one eye.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 118.

They enter the town amid the sound of trumpets.

The houses are richly decorated,

and the windows full of women.

As the brethren ride through the town, the people say that it would not be wise to oppose them.

Regnald. And whan the barons of Lucembourg sawe the two brethern, they wondred moch of their fyersnes, gretnes & myght, and wel said that there was no man that might *wit*stand ne abyde their <sup>4</sup> puyssaunce / and moche they merueylled of the Lyons claw that appiered in Anthonys cheke, & said that yf ne had be that he were the fayrest man in the world / and moche they playned Regnald of that he had but <sup>8</sup> one eye, For in al his other membres he passed of beaulte al *oper* men.

<sup>1</sup> In this partye sayth thistorye, that in noble estate & fayre aray entred the two brethern in to the toun <sup>12</sup> of Lucembourg; & before them sowned *trompettes* in grete nombre, *wit* heraults & menestrels; And Cyte-seyns had hanged their houses *wit*houtforth toward the stretes, with their best & rycheest hangyng clothes / <sup>16</sup> and the stretes where the said lordes passed were couered on high *wit* lynyen clothes, that no rayne or other fowH wedryng myght lette peire entree *wit*hin the toun / and many noble & worshipful ladyes, bourgeys <sup>20</sup> wyues / damoysselles and fayre maydens, were in their best rayments, eche one after the state & degree that she was of / lokyng out at wyndowes for to behold & see the noble brethern & their felawship. <sup>24</sup>

Thystorye thanne sayth that the two bretheren departed out of their tentes with noble compagne, as barons, knightes, squyers, & other gentylmen / and as vycoryous prynces rode full honourably vnto <sup>28</sup> Lucembourg, and thurgh the toun, where as they were behold with joyous herte of euery one, sayeng that one to other: See yonder be two the fyers men, bretheren that are to be redoubted / he is not wyse <sup>32</sup> that taketh noyse or debat with them / and they had grete wonder of Anthonys cheke / and also for certayn it was a straunge thing to behold & see / but the grete beaulte that was in his body caused that inconueny- <sup>36</sup>



- ence to be forgotten / And thus they rode toward the  
 Castel. The ladyes & damoyelles beheld them out of  
 the wyndowes / and said that they neuer sawe two  
 4 damoyseaulx of more noble affayre. And thenne they  
 came to the Castel, wher they alighted, and entred  
 fourthwith into the hall, where as the noble Crystyne  
 mete them at the gate, wel acompanyed of ladyes &  
 8 damoyelles in grete nombre, and of knightes & squyers /  
 and with a joyous contenaunce & gracyous maynten  
 honou'rably receyued them & gretly festyed them.  
 The halle was hanged nobly with ryche clothes after  
 12 the vse of the land, and fro the halle they went in to  
 another chambre, mochi noble & ryche, & pere the  
 pucelle Cristyne bygan to say to them in this manyere :  
 'My right dere lordes, I thanke you mochi, as I may  
 16 of the noble socours & help that ye haue don to me / I  
 am not so mochi worth as ye ought to be rewarded of /  
 not that withstanding I shaft endeuyre me therto / al  
 shuld I laye of my land in pledge this tene yere day.  
 20 And also, my lordes, of your noble grace ye haue sent  
 to me the king of anssay, myn enemy, of the which  
 plaise it you to knowe that I am not she to whom  
 oughte be punysshement of hym / but to you appar-  
 24 teyneth to doo therwith your playsire & volente, that  
 haue had the parel & payne for to ouercome & take  
 hym your prysonner / wherfore after that right re-  
 quyreth he is yours, & may doo with hym whatsoeuer  
 28 it please you / and I remyse hym in your pcession.  
 For as touching my persone I gyue hym ouer vnto you,  
 & loke not to medle any more with him tofore you.'  
 'Noble damoyelle,' said thanne anthony, 'sethen it is  
 32 your playsire, we shal ordeyne wel perof, in suche wyse  
 that it shal be to your grete honour & prouffyte / and  
 to hym grete shame & confusyon / no doubt of / And  
 wete it that my broper and I are not come hither for  
 36 loue of your siluer, but for to susteyne rayson & right /

The ladies say  
 they have never  
 seen such noble  
 youths.

At the castle

Christine meets  
 them in the hall,

and receives  
 them honour-  
 1 fol. 118 b.  
 ably, and richly  
 feasts them.

She thanks the  
 brethren for  
 their help,

and promises to  
 reward them.

She gives back  
 the King of  
 Anssay into  
 their hands

to deal with as  
 they wish.

Anthony replies  
 that they came  
 not for silver,  
 but to sustain  
 justice,

and because  
they think all  
noble men  
should aid  
widows and  
orphans.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 119.

He declines all  
reward,  
save the lady's  
favour and good  
grace.

Christine is  
abashed,

and wishes to  
pay the soldiers  
of the brethren,

but her offer is  
refused.

The steward an-  
nounces dinner;

they wash,  
and send for the  
King of Anssay,

who sits down  
to dinner with  
them.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 119b.

also considered that alle noble men oughte to helpe & ayde the wydowes, orphenynis, and the pucelles also. And forasmoch also that we were truly informed, that the kinge of Anssay made grete werre <sup>1</sup>anenst you & 4 your land wrongfully, wherfor no doubte of / of aH your goodes we wyl not take the value of one peny / but alonly to be receyued in your noble fauour & good grace, aH vylounye excepted.' Whan the pucelle 8 Cristyne vnderstode these wordes, she was abasshed of the grete honour that the two bretheren dide vnto her / not that withstandyng she ansuerd in this manere: 'For southe, my gracyous lordes, at lest it were no 12 raison, but that I payed wel your peple that be come hither to take your wages as sawdoyers.' 'Damoyselle,' said penne Anthony, 'vouchsaf to suffre that we haue said, For my lord our fader, & my lady our moder, 16 haue payed them alredey for a hole yere day, or euer they departed out of our land / & yet it is not fullyssh a moneth complet syn that we departed thens; And ouermore wete it that syluer & gold we haue ynoughe. 20 Wherfore, noble demoyselle, ye lese your wordes to speke therof, For certayn it shal none other be' / and she thenne thanked them in her best manere ryght humbly. 24

**T**henne came the styward, & enclyned hym tofore the pucelle, & said: 'My lady, ye may wesshe whan it playse you, For al thing is redy to dyner' / 'whan, my lordes,' she said, 'be redy perto, I am 28 playsed.' Whom Anthony ansuerd: 'noble damoyselle, we be al redy whan ye vouchesaf to go therat.' and thenne they toke eche other by pe handes & wesshe. And Anthony desired the king of Anssay to be sent 32 for / and made hym sette first of aH at the table / and after the pucelle and syn Regnauld / and anthony satte last. And nygh to them satte foure of the noblest barons of the land. And along the halle were <sup>1</sup>other 36

tables dressed, wherat sette all other gentylnen, barons  
 & squyers, eche one after hys degree. Of the seruyse  
 I nede not to hold you long compte, For they were so  
 4 nobly & haboundauntly serued, that nothing accordyng  
 to such a ryall feste they wanted of. And whan they  
 had dyned they wesshe handes, and graces were said,  
 and all the tables voyded. thanne said the king of  
 8 Anssay in this manyere: ' Lordes damoyseaulx, vouches-  
 sauf to here my wordes. It is trouthe that the wyll of  
 god & myn vnfortune hath brought me to that caas,  
 that by your valiauntnes & prowes I am & haue be  
 12 bothe myself & al my peple dyscomfyte, & ouer that ye  
 haue take me your prysonner / but I ensure you, con-  
 sideryng your high prowesse, your bounte, & your  
 noble affayres, I am glad & joyous to fynde me now  
 16 with you, For I shal be the better therfore al my lyf  
 naturel; and syth, fayre lordes, pat my presence & long  
 abydyng here with you may nought preuaylle to you /  
 humbly I beseech you, as I best can, that it playse you  
 20 to putte me to raisounable raunson & payement port-  
 able to me, so that I be not al dystroyed nor dys-  
 heryted / though it lyeth now in your power / but  
 haue pyte on me, & punysse me not aftir the regarde  
 24 of my follysshe enterpryse / how be it pat rygour of  
 justice requyreth it.' ' By my hed,' said Anthony,  
 ' who that shuld punysse you after the regarde of the  
 grete iniurye, vylonnye, & domage that ye haue don,  
 28 and yet had purposed to do to this noble damoysele  
 without eny lawful cause / ye were not puyssant to  
 make amendes suffysaunt therof / but for as moche that  
 ye knowleche your synne the lasse penytence shal ye  
 32 haue / and I wyl wel that ye knowe that my brother  
 & I be not come from our countre hither for hoop of  
 getyng of siluer vpon you nor vpon other / but for  
 desire & hope of getyng of honour & good fame or  
 36 renomnee, without to haue any wyll or appetyt to

Dinner over,  
 hands washed,  
 and grace said,

the King of  
 Anssay  
 declares himself  
 discomfited,

and beseeches  
 that a reasonable  
 ransom may be  
 named,

and prays that  
 he be not dealt  
 with according  
 to the extreme  
 rigour of justice.

Anthony answers  
 that he would be  
 unable to make  
 amends if he  
 were duly pun-  
 ished for the  
 wrong he had  
 committed;

but as he and  
 his brother seek  
 honour and not  
 silver,

1 fol. 120.

they give him liberty on condition that he pay Christine for all the cost his attempt has put her to,

and that he undertakes never again to injure her.

The king agrees to these terms,

and Anthony adds,

that the king must build and endow a priory for twelve monks,

who shall pray for the souls of those who have been slain in the battle.

The king swears on the *Evangelis* to keep these terms;

haue mortal rychesses. Wherefore, as touchyng our part, we <sup>1</sup>now remyse & putte you free quytte & at your lyberte / sauf that we taxe you to pay to this noble pucelle aH such *dommages* that she hath had at your 4 cause / and *perof* ye shal gyue good pledges or euer ye departe hens, And yet morouer ye shal swere vnto her vpon the holy *Euaungiles*, that neuer ye shal bere, ner ye shal suffre to be borne ony manere of *dommage* ne 8 dyshonour to the forsaid pucelle that is here present / but at your power ye shal gyue her ayde, help, & comfort at al tymes anenst aH them that iniurye or *dommage* wold doo to her. And wel I wyl that ye 12 knowe that yf ye wyl not swere & *accorde* to that I haue said with your good wylle, I shal sende you in to such a place, wherout the dayes of your lyf ye shal not escape. And whan the kynge vnderstode these wordes 16 he ansuered in this manyere. 'Sire, I am wyllyng & redy to swere that *conuenant*, yf the noble mayde be content of that ye haue ordeyned & said.' 'By my feyth,' said she, 'I consent me therto, syn it is my 20 lordes plaisure' / and yet morouer said Anthony suche or semblable wordes as folowen /

'**Y**et, sire, I haue not al said that ye muste doo, For ye muste doo founde a Pryoure of twelue 24 monkes & the pryour, in suche place there as my lady shal ordeyne / and ye shal endowe & empossesse them with rentes & reuenue conuenable for their lyuyng & for their successours for euermore / the said monkes & 28 pryour to pray there for the sowles of them that haue be slayne of your part & of myn in this batayH.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne the king, 'I promyse you pat so shal I doo, and good pledges & hostages I shal gyue 32 you, & to my lady to be asured therof.' Thenne sware the kynge by hys feyth vpon the holy *Euaungiles* that he shuld hold & accomplysshe al that beforesaid is / & gaf & delyuered good hostages / & *lettres* patentes were 36



- therof made vnder hys seal, & the seales of aH the  
 1 barons of his lande. And that don, Anthony said  
 to the kyng / 'I now gyue you, and delyuere free aH  
 4 the prysonners that we & our folke haue take, and your  
 tentes & pauyllons also / but the hauoir that is departed  
 amonges my felawes I may not it rendre or yeld to  
 you / And thenne he made to be delyuered to hym  
 8 foure thousaund prysouners or therabout, al men of  
 estate & faytte / And thenne the kyng enclyned hym-  
 self, & thanked hym moch therof. What shuld I  
 make long compte / the feste bygane sumptuous &  
 12 grete thurgh the toun of Lucembourg, & specially  
 in the Castel / and eueryone spake of the grete noblesse  
 and curtoysye that Anthony & regnald his brother had  
 shewed to the king of Anssay /

and he and his  
 lords delivered  
 1 fol. 120b.

letters patent  
 agreeing to the  
 same under all  
 their seals.

Anthony then  
 delivers four  
 thousand  
 prisoners to the  
 king.

There is a great  
 feast in Luxem-  
 bourg.

and all men  
 praise the  
 courtesy of  
 Anthony.

- 16 Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay  
 called to hym al the barons of Lucem-  
 bourgh to Counseylle.

- 2 **T**henne called the king of Anssay aH the barons of  
 20 the land to CounseyH, and said to them: 'Fayre  
 lordes, Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought &  
 forged; how be it thenne that I haue be yl wyller  
 bothe to you & to your lady / the tyme is now come  
 24 that I wold her honour and prouffit & youres also /  
 lyst & here, For god hath sent good auenture to you,  
 yf ye can take it in gree.' Thenne said the barons:  
 'Now, sire, syth that ye haue entamed þe matere /  
 28 vouchesauf to declare vnto vs the sentence therof.'  
 'Ye moste,' said the kyng, 'fynde the manere &  
 meane that Anthony take your lady to his wyf, and  
 he to be your lord, For thenne ye shal mowe saye  
 32 surely, þat no nede ye haue of none other / & none so  
 hardy were to take an henne from you ayenst your  
 wyH.' And they ansuered thus: 'Sire, yf Anthonye

1 fol. 121.

The King of  
 Anssay calls the  
 barons of Lux-  
 embourg to  
 council,

and advises  
 them to find  
 means to make  
 Anthony marry  
 Christine.

They say they  
will be glad to  
do so.

The King of  
Anssay goes to  
Anthony and  
asks him to send  
for his brother  
and his council.

This is done.

Anthony and his  
people come to  
the barons of  
Luxembourg,  
who do them  
reverence.

1 fol. 121 b.

The King of  
Anssay, in the  
name of the  
barons of Lux-  
embourg says,  
seeing that  
Anthony and  
his brother will  
accept no gift  
of Christine,

will Anthony  
grant them a gift  
of a kind which  
will not lessen  
his possessions?

Anthony answers  
he will, if it is  
something he can  
do honourably.

wold do soo we were therof full glad & joyous.' 'Now  
thenne, fayre lordes, lete me deele therwith / and I  
hope to god I shal brynge the matere to a good ende.  
Abyde and tary here a lytel, & I shal goo speke with 4  
hym.' Thenne came the kynge tofore Anthony, &  
said: 'Noble man & curtoys damoyseau, the barons of  
this land desire & pray you, that ye, your brother, &  
your CounseyH come and entre in to this chambre. 8  
For they desyre moch to speke with you for your  
prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said anthony,  
'ryght gladly.' And thenne he called to hym hys  
brother & them of their CounseyH / & syn entred in 12  
to the chambre / and the barons of the land that were  
there enclyned themself, & made grete reuerence to the  
two brethern. Thenne spake the kynge of Anssay, &  
said: 'Fayre lordes, these two noble damoyseaulx are 16  
cōme hither at your requeste & prayer / declare now  
to them your wylle.' And they ansuerde to hym:  
'Noble kinge, humbly we beseche you, that ye anounce  
& shewe to them our entencion, that ye knowe <sup>1</sup>wel 20  
ynoughe.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I wyl.'  
And thenne suche wordes as folowen he bygan to say /  
'**A**nthony, noble man, curtoys & valyaunt knight,  
pe barons of this Countree haue had regarde to 24  
the grete honour that ye haue borne & shewed to their  
lady, to her lande, & to them / also they haue con-  
sidered how nought ye wyl take of theyre lady ner of  
them / and for asmoche that they desyre your wele & 28  
honour, they humbly beseche your good grace that it  
playse the same to graunte to them a yefte, the which  
shaH not lasse your good nor hauoyr / but shal rather  
augmente your honour.' 'By my feyth, noble kynge, yf 32  
it be of that thing that I may recouere / touching myn  
honour, I graunt it right gladly.' 'Certainly,' said the  
king, 'their requeste is thenne fulfilled, For they  
desyre none other but your honour.' 'Now, sey thenne, 36

said Anthony, 'what they desyre of me.' 'Damoyseau,' said the kinge / 'they wyl gyue you the Duchesse of Lucembourgh, peire liege lady, to your wyf / reffuse 4 not that noble yefte' /

The king offers the Duchesse of Luxembourgh to Anthony to wife.

Whan anthony vnderstode hym he stood<sup>r</sup> pensful long tyme / and syn said in this manere: 'By my feith, fayre lordes, I supposed neuer to cōme vnto this 8 countre for that quarrell; but sethen I haue accorded to you I shal not gaynsay it / lete now the pucelle be sent for, For yf she be playsted therwith I consent me perto.' Thenne was the damoysselle fete thither by 12 foure of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche recounted to her al the faytte, wherof she was ryght glad & joyous / how wel she made of it no semblaunt.

When Anthony understands the position,

he asks that the maid should be sent for, and says if she agree, he will consent.

Christine is told what has been done, and is right glad.

And whan she entred in to the Chambre she made her 16 obeyssaunce tofore antony, & salued alle the barons there / and as she beheld Anthony she bygan to wexe in her vysage more rede than a rose / and thenne the barons reherced & shewed vnto her all this affayre.

She enters the chamber.

20 And whan the pucelle had herd<sup>r</sup> them speke 'she ansuerd<sup>r</sup> to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, I rendred & yeld thankes & mercys vnto almyghty god, to his blessed moder, and to you also, of the grete honour 24 that now happeth to me, For I pouere orphenyme am not worthy to be addressed in to so highe a place as to haue to my lord the flour of knighthode and the noblesse of alle the world / and of that other part, I 28 wote & knowe wel that ye whiche are my liege men, that bettre knowe myn own affayres than I doo my self / wold not counseyll me that thinge, but it were to my grete prouffyt & honour. Wherfor I ne oughte 32 nor wyl not gaynsey it / but I am al redy to do therof your playsire.' /

When she sees Anthony, her face becomes redder than a rose.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 122.

She declares that though unworthy she is ready to do their pleasure.

Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused  
Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourg. /

<sup>1</sup> fol. 122 b.

Anthony and Christine are assured together, and on the next morning they are married.

That night Anthony begets a valiant heir, who is called Bertrand.

The King of Anssay gives leave to his people to return home, while he remains to fulfil his treaty.

Anthony, Regnald, and the king go through the land and visit the towns and fortresses.

After his return Anthony adds the figure of a lion to his arms.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 123.

A messenger arrives from the King of Bohemia,

<sup>1</sup> 'Forsoothe, noble lady,' said the Barons, 'ye say right wel & manerly.' What shuld I bring 4  
forth prolixie or long talkyng? For shortly to say, they were assured togidre with gret joye / and on the next morne after they were espoused & maryed togidre, & was the feste holden right grete & noble, and the peple 8  
of the land was ryght joyous whan they vnderstode & knew therof / and pat same nyght lay Anthony with the noble mayde Crystyne, and gate on her a moche valyaunt heyre, & was called Bertrand. The feste 12  
thenne endured longe sumptuous & grete, & grete ryalte was seen there / and anthony gaf noble & ryche jewels / and receuyed the homages of the lordes & barons of the land. And the king of Anssay yaf leue to his people 16  
to retourne into theire Countrees / and abode with anthony with a pryuy<sup>2</sup> meyne for to fulfyll & accomplisshe that he had promysed at traytee makyng of the peas. And soone after the duc Anthony with his 20  
brother Regnald and the king of Anssay and the baronnye, went thurgh the land to vysyte the tounes & fortresses & putte al thing in good ordonnaunce / in so moche that euery man said, that he was one of the 24  
moost wysest prynce that euer they sawe / and whan he had vysyted all þe land he retourned to Lucembourg, where the duchesse Cristyne receyued hym right joyously / And thanne by thadrys of his Coun- 28  
seil he adiousted to his armes the shadow or fygure of a Lyon, for cause of the duchery, wherof the lady Cristyne had oftyme prayed hym to fore. And thus they soiourned at Lucembourg with grete dysport & 32  
joye / tyl that a messenger came fro the king of Behayne there, whiche was brother to the king<sup>3</sup> of

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *privet maisnée*.



Anssay, and was besieged within his toun of praghe  
by the paynemes & sarrasyns.

who is besieged  
by the Sarasins  
at Prague.

Cap. XXIX.    How the kyng, of behayne  
4    sent a messenger toward the king, of Anssay  
his brother. /

**T**hystorye sayth that a messenger came to Lucem-  
bourg fro the kyng<sup>e</sup> Federyk of behayne, that  
8 was moche valyaunt & a true man, whiche ryght strong<sup>e</sup>  
susteyned the feyth catholicka<sup>n</sup> ayenst the Sarasyns /  
It is so that the paynemes entred in to his land / and  
seeving hym self not puyssaunt ynough for to gyue  
12 them iourney of batay<sup>n</sup>, drew hym self & his peple  
with hym in to hys toun of Prague / and had this  
kyng<sup>e</sup> Federyke but one only doughtir to his heyre,  
whiche was named Eglantyne / & certayn it is that he  
16 was brother to the king<sup>e</sup> of <sup>1</sup>Anssay. Wherefore he sent  
a messenger to Lucembourg there as the kyng of Anssay  
his brother was at that tyme. And shortly to speke,  
the messenger came & directed his lettres to the king<sup>e</sup>  
20 of Anssay, whiche opened & redd<sup>e</sup> it / by the tenoure of  
whiche he vnderstode & knew the myschief where his  
brother was in / and sayd al on high in heryng<sup>e</sup> of  
eueryone there in this manere : ‘ Ha / a, Fortune, how  
24 art thou so peruerse & so crue<sup>n</sup>, certaynly<sup>2</sup> wel is he  
deceyued pat trusteth in the nor in thy yestes by no  
manere. it hath not suffysed the to haue ouerthrauen  
me fro the vppermost stepp of thy whele vnto the  
28 lowest / but vtterly wylt dystroye me for euer, whan my  
brother, whiche [is] one of the moost trewest & valiaunt  
kyng<sup>e</sup> in the world<sup>e</sup>, thou wylt so dysempare & putte  
out fro his royaume, yf god of his grace purueye not of  
32 remedy therto’ / and thenne he retourned hym self  
toward anthony, & sayd : ‘ Ha / right noble & valyaunt

The valiant King  
Frederick of  
Bohemia,

unable to give  
battle to the  
Paynims, with-  
drew to Prague.

His heir is his  
only daughter,  
Eglantine.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 123 b.

He sent a letter  
to his brother,  
the King of  
Anssay,

telling him how  
matters stood.

The king after  
reading it com-  
plains against  
fortune,

and tells  
Anthony that it  
is worse than  
ever with him,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. version reads: *Certes l'homme est bien deceu que en  
toy ne en tes dons se fie en riens.*

because now  
that Anthony  
has overthrown  
his chivalry,

he is unable to  
help his noble  
brother Fre-  
derick against  
the infidels.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 124.

Anthony is  
sorrowful to  
hear these  
complaints.

He is given the  
letter to read,  
whereby he un-  
derstands that  
Zelodius, King  
of Cracow, is be-  
sieging Frederick  
of Bohemia at  
Prague.

Anthony asks  
the king whether  
he could be  
soon ready to  
accompany him  
to succour  
Frederick.

prynce, it is now *with* me wers than euer was / For  
your noble cheualrye & puyssaunce haue not only  
mated me & made lasse myn honour, but also ye haue  
dyscomfyted *with* me the moost true & valiaunt kyng<sup>4</sup>  
that euer was of my lynce, & that more valyauntly  
hath deffended the cristen feyth ayenst thenemyes of  
god. For Federyke, my brother, noble kyng<sup>4</sup> of Be-  
hayne, beyng sore oppressed & besieged *within* his  
toun of praghe by thinfideles & enemyes of god,  
writeth<sup>1</sup> vnto me ful tenderly for help & socoure /  
alas, now your grete fayttes in armes haue kept me  
therfro, so that I may not help hym / how be it that al  
this commeth through myn owne fawte & folysshe en-  
terpryse, For god hath punysshed me lasse ynough  
than I haue deseruyd.' And thenne he bygan to make  
suche sorowe that grete pite it was to see. / 16

<sup>2</sup> **T**hystorye sheweth in this partie that the duc  
Anthony was ryght dolaunt & sorowful whan  
he vnderstode the pyteous bewayllyng<sup>4</sup> of the king of  
Anssay, and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, telle  
me why ye demene & make such dueyl.' 'By god,'  
sayd the kyng, 'wel I have cause / loke & see what  
the tenoure of this *letre* specyfyeth.' Thenne toke  
anthony the *lettre* and redde it al ouer, Wherby he  
vnderstode & knew the grete myserye & myschief  
wherin Zelodyus, kyng<sup>4</sup> of Craco, held Federyk<sup>4</sup>, kyng<sup>4</sup>  
of Behayne, besieged *within* the Cite of praghe. And  
thenne the noble duc Anthony consideryng<sup>4</sup> the grete  
myschief wherinne the Cristen peple was hold by the  
puyssaunce of the paynemes, his herte was al replenyssed  
*with* pite, and said in hym self that yf he might the  
Sarasyns shuld bye fu<sup>4</sup> derly the payne whiche they  
made the Cristen peple to bere / and he thenne said  
to the kyng: 'Sire, yf I wold helpe you for to socoure  
your brother, wold ye not be soone redy to goo thither-

<sup>1</sup> vnriteth in MS.

- ward?' And whan the kyng<sup>r</sup> vnderstoð thoos wordes  
 he kneled doune tofore the duc, & said: 'Sire, yf ye  
 wyl graunte me so moche of your grace / I swere &  
 4 promyse you feythfully that I shall make Regnald your  
 brother kyng of Behayne after the decesse of my  
 brother, whiche is elder than I almost xx<sup>ti</sup> yere. For  
 wete it that he hath none heyre sauf only a ryght fayre  
 8 doughter, which is cleped Eglantyne / and she is about  
 xv yere of age, & that pucelle shall I gyue, yf ye vouche-  
 sauf, to Regnald your brother.' 'By my feyth,' said  
 thenne Anthony, 'and I accorde therunto. / goo thanne  
 12 hastily to Anssay and make your mandement, and be  
 with vs ayen within this thre wykes, and lodge your  
 people in yonder medowe, Where your tentes<sup>1</sup> as yet  
 ben, and in the meane season I shal sende for my men,  
 16 whiche are with a knyght of myn at the Leffe, where  
 men had doon wrong<sup>r</sup> to hym.' And the king<sup>r</sup> ansuerde,  
 'Noble & curteys lord, he rewarde you therof, that  
 suffred deth for vs and bytter passyon.' And thenne  
 20 he toke his leue of the duc and of the duchess, of  
 Regnald, & of all the baronnye there, & syn mounted  
 on horsback / and with his owne meyne rode tyl he  
 came in to his land of anssay, sorowful for his losse  
 24 & joyfuH for the socours that the Duc Anthony pro-  
 mysed to hym, for to helpe his brother ayenst the  
 panemes & enemies of god. /
- T**he veray hystorye testyfyeth that so long<sup>r</sup> rode the  
 28 kinge of Anssay that he came in his land<sup>r</sup>, where  
 he was welcommed of his baronnye / and soone went to  
 vysyte & see his doughter Metydee, that was not yet  
 two year old / and syn retourned with his barons / to  
 32 whome he shewed al his affayre, and how he moste  
 go socoure his brother; Also how Anthony & Regnald  
 his brother shuld helpe hym therto with al their pus-  
 saunce. 'By feyth,' said thenne the barons, 'syth it is  
 36 soo that thoo two brethern medle with this enterpryse,

The king is glad,  
 and says that if  
 Anthony will go,

he will make  
 Regnald king of  
 Bohemia on his  
 brother's death.

Anthony then  
 asks the king to  
 go to Anssay and  
 to return with his  
 people in three  
 weeks.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 124 b.

The king thanks  
 him,

and takes his  
 leave.

He rides to  
 Anssay, sorrow-  
 ful for his losses,  
 but glad that  
 Anthony will  
 help his brother  
 against the  
 Paynims.

The king arrives  
 in his land,  
 and visits his  
 daughter  
 Metydee.

He returns to  
 his barons, and  
 explains all his  
 affairs.

The barons think  
 that as the breth-  
 ren of Lusignan

are going to help  
their king's  
brother, they are  
sure of success.

The king assem-  
bles a host of  
seven thousand  
men.

He leaves his  
land in charge  
of a noble baron,  
and in three  
weeks is back  
in Luxembourg.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 125,

The duke has  
nine thousand  
five hundred  
men;

one thousand of  
whom he leaves  
behind to guard  
the land, which  
is left in charge  
of the lord of  
Argemont.

Christine is sad  
at Anthony's  
departure,  
and begs him to  
return soon.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 125 b.

Anthony bids  
her take care  
of herself on  
account of her  
unborn babe,  
and directs if it  
be a boy he is  
to be named  
Bertrand.

hit may not fare but wel. For ayenst theire puyssaunce  
& worthynes may none *withstand* nor abyde / hast you  
thenne to make your cryees & mandement, For we al  
shaß go *with* you.' Thenne made the kyng<sup>1</sup> his oost 4  
to be boden & sent for, & prayd al his frendes & alyez /  
& *within* a lytel space of tyme he assembled about  
seuene thousand fyghtyng men / and departed fro his  
royalme, whiche he lefte in good gouernaunce vnder a 8  
noble baron of the land. And syn dide so moche by  
his journeyes, that at thende of thre wykes he came &  
lodged hym & his oost byfore Lucembourg, <sup>1</sup>in the  
medow where his tentes were lefte. And thenne were 12  
also cōme the dukes people, that were in nombre  
fyue thousand helmets and a thousand V.C. archers &  
crosbowe men, beside them of the duchery, that were  
in nombre thre thousand, of þe whiche anthony toke 16  
*with* hym two thousand and the other he lefte behynd  
for the sauegarde of the land / of þe whiche he ordeyned  
chief captayne and protectour a noble baron of poytou /  
and that was the lord of Argemont. / 20

Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys  
leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went  
toward praghe *with* hys oost.

**N**ow sayth here thystorye, that whan the Duc 24  
Anthony toke his leue of the Duchesse hys wyf,  
she was right dolaunt & sory in herte, how wel she  
durst make no semblaunt / but she prayed hym to  
retourne assoone as he goodly myght / and he said 28  
to her that so shuld he doo / And, morouer, he said to  
<sup>2</sup>her in this manere / 'Duchesse, take good heede of  
your fruyte that groweth in your blood, and cheryssh  
your self / and yf goddis grace gyue that it be a sone, 32  
make hym to be baptysed & named Bertrand, For thus  
is my playsire. Thenne they embraced & kyssed eche



other, takyng leue one of other / and syn departed the  
 duc & came to hys people, and made his trompettes  
 to be sowned. Thenne mounted spere men on hors-  
 4 back, and bygane euery man to marche forth in fayre  
 aray. The vantgarde conduyted & lede the kynge of  
 anssay and Regnald *with* hym, which was mounted  
 vpon a hye Courser, armed of al pyeces except his  
 8 helmet, and held a grete staf in hys fyst, and putte  
 his men in ordre ful wel, & semed wel to be a prynee  
 courageous & of hye enterpryse / and after folowed the  
 Cartes, Charyots & bagage, & the grete batayH / and  
 12 after siewed the ryergarde, which Anthony conduyted  
 in fayre ordynaunce of batayH, For it was tolde hym  
 pat in that countre were many theevys / but the duc  
 Anthony manded, & sent word fro fortresse to fortresse  
 16 that yf they were so bold to take on hym or on hys  
 people ony thing, that he shuld punysse them in  
 suche wyse that other shuld take ensample therof.  
 And so he passed thurgh all the Leffe / and no man  
 20 was so hardy that he durst take ony thing on hys oost.  
 It is trouth that on an euen he lodged hym tofore the  
 Cite Acon<sup>1</sup> with all hys oost / and the Citezeyns there  
 made & presented to hym grete yeftes of ryches, wherof  
 24 he thanked them moche, and proffred to them his ser-  
 uyse, yf they myster of it. And on the morne after  
 the masse he deslodged, & so long<sup>t</sup> marched fourth on  
 his way *with* his oost, that he came & lodged vpon  
 28 the ryuere of Ryne, which is grete & meruayllous.  
 And <sup>2</sup>they of Coloyne made grete daunger to lete  
 passe the oost thurgh the Cite at brydge / wherof  
 anthonye was angry & dolaunt, and fyersly sent worde  
 32 to them how he had entencion to reyse the siege, that  
 the king<sup>t</sup> of Craco had layed, & sette with lx thousand  
 Sarasyns tofore the Cite of praghe, wherinne was in  
 grete oppression and dystres the king of behayne,

The army  
 marches away  
 to the trumpet  
 sound.  
 The vanguard is  
 led by Regnald  
 and the King of  
 Anssay;

then comes the  
 baggage in the  
 middle, as  
 Anthony was  
 told the country  
 was full of  
 thieves, and then  
 the rearguard  
 led by Anthony  
 in good order.

At last they  
 arrive at the  
 Rhine.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 126.

The men of  
 Cologne object  
 to the host pass-  
 ing through the  
 city.  
 Anthony angrily  
 tells them the  
 reason of the  
 expedition,

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Ays* :—*Aix la Chapelle*, Ger. *Aachen*.

and asks if they  
are on the  
Paynims' side  
or not.

When the men  
of Cologne un-  
derstand how  
matters are,

they send four  
burgesses,

who tell Anthony  
they will let him  
pass through on  
condition that  
the citizens are  
protected from  
all damage by  
Anthony's men.

Anthony replies  
that he wishes  
them no harm,

and inquires if  
any of his  
ancestors had  
at any time  
done them any  
misdeed.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 126 b.

The burgesses  
return to the  
city, and tell  
their story to  
the Council,

who can re-  
member no  
quarrel with  
the Dukes of  
Luxembourg.

and that they shuld send hym word yf they held *with*  
the paynemes or nat / and vpon that he shuld take  
hys aduys what he shuld doo / and also that magre  
them he shuld fynd good passage, but not so short as 4  
by theire Cite. And whan they of Coloyne under-  
stode this mandement, & were wel infourmed of the  
grete prowes & fyersnes of the two bretheren, they  
were dredfuH & doubtings. And soone after they sent 8  
toward Anthony foure of þe notablist & moost worship-  
fuH burgeys of the cyte, whiche came & made to hym  
ryght honourable and humble reuerence / and wondred  
moche of hys fyersnes and proude contenance / not 12  
that *wit*standing, they said to hym in this manere :  
'right high & myghty prynce, the Citezeyns and com-  
mynalte of Coloyne haue sent vs toward your good  
grace. And know ye þat gladly they shal suffre you 16  
& al your oost to passe peasibly thurgh the Cite, soo  
that ye shal kepe & preserue them fro al damage  
that your peple might bere vnto them.' 'By my  
feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'yf I had be wylling to doo the 20  
contrary of theire wyH, they shuld haue had of me  
knowlege therof / and also I haue no cause to doo soo,  
For I knowe not that they haue mysdoon to me of ony  
thing, nor to the myn nother / How wel they cause 24  
me to thinke other wyse / goo and telle to them, yf  
they remembre not of old some mysdede don to them  
by myn auncestry, or of the Dukes, my predecessours,  
wherof as yet they be <sup>1</sup>not pacyfied & accorded / 28  
that they wyl suffre me & myn oost passe surely / or  
ellys to send me wordes therof.' Whan they vnder-  
stode hys wordes & knew his wyH, they retourned to  
the Cyte, & announced to the Commynaltee the mande- 32  
ment of the Duc Anthony. And they anone as-  
sembled theire counseyH, & the auncyent men / and  
found that neuer they had no hate ne dyscorde *with*  
the dukes of Lucembourg, nother to theyre frendes 36

- nor alyez / and that sethen he was so noble a man & so  
 valyaunt, they shuld lete hym passe, and al his oost  
 also. And they remanded to hym theire wylle with  
 4 grete yeftes of ryches that they made to be presented  
 to hys grace / and purveyed for hys oost moche of  
 vytayll, as bred, wyne, and flesshe / & ootys for theire  
 horses / And whan the Duc vnderstode theire ansuere  
 8 & sawe theire grete yeftes, he thanked them moche /  
 and was joyous of that they of Coloyne wold be hys  
 frendes. Wherfor he said to them, that yf they had  
 nede of hym & of hys powere, he was redy at theyre  
 12 commaundement / and they thanked hym ryght  
 humbly. And the duc Anthony made to gyue to  
 them that had brought to hym the said presents of  
 vytayll, many ryche yeftes, that asmoche were worth, or  
 16 more than the presents & yeftes gyuen to hym by the  
 toune, For he wold not that thabytants of the Cyte  
 shuld suppose or thinke that he wold haue ought of  
 them for nought.
- 20 **I**n this partye sheweth thystorye, how that same  
 nyght soiourned the oost byfore Coloyne, & was  
 wel refresshed of them of the Cite & of theire vytayll.  
 For as the dukes commandement was / they were  
 24 departed in suche wyse tha[t] every man there had  
 part therof. And on the morne erly, <sup>1</sup>the Duc entred  
 into the Cite with hym, two houndred men of armes /  
 and made his cryees, vpon peyne of deth, that none  
 28 were so hardy to take ony thing of them of the toun;  
 but he payed wel for after raison. And soone after  
 passed the vantgarde in fayre aray ouer the bridge, and  
 so forth thurgh the Cyte. And so passed al thoost,  
 32 and lodged them at the oper syde of the ryuere of  
 Ryn / and it was about euen tyme, or euer al the  
 Cartes, Charyots, & bagage were past. And that nyght  
 the Duc & grete part of his barounye lodged within the  
 36 Cyte, where as grete honour was doon to them. The

They agree to let  
 Anthony and his  
 host passe,

and send him  
 many gifts for  
 himself and  
 victuals for his  
 host.

When the duke  
 understands  
 their answer, he  
 thanks them,

and gives them  
 as rich gifts and  
 presents as had  
 been sent to him.

The host remains  
 opposite Cologne  
 for the night.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 127.

In the morning  
 the river is  
 crossed, and the  
 host marches  
 through the city.

The duke and  
 his barons stay  
 all the night in  
 the city,

and give a great supper, and great gifts to the ladies of the town.

He leaves in the morning, after thanking the townspeople,

who offer him aid.

As the duke comes from mass,

four knights and five hundred men arrive from the city.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 127 b.

The knights say that the commonalty of Cologne wish to be his allies, and ask him to accept the help of the five hundred men of arms.

One of the knights offers to guide the army to Cracow.

duc Anthony bode at souper *with* hym aH the ladyes of the Cyte, & festyed them ryght honorably, & gaf grete yestes ar he departed in so moche that they of the Cyte wysshed hym to be theire lord. 4

**I**n the morne the Duc toke his leue of them of the toun / and thanked them moche of the grete honour that they had shewed to hym & to his barons. And they ansuerd aH *with* one voyce: ‘Noble Duc / 8 the Cite / we & aH our goodes ben at your commande-ment more than to ony other lord that marcheth about vs / and spare vs not of nothing<sup>1</sup> that we may doo for you, For we be now, & shal euer be, redy to do you 12 playsure, ayde, & comfort at your mandement and first calling<sup>1</sup>’ / And he departed fro them, and went in to his tente. And on the morne as he came from the masse, & commanded the trompettes to be sowned for 16 to departe & meve / there came fro the Cite foure knightes wel mounted on horsbak, & armed of aH pyeces sauf the helmet, whiche alyghted byfore the duckes tente *with* foure houndred men of armes, and 20 C crosbowe men in theire felawship. These knightes made their obeyssaunce / and syn sayd in this manere: ‘Right noble & puyssaunt duc, the Cite & commynalte of Coloyne recommande them to your good grace / 24 and where as þey haue sene so moche of noblesse & curtoysye in you / <sup>1</sup>desyryng right affectuelly to be frendes & alyez vnto you, they send<sup>1</sup> you foure hondred men of armes & an C crosbowes, al payed of theire 28 wages for tene monethis day, for to goo *with* you where so euer it playse you to goo.’ ‘By my feyth,’ sayd Anthony, ‘thankyng be to them, whome I am moche beholden to / this curtoysye is not to be reffused / 32 & wete it I shal not forgete it / but remembre in tyme & place.’ ‘Sire,’ said one of the foure knightes, ‘there nys none of vs foure, but he knowe wel al the way fro hens to Craco / and yf it mystier, we shal guyde & lede 36



you wel & surely thurgh the passages & ouer al  
 the ryueres betwix this & that.' To that ansuerd the  
 Duc & said / 'this that ye say hurteth not our affayre,  
 4 and I gaynsay not your sayeng', whan tyme shalbe.'  
 Thenne he putte them in ordynaunce, and receyued  
 them vnder his banere. And þenne desloged the vant-  
 garde, the grete batayll, & the ryeregarde, and marched  
 8 on their waye in fayre aray so long, that they entred  
 in the land of Bavyere, nygh to a grete Cite named  
 Nuenmarghe, where as the Duc of Ode was with a  
 grete compaignie of people, For he doubted the kyng  
 12 Zelodus of Craco, that had besieged the kyng Fed-  
 eryke of Behayne, and held hym in grete necessite,  
 For he had with hym foure score paynemes / and the  
 Duc Ode was doubtful lest he shuld come vpon hym,  
 16 yf he subdued and dyscomfyted the kyng Federyke.  
 And therefore, he had assembled his Counseyl to knowe  
 & see what best was to doo. /

The duke accepts  
 the company,  
 and puts them  
 under his banner.

The army  
 marches to  
 Bavaria, nygh to  
 Nuenmarghe,

where the Duke  
 Ode is taking  
 council what to  
 do about the  
 sieg.

**T**henne cam to the Cite an auneynt knyght that  
 20 was of the Duc Ode, to whom he said after his  
 obeyssaunce made: 'My lord, by my sowle I come  
 from the marches of Almayne / but there is <sup>1</sup>commyng  
 a grete oost hitherward of the moost goodlyest men of  
 24 armes and best arrayed that euer I sawe in my dayes /  
 but I wot not where they purpose to goo / but so  
 moche I know, that they draw them self hitherward.'  
 'By my feyth,' said the Duc, 'I gyue me grete wonder  
 28 what folke they may be, yf the king of Anssay had not  
 be of late dyscomfyted tofore Lucembourgh, I shuld  
 suppose that it were he that wold socoure his brother  
 Federyke ayenst the Sarasyns / and on my sowle yf it  
 32 were he I shuld goo with hym for to helpe his brother.'  
 'My lord,' said the knyght, 'it were wysely doo to haue  
 knowleche certayn what folke they be, ne yf they pur-  
 pose other wyse than wele.' 'Sire knyght,' said thanne  
 36 the Duc, 'ye muste your self goo to knowe & reporte

<sup>1</sup> fol. 123.

An ancient  
 knight tells  
 Duke Ode of  
 the approach of  
 a great host.

The duke says  
 if it were the  
 King of Anssay  
 he would go with  
 him to help  
 Frederick.

The duke sends  
 the knight to  
 ascertain what  
 host it is.

He comes upon  
the host in a  
valley

where they are  
taking exercise.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 128 b.

The knight  
thinks them  
worthy men of  
war.  
He enters the  
host, and asks  
for the governor.  
He is brought  
before Anthony.

The knight says  
he is sent by  
Duke Ode to  
inquire why the  
host had come  
into his land.

Anthony an-  
swers that he  
is the Duke of  
Luxembourg,  
and with him is  
his brother and  
the King of  
Anssay, and that  
they are going to  
raise the siege of  
Prague.

the certaynte of it, syn ye haue sene them' / And he  
ansuerde, 'By my feyth, my lord, I am redy therto.'  
And soone he departed, and so long<sup>1</sup> he rode that he  
perceyued thoost in a valey by a ryuere. There he 4  
sawe grete companyes of gentyl men here & there,  
some castyng<sup>1</sup> the barre of yron / other held theire  
spere & shild and esprouued them self that one on þat  
other / some assayed theire harneys with shoot, with 8  
strokes of swerdes, and in many other appertyse of  
armes they exerceyted them self. 'By my feyth,' said  
thenne the knight / 'there is fayre mayntene and noble  
contenaunce of men of armes / suche folke is to be 12  
doubted and dredde.' Thenne he loked on the ryght  
syde vpon a lytel mountaynne & sawe the grete batayH,  
and sawe the watche and the scourers al about the  
oost. 'By my feyth,' said the knight that moche thing 16  
had sene in his dayes / 'this ben <sup>1</sup>worthy men of  
werre and able to subdue ony lande.' And thenne he  
entred in to thoost / and demanded after hym that had  
the gouernaunce & guydyng of it / And soone he was 20  
brought tofore Anthony. And whan he saw the Duc  
he was moche abasshed of his facion / but alwayes he  
salued hym ryght curtoysly / and syn said to hym,  
'My lord, the Duc Ode hath sent me toward you to 24  
wete of you what ye seeke in hys land & / and yf ye thinke  
or purpose other wyse than wele / also what ye be that  
conduyteth so fayre company of people that I see here  
assembled. For he woteth wel that ye come not hither 28  
with suche a felawship without it be for som grete af-  
fayre' / 'Frend,' sayd anthony / 'teH your lord that we ne  
demande ought of hym, nor suppose not to domage his  
land in no wyse. Also ye may telle hym that it is the 32  
kinge of Anssay / Anthony of Lusynen, Duc of Lucem-  
bourg, and Regnald his brother, with theire puy-  
saunce that supposen to goo reyse the siege of praghe,  
that the Sarasyns haue besieged.' 'Sire,' said thaun- 36

- cyent knyght, 'god graunte you good vyage.' And so  
 he departed and retourned toward the Duc Ode of  
 Bauyere, to whom he rehersed as aboue is said, and  
 4 shewed hym the fyersnes and facion of Anthony, and  
 the contenaunce of his oost / sayeng<sup>t</sup> that they were  
 folke to be redoubted & dred<sup>d</sup>. 'By my feyth,' said  
 thenne the duc Ode, 'It commeth of noble courage to  
 8 that two bretheren to haue come fro so ferre lande  
 for to seke auenture of cheualerye & honour, and also  
 for to come & gyue ayde & socour to kynge Federyke  
 anenst the enemyes of god / and I promyse god that  
 12 shal not be *without* me, For it shuld be tourned to me  
 to grete shame yf that I went not thither / seeyng that  
 he is my Cousyn, & that my land is so nygh his  
 royalme / and that the straungers come fro so ferre  
 16 for to ayde & helpe hym ayenst the paynemes.' And  
 thenne had the Duc Ode<sup>1</sup> made his mandement but of  
 late, and had assembled al redy foure thousand fighting  
 men. What shold I make long compte / thoost desloged  
 20 and passed<sup>d</sup> byfore Murmych. And thanne the Duc  
 Ode yssued out of the toun *with* a fayre companye of  
 people, and came and presented hym self and al his  
 peple tofore the kinge of Anssay, Anthony / and his  
 24 *proper*, whiche Joyously receyued them / and thus  
 marched thoost forth in fayre aray and good ordynaunce  
 by the space of six dayes. And now seaceth thistorye  
 to speke of them, and speketh of the king<sup>t</sup> Federyke  
 28 and of the siege. /

- H**ere sheweth thistorye how the puyssaunce of  
 Zelodyus, kyng of Craco, was ryght grete / and  
 the king Federyk durst not goodly haue yssued / but  
 32 alwayes he scarmousshed ofte with his enemys / and  
 almost dayly was at the barrers / the medlee was grete  
 & stronge / and there were *within* the toun about  
 a houndred helmets of Hongery, that were valyaunt  
 36 knyghtes & good men of werre / the whiche yssued /
- MELUSINE.

The knight re-  
turns, delivers  
his message,  
and describes  
the host.

The King think<sup>e</sup>  
the brethren  
courageous,

and resolves to  
go with them

against the  
paynims.  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 129.

He assembles  
four thousand  
men,

and presents  
himself with his  
company to the  
King of Anssay  
and the brethren.

Frederick is  
unable to cope  
with Zelodius,

though he often  
tries skirmishes.

Early one morn-  
ing the pagans  
assault the town.

Frederick drives  
them back to  
their camp ;

but the king of  
Cracow comes  
with fifteen  
thousand Sara-  
cens,

and forces  
Frederick to  
retreat.

Frederick sees  
Zelodius,  
1 fol. 129 b.

cuts his way  
up to him,

and smites him  
on his helmet.

Zelodius is suc-  
coured by his  
men ;

and launches  
a dart at  
Frederick,

ofte & dide grete dommage to the sarasyns. It happed  
on a mornynge erly that the paynemes gaf a grete sawte  
to the toun / and the king Federyke with his people  
yssued out vnto the barrers / and there the scarmyssh- 4  
ing bygan grete & mortall / and so manfully faught  
the kyng, that *with* the help of his men he gretly  
dommaged his enemyes / and made them to cesse of the  
sawte / & made them to goo back vnto theire lodgys. 8  
And that tyme was the kyng' of Craco mounted vpon a  
grete hors, his banere to the wynd accompanied *with*  
xv M' sarasyns, and came in fayre ordynauce to the  
batayll. There was many stroke gyuen & receyued / 12  
and by force of armes the kynge & his peple was con-  
strayned to *with*drawe hym back vnto the barrers.  
There was grete occysyon made, For horryble strokes  
were gyuen of bothe sydes, and the king Federyke re- 16  
comforted wel his peple, For he dide grete faytte of  
armes of his owne handes. And whan he perceyued  
<sup>1</sup>kyng Zelodyus that sore dommaged his peple, he  
sporyd his horse and toke his swerd in his fyst / and 20  
rane smyttyng on the lyft syde and on the ryght syde  
vpon his enemyes tyl he made place, and came &  
smote Zelodius vpon his helmet, by suche strengthe &  
vertue that he made hym to enclyne vpon his hors neck 24  
al astonyed / and lytel faylled that he was not ouer-  
thrawen to the erthe, For he lost bothe the steropes /  
but soone he was socoured of his men whiche redreced  
hym vp ryght / and the king Federyk adreced hys 28  
swerd vpon a payneme, & suche a stroke he gaf hym  
that he slew hym therwith. The king' of Craco was  
thenne redreced as said is / and he perceyuyng the kyng  
Federyk / that hewed legges & armes, & casted to 32  
therthe al that he recountred of the sarasyns / had  
grete anger in his herte and came nygh at hym / and  
with an archegaye or dart launched at hym, by suche  
strengthe that the dart entred so depe into hys body 36



that the heek of it was sene at the back syde of hym. That doon the kynge Federyk that felt the dystresse of deth myght no more hold hym self up ryght, but fell 4 & reuersed deed fro his hors to the ground. Thenne was his peple full heuy and dolaunt, and withdrew them self anoone, and reentred into the toun & shetted the gates after them. And thenne byganne the sorowe 8 to be grete in the town al about. /

which pierces  
his body through  
and through.

He falls to the  
ground.

His people with-  
draw to the town  
and close their  
gates.

Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do take the body of kynge Federyke that he had slayn and commanded it to be brent.

12 <sup>1</sup> The king of Craco thenne glad & joyous for cause of  
kyng Federykes deth, commanded the corps to be  
brought byfore the gate, & there to be brent for to haue  
abasshed the more pem of the Cite, seying theyre king  
16 in a fyre. Whan the Cyteseyns & commynalte of  
praghe knew the deth of their kynge / and the grete  
tyrannye of Z[el]odyus, they made grete sorowe / but in  
espescial the pucelle Eglantyne, his doughtir, was sorow-  
20 full in herte, and so pyteously bewaylled and lamented,  
that grete pyte it was to here & see / sayeng such or  
semblable wordes: 'Ha / god! who might comforte me  
whan I see my faders deth byfore me, & the total dys-  
24 comfytur of hys peple, & also the destruction of my  
self, For I see no way wherby myght come ony socoure  
vnto me, For I haue herd say that myn vncle, the  
kynge of Anssay, on whome I trusted more than to  
28 all <sup>2</sup> other men in the world, hath be dyscomfytet  
tofore Lucembourgh. Ha, veray god! creatour of Crea-  
tures, I ne wote other reffuge for me for to escape the  
tyraunt Z[el]odyus handes than the mercyfull bosom  
32 of your grace to hyd me therin. O ryght noble, ryght  
puyssaunt, & ryght excellent prynesse! virgyne &  
moder of god! Marye, my lady & maistresse / haue

1 fol. 130.

Zelodius com-  
mands Fre-  
derick's body  
to be burnt.

The citizens of  
Prague are sor-  
rowful for the  
death of their  
king.

His daughter,  
the maid Eglan-  
tine, piteously  
mourns her  
father's death,

2 fol. 130 b.

and calls on the  
Virgin Mary.

Those who see  
her grief are  
full of pity.

The commonalty  
propose to yield,

but two true  
knights upbraid  
them,

and advise them  
to wait tidings  
from the King  
of Anssay :

and bid them  
trust in Christ.

The people are  
comforted, and  
refuse to yield,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 131.

whereat Zelodius  
is angry.

He sorely as-  
saults their city.

compassion on me ! poure orphenyn & faderles.' Cer-  
taynly the pucelle Eglantyne bewayled, syghed, &  
complayned so piteously that no persone beheld her /  
but they were of pyte constrayned to wepe how hard 4  
that theire hertes had be, For in her anguysshe &  
sorowe she made none ende, but euer she wept &  
rendred teeris habundauntly. Thenne the commynalte  
of the toun, sore agast and timerous, were in propos 8,  
& wylle for to yeld the toun & themself ouer to the  
kyng Z[el]odyus, þat made them to be requyred & ad-  
mounsted<sup>1</sup> therof / shewing to them how they myght  
not long endure nor withstand ayenst his grete puy- 12  
saunce / & that theire Cateh & goodes shuld be saued  
to them / but yf he toke theire Cyte byforce, he shuld  
make þem bothe theire wyues & children to be brent  
al to asshis, as theire kynge was. Wherfore the cyte 16  
henge in balauunce to be delyuered & gyuen ouer to the  
Sarasyns. But emonge other were there two good  
men, true & auneyent knightes, that said in this  
manere : ' False people, what wyl you now doo, yet is 20  
not the messenger come agayn that rode toward the  
king of Anssay for socour, take courage & comfort  
your self, For within short space of tyme ye shal here  
good tydynges / thinke that ye be Cristen / & that 24  
Criste shaH helpe vs or it be long.' And whan they  
herd hym so speke they were aH recomforted, &  
ansuerd to the paynemes ambaxatours that they shuld  
neuer yeld them ouer vnto the last <sup>2</sup>mans lyf of aH 28  
them. And whan the kynge Zelodyus knewe theire  
wyll, he was wood angry & sorowful, & sware his  
goddess that he shuld putte al on fyre. /

**T**he kynge<sup>3</sup> Zelodyus was mouyd to yre & grete 32  
anger for thansuere of the commynalte of Pragh,  
wherfor he scarmysshed them sore, & gaf grete sawtes  
to theire Cite, but the noble and valyaunt men that

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *faisoit remonstrer*.

<sup>3</sup> kynge of: MS.

were wit/in deffended it strongly. I wyl now retourne  
 to speke of the Due anthony and of hys brother Reg-  
 nauld, of the kyng of Anssay / and also of Ode, Duc  
 4 of Bauyere, whiche conduyted theyre oost, & marched  
 fourth hastily, For they had tydinges of the myserye  
 that they of the Cite were in / but nothing they knew  
 of the deth of king Federyke. And on a thursday at  
 8 euen, they lodged themself nygh to a grete ryuere, a  
 leghe & a half fro the Cite of Prague / and that same  
 euen was a knight of that same Countree that was in  
 their felawship commanded that on the morne he  
 12 shuld anounce their commyng to them of the Cite /  
 and he on the morne erly mounted on hys hors, and  
 toke his way toward the Cite / and after a grete sawte  
 was seaced for fawte of daylight, he cam vnto a lytel  
 16 posterne / and they of the garde there knew hym anone,  
 and lete hym entre the toun / and as soone as he was  
 entred he rode softly along by the gardes, cryeng alowde  
 in this manere: 'Lordes, deffende you wel, For here  
 20 commeth the floure of knighthode to your socours &  
 helpe with the kinge of Anssay, & anoone ye shal see  
 them bygyune the bataylle / and be a good chere, For  
 on my hed not one Sarasyn shaft escape, but he be  
 24 deed or take.' And <sup>1</sup>whan they vnderstode hym, they  
 bygane to make such a Cry, & so lowde, that it was  
 wonder to here sayeng: 'Lawde & thanki be to god  
 almighty perof.' And thenne they employed them self,  
 28 & defended so valiauntly, that no sarasyn durst no  
 lenger abyde nygh the wa<sup>ll</sup> a bowe shotte / & many  
 paynemes were thenne slayne, in so moche that the  
 dyches watre was as toured & dyed with theyre blood.  
 32 And whan Zelodyus sawe the grete & courageous  
 deffense of them of the toun he was abasshed, &  
 meruaylled moche of their joyful contenance. /

36 **T**henne whan Zelodyus perceyued that his folke  
 withdrewe them self thus backward, he was

The relieving  
 host marches  
 hastily,

and arrives on  
 a Thursday even-  
 ing a league and  
 a half from  
 Prague.

A knight is sent  
 to the city with  
 the news of their  
 approach.

He enters, and  
 bids the lords  
 fight well be-  
 cause of the  
 succour that is  
 near.

1 fol. 131 b.

The people thank  
 God for the good  
 news,

and slay many  
 Saracens.

Zelodius is  
sorrowful that  
this assault has  
failed.

Anthony and  
his host ap-  
proach.

They see the  
Saracens' camp.

Anthony calls  
a halt,  
and orders  
archers to his  
wings.

1 fol. 132.

The paynims  
perceive their  
coming, and tell  
Zelodius.

He is wroth,  
and commands  
his men to as-  
semble in battle  
array.

Anthony's host  
advances against  
the paynims.

The air is full  
of arrows.

Christians and  
paynims fight  
manfully.

sorowfuH & dolaunt, & had grete merueyлле, why & wherefore they of the toun were of so corageous deffense more then in other sawtes tofore gyuen / but soone after hys doleur & sorowe encreced moch more, For 4  
anthony approuched in fayre aray. He, & Regnald hys brother, conduyted the first batayH; and the kyng of Anssay, & his Cousin the due of Bauyere, ledd the aryer garde. There had ye seen fayre compagne of 8 gentilmen in good aray / the baners & standarts dysplayed / helmets & salades wel garnysshed with fyn gold & syluer, which resplendysshed fuH clere / And so they cam & sawe the Cite that the paynemes assaylled, 12 & gaaf grete sawte / & sawe theire tentes & pauyllons, where were grete nombre of sarasyns. Thenne made Anthony his folk to tary and be styl a while, tyl the aryergarde were nygh to them / and ordeyned archers 16 & crosbowes to be vnder the wynges of hys batayH. and thenne they were apperceyned, 1 and seen of the paynemes, which went & made knowlege therof to theire kyng, sayeng in this manere: 'Sire, leue the 20 sawte, that in an euyl heure was bygonne / wete it that such a multitude of Cristen peple be commyng hitherward that all the felde be couered with.' Whan Zelodyus vnderstode these tydynges he was wood 24 wroth, & gretly abasshed, and lefte the sawte, and made the trompettes to sowne the retrayte, & that euery man shuld assemble togidre vnder hys banere. he thenne ordeyned his bataylles as he coude best. 28 And Anthony commanded hys trompettes to be sowned for to bygyne the batayH / and they approched the paynemes, keping good ordynaunce. Thenne bygan the shotte to be grete & thikk as snowe in the ayer / 32 and syn the men of armes medled togidre, and entred one vpon other, & valyauntly brake speres, & ouerthrew eche other as it happed. The Cristen faught corageously / and the paynemes withstode & susteyned theire 36



- grete strokes manfully. There was many sarasyn re-  
 uersed to therth & slayn. Wel assayed the poyteuyns  
 them self, & dyde grete faytte of armes vpon theire  
 4 enemyes. But the king Zelodyus putte his sheld  
 tofore his brest, & held his spere alowe, and broched  
 his hors with the sporys, & rane vpon the Crysten;  
 and aftir hym folowed xv M̃t paynemes. Zelodius  
 8 dide there grete merueyffe of armes, and ouerthrew  
 many a Cristen to therthe, & gretly dommaged them.  
 For his folke that folowed at back syde of hym faught  
 meruayllously. Thenne cryed the kyng Zelodius his  
 12 baner: 'Lordes, barons, auaunce, the journey is oure,  
 For they may not vs escape' / And they of poytou  
 receyued them moch hardyfly, and wete it wel that  
 there was grete losse of peple of bothe partyes.  
 16 Thenne came duc Anthony with the swerdt<sup>1</sup> in his  
 fyst / and whan he perceyued his peple recule a lytel,  
 nygh he deyed for sorowe / and cryed: 'Lusynen!'  
 with a high voys, and putte hym emong the sarasyns  
 20 more hastyfully than thundre falleth fro heuen, and  
 faught & smote on eche syde vpon his enemyes, and  
 ouerthrew aH them that he recountred. and his peuple  
 folowed at back syde of hym that were al wondred of  
 24 his grete fayttes & valyauntnes, For there ne was so  
 hardy a sarasyn þat durst hym abyde / but fledd &  
 reculed vnto theire tentes. And this seyng the king  
 Zelodius, he cryed: 'auaunt, lordes & barons, and  
 28 deffend you / how is that for one man alone that ye  
 flee / it is to you grete shame.' And aftir these wordes  
 he retourned, & assembled his peple ayen togidre, and  
 gaaf grete batayl mortal vnto anthony & the poyteuyns.  
 32 Thenne came thadmyral with ten thousand fighting  
 men / and thenne enforced the batayl ryght horryble,  
 For there were many of the sarasyns slayn and sore  
 hurt.

Zelodius with  
a great host  
rushes on the  
Christians,

and greatly  
hurts them,

and cries 'the  
day is ours.'

<sup>1</sup> fol. 132 b.

Anthony sees  
his people re-  
treating; he  
cries 'Lusignan,'  
and falls on the  
Saracens like  
thunder from  
heaven.

The Saracens  
flee.

Zelodius up-  
braids them,

they rally and  
fight again.

The admiral  
arrives with ten  
thousand men.

Cap. XXXII. How the king<sup>1</sup> of Craco was  
slayn in bataylle.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 133.

The rearguard,  
under the King  
of Anssay, comes  
up and fights  
vigorously.

Anthony and  
Regnauld  
give marvellous  
strokes,

and wherever  
they are they  
cause the Sara-  
cens to run.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 133 b.

Zelodius en-  
courages his folk,  
and does great  
damage.

Regnauld spurs  
his horse against  
him.

Zelodius hurts  
him in the thigh,

but Regnauld  
hits him back,

<sup>1</sup>Thenne came the ryerward<sup>2</sup> that the kinge of Ans-  
say and the Duc Ode conduyted þat entred 4  
vygourously into the batay<sup>3</sup>, where was grete occysyon,  
For the batay<sup>3</sup> was mortal on bothe partes. And vpon  
that arryued Anthony & Regnauld, that entred by one  
assent vpon the sarasyns, making suche occysyon that 8  
there ne was sarasyn ne Cristen, but he meruaylled of  
þe meruayllous strokes that they gaf. And in con-  
clusyon there was none so hardy a sarasyn that durst  
withstand<sup>4</sup> them, For wher someuer they sawe them 12  
they fledd, and so strongly faught the cristen / that  
the sarasyns tourned theire back, puttyng<sup>5</sup> them self to  
flight / but the kyng Zelodyus valy<sup>2</sup>auntly encouraged  
& reteyned them togidre. And wete it wel that he dide 16  
grete dompage to the Crysten. But whan Regnauld  
perceyued the king<sup>1</sup> Zelodius, that rendred so grete a  
stoure & batay<sup>3</sup> mortall to hys folke / he sware that  
he shuld<sup>6</sup> dye or he shuld delyuere the place fro the 20  
sarasyns / Thenne tourned he the targe behynde and  
sporyd his hors by grete yre and came vpon the king<sup>1</sup>  
of Craco. And whan Zelodyus the kynge sawe hym  
cōme he haunced<sup>7</sup> hys swerd<sup>8</sup> and smote hym vpon his 24  
helmet / but his swerd<sup>8</sup> glenced doune by the lyfte  
syde vnto his thye, & hurted hym in such manere that  
the blood rane vnto his foote / And thenne Regnauld  
þat was fu<sup>9</sup> dolaunt, with bothe handes lyfte vp his 28  
swerde and smote the kynge Zelodyus vpon the helmet  
with so grete yre that he was therwith astonyed, in so  
moche that the swerd<sup>8</sup> fel<sup>10</sup> out of his hand<sup>11</sup> and bowed  
vpon his hors neck, and therwith brake the taches of 32  
his helmet. And thenne Regnauld retourned & smote  
hym ayen, and charged hym with so many hydouse  
strokes that he moste nedes parforce fall to therth.

- And fourthwith was the prees grete aboute hym bothe  
 of horses & men / but hys peple came & socoured  
 hym fro the horses feet / but in conclusyon they coude  
 4 not obteyne nor hym ayde / but he was slayne. And  
 whan the sarasyns sawe that they went to flight / And  
 the cristen peple pursiewed þem manfully and slough  
 them bothe in feld & in wodes. And wete it wel  
 8 that there escaped but few, and thus was the batayll  
 fynnyshed. And this don the Cristen lodged them in  
 the tentes of the sarasyns. And the two brethern /  
 the king of Anssay and the Duc Ode departed with  
 12 a C. <sup>1</sup>knyghtes with them toward the Cite, where as  
 they were nobly receyued, For the Citezeyns had so  
 grete Joye of the vycторыe that they had wonne vpon  
 the sarasyns. And thenne came they & descended at  
 16 the palays ryatt. Thenne came the pucelle Eglantyne  
 and recountred her vncle the king of Anssay and all  
 his barons.

and though  
 Zelodius' people  
 come to defend  
 their king,

Regnand slays  
 him.  
 The Saracens  
 then flee ;  
 many are slain,

and but few  
 escape.

The Christians  
 take the camp  
 of the Saracens.

1 fol. 134.

The brethern  
 enter the town.

### Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius &

- 20 the other saracyns were brent and bruyled<sup>1</sup>.

- T**he pucelle Eglantyne was thenne joyfult & glad  
 for the dyscomfyture of the paynemes and also of  
 the commyng of her uncle. But not withstanding she  
 24 had sorowe at herte for the kynge, her faders deth,  
 that she might not forget it. And neuertheles, whan  
 she cam byfore her vncle she enclyned & honourably  
 made to hym her obeyssaunce, sayeng: 'My right dere  
 28 vncle, ye be right welcomme / playsed god that ye  
 were arryued two <sup>2</sup>dayes rather, For thenne ye had  
 found my fader on lyue, whiche Zelodius hath slayne  
 & made to be brent & bruled to the moost vytupere &  
 32 shame of the Catholyca feyth.' And whan the kyng  
 of Anssay vnderstoð it he was wroth & dolaunt, and  
 sware that thus and in suche wyse shuld he do of the

The maid Eglan-  
 tine is glad for  
 the victory.

She welcomes  
 her uncle, the  
 King of Anssay,

2 fol. 134 b.

and tells him  
 how Zelodius  
 has burnt her  
 father's body.

He swears

to treat the  
Saracens the  
same way.

Their bodies are  
laid in a heap,

and are burnt ;

but the bodies  
of the Christians  
receive Christian  
burial.

The King of  
Anssay is woful  
for his brother's  
death.

He has the  
cathedral pre-  
pared for his  
brother's obse-  
quies ;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 135.

and goes toward  
the Saracens  
camp,

where the breth-  
ren were dividing  
the spoil.

The King of  
Anssay tells how  
his brother was  
slain and his  
body burnt,

and how he  
burned the  
Saracens.

kyngē Zelodius and of aȝ the sarasyns, that he coude  
fynde deȝ or alyue. And anon were cryees made  
through the toun, that of euery hous one man shuld goo  
in to the feld for to assemble the deed bodyes of the 4  
sarasyns togidre vpon a mountayne, and that men  
shuld bryng<sup>t</sup> thither woȝ ynough for to brule & brēne  
the corps. And thus it was don. And was the corps  
of Zelodyus sette vpon a stake so that it was seen aboue 8  
al other / And so was the fyre grete about them / and  
so they were al brent & bruled / and aȝ the deed  
bodyes of the cristen men that were found<sup>t</sup> were buried  
there as cristen people ought to be. And þese thinges 12  
doon, the kyng<sup>t</sup> of Anssay made al thing<sup>t</sup> to be redy  
for to make thobsequeye of the kyng<sup>t</sup> his brother, and  
that moche honourably as it is shewed herafter. /

**I**n this partye, sayth thystorye, that wooful & sory 16  
was the kyng<sup>t</sup> of Anssay for the deth of his  
brother / but syth it plesed<sup>t</sup> god to be so he lefte &  
passed his deuē the best wyse that he coude. Thap-  
pareyl was thezne made for the obsequeye whiche was 20  
don in the Chirche Cathedral of the Cite. And syn  
the kyng of Anssay and the duc of bauyere <sup>1</sup>mounted  
on horsback and many barons of behayne with them,  
and al clothed<sup>t</sup> in black went toward<sup>t</sup> the sarasyns tentes, 24  
where the two bretheren were whiche had do cōme  
per aȝ the Sommage, Cartes, Charyotes, & bagage, And  
syn departed among<sup>t</sup> theire people aȝ that they had<sup>t</sup>  
wonne vpon the paynemes /. Thenne arryued there 28  
the kyngē of Anssay, the duc Ode, and all the baronnye  
and nobly salued the two brethern, And the duc  
Anthony, & Regnauld hys brother receyued them joy-  
fully. Thenne reccounted the kyngē of Anssay to þe 32  
two bretheren how the kyngē ffederyk was slayn in the  
baytayȝ, and how Zelodyus had<sup>t</sup> made hys body to be  
brent in despyt of aȝ cristianyte / and therfore he had  
doo like wise of Zelodyus body & of aȝ the sarasyns 36



- that were founde alyue or deed. And Anthonye penne  
 ansuerd, 'On my feyth ye haue don right wel / and  
 veryly kyng Zelodius mysdede ouermoeche grete cruelte,
- 4 For syn a man is deed / grete shame is to hys enemy  
 to touche hym ony more.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said  
 the duc of Bauyere, 'ye say trouth, but the kyng of  
 Anssay is come hitther to you for to beseche you &
- 8 your brother to come to the obseque of the kyng  
 Federyke his brother.' And thenne ansuerd the  
 bretherne, 'we shal thither goo gladly.' Thenne they  
 mounted on hors back & rode toward the Cite, wher
- 12 as the ladyes and damoysselles, knightes & squyres /  
 cytyzeyns & commynalte beheld them fayne and mer-  
 uaylled moche of the Lyons clawe that shewed in  
 An'thonyes cheke / and preysed moche his fayre & wel
- 16 shappen body, and also of Regnauld hys brother / and  
 said emong themself, 'these two bretheren ben able for  
 to subdue al the world.' And thus they came to the  
 church where thobseque shuld be made and there
- 20 alyghted.

Anthony thinks  
Zelodius was  
cruel.

The duke Ode  
asks the brethren  
to the obsequies.

They agree to  
come;

and are well  
received in the  
city.

1 fol. 135 b.

Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were  
 at buryeng and obseque of kynge Fe-  
 deryk of behayne.

- 24 **E**glantine that was in the Cirk came and re-  
 countred the two bretheren, whom she made hum-  
 bly her obeyssaunce, thankyng them mekely of their  
 noble socours that they had doo to her, For they had
- 28 saued her honour, her lyf, and her land. And thenne  
 anthony ansuerd humbly to her, sayeng, 'Damoysselle,  
 2 We haue nought doo but that we ought to doo, For  
 euery good cristen is hold & bound aftir the playsire
- 32 of god toppresse & dystroye thenemyes of God.' The  
 pucelle was there nobly acompanyed of the ladyes &  
 damoysselles of the land, thobseque was honourably &

Eglantine meets  
the brethren at  
the church, and  
thanks them for  
saving her.

2 fol. 136.

After the service,  
which is nobly  
done,

the brethren  
convey Eglantine  
to the palace,

where they have  
dinner.

The King of  
Anssay calls  
the barons of  
the land,

and tells them  
they must take  
council how to  
govern the  
kingdom.

They say that  
in his presence  
they must not  
speak.

1 fol. 136 b.

He advises them  
to marry their  
lady.

They ask the  
king to seek her  
a worthy man.

nobly doon as it apparteyned to suche a noble kyng<sup>r</sup> as he was. And after the seruyse fynysshed the two bretheren mounted on theire horses, and theire meyne also, and conueyed the pucelle Eglantyne vnto the 4 paleys where they descended, & syn mounted in to the haH where the tables were redy couered / and therne they wesshe theire handes & satte at dyner / and syn were nobly seruyd<sup>t</sup> & festyed / and after dyner the tables 8 were voyded & take vp & wesshe handes / and syn þey conueyed Eglantyne vnto her chambre, þat was euer sorowful for her faders deth. And þenne the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the baronnye of the land, & 12 said to them in this manere :

‘**L**ordes, barons, ye muste CounseyH emong<sup>r</sup> you, & take your best aduys how ye myght haue a valyaunt man for to gouerne the royaume, For the land 16 which is in the gudyng & gouernaunce of a woman only is not surely kept. Now, loke thenne what best is for the prouffyt & honour of my cousyne Eglantine, & for þe common wele of this land.’ Thenne ansuerd 20 one for them alle & sayd : ‘Sire, we knowe none that oughte to medle hymself therwith tofore you, For yf your Cousyn were passed out of this mortal lyf, that god forbede, al the royalme of Behayne shuld appar- 24 teyne to you. Wher<sup>l</sup>for we al bes[e]che you that therto ye puruey after your playsire.’ Thenne ansuerd the king, & thus said : ‘Sire, as touching my personne, I may not long abyde with you to be rewler & protectour 28 of this land, For thanked be god I haue land ynoughe to entreteyne myn estate with / but in conclusyon lete my cousyn take some valiaunt man to her lord, that shal deffende the land ayenst the enemyes of god.’ 32 Thenne ansuered the barons fourthe with, ‘Sire, yf it please you þat your Cousyn be maryed, seke for her some noble & worthy man to be her lord & oure, For tofore you none of vs oughte to medle withaH.’ Thenne 36

ansuerd<sup>t</sup> the kyng in this manere, 'We thenne shal  
 purueye therto to her honour & prouffyt & to yours  
 also / and that anoone, For I go to speke with her for  
 4 this cause.' The kyng thenne departed and came in  
 to the Chambre where his Cousin was, that moche hum-  
 bly receyued hym. And the kyng<sup>t</sup> said to her in this  
 manere, 'Fayre cousyne, thankyng<sup>t</sup> to god your affayres  
 8 be now in good party, For your land is delyuered fro  
 the paynemes by the puyssaunce of god & of the two  
 brethern of Lusynen. Now it muste be aduysed &  
 sene how best your reaume may be guyled in good  
 12 gouernaunce to your prouffyt & honour, and of your  
 people also.' Thenne ansuerd<sup>t</sup> the mayden, 'My right  
 dere vncle, I ne haue noon of CounseyH & comfort but  
 you / so I requyre you that of good remedye ye pur-  
 16 ueye therto. And conuenable & lawful it is that I  
 obey you more than any other personne in the world,  
 & so wyl I doo.' Thenne had the kyng pite on <sup>1</sup>her  
 & said, 'Fayre Cousyn, we haue alrede purueyed  
 20 therto / ye muste be maryed to suche a man that can  
 kepe and deffende you & your land<sup>t</sup> ayenst alle enemyes,  
 the which is fayre, noble, & valyaunt damoyseau, &  
 not ferre hens.' 'Certaynly,' ansuerd<sup>t</sup> the pucelle.  
 24 'Dere vncle, wel I knowe for certayn that ye wold<sup>t</sup>  
 neuer CounseyH me þat thing<sup>t</sup> but it were to my grete  
 honour & proffit, and for the commyn wele of all my  
 land / but ryght dere vncle, I to be maryed so soone  
 28 after my faders decesse / shuld not shewe semblaunt of  
 dueyH for his deth. Wherfor me semeth I were  
 blamed to doo soo / and suche shuld shew to me fayre  
 semblaunt byfore me,<sup>2</sup> that wold moke me at a pryvy  
 32 place /.'

He promises to  
 find one,  
 and leaves to  
 speak to his  
 cousin on the  
 subject.

She receives him  
 humbly.

He tells her that  
 the way must be  
 found how best  
 to govern the  
 land.

The maid asks  
 his advice.

1 fol. 137.

He says she must  
 get married.

She answers  
 that she knows  
 he gives good  
 counsel,

but she thinks  
 she should not  
 marry so soon  
 after her father's  
 death.

The King replies  
 that one must  
 choose the lesser  
 evil.

To that ansuerd<sup>t</sup> the king<sup>t</sup>, & said: 'My right fayre  
 Cousyn, of two euylls men ought to choose  
 the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had. But, fayre

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *qui en tendroit mains de compte derrière.*

He would like to wait to be at her wedding,

but he lives afar off.

Then the brethren must be rewarded,

but half of her kingdom would not be sufficient for this,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 137 b.  
and she is not worthy to have Regnauld as her lord.

Then the maid was ashamed,

and told her uncle to do with her and her kingdom as he thought best.

The King bids her cease weeping.

He goes to the brethren,

Cousyn, it is wel trouth, that who myght goodly tary the day of your weddyng<sup>1</sup> it were your honour / but what, fayre Cousyn, my dwelling place is ferre hens / and here I may not make long<sup>2</sup> sojourne, without my 4 grete damage, as wel of other mens goodes as of myn. Also the two bretheren most be recompensed & rewarded of their noble socours, outhre of my goodes or of yours / and some saith that bettre is to haue 8 more of prouffyt & lasse honour. And to say that ye coude recompense them as they oughte to be, by raison of the grete curtoysye by them shewed vnto you; the half of your royaume shuld not suffise. And ouer 12 more, fayre Cousyne, wete it that ye be not to suffysaunt <sup>1</sup>for to haue suche & so noble a man to your lord as is Regnauld<sup>2</sup> of Lusynen, For in certayn he is wel worthy to marye the gretest lady in the world<sup>3</sup>. What 16 for his noble lynee, as for his bounte, beaute, & noble prowess.' Whan the noble pucelle Eglantyne vnderstode the kyng<sup>4</sup> her vncle, she was shamfu<sup>5</sup> & hontous / and on that other part, she consydering<sup>6</sup> the daunger 20 where bothe she & her peple had be & myght be wyst neuer what to say, and bygane to wepe / but at last she ansuerd<sup>7</sup> in this manere: 'right dere vncle, all my trust, my hoop & comfort is in god & in you, wherfor 24 doo with me & with my reaume what it playse you' / 'Fayre Cousyn,' said the kyng<sup>8</sup>, 'ye say right wel / and I swere you by my feyth, that nothing I shal say in this party ne doo, but that it shal be for the best. 28 Now thenne, noble Cousyne, seace your wepyng<sup>9</sup>, & delyuere you of this affayre, For the more long<sup>10</sup> that these baronye with their peple that be in nombre xv. M<sup>11</sup>. be sojourning<sup>12</sup> in your land<sup>13</sup> the greter damage 32 shal ye haue.' And she that wel knewe he said trouth, ansuerd<sup>14</sup> to hym in this manere: 'Dere vncle, doo therof al your playsyre.' Thenne came the kynge in to the grete halle where the two brethern were, & the 36



baronye *with* them, and said to Anthony in this  
 manyere: 'noble Duc, vouchesaf to understand my  
 wordes, the barons of this land that be here present,  
 4 beseech your good grace / & as touching my self, I  
 hertyly praye you that it plesse you, that Regnauld your  
 brother be king of this royalme, and that he take  
 Eglantyne my Cousyn to his lady / prayeng hym that  
 8 he this wyl not refuse, For the barons of the land  
 desire hym moche to be thaire lord.' 'Sire,' ansuerd  
 anthony, 'this requeste is worthy to be graunted, &  
 also shal it be. Doo hither come the noble da'moy-  
 12 selle.' And fourth*with* the kyng & the Duc Ode  
 yede & fette the pucelle, and despoyled her of her  
 dueyl & black clothing / and syn was arayed ful  
 rychely of her noblest raymentes, and acompanyed  
 16 with her ladyes & damoysselles, she was conueyed by  
 the forsaid lordes vnto the presence of the noble  
 bretheren, whiche merueylled moche of her grete  
 beaute / and she humbly enclyned byfore them, mak-  
 20 yng her obeyssaunce. Thenne bygan the king of  
 Anssay to speke, & thus said /

**N**oble Duc of Lucembourgh, hold ye to vs your  
 couenauntes; this is wherof we wyl hold oure  
 24 promesse.' 'For sooth,' said Anthony, 'it is wel reason.  
 come hither Regnauld brother, receyue this pucelle to  
 your lady, For she maketh you kyng of behayne.'  
 Thenne said Regnauld, in heryng of alle that were  
 28 there present / 'thankyng be to god, to the kyng, &  
 to all the baronye of this lande, of the grete honour  
 that they doo to me. For yf thys noble pucelle had  
 not one foot of land, yet wold I not reffuse her loue  
 32 to haue her to my lady, after the lawes of god requyren.  
 For with thayde of almighty god, I hoop to conquere  
 ynoughe to hold & entreteyne ther*with* her noble  
 estate' / 'Fayre brother,' said *penne* anthony / 'ye say  
 raison / this royaume ye haue wonne alredy / god yeue

and asks An-  
 thony to make  
 his brother  
 marry Eglantine  
 and rule her  
 kingdom.

Anthony agrees.

1 fol. 133.

The maid, richly  
 arrayed,

is brought before  
 the lords and the  
 two brethren.

The King asks  
 Anthony to keep  
 his promise.

Anthony calls  
 on Regnauld to  
 take the maid  
 to wife.

Regnauld ac-  
 cepts her for her  
 merits, not for  
 her lands,

and says he  
 hopes to conquer  
 still more.

Anthony hopes  
that he will.  
The bishop  
comes and af-  
fiances Regnauld  
and Eglantine;  
after that the  
feast is great,  
and the towns-  
folk make much  
joy.

[<sup>1</sup> MS. the the]

<sup>2</sup> fol. 138 b.  
Rich robes are  
made for the  
ladies.

The maid is led  
to the tents,

good watch is  
set,  
and a good sup-  
per is served

before bedtime.

you grace to subdue & conquere other reames & landes  
vpon her enemyes.' And in conclusyon, the bysshop  
was sent for, & assured them togidre. And syn bygane  
the<sup>1</sup> feest sumptuous & grete, For soone it was knowen 4  
thruh al the toun, wherof the peple made grete joye /  
and were the stretes hanged with ryche clothes, & grete  
& noble apparayH was there made, as to suche a feste  
apperteyned / and was ordeyned that the wedding<sup>8</sup>  
shuld be hold<sup>t</sup> in the feld<sup>t</sup> within the chief pauillon.  
Many riche rayments & robes were made what <sup>2</sup>for the  
spouse / as for the ladyes & damoysselles. That nyght  
passed, and on the morne on which day they shuld 12  
be espoused / the pucelle nobly was conueyed & ledd  
vnto the tentes, whiche were al of cloth of gold / And  
that night was good watche made as þe enemyes had  
be nygh to them / and there the feste encrested, & 16  
were honourably seruyd at souper. And whan tyme  
was, euery one went to bed vnto the morow erly, when  
Aurora shone clere. /

### Cap. XXXV. How Regnauld espoused 20 Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne. /

At day spring  
many ladies  
accompany the  
spouse to mass.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 139.

where the bishop  
solemnly es-  
pouses Regnauld  
and Eglantine.  
They return to  
the pavilion to  
dine.

**H**ere sheweth thistorye, & sayth that whan the day  
spryng<sup>t</sup> appiered, & the day was ful fayre & clere, 24  
the spouse nobly & rychely arayed in her robes of cloth  
of gold, & fourred with Ermynes, & purfylled aH with  
precyous stones, accompanied with grete nombre of  
ladyes & damoy<sup>3</sup>selles, was right honourably conueyed 28  
vnto the place where as the masse shuld be sayd; and  
solemply the bysshop espoused them here / and aftir  
the masse, she retourned to the pauyllon with al the  
noble baronye with her, where they fond al apparaylled 32  
& redy to dyner. They were ful wel & nobly seruyd  
of al thinges that to suche a feste be requysite & con-

uenable. And after they had dyned, graces were said,  
 & wesshe theire handes, and syn were the tables  
 voyded, thanne bygane they to daunce & to make grete  
 4 joye. /

after which they  
 danced and made  
 great joy.

Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers  
 jousted after dyner.

Thistorye sayth that after the daunce was seaced the  
 8 T ladies & damoysselles mounted vpon the scaffolds.  
 Thenne cam the knightes rychely armed, & bygan to  
 joust / trompettes sowned, & knightes reuersed eche  
 other / but none might withstand the noble bretheren,  
 12 but he was ouerthrow, bothe hors & man / so that no  
 man dide there nought <sup>1</sup>to the regarde of theire prowes.  
 Wherefore, they seyng that the ioustes affeblysshid for  
 cause of them, they departed fro the lystes & toke of  
 16 theire armeures / and syn dured the jousting tyl tyme  
 of souper came. And thenne the joustes seaced, and  
 the knightes & squyers departed, & went & dysarmed  
 them. Thenne mynestrels with dyuerse Instruments  
 20 of musique sowned & played melodyously the first  
 cours of the souper / & syn they were nobly serued of  
 al maner wyne / and after souper they daunced. But  
 whan tyme was, the spouse was ledd to bed with grete  
 24 honour & Joye. And anone after came Regnault  
 there, whiche went to bed with the pucelle. Thenne  
 voyded euery one the chambre / some to theire rest /  
 some retourned to the daunce / some sang, & other  
 28 made grete reueyH. Regnault, thenne that laye nigh  
 Eglantyne, swetly embraced & kyssed her / and she  
 to hym moche humbled her self, sayeng in this manere :  
 ‘ My lord redoubted, ne had be the grace of god / your  
 32 curtoysye & prowes, this poure orphelym had be / no  
 doubt of / exilled, desolat, & lost. Wherefor, my right  
 redoubted lord, I yeld thankyng to god, & to you also

The knights be-  
 gin to joust ;

the two brethren  
 cannot be over-  
 thrown.

1 fol. 139 b.

Supper time  
 arrives,

Minstrels play  
 while it is served.

After some danc-  
 ing the spouse  
 is led to bed, and  
 is followed by  
 Regnald.

Eglantine de-  
 clares that his  
 prowess has  
 saved her from  
 exile,

and thanks him  
for making her  
his wife.

Regnald declares  
she has done  
more for him  
than he for her.

1 fol. 140.

He begets  
Olyphart,

who became  
famous for deeds  
of arms.

In the morning  
before dinner  
letters are  
brought to An-  
thony from  
Christine

that haue dayned to take to your wyf her that was vnworthy therto.' 'By my fayth,' said Regnald, 'dere herte, & my best beloued, ye haue do moche more for me than euer I dide ne possible is to me to 4 doo for you / sene & consydered the noble yefte youen by you to me / that is your noble lady / and yet besyde that of your noble royaume ye haue endowed me / and with me nought ye haue take / sauf only my symple 8 body.' Thenne ansuered Eglantyne, & said / 'Ha / noble lord, your valyaunt body is derer to me & bettre worth than ten other suche rōyames as myn is / & more it is to be preysed.' Of <sup>1</sup>theire wordes I wyl 12 seace / but that nyght was begoten of them a noble sone that was named Olyphart / he made in tyme after- ward grete faytte of armes, and subdued & gate al the low marche of holland & Zeland, Vtreyght, & the 16 Royame of Danemarche / and al the partyes of North- weghe also. On the morne the day was fayre & clere. Thenne was the noble lady Eglantyne ledd to here the masse / and al the baronye, ladyes & damoysselles, acom- 20 panyed her thitherward. And after the mass was doo, they retourned to the ryche pauyllon / and as they were redy to sette pem at dyner / came there two knightis fro Lucembourg, that brought *lettres* to Duc Anthony 24 from the Duches Crystyne his wyf / the whiche after theire obeyssaunce honourably made, said to hym in this wise: 'My lord, ye oughte to take grete joye / For my lady the Duches is brought to bed of the most 28 fayrest sone that euer was seen in no land.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said anthony, 'blessid be god therof / and ye be right welcome to me' / & syn toke the *lettres*.

**T**historye sayth that anthony, Duc of Lucem- 32 bourgh, was joyful & glad of these tydynges, and so was his brother Regnald. Thenne opened he the *lettres*, wherof the tenour was acording to that the knightes had said. Thenne made anthony moche of 36

which tell of the  
birth of a fair  
son.



- them, gyuyng to them grete yeftes of ryches. Thenne  
 he satte hym at dyner nygh to Eglantyne / and dured  
 the feest eyght days, sumptuose & open houshold.
- 4 And whan the feste was fynysshed, they reentred in to  
 the Cite *with* gret honour & joye. And on the morne  
 next the kyng of Anssay / Anthony & the Duc Ode, &  
 al theire baronye toke theire leue of <sup>1</sup>Regnauld & of
- 8 Eglantyne, whiche were dolauant of theire departing.
- And anthony made couenaunt *with* Regnauld hys  
 brother, that yf the paynemes made ony moo werre  
*with* hym, he shuld come & aH his baronye *with* hym
- 12 to ayde & helpe hym. And the kyng Regnauld thanked  
 hym mochi. And eche of them thanked & kyssed eche  
 other at departyng / Soo long marched thoost pat they  
 came to Mouchyne<sup>2</sup> in Bauyere / & lodged them in a
- 16 fayre medowe nygh the toun. There the Duc Ode  
 festyed them right honourably the space of thre dayes /  
 and on the foureth day they departed & toke theire  
 leue of the Duc Ode / and rode so long tyl [they]<sup>3</sup>
- 20 came a day journey nygh to Coloyne. And there the  
 foure knightes that conduyted the Coloyners auauunced  
 them self byfore Duc Anthony, & to him said in this  
 manere: 'My lord, it is best that we hast vs byfore
- 24 you toward the toun, to apparayH & make al thing  
 redy for your passage.' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc  
 Anthonye, 'that playseth me wel.' Thenne departed
- the foure knightes & theire men *with* them, & rode
- 28 tyl they came to the Cite of Coloyne, where they were  
 receyued *with* Joye / and the Cytezeyns & gouernours  
 of the cyte demanded of them how they had exployted  
 in theire vyage / And they recounted to them aH the
- 32 trouth of the fayte and the valyauntnes & noble prowes  
 of the two brethern / & how regnauld was made kyng  
 [of] Behayne. And whan they of Coloyne <sup>4</sup>understode  
 them they were ryght glad & joyous, sayeng they

Anthony gives  
the messengers  
great gifts.

The feast lasts  
eight days.

Anthony, the  
King of Anssay,  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 140 b.  
and Duke Ode  
take leave of  
Regnald.

Anthony pro-  
mises to help  
him against the  
paynims.

They march to  
Mouchine, where  
the Duke feasts  
them, and

on the fourth day  
they march  
again.

They arrive near  
Cologne.

The four knights  
go in advance to  
Cologne and

are joyfully re-  
ceived.

They tell the  
news of the ex-  
pedition.

<sup>4</sup> fol. 141.  
The Cologners  
are glad

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Muchin*. <sup>3</sup> MS. has *day*.

to have the  
friendship of  
such noble lords.

Anthony and the  
king arrive at  
Cologne.

They are nobly  
feasted,

and promise the  
townspeople  
their succour if  
it should be  
wanted.

Anthony arrives  
near Luxem-  
bourg.

Christine is joy-  
ful at her lord's  
return.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 141 b.

His people re-  
ceive him with  
shouts of wel-  
come.

He feasts the  
King of Anssay  
and frees him  
from all his obli-  
gations except  
the founding of  
the priory.

were wel happy & ewrou<sup>1</sup> to haue acqyred the loue  
& good wy<sup>H</sup> of two lordes of so grete valeur. And  
thenne they made grete apparay<sup>H</sup> for to receyue the  
Duc Anthony, and the king<sup>i</sup> of Anssay with their<sup>e</sup> 4  
baronye. Soo long<sup>i</sup> rode thoost that they came to Co-  
loyne, where the Cytezeyns cam & mete hem honour-  
ably / and to the prynces they made grete reuerence,  
prayeng them that they wold be lodged that nyght 8  
with<sup>i</sup>n the toun, where they were nobly festyed &  
honourably seruyd at souper. And on the morn  
Anthony & his oost passed ouer the Ryn, and toke his  
leue of them of Coloyne, whiche he thanked moche, 12  
sayeng : ' yf they were in ony wyse oppressed by their<sup>e</sup>  
enemyes he wold<sup>t</sup> be euer redy for tayde & socoure them  
after hys power.' Wherof they thanked hym moche.  
Thenne the Duc Anthony & the king of Anssay dyde 16  
so moche by their<sup>e</sup> journeys, that on an euen they  
came & lodged them in the medow nygh<sup>i</sup> by Lucem-  
bourg. /

**T**he duchesse Cristyne was replenysshed with joye, 20  
whan she knew the commyng of her lord anthony /  
and immedyatly she, nobly acompanied, yssued out of  
the toun / and all the noble cyteseyns folowed her to  
mete with their<sup>e</sup> lord, the whiche they recountred a 24  
half a myle fro the toun. What shal I say / greter  
joye was neuer sene than that was made for the retourne  
of Duc Anthony. The Duchesse made humbly her  
obeyssaunce vnto hym / and <sup>2</sup>hertly welcommed hym. 28  
The people cryed on hye for Joye, sayeng thus :  
'welcomme our lord ryght redoubted.' The joye was  
grete thugh the toun where the Duc festyed the kyng<sup>e</sup>  
of Anssay by the space of six dayes contynuelly, & for- 32  
gaf & rendred to hym all his obligacions, and held<sup>t</sup> hym  
quytte / except the Foundation of the pryore, where as  
sowles shuld be prayed for / for the loue of Regnault

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *eureux*.

- his brother. And the kinge of Anssay thanked hym moche, & toke his leue of hym / departed, & came in Anssay, where as he was receyued with joye / And the
- 4 Duc anthony abode with the Duchesse Cristyne, on whom he gate a sone that same yere which was clepid Locher, whiche afterward delyuered the Countroy of Ardane fro thevys, murdrers, & robbeurs; and in the
- 8 wodes there he founded an abbeye, and endowed it with grete pcessyons / And he also dyde doo make the bridge of Masyeres vpon the ryuere of Meuze, and many other fortresses in the basse marche of holland /
- 12 and dyde many fayre fayttes of armes with the king Olyphart of behayne, that was his Cousyn, & sone to kyng Regnault. It happed not long after the kyng of Anssay was retourned in to his royaume, that warre
- 16 meuyd betwix hym & the Duc of austeryche & the [Erle] of Fyerbourgh. wherfor he besought the Duc Anthony for socour, that gladly obtempered to his requeste, in so moche that he toke by force of armes
- 20 the Erle of Fyerbourgh / and syn pas<sup>l</sup>sed in Austeryche, where he dyscomfyted the Duc in batayll, and made hym to be pacyfyed with the kyng of Anssay, to the grete prouffyt & honour of the kinge. And bertrand
- 24 theldest sone of the Duc Anthony, was assured with Melydee the sayd king of Anssays doughter / the whiche Bertrand afterward was kyng of anssay, and hys brother Locher was Duc of Lucembourg, after
- 28 the decesse of the Duc Anthony hys fader. But of this matere I wyl no more speke at this tyme / but shal retourne to speke of Melusyne & of Raymondyn, and of theire other children. /
- 32 **N**ow sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn by hys noblenes & grete vasselage conquerd grete countrees / and to hym many barons dyde homage vnto the land of Brytayne. And Melusyne had two yere after
- 36 that two sones, the first was named Froymond, that

Anssay thanks him, and afterwards returns to his country.

Anthony begets Locher, who frees Ardennes from thieves,

and builds fortresses, and does feats of arms along with his cousin Olyphart of Bohemia.

The King of Anssay asks the help of Anthony against his enemies.

1 fol. 142.

Anthony assists him.

Bertrand is assured to Melydee, the daughter of the King of Anssay.

Raymondin conquers great countries, and many barons do homage to the land of Brittany.

Melusine bears two sons, Froymond,

who became a monk,

and Theoderick.

Geffray with the Great Tooth was the most enterprising of all his brethren.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 142 b.

He hears tidings that the people of Garande will not pay his father their tribute.

He goes to Garande against his father's will.

Raymondin's partizans there offer to help Geffray.

He thanks them,

but declines their aid.

They tell him his enemies are very powerful.

entierly louyd holy Chirch, and that was wel shewed in his ende, For he was professid<sup>t</sup> monke in to thabbeye of Maillezes, wherof there befeH a grete & an horryble myschief, as ye shal here hereafter by thystorye / and 4 the other child that they had the yere folowyng<sup>t</sup> was named Theodoryk, the whiche was ryght batayllous. Here I shal leue to speke of the two children / and I shal shewe you of Geffray with the grete toth, that 8 was yrous & hardy / & most enterpryse dide of aH<sup>t</sup> hys bretheren. And wete it wel that the said geffray doubted neuer man / And thystorye <sup>1</sup>sheweth, & the true Cronykle that he faught ayenst a knight, that was 12 gendred with a spyryte in a medowe nygh by Lusynen, as ye shal here hereafter. It is trouth that thenne Geffray was grete & ouergrown / and herde tydynges that there was in Garande peple that wold not obey to 16 hys fader / thenne sware Geffray by the good lord that he shuld<sup>t</sup> make them to come as reason requyreth, and to do that he toke leue of hys fader, that was right wroth of hys departyng / and had with hym to the 20 nombre of fyue houndred men of armes, and a houndred balesters, and so went in to Garande / and anoone enquiryed after them that were dysobedyent / and they that held the party of Raymondyn shewed hym the 24 Fortresse where they were, & armed them to goo with hym to helpe to dystroye hys enemyes. 'By my feyth, fayre lordes,' sayd Geffray with the grete toeth / 'ye are ryght true & loyal peple / & I thanke you of 28 thonour that ye proffre me / but as for this tyme present I shall not nede you, For I haue men of armes ynough for taccomplyssh myn enterpryse.' 'For soothe, sire, ye haue more to doo than ye suppose, For your 32 enemyes ben ryght strong & of meruayllous courage, & they be frendes & cousyns, and of the grete & moost noble blood<sup>t</sup> of al the Countree.' 'Fayre sires,' said Geffray, 'doubte you not, For thrughe thayde of god 36



omnipotent I shal the matere <sup>1</sup>wel redresse. And wete  
 it wel there shal be none so myghty / but I shal make  
 them to obeie my commandement or to deye of an euyl  
 4 deth. And also, fayre lordes & true frendes, yf I nede  
 you I shaſt send for you / And they ansuerd, 'we are  
 now al redy, and also shal we be at al tymes that it  
 playse you vs to calle.' 'Fayre lordes,' said Geffray with  
 8 the grete toth / 'that ought to be thanked for.' Thenne  
 toke Geffray hys leue of them / and went forth on his  
 way toward a Fortresse that was called Syon / & within  
 the same was one of the enemyes of geffray that hight  
 12 Claude of Syon, & were thre bretheren. Moche were  
 the thre brethern yrous & proude / and wold haue sub-  
 dued and putte vnder theire subjection all theire neygh-  
 bours. Thenne sent geffray with the grete tooth wordes  
 16 of deffyaunce / outhre to come & make theire obeys-  
 saunce to hym for Raymondin his faders. And they  
 ansuerd to the messenger, 'that for Raymondyn ner for  
 no man on his byhalf they shuld nought doo / and that  
 20 he shuld no more retourne to them for this matere, for  
 than he were a fole.' 'By my feyth,' said the mes-  
 sager, 'I shal kepe me wel therfro / but that I bryng  
 with me a maister in medecyne, that shal make suche  
 24 a lectuary or drynk wherof ye shal be poysonned, &  
 syn hanged by the neck.' And of these wordes were  
 the iij bretheren wood wroth. And wete it wel that  
 yf the messenger had not hasted his hors away he had  
 28 be take & deed without ony remedye, For <sup>2</sup>they were  
 full yrous & crueh, and doubted not god nor no man  
 lyuyng. Thenne retourned the messenger toward geffray  
 and recounted hym the grete pryde & auauntyng of the  
 32 bretheren. 'By my heed,' said Geffray with the grete  
 tooth, 'a lytel rayne leyeth down grete wynd / & doubte  
 you not but I shal pay them wel theire wages.'

<sup>1</sup> fol. 143.

Geffray says he  
 will compel his  
 enemies to obey.

He goes against  
 Claud of Sion,

one of three  
 proud brethren.

He sends his de-  
 fiance, and orders  
 them to make  
 obedience to him  
 on Raymondin's  
 behalf.

They refuse, and

<sup>2</sup> fol. 143 b.

the messenger  
 tells Geffray of  
 their pride and  
 boasting.

Geffray says that  
 "a little rain  
 layeth down a  
 great wind."

36 **T**hystorye sayth, that whan geffray vnderstode the  
 grete pryde & the fel ansuere of the thre brethern,

Geffray approaches near the fortress.

He arms, mounts; and takes a squire with him; and orders his men to rest till he sends them word.

A knight, who well knew his boldness, follows with x men.

Geffray arrives at the Fortress of Sion.

He sees its strength on one side,

and spies all round it.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 144.

He finds that it is weakest by the bridge,

and returns toward his men.

Philebert and his fellowship keep out of Geffray's sight.

He sees xiv armed men in Geffray's way, and is afraid,

without any moo wordes he came & lodged hym & his peuple half a leghe fro the said Fortresse. Thenne toke he his armures & armed hym of al pieces; toke with hym a squyer that wel knew the Countrey / 4 mounted on horsback / commanded his men that they shuld not meue them thens vnto tyme they had word of hym, & departed with hys esquyer / but there was a knyght that wel knew hys noble & fyers courage, & 8 that he doubted nothing of the world / which toke x. men of armes with hym and went after Geffray, folow- yng<sup>r</sup> hym fro ferre, For he moche loued geffray. Geffray rode so long<sup>r</sup> that he sawe the Fortresse of Syon vpon 12 a hye roche. 'By my feyth,' said thenne geffray, 'yf the Fortresse be so strong at that o<sup>r</sup>ther syde as it is at this syde, hit shal gyue me moche payne or euer it be take, I must see & know yf it be also strong<sup>r</sup> at that 16 other parte.' Thenne he & his esquyer aduironned the Fortresse about, al along<sup>r</sup> by a lytel wod<sup>r</sup>, that they might not be aspyed ne sene. They came & de- scended <sup>1</sup>in a valey / and euer the forsaid knyght that 20 was named Philibert<sup>2</sup> folowed hym a ferre / and so long rode geffray tyl he had ouer sene the said fortres al round<sup>r</sup> about / and hym semed wel that it might be take by the brydge syde, For it was the feblest syde of 24 it / Thenne entred geffray & hys esquyer in a lytel path, & retourned vpon the mountayne toward<sup>r</sup> hys lodgis, where his peple were hym abydyng<sup>r</sup>. Philebert, that sawe Geffray retourne, thought he would<sup>r</sup> lete hym 28 passe tofore hym, Wherfor he and his felawship reculed within the wode, to thende thay shuld not be perceyued of hym / but soone after they sawe a companye of men of warre comynge that same way that geffray came 32 toward<sup>r</sup> the Fortresse, and were to the nombre of xiiii persone wel armed. Wherfore the said knight phili- bert was abasshed & agast, lest they shuld mete with

<sup>2</sup> Fr. Ver. *Philibert de Mommoret*.

geffray, For wel he wyst that geffray wold fyght with them / as he dide / and that shal ye here hereafter. /

because he knows Geffray will fight them.

4 **I**n this partye, sayth thistorye, that vpon the topp of the mountayne geffray recountred the said companye, And who that shuld enquire of me what folke they were; I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon bretheren that came toward his brother at his mandement. And wete it wel, that the way was there so narrow that vnnethe one hors myght passe by other. And whan Geffray with the grete <sup>1</sup>teeth recountred them, he sayd to hym that rode first of alle that he shuld tary and make his companye to stand asyde tyl he were passed the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said he þat was proude & orgueyllous, 'Sire daw fole,<sup>2</sup> wel we muste first knowe what ye be, that say that we retourne vs for you.' 'By god,' said Geffray with the grete toth / 'that shal you knowe anone, For I shal make you retourne ayenst your wyll. I am Geffray of Lusynen / tourne back / or elles I shal make you to retourne by force.' Whan Guyon the brother of Claude of Syon vnderstode hym & knew that it was geffray with the grete teeth / he cryed to his folk, 'auaunt, lordes barons, For yf he escape grete shame shal be to vs / in an euyl heure is he come in to oure land for to demande seruytude of vs.' Thenne whan geffray vnderstode these wordes he drew out his sword & smote the nethermost of alle vpon his hed, so grete a stroke that he ouerthrew hym all astonyed doune to the erthe, and syn passed forth by hys hors, & ouer hym that laye along the way, in suche wyse that he al to brusid the body of hym / And thenne geffray atteyned another in the brest foynnyng with hys swerd, so that he fel doune deed to therthe / and syn cryed aftir the oper, 'False traytours, ye may not escape, ye shal retourne to your euyl helthe.' Thenne he passed fourth

Geffray encounters one of Claud's brothers and his men on a narrow road.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 144 b.

Geffray asks them to stand aside till he has passed.

They ask who he is.

He answers, "Geffray of Lusignan," and bids them turn, else he will make them.

Guien cries to his men not to let Geffray escape.

But Geffray draws his sword and smites one of his company so hard that he is overthrown.

He foins at another in the breast, and kills him.

- 1 fol. 145. to the iii<sup>de</sup>, which was grete & strong, <sup>1</sup>& smote Geffray  
 vpon the helmet *with* al his strengthe / but the helmet  
 was hard & þe swerd glenced asyde & dommaged  
 hym nought / but Geffray toke his swerd with two 4  
 handes and smote hym vpon the coyffe of stele vnto  
 the brayne, & reuersed hym deed to the erth. And  
 whan guyon perceyued this myschief he was wode  
 wroth & full of yre, For he might not come to geffray, 8  
 wherfore he commanded euery man to retourne, that  
 they might haue them self at large to deffende eche  
 other. Thezne euery man tourned back & fledd, &  
 yssued out of that narrow way in to a playn feld, And 12  
 geffray with the grete toth pursiewed them, the swerd  
 in his hand. Now shaH I speke of the knight phili-  
 bert, whiche was approched nygh the said way, and  
 herde the noyse / so he called to hym his felawes. 16  
 And thenne guyon and his men were in þe playn &  
 assaylled geffray on al sydes of hym / but as preu &  
 valyaunt he deffended vygourously his flesshe / and  
 also hys esquier bare hym valyauntly / and was ryght 20  
 strong the batayH. Now most I speke of hym which  
 geffray first ouerthrew to therthe in the path forsaid,  
 For whan he perceyued that guyon was retourned by  
 the force of geffray / and sawe his two felawes lyeng 24  
 deed by hym, he was moche dolaunt, and beheld <sup>2</sup>all  
 about hym & fond his hors, wher on he *with* grete  
 peyne mounted, for he was al to brusyd in hys body, &  
 hasted hym as he coude best toward Syon. And whan 28  
 he came to the fortesse he fond Claude at yate and  
 some of his men *with* hym / the whiche perceyued  
 that he that was commyng toward hym was al bloody  
 and knew hym wel / & of hym demanded who so had 32  
 arayed hym / And he recounted thadventure how they  
 had recountred geffray, and how he adommaged them  
 and had made guyon hys brother to retourne fro the  
 narow lane by force, & that yet lasted theyre bataylle. 36
- He cuts open the head of a third.
- Guion is wroth because he cannot get at Geffray. He commands his men to retreat.
- They flee to a field. Geffray pursues them.
- Guion's men set on Geffray on all sides. He and his squire fight bravely.
- 2 fol. 145 b.
- The knight that Geffray dismounted hastes as he best can to Sion.
- He finds Claud at the gate,
- and tells him of the adventure,
- and that the fighting is still going on.



Thenne whan Claude vnderstode hym he was sorowfuH  
& angry, and yede and armed hym, and made his men  
to be armed.

Claud orders his  
men to arm,

- 4 **M**oche dolaunt was Claude whan he vnderstod̃ of  
the vylonnye & domage that geffroy had don  
to Guyon his brother / and how yet they were fyghtyng  
togidre / & armed of al pieces. his men with hym rode  
8 thitherward / and were in nombre thre seore bassynets.  
But for nought he toke hys waye, For philibert with  
his ten knyghtes were come to the batayH, & faught in  
suche wyse that al guyons meyne were slayne & he  
12 take / and soone sware Geffray that he shuld make  
hym to be hanged by the neck. Thenne came the said  
esquyer, whiche was retourned in to the forsayd land,  
to fette a fayre swerd̃, that he tofore sawe fall fro one  
16 of Guyons men / & said to Geffray in this manyere,  
'My lord, I haue herd̃ grete bruyt of men armed  
commynge hitherward̃.' And whan Geffray vnderstode  
hym he fourthwith made Guyon to be bound̃ at a tree  
20 within the wod̃ lnygh by them, & syn retourned with  
hys men toward the said path or lane for to abyde  
there his auenture. And philibert rode vnto the top  
of the hyH, and perceyued̃ Claude & hys felawship  
24 that entred the lane / thanne he retourned to his  
felawes & sayd to Geffray, 'Sire, the best that ye can  
doo is to kepe wel this pathe, here cōme your ene-  
myes.' And Geffray with the gret teeth ansuerd̃ /  
28 'doubte you not / but it shal be wel kept & deffended.'  
Thenne he called to hym the squyer that was come  
with hym, & said̃: 'renne hastily toward̃ thoost, &  
make my folke to cōme hither.'" And he anone de-  
32 parted toward thoost, and whan he was there arryued  
he said to þem, 'Fayre lordes, now lightly on horsback,  
For geffray fyghteth ayenst his enemyes.' And they  
armed them & soone mounted on their horses, and  
36 hasted them to folowe the squyer that guyded them

He rides to aid  
his brother,

but is too late;

as the men are  
slain and his  
brother is Gef-  
fray's prisoner.

A knight tells  
Geffray that  
more men of  
arms are ap-  
proaching.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 146.

Guion is bound  
to a tree.  
Geffray and his  
company return  
to the path to  
wait the arrival  
of Claud.

Geffray sends a  
messenger to his  
host.

His lords haste

to succour him.

the nerest way there he supposed to fynd Geffray, fighting with his enmyes.

Geffray blocks  
the path,

**T**hystorye sayth that geffray, philibert, & theire knightes were at thentree of the pathe / and 4 thenne came Claude & his men with grete puyssaunce along through the lane, & wel they supposed to haue mounted the montayne. But Geffray was at thentre of the path that vygourously & valyauntly deffended 8 the passage / and wete it wel there was none so hardy but he made hym to recule. For there were two of his knightes that descended fro theire horses, & stode at eyther syde of geffray, & proudly rebuckyd Claudes 12 men with theire speres, & many of them were there slayne. Philibert <sup>1</sup>was thenne descended from his

<sup>1</sup> fol. 146 b.

while the Knight  
Philibert and  
three men ascend  
the mountain,  
and throw stones  
on Claud and his  
men.

hors, and thre othre of his companye, and recouered the montayne aboute the pathe, where as they gadred 16 stones and threw them vpon them that were in the lane, through suche yre & grete strength, that there was none so strong bassynets nor armure but it was perced; and therewith they were astonyed or elles ouerthrawn / 20 and wete it wel þat there were more than xx<sup>ti</sup>. slayn.

Geffray's com-  
pany arrives, and  
is ordered to pre-  
vent Claud re-  
turning to his  
fortress.

Thenne came there the squyer with the batayll that he brought. And whan geffray knew it, he commanded thre houndred men of armes, that they shuld 24 draw at the other ende of the lane to kepe the passage, that Claude nor hys peple should not retourne to theire fortresse. And anone from thens the squyer with his companye departed, & came hastily to fore the medowe, 28

Clerevald, third  
brother of Claud,  
takes Geffray's  
company to be  
friends.

& passed byfore the Fortresse. And whan Clerevald, the iii<sup>de</sup> brother of Claude, sawe them, he demed that it was some socours that came to them / For he trowed not that in the land shuld haue be so many enemyes. 32 The whiche esquier with his companye came with amyable contenance, shewyng no semblaunt but as frendes. And thenne Clerevald, that byleued wel that they were theyre frendes lete fall the bridge, & opened the 36

yate where he stode *with* xx<sup>ti</sup>. men of armes. And  
 whan the squyer & his companye perceyued þat the  
 bridge was down & the gate open, they drew them  
 4 hastily in the way to passe the Fortres. And passyng  
 by the Fortresse, Clerevald demanded what they were /  
 and they ansuerd: <sup>1</sup> 'We be frendes.' and in approuch-  
 ing of the said bridge to the nombre xx<sup>ti</sup> knightes, they  
 8 enquyred after Claude of Syon: 'For fayn we wold  
 speke *with* hym.' And Clereuauld them approuched,  
 sayeng: 'he shal retourne anoone, For he is departed to  
 fyght with Geffray with the grete teeth our enemye,  
 12 that he & Guyon our brother haue enclosed in yonder  
 mountayne that is there byfore you / and wete it wel  
 that Geffray may not escape them, though he were  
 tempred *with* fyne stele, but that he shal be slayne  
 16 or take.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the squyer, 'this be  
 good tydynges.' An thenne he approuched with his  
 xx<sup>ti</sup> knightes nerer & nerer, askyng hym where shal  
 we goo to helpe hym. 'By my feyth,' sayd Clere-  
 20 uauld, 'gramercys it shal not nede at this tyme.'

**T**hystorye sheweth that the squyer approched to  
 Clereuauld so nygh by his fayre wordes, that he  
 & hys company came vpon the bridge / & thenne he  
 24 cryed to hys peple / 'auaunt, lordes, the fortresse is  
 oure.' And whan Clereuauld herd these wordes, he  
 supposed to haue reculed & to haue lyft vp the bridge /  
 but the squyer & his people came so rudly that it  
 28 was not in theire powere to haunce the bridge / but  
 bare it doune by force, and anone alighted & entred in  
 at the gate / and with two speres vndersette the porte-  
 collys / & immediatly descended more than an houn-  
 32 dred of the squyers men on foot, & came & entred into  
 the Fortres. Thenne was clereuauld take, and al hys  
 people that were there *with* hym, & brought vnto a  
 chambre fast bounden, where they were surely kept  
 36 *with* fourty men of armes / <sup>2</sup> And after this don, they

He allows them  
to come near the  
fortress.

Clerevald asks  
who they are;

<sup>1</sup> fol. 147.

"We be friends,"  
they answer.

The squire and  
his company by  
fair words get on  
the bridge. He

then cries, "The  
fortress is ours."

Clerevald tries  
to pull up the  
bridge, but is too  
late.

He and his men  
are taken prison-  
ers.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 147 b.

assembled them, & toke Counsey<sup>H</sup> how they might best send word vnto geffray of this faytte, & how they shuld kepe them *within* the Fortresse to thentent to take Claude yf it happed hym to retourne / And thenne 4  
said the squyer that he hym self shuld goo to gyue .  
Geffray knowlege of this auenture. And thenne anone he departed and came to Geffray, to whom he shewed aH the trouth of the faytte / and whan geffray knew 8  
thauenture he was joyful, & made hym knight, & gaaf hym the gouernaunce of a houndred men of armes / & commanded that he shuld go anoone in to the countrey, to kepe wel that Claude shuld take none o<sup>per</sup> way, but 12  
the way to the Fortresse ; For yf he escaped he might do grete harme tofore he were take, & that bettre it were to close hym in that lane, & there by force to take hym. ‘Sire,’ said the new knight, ‘doubte you not he 16  
shal not escape you, but yf he cane flee, yf that I may come by tymes to the lane.’ Thenne he departed & descended the mountayne *with* hys men of armes. And geffray taryed at the pathe, that mightily faught with 20  
his swerde vpon his enemyes. And wel fourty knyghtes were alighted on foot vpon þe hylle, & threw stones vpon Claude & his peple in suche wyse, that by force he & hys people was constrayned to retourne / And 24  
Geffray & his peple entred in to the lane & chaced þem / but vnnethe he might passe to pursiew men for deed men that were slayn *with* castyng<sup>t</sup> of stones. Now shal I shew you of the new knight that was com- 28  
myng<sup>t</sup> at the o<sup>ther</sup> lanes ende *with* his company / but whan he herd the bruyt of the horses / he thought wel that <sup>1</sup>Claude retourned / and he toke the couert of the mountayne & suffred Claude to take the way toward 32  
the Fortresse.

**T**hystorye telleth that Claude hasted hym fast to come out of the lane for to saue hym self & his peple in the Fortresse of Syon, but that the fole 36

The squire returns to tell Geffray of their deed.

Geffray is glad, and knights the squire, and gives him a hundred men to prevent the escape of Claud.

Claud is obliged to retreat,

Geffray chases him.

The new knight hears the noise of the retreat, and

<sup>1</sup> fol. 148.

suffers Claud to return to the fortress.



- thinketh oftymes commeth to foly. It is veray trouth  
 that he spede hym so fast that he was out of the lane  
 & came to his large / and so he ne taryed neyther for  
 4 one nor for other / but came walapynge toward the  
 Fortresse. And whan he was nygh, he cryed *with* a  
 high voyce / 'open the gates' / & so they dide / and  
 thenne he passed the bridge and entred, & was alyghted  
 8 afore that he perceyued that he had lost the Fortresse /  
 and fourth*with* he was seasyd & bounde by hys enemyes.  
 Thenne was he gretly abasshed ; For he sawe not about  
 hym no man that he knew. 'What dyuel is this?  
 12 where are my men become?' 'By my feyth,' said a  
 knight / 'ryght foorth shal ye knowe, For ye shal lodge  
*with* them' / And so immediatly he was brought to  
 the chambre where Clereuauld, his brother & his people  
 16 were in pryson. Thenne whan he perceyued them bound  
 & kept as they were, he was ryght dolaunt. And whan  
 Clereuauld sawe hym, he said : 'Ha / a, Claude, fayre  
 brother, we are fah by your pryde into grete captiuite /  
 20 and doubte it not we shal neuer escape from hens *with*-  
 out losse of our lyues, For to cruel is Geffray.' And  
 Claude ansuerd hym : 'We muste abyde aH that therof  
 shal fah.' Thenne came Geffray <sup>1</sup>ryght foorth to the  
 24 Fortresse, & had slayn or take aH the residu of Claudes  
 peple / saaf hys brother Guyon which was brought  
*with* hym, & putte prysonner in the said pryson where  
 as Geffray entred / and emong al o*per* said to Claude :  
 28 'How,' said he, 'thou fals traytour, durst thou be so  
 hardy to hurte or *dommage* my faders Countre & his  
 people, thou that owest to be his subget / and by the  
 feyth that I owe to my fader I shal punyssh the, in  
 32 exemple of aH other, For I shal doo the hang*er* byfore  
 Valbruyant, the Castel in syght of thy Cousyn Guern,  
 that is a traytour as thou art, vnto my lord my fader.'  
 And whan Claude herd that gretynge, wete it wel / he  
 36 was not ther*with* playسد. But whan the peple of the

Claud and his  
people reach the  
fortress, and cry,  
"Open the  
gates."

He is seized and  
bound.

He asks about  
his men.  
He is told that  
he will see them,  
as he is to be  
lodged with  
them.

Clerevald sees  
his brother, and  
upbraids him.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 148 b.

Geffray arrives  
and brings his  
prisoner Guion.

Geffray tells  
Claud that he  
intends to hang  
him before Val-  
brulant, the  
castle of his  
cousin Guern,  
who is also a  
traitor.

The people of the land are glad that Claud and his people are taken or slain;

because they robbed them and despoiled all passers by the fortress.

Geffray sets up a pair of gallows and hangs all the people of Claud, but spares his two brothers.

Geffray leaves the castle in charge of a wise knight,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 149.

and departs to Valbruiant.

He erects gallows in front of the castle, hangs Claud and his brothers, and orders them of the castle to yield on pain of hanging.

Guerin departs from his castle to Mountfrain to have counsel.

Countray knew that Syon the Fortresse, & Claude and his brethern were take & theire peple slayne / thenne came playntes of robberyes & other euyl caas vpon Claude & vpon his people, & within that same Fortresse 4 were founde more than a C prysonners of the good peple of the Countray, as marchants & straungers that were robbed passyng by the way / For tofore that tyme none passed by the said Fortresse vnspoyled. And 8 whan geffray herd of this tydynges, he made to be sette vpon the syde of the hille a payre of galowes / & therat dide do be hanged al the peple of Claude / and his two brethern he spared for that tyme / and gaaf the 12 Castel in keping vnto a knight of the Countray that was ryght valyaunt & wyse / & commanded hym <sup>1</sup>vpon his lyf to kepe it wel / and to gouerne lawfully his subgets, & to kepe good justice / And he promysed 16 hym so to doo, For he gouerned the countre wel & rightfully. And after his commandement he departed on the morowe toward Valbruyant / and toke the thre bretheren with hym, the whiche had grete fere of 20 deth / and that was not without cause / as ye shal here hereafter.

**T**hystory sayth that geffray & his people rode tyl they cam tofore Valbruyant / wher as tentes were 24 dressed & sett vp, and euery man lodged in ordre. Thenne made geffray ryght foorth to sette vp galowes tofore the Castel gate, and there dide do hang incontynent Claude & his two bretheren / and sent worde 28 to them of the Castel / yf that they yelded not to hym the Fortres, that he wold hang them yf he had it by force. And whan Gueryn of Valbruyant herd these tydynges, he sayd to his wyf: 'It is so for trouth, 32 madame, that ageynst this strong dyueH I ne may withstand ne kepe this Fortresse, wherfor I wyl departe & goo vnto mountfrayn to Guerard my newew, & to other my frendes for to haue CounseyH how we may haue 36

traytye of pais with Geffray.' And thenne the wyf  
 that was right sage & subtyl said to hym / 'go foorth /  
 by the grace of god, & kepe you wel that ye be nat  
 4 take by the waye, and departe not from Mountfrayn  
 tyl ye haue tydynges fro me, For by thayde of god I  
 hoop that I shal purchasse a good traytye with geffray  
 for you ; For had ye don after my CounseyH, & byleued  
 8 me, ye shuld not <sup>1</sup>haue medled with the werkes of  
 Claude & of his bretheren / not with standing yet haue  
 ye not falsed your feyth toward your liege lord Ray-  
 mondyn of Lusynen.' Thenne Gueryn her said : ' My  
 12 dere sustir & spouse, doo that ye thinke best, For  
 my fyaunce is in you / and I wyl byleue all that ye  
 may counseylle.' And thenne departed he by a pryvy  
 posterne vpon a swyft hors, and passed by the couerts  
 16 of the wodes, so that he was not aspyed. And whan  
 he was a lytel passed he sporyd his hors, and the hors  
 bare hym swyftly, and wete it that he had so grete fere  
 lest he shuld be aspyed, that he was almost out of his  
 20 wyt / & thanked god moche whan he fond<sup>t</sup> thentre of  
 the Forest þat dured wel two leghes / and toke the way  
 toward Mountfrayn, as moche as he coude ryde.

**T**hystory testyfyeth, that so long rode Gueryn that  
 24 he came to mountfrayn, where he found<sup>t</sup> guerard  
 hys newew, & recounted to hym al these werkes ; and  
 how Geffray with the grete toth had take Claude  
 theire Cousyn & his two brethern, & brought tofore  
 28 Valbruyaunt, where he dide al thre to be hanged / and  
 how he was departed thens, doubtyng to be take with-  
 in the Fortresse. 'By my feyth,' said Guerard, 'Fayre  
 vncle, ye haue do wysely, For after that men speke of  
 32 Geffray, he is a valyaunt knight of hye & puyssaunt  
 enterpryse / and he is moche cruel & moche to be  
 doubted. Woo is to me that euer we went to Claude !  
 For wel we knew that he & hys bretheren were of euyl  
 36 gouvernement, & that none passed foreby theire For-

His wife tells  
 him not to leave  
 there till she  
 sends him tid-  
 ings ;

she declares she  
 will make a  
 treaty with Gef-  
 fray.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 149 b.

Guerin tells her  
 to do her best,

and leaves on a  
 swift horse by a  
 privy door.

He rides fast, as  
 he fears to be  
 seen.

He tells Gerrard  
 the news, how  
 Geffray has  
 hanged Claud  
 and his two  
 brethren,

and how he had  
 fled to escape  
 capture.

Gerrard says he  
 has acted wisely,

and is sorry they  
 had had to do  
 with Claud,  
 because Claud  
 and his brethren  
 were of evil con-  
 duct.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 150.

Guerin and Gerard send to their friends to come to Mountfrain to devise means of excusing themselves to Geffray.

The lady of Valbruiant

mounts her two children on horseback

and accompanies them to the gate of the castle,

where she tells the new knight that she will go to Geffray herself,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 150 b.

as her lord has done nothing to displease Geffray or his father.

tresse vnrobbed. Now pray <sup>1</sup>We god, that he preserueth bothe our lyues & honour in this affayre. Fayre vnclé, vpon this caas we muste seke remedy / It is good that we lete haue knowledge to our parents & frendes <sup>4</sup> perof, þat haue be of this folyssh alyaunce.' And gueryn ansuerd: 'that is trouth.' Thenne they sent wordes to theyre frendes that they shuld al cōme to mountfrayn, so that they might haue Counseil<sup>t</sup> togidre <sup>8</sup> vpon this faytte, & to seke the meane to escuse them toward geffray. Now resteth thystory of them / and speketh of the lady of Valbruyant that was moche subtyl & sage / and she euer blamed her lord of that he <sup>12</sup> had consented to Claude & to hys brethern. This lady had a doughter, whiche was of the age of ix yere / & fayre & gracyous; and also a sone that was ten yere of age, whiche was fayre & wel endoctryned. And thenne <sup>16</sup> this lady as she had of nothing<sup>t</sup> be abasshed<sup>2</sup> / mounted upon a palfray rychely arayed, & dide do be mounted her two children vpon two horses, and ordeyned two auncyent gentylmen to conduyte theire horses / and <sup>20</sup> accompanyed with six damoysselles, dide open the gate where she fond<sup>t</sup> the new knight that brought the mandement of geffray, which she receyued benyngly, and he that coude moche of honour made to her the <sup>24</sup> reuerence / and the lady seyde to hym temperatly: 'Sire knight, my lord is not within / and therefore I wyl go myself toward my lord your maister to knowe <sup>3</sup>what is his playsyr, For it semeth me that he is come hither <sup>28</sup> to make werre / but I byleue not that it is for my lord nor for none within this fortresse. For god deffende that my lord or ony of this place had do that thing that shuld dysplayse geffray or my lord his fader / and <sup>32</sup> by aduenture yf some of his synester frendes haue informed geffray otherwyse than raison, I wold humbly beseche & pray hym that he vouche sauf to here my

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Adonc la dame ne fut ne folle ne esbahie.*



said lord & husband in his escuses & deffenses' / and  
 thenne whan the knight herd her speke so sageously /  
 her ansuerde: 'Madame, this requeste is reasonable,  
 4 wherfore I shal conduyte you toward my lord / and I  
 hope that ye shal fynd hym frendly, & that ye shal  
 haue a good traytye with hym / how be it, he is in-  
 fourmed of gueryn your lord ryght malyciously / but I  
 8 byleue that at your requeste he shal graunte a part of  
 your petycion' / And thenne they departed & came  
 toward the lodgys of Geffray.

The new knight  
 undertakes to  
 conduct her to  
 Geffray.

12 **T**hystorye sayth that whan geffray saw the com-  
 myng of the lady he yssued out of his tente &  
 came ayenst her / and she that was wel nourrytured  
 held her two children tofore geffray, to whom she made  
 humble reuerence / and thenne geffray enclyned hym  
 16 to her, & toke her vp right humbly, & said: 'Madame,  
 ye be right welcome' / and 'my lord,' said she, 'I  
 see þat I desyre' / and thenne her two children dyde  
 1 theyre obeysaunce in the moost humble wyse / and  
 20 he gaf to them ayen his salut. Thenne toke the lady  
 the word / and feynynge as though she had knowen  
 nothing of hys euyl wyll / said vnto hym in this wyse:  
 'My lord / my lord! myn husband as for this tyme he  
 24 is not present in this Countre. Wherfore I am come  
 toward you to pray you that it may playse you to take  
 your lodgys in your Fortresse, and take with you as  
 many of your peple as shal you playse; For, my lord,  
 28 thanked be god, there is ynough to plesse you with /  
 and wete it wel that I & my meyne shal receyue you  
 gladly, as we owe to doo the sone of our souerayn  
 lord naturaH.' Whan geffray vnderstode her requeste  
 32 he was gretly abashed how she durst desyre hym /  
 consyderynge how he was infourmed ageynst Gueryn her  
 husband. Neuerthele he sayd, 'By my feyth, fayre  
 lady, I thanke you of your grete curtoysye that ye offre  
 36 me / but this requeste I ought not to agree, For men

Geffray issues  
 from his tent,

inclines to her,  
 and bids her  
 welcome.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 151.

She feigne to  
 know nothing of  
 her lord's ill-  
 doings.

She tells Geffray  
 that her lord is  
 away from home,

and invites Gef-  
 fray to lodge in  
 the fortress.

Her request  
 abashes Geffray,

who says that he  
has been told  
that her lord does  
not deserve such  
recognition,

but that in her  
lord's absence  
she and those in  
the fortress are  
safe.

1 fol. 151 b.

The lady answers  
that neither her-  
self nor her hus-  
band have done  
wrong;

and hopes that  
Geffray will hear  
her husband's  
excuses.

haue youen to me knowlege that your husband hath  
not deseruyd it ayenst my lord, my fader, & me / how  
be it, my fayre lady, I wyl wel that ye knowe that I am  
not come for to make warre ayenst ladyes & damoy- 4  
selles / and be ye of this sure, that neyther to you nor  
to none of your fortres I wyl nought say nor hurt, yf  
your husband be not there' / And she thenne said :  
'gramercy, my <sup>1</sup>lord. But I requyre you, that it playse 8  
you to shew me the cause of your indignacyon that ye  
haue vnto my lord myn husband, For I am in certain  
nother he nor I haue neuer do no thing<sup>i</sup> to our know-  
leche that shuld be your dysplaysure / and I byleue 12  
that yf it might plese you to here my lord & husband  
& his escuse, that ye shal fynd<sup>e</sup> them that thus haue  
informed you, be not matere of trouth / and my lord,  
therupon I make me strong<sup>i</sup> that in conclusyon ye shal 16  
fynde as I say.'

**I**n this partye sheweth thistory, that whan geffray  
herd<sup>e</sup> the lady thus speke he thought a lytel, & syn  
ansuerd<sup>e</sup> & said : 'By my feyth, lady, yf he goodly can 20  
excuse hym that he haue not falsed hys feyth, I shalbe  
glad therof / & I shal receyue hym gladly in his excus-  
acyons with his felawes & all theire complices / and  
from this day seuen nyght I gyue hym saaf gooyng & 24  
commyng, and fourty personnes with hym.' Thenne  
toke the lady her leue & retourned to Valbruyant,  
where she lefte her children / and acompanyed with  
teñ knyghtes and squyers, & with thre damoysselles 28  
departed, & rode so long tyl she came to Mountfrayn,  
where she was receyued joyously of her lord & his  
frendes, to whom she recounted how gueryn her lord  
had safconduyte of geffray for hym, & fourty personnes 32  
with hym / & yf he may excuse hym geffray shal  
here hym gladly, <sup>2</sup>and shal admynystre hym al rayson.  
'By my feyth,' said an auneynt knight, 'thenne shall  
we haue a good traytye with hym / For there nys none 36

Geffray promises  
to listen to them,

and gives him a  
safe conduct for  
a week.

The lady goes to  
Mountfrain

and tells her lord  
of her interview.

2 fol. 152.

An ancient  
knight says that  
they will have a

- that may say that euer we mysdyde in eny thing' ayenst  
 our souerayne lord naturel. Yf Claude, that was our  
 Cousyn, had vs requyred of ayde, yf he neded, & we  
 4 had promysed hym to helpe hym / not for that we ne  
 haue yet mysdon / nother geffray nor none other may  
 not say that euer we had the helmet on heed, nor *pat*  
 we yssued euer out of our places for to comforte or  
 8 ayde hym ayenst geffray by no wyse / goo we thenne  
 surely toward geffray, & lete me doo there *withaH*, For  
 I doubte not but that we shal haue good traytye *with*  
 hym.' The frendes & cousyns of gueryn confermed  
 12 this propos, & made theire appareyl for to goo toward  
 geffray on the iii<sup>de</sup> day folowyng. And thenne the  
 lady departed, & retourned to Valbruyant, where she  
 sent for breed, wyne, capons, chikkons, conyns, & suche  
 16 vytayH, *with* hey & ootys, and presented it to geffray /  
 but he neuer receyued of it / but suffred that who  
 wold toke of it for his money / and the said lady lete  
 geffray haue knowleche how her lord & his frendes  
 20 shuld come toward hys grace. /

- H**ere sayth thystory, that Gueryn of Valbruyant &  
 guerard hys neuw, taryed for theire frendes at  
 mountfrayn / and whan they were come they mounted  
 24 on theire horses & rode tyl they came to valbruyant /  
 and on the morne <sup>1</sup>they sent word to Geffray of theire  
 commyng, and that they were al redy to come toward  
 hys good grace to theire excuse. And geffray ansuerd :  
 28 *pat* he was apparaylled to receyue them. And *pennie*  
 they departed fro the Castel & came tofore the *tente*  
 of geffray, to whom they made theire obeyssaunce ryght  
 honourably. And there thauncyent knight of whiche  
 32 I spak tofore toke the word, & said : " Mighty & puy-  
 saunt lord, we are come hither toward your highnesse  
 for this, that we vnderstand how ye are infourmed  
 ayenst vs, that we were consentyng to the ylnesse &  
 36 dysobedyence of Claude ayeust our souerayne lord

good treaty with  
Geffray,

for they did not  
help Claud  
against Geffray.

The lady returns  
to Valbrulant

and sends vic-  
tuals to Geffray,

and tella him  
how her lord is  
about to come  
before him.

Guerin and Ger-  
rard arrive at  
Valbrulant,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 152 b.  
and send word  
to Geffray,

who announces  
his readiness to  
receiue them.

They present  
themselves and  
make their obedi-  
ence,

The ancient  
knight  
tells that he has  
heard that Gef-  
fray thinks they  
consented to  
Claud's miscon-  
duct.



He relates how  
Claud had asked  
their help,

but did not give  
the name of the  
enemy,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 153.  
and how they  
promised to as-  
sist him.

They helped  
Claud against  
some of his ene-  
mies,  
but after his dis-  
obedience to  
Raymondin they  
had not aided  
him.

Therefore he  
thinks Geffray  
should not be in-  
dignant against  
him,

because they  
cannot think  
what they have  
done displeasing  
to Geffray's  
father,

naturel, your fader. My lord, it is wel trouth that the  
said Claude our Cousyn, tofore hys folysshe enterpryse,  
he assembled vs togidre, & thus said to vs: 'Fayre  
lordes, ye be aH of my lynage & kynrede / & I of 4  
yours / wherfore rayson requyreth that we loue eche  
other.' Thenne sayd we / 'by my feyth, ye say  
trouth / but wherfor say ye soo?' And thenne he  
ansuerd couertly: 'Fayre lordes, I doubte me to haue 8  
shortly a stronge werre & to haue a doo with a  
strong partye; Wherfor I wyl wete yf ye wold helpe  
me' / & we thenne asked of hym / ayenst whom /  
he ansuerd: 'we shuld knowe it al in tyme, & that 12  
he was not parfytte frend, who that relenquysshed  
hys cousyn at hys nede.' Thenne said we to hym,  
'we wyl wel that ye knowe that there nys none so  
grete in this countrey, <sup>1</sup>ne so myghty, yf he wyl 16  
hurt or domage you, but that we shal helpe you to  
kepe & susteyne you in your ryght.' and vpon that  
he departed / and syn had he many rancours ayenst  
some where we ayded hym / but my lord wete it wel 20  
that fro the tyme of hys dysobedience to my lord your  
fader, we ne doubte nor fere neyþer god nor man that  
we euer putte piece of harneys on vs / nor that none of  
vs aH yssued out of his fortres, nother for hym nor for 24  
his faytte / and the contrary shal be nother knowen  
nor fond, For herof we wyl not haue grace / but we  
requyre only right & justice / and yf there be other  
cause that our euyl wyllers might haue contruyed vpon 28  
vs thugh enuye or hate / I say by right that ye ne  
owe to be therfore indigned ayenst vs, þat are very  
subgetts & obedyent to my lord, your fader Raymond-  
yn of Lusynen, For yf some were wylling to vexe or 32  
moleste vs by ony wyse ye oughte to helpe & kepe vs /  
and herof I can no more say, For we can not thinke  
that none of vs dide euer that thing that myght dys-  
playse my lord your fader. Wherfor we al present 36



beseche & pray you that ye be not infourmed but of rayson." /

and beg  
to be informed  
of their fault.

4 **W**han geffray had herd thexcuse of the old knyght  
that spake for aH, he called his CounseyH to  
hym / and syn said to them: 'Fayre lordes, what seme  
yow of this fayte? <sup>1</sup>me semeth that these folke excuse  
them self fuH wel.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they aH in  
8 commyn, 'that is trouth / nor ye can not aske of  
them, but that ye make them to swere vpon the holy  
Euaungylles, that yf the siege had be layed tofore  
syon / they had socoured Claude or not ayenst you /  
12 and yf they swere ye / they are your enemyes / and to  
the contrary, yf they swere that noo / ye owe not to  
bere to them euyl wyH.' To this they aH accorded /  
& therewith concluded their counseyH. And thenne  
16 were gueryn & hys frendes called tofore geffray / and  
after he had recorded to them the sayd conclusyon /  
they said that gladly they shuld swere as they dyde.  
Wherefore they had peas with geffray, and syn went  
20 with hym al about the Countre vysytyng the Fortresses  
& places by the space of two monethes. And after  
Geffray toke leue of the Barons there / and lefte gouvern-  
ours to kepe & rewle the Countrey / and syn departed  
24 & retourned to Lusynen, where he was gretly festyed  
of hys fader & moder, that were glad of his retourne.  
Thenne was there come a knyght of poytou fro  
Cypre, whiche had reported tydynges how the Calyphe  
28 of Bandas, and the grete Carmen were arryued in  
Armenye / and moche they had adommaged the kynge  
Guyon. Also how kynge vryan had tydynges how  
they entended to make werre ayenst hym in Cypre.  
32 Wherefore he made hys assemble of men of armes & of  
shippes, for to recountre & fyght with them in the see.  
<sup>2</sup>For his entencion was not to suffre them to entre in his  
land. Whan thenne Geffray vnderstode these tydynges  
36 he sware by the good lord, that shuld not be without

<sup>1</sup> fol. 153 b.

Geffray tells his council that he thinks they have made a good defence.

The council advises that Guerin and his friends should be made to swear that they would not have helped Claud had his castle been besieged.

Guerin is ready to swear; so he has peace with Geffray.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, and is greatly feasted.

News comes from Cyprus that the Caliph of Bandas is attacking Guion, King of Armenia.

Urian is assembling ships to fight his brother's enemies.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 154.

Geffray resolves  
to aid his breth-  
ren.

hym, and that to long he had kept his fyre / and said  
to Raymondin hys fader, & to Melusyne his moder /  
that they wold make hym chenysaunce of help for to  
goo ayde hys bretheren ayenst thenemyes of god / And 4  
they accorded therto / so that he promysed them to  
retourne within a yere day toward them.

Geffray asks the  
knight from Cy-  
prus to accom-  
pany him.

**R**yght joyous was geffray whan his fader had  
graunted hym his wyll. and thenne he prayed 8  
the knight that was come fro Cipre, that he wold  
retourne with hym, & that he shuld reward hym wel  
therof. 'By my feyth,' sayd the knight / 'men telleth  
me as touching your prowes may none compare / and I 12  
shal go with you for to see yf ye can doo more than  
Vryan & Guyon your bretheren ; For thoo two I knowe  
ryght wel.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said geffray,  
'it is a lytel thing of my faytte concernyng the puy- 16  
saunce of my lordes, my brethern / but I thanke you  
of this lyberaill offre to goo with me / & I shall meryte  
you, therefore, yf it playse god.' Thenne he made hys  
mandement & dyde so mochi, that he assembled xiiii. C. 20  
men of armes, & wel iij. C. arbalestres, and made them  
to drawe toward Rochelle / And raymondyn & melu-  
syne were there, whiche had don arryued many  
vesselles, & wel purueyed of<sup>1</sup> vytaylles necessary. 24  
And <sup>2</sup>thenne Geffray toke leue of his fader & of hys  
moder, & entred into the see with his companye, &  
saylled so pat they lost syght of land, For they made  
good way. Here resteth thystorye of them to speke / 28  
and begynneth to speke of the Calyphe of Bandas & of  
the Sawdan of Barbarye, that was newew to the sawdan  
that was slayn in the batayll vpon the heed of Saynt  
Andrew aboue the black montayne. 32

He assembles  
xiiii. C. men of  
arnes and iij. C.  
archers, and  
marches them to  
Rochelle,  
where Raymond-  
in had provided  
and victualled  
many vesselles.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 154 b.

Geffray sets sail.

The Saracen  
lords resolve

**T**hystorye sheweth vs that the Caliphe of Bandas &  
the Saudan of Barbarye / the kyng Anthenor  
of Anthioche / and the admyral of querdes<sup>3</sup> had made

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* of of.

<sup>3</sup> *Fr. Cordes.*

togidre theire affyaunce, that neuer they shuld retourne  
 tyl they had dystroyed the kyng<sup>e</sup> Vryan of Cipre, and  
 guyon the kyng<sup>e</sup> of Armanye his brother / and had wel  
 4 assembled to the nombre of xvi.<sup>m</sup> sarasyns, & had  
 theire shippes all prest to thentent to arryue first in  
 Armanye / & first of all theire werkes to dystroye  
 the yle of Rodes, & after the royalme of Armanye / &  
 8 so passe in to Cypre to dystroye & putte to deth / &  
 had sworne that they shuld make kyng<sup>e</sup> Vryan to dey  
 on the crosse / & hys wyf & his children they shuld  
 brenne. But as the wyse man saith / 'the fole pro-  
 12 poseth & god dysposeth' / and at that season were  
 many espyes emong<sup>e</sup> them as wel of armenye as of  
 rodes / and there was one of the maister of Rodes spyes  
 that was so <sup>1</sup>Lyke a Sarasyn that no man mysdynded  
 16 hym for other than a Sarasyn, & had the langage as a  
 man of the same Countrey; the whiche knewe the  
 secretes of the sarasyns / and syn departed fro them &  
 came to baruth, where he fond<sup>e</sup> a barke þat wold sayh  
 20 to Turckye to fette marchandyse, and entred in it. And  
 whan they had good wynd they toke vp theire ancrs  
 & saylled so long that they sawe the yle of Rodes,  
 where they came to refressh them there / and soone  
 24 after the sayd espye went out of the shipp and toke  
 hys way toward the Cite of rodes, where he fonde the  
 maister of rodes, that welcommed hym & demanded  
 what tydynges. And the spye recounted to hym al  
 28 that the Sarasyns entended for to doo / the which  
 tydynges the maister of rodes dyde doo knowe by  
 wrytyng to the two bretheren kynges of Armenye & of  
 Cipre / and that they shuld entre in to the see with  
 32 þeire power / and that he shuld mete with them at the  
 porte of Japhe / and thenne whan guyon kyng<sup>e</sup> of  
 armanye vnderstode this he entred in to the see, & had  
 with hym to the nombre of six thousand men of armes,  
 36 & wel iii.<sup>m</sup> balesters, & came sayllyng to Rodes, where

to destroy Urian  
of Cyprus and  
Gulon of Ar-  
menia.

They intend to  
first destroy the  
Isle of Rhodes,  
afterwards the  
kingdom of  
Armenia, and  
then to capture  
Urian of Cyprus,  
and make him  
die on the cross.

1 fol. 155.

A spy of the  
Master of  
Rhodes among  
the Saracens

returns to his  
master and tells  
all that they in-  
tend to do.

Word is sent to  
the Kings of Ar-  
menia and Cy-  
prus, and they are  
asked to set out  
to sea and to  
meet the Master  
of Rhodes at  
Jaffa.

Guion sails to Rhodes, where the prior receives him joyfully.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 155 b.

They set sail to Jaffa.

Urian gathers his barons at Lymasson,

takes leave of Ermyne,

and soon sails out of sight.

Geffray arrives three days after at Lymasson, but the master of the port will not let him enter.

as he fonde the grete maister at the porte / And whan the grete pryour of Rodes sawe him he had grete joye, & forthwith he entred with hym & al his puyssaunce into the see to the nombre of <sup>1</sup> iii.C bretheren men of armes, 4 & vi.C balesters or crosbowmen. Whan they were assembled togidre fayre was the Flote, <sup>2</sup>For by very estymacion they were fonde to the nombre of ten thousand men of armes / & about xviii.C what balesters 8 as Archers. And wete it wel, it was a fayre syght, For the baners & standarts wayued with the wynd / and the gold & azure vpon the helmets & armures resplend-ysshed brigh & clere, that it was grete meruayll / and 12 syn they rowed toward the porte of Japhe, wher the Sarasyns had made theire nauye to dryue. And here resteth thystorye of them to speke, & sheweth of vryan as ye may here herafter. / 16

**T**hystory sayth, that the kyng Vryan made & sent his mandement thugh al his land of Cypre, for to gadre his baronye togidre with theire puyssaunce, & whan they were assembled at the porte of Lymasson he 20 toke leue of the quene Ermyne, his wyf, & entred into the see. And wete it they were in nombre, what men of armes as balesters & archers xiiii.<sup>m</sup>, And perne they departed fro the porte, & saylled by suche force of 24 wynde that quene Ermyne, which was vpon a hye toure, lost soone the syght of them. And wete it wel that geffray with the grete toth, within thre days after arryued vnder Lymasson / but the maister of the porte 28 suffred them not to entre within the porte. how be it he was abasshed to see the armes of Lusynen in theire baners vpon the toppes of theire shippes, & wyst not what to deme or say ; wherfore he went anoone to the 32 Castel & anonced these tydynges to the quene / And she pat was full sage, said to hym / 'go ye to know

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *six mille hermins et bien trois mille arbalestriers. Hermins = Armenians.*



what folke<sup>1</sup> they be, For *without* treson, they are some  
of my lordes lynce / speke thenne *with* them, hauyng  
your men prest & redy vpon the porte to thende, yf  
4 they wold<sup>d</sup> arryue by force, that ye may *withstand*  
them' / And he anone fulfilled the queenes commande-  
ment & came to the barryers of the clos & demanded  
of them what they sought. Thenne ansuerd the knight  
8 whiche tofore that tyme had be in Cypre / 'lete us  
arryue, For it is geffray, kyng<sup>t</sup> vryans brother, that  
commeth to socoure & ayde hym ayenst the Sarasyns.'  
And thenne whan the maister of the porte vnderstode  
12 þe knight he knew hym anone, & thus sayd: 'Sire,  
the kyng<sup>t</sup> is departed from hens thre dayes agoo, &  
hath take hys way and hys puyssaunce with hym  
toward the porte of Japhe, For he wyl not suffre, yf he  
16 may, that paynemes entre in his royaume / but pray, my  
lord, hys brother, that it playse hym to co<sup>m</sup>e & see  
the queene that ryght ioyous shal be of hys comyng.'  
And he al this said to geffray, whiche anoone entred  
20 into a lytel galyote, & *with* hym the said knight and  
other of hys felawship, & rowed to the chayne<sup>2</sup> that  
anoone was open / & so they entred in to the hauen,  
where as they fonde many noble men that honourably  
24 receyued geffray & his felawship, whiche meruaylled  
them gretly of hys grete courage & of hys fyersnes, &  
brought hym toward the queene that abode for hym,  
holdyng her sone Henry in her armes. And as Geffray  
28 approached to her she enclyned herself tofore him / and  
geffray to her made his obeyssaunce & toke her vp &  
kyssed her / & <sup>3</sup>syn said to her, 'Madame, my sustir, god  
yeue you joye of al that your herte desyreth' / And  
32 she welcommed hym frendly & honourably. And  
thenne geffray toke vp his neuew Henry, that kneled  
tofore hym. What shuld I now make long compte.  
Geffray was thenne glad / & the port was open & hys

<sup>1</sup> fol. 156.

The Queen says  
they may be of  
her husband's  
lineage.

The master of  
the port is told  
it is Geffray, the  
king's brother,  
who is in the  
ships.

He tells the  
knight that the  
king sailed for  
Jaffa three days  
before.

Geffray visits the  
queen,

<sup>2</sup> fol. 156 b.

and is welcomed.

His navy enters  
the port and is  
refreshed.

Geffray asks for a  
pilot.

The queen orders  
the portmaster  
to prepare a gal-  
ley with the  
sagest mariner  
that can be  
found.

He has a rampin  
ready, which  
guides Geffray,

who soon sails  
out of sight.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 157.  
Urian comes to  
Jaffa,  
and sees the  
Saracen fleet  
there.

The Saracens  
intend  
to sail against  
Rhodes.

nauye entred, & whan they were wel refresshed geffray said to the quene: 'Madame, I wyl departe, lete me haue a marozner that wel knoweth the costes of this see, so that I may fynd<sup>t</sup> my brother.'

4

**T**o this ansuer<sup>t</sup> the quene, 'My right dere brother / By my feyth, I wold it had cost me a thousand poundes that ye were now *with* my lord, your brother, For wel I knowe he shal haue grete joye of your <sup>8</sup> commynge.' and thenne she called to her the maister of the porte, & sayd / 'go make a galyot to be shipped redy with ten oores, & seke for the sagest marozner & best patron that can be fond<sup>t</sup>, for to conduyte my <sup>12</sup> lord my brother toward my lord.' 'Madame,' ansuer<sup>t</sup> the maister of the port, 'I haue wel a rampyn alrede shipped to rowe, wel armed & vytaylled, & resteth no more than to meve & departe.' Thenne was geffray <sup>16</sup> right glade & toke hys leue of the quene & of his newew, & entred in to his shipp / and the said rampyn or galley gyded hym / & so departed *with* hys flote, & rowed & made good way, so that in short space they <sup>20</sup> of the porte lost the syght of them. And the quene Ermyne prayed deuoutely to god that they myght re-tourne *with* joye. Of hym I shal leue to speke. But Vryan his broþer rowed so long<sup>t</sup> tyl they perceyued the <sup>24</sup> porte <sup>1</sup>of Japhe, & the bygge & grete vesselles that were there assembled / and thenne was there comme the Caliphe / the Saudan of Barbarye, the kyng<sup>t</sup> of Anthioche, & thadmyral of querdes, *with* theirre puy- <sup>28</sup> saunce. And was by them concluded the king<sup>t</sup> anthenor & thadmyra<sup>ll</sup> shuld make vantward, & shuld hold the way toward rodes / and yf that they neded socour they shuld wryt to the Caliphe & to the Sawdan, <sup>32</sup> whiche alwayes be redy to helpe & ayde them / and the kyng<sup>t</sup> antenor of Anthyoche & thadmyral of Cordes departed fro the porte of Japhe with fourty thousand panemes, & toke theirre way toward Rodes by suche <sup>36</sup>

wyse that Vryan knew nothing of their departyng /  
 and had rowed but two dayes journey whan they per-  
 ceuyed kyng guyon & the nauye of rodes, and also the  
 4 Cristens perceyued them / Thenne was there grete  
 alarme of bothe partes, and soone they borden togidre.  
 There was grete occysyon & horryble medlee / and at  
 the first recountryng were six galleyes of the sarasyns  
 8 sounken & perysshed in the see / And the noble crystens  
 endeuoyred them self wel & faught valyauntly, But  
 the force & the quantyte of the Sarasyns was grete /  
 and the Crysten people susteyned grete charge, & had  
 12 be dyscomfyted yf god of hys grace had not conduyted  
 geffray that part as it shaþ be recounted hereafter.

They meet Guyon,  
 and fight.  
 There is much  
 slaughter,

six Saracen gal-  
 leys are sunk;

but because of  
 the multitude of  
 Saracens the  
 Christians would  
 have been de-  
 feated,

**T**hystory saith, that geffray & his peple saylled in  
 the see by force of wynd þat they had at their  
 16 wyth so long, that they <sup>1</sup>approched the place where  
 the batayll was. And first of all the rampyn that con-  
 duyted them approched so nygh that they sawe them  
 fyght / and anone retourned & said to geffray, 'Sire,  
 20 commande al men to be redy, For we haue perceyued  
 the batayll / & as we suppose they are sarasyns &  
 crysten fyghting togidre.' Thenne rowed the galyote &  
 came so nygh the baytayll that they herde crye on hye,  
 24 'Cordes & Anthioche' / and at the other part 'Lusynen  
 & saynt Joþn of Rodes' / and immedyatly retourned the  
 rampyn toward geffray, & said to him, 'Sire, at that one  
 party they ben sarasyns / and at the other part their  
 28 callyng is Lusynen & Saynt Johan of rodes / but cer-  
 tainly it is not the kyng vryan / but I byleue, my  
 lord, that it is the kyng guyon hys brother & the  
 maister of Rodes that thus fyght with the Sarasyns.'  
 32 'Ryght foorth,' sayd geffray, 'goo we to them asprely' /  
 thenne they haunced saylles vp & saylled foorth by  
 such wyse that it semed as it had be the vyreton of a  
 Crosbow, & stemed the shippes of the sarasyns in suche  
 36 manere that they were sparpyled, so that there rested

<sup>1</sup> fol. 157 b.  
 had not Geffray  
 come to their aid.

Geffray is told  
 that it is a fight  
 between Chris-  
 tians and Sara-  
 cens.

He sails swift as  
 an arrow and  
 breaks up the  
 Saracen fleet.



He cries, 'Lusignan,' which makes the Armenians think Urian has come to help.

The Christians take heart.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 158.

The Saracens rally and attack their enemies.

Geffray damages the Saracens;

boards the vessel of Anthenor,

and causes many to enter the Admiral of Cordes' ship.

King Anthenor and the admiral see that they have been dis-

<sup>3</sup> fol. 158 b. comfited, so set sail to Jaffa.

not foure of al the flote, and cryed 'Lysynen' with a high voys. Wherfor the Ermayns & they of Rodes byleued pat it had be the kyng Vryan that were cōme fro cypre. And thenne toke they good herte to them 4 courageously. And the kyng of Anthioche <sup>1</sup>& thadmyraH of Cordes gadred ayen theire peple, and rane vpon the crysten with grete force. But geffray & hys people, that were fresshe & new, ouerrane them in 8 suche manere that they dommaged gretly the sarasyns / and thenne the vessel where geffray was / borded the vessel of the kyng anthenor & were chayned togidre. And geffray entred into the vessel of the kyng & bygan 12 to make grete occysyon of the sarasyns, & his peple entred & faught so valyauntly with suche a strength that there was no sarasyn so hardy that durst shew hym or make deffense / and many of them for theyre 16 relyf supposed to haue entred into thadmyral shipp & they were drowned / the whiche admyral, guyon & his peple assaylled strongly, & drowned foure of the sarasyns shippes.<sup>2</sup> The batayH was fyers & horryble 20 & thocysyon hydouse / and briefly to say, the sarasyns were putte in suche manere so low that they had noþing them to deffende. /

**M**oche was the batayH hard & strong, but aboue al 24 other faught geffray manfully, & so dide the poyteuyns that were come with hym there, & so dyde guyon the maister of Rodes & theire peple / but they were abashed for this that they cryed 'Lusynen' / 28 but thenne it was no saison tenquere. And thenne the kyng anthenor & thadmyral perceyued wel pat the dyscomfiture fyH on them, For they þenne <sup>3</sup>had lost more than the two partes of theire peple, wherfore they 32 made the resydu of theire peple to withdraw them

<sup>2</sup> In Fr. *et toutesfois le roi Anthenor se sauua au vaisseau de l'admiral de Cordes et fut tantost son vaisseau pillié de ce qui y estoit de bon, et puy fut effronné en mer.*



toward the port of Japhe to haue socour / and the said  
 kyng<sup>1</sup> & admyral put them self in a shipp of auantage  
 & made grete say<sup>1</sup> fro the batay<sup>1</sup>, and whan the sara-  
 4 syns perceyued they went after, he that might. But  
 the Ermayns & they of Rodes ouertoke the moost part  
 & putte them to deth & threw þem ouerbord. But  
 whan geffray perceyued the departyng<sup>1</sup> of the kyng<sup>1</sup>  
 8 anthenor & the admyral, he dyde make say<sup>1</sup> & went  
 after *with* al hys nauye, & made so fast way that anoone  
 he lefte the Ermayns & the maister of Rodes at sterne.  
 And whan the rampyn ship of auantage perceyued  
 12 geffray, the patron cryed to hys people *with* a hye  
 voys / ‘after / after / fayre sires, For yf geffray leseth his  
 way & faylleth to mete with hys brother, I shal neuer  
 dare retourne to my lady.’ And thenne the kyng<sup>1</sup>  
 16 Guyon, that knew the rampyn, asked of the patron  
 what was that lord cristen that so had socoured them.  
 ‘By my feyth,’ said the patron, ‘it is geffray *with* the  
 grete toth, your brot<sup>1</sup>er.’ And whan the kyng guyon  
 20 vnderstoð it he cryed *with* a hye voys, ‘make more  
 say<sup>1</sup>, þat we were *with* our brother, For yf he were  
 perysshed I shuld neuer haue hertly joye.’ But þe  
 rampyn went tofore so fast that in short tyme he ouer-  
 24 toke geffray, that was neer the <sup>1</sup>sarasyns that ap-  
 prouchd the porte of Japhe. Here I shall leue to  
 speke of them, & shal shew of Vryan that tofore was  
 come to the port and had fyred the sarasyns shippes  
 28 there / but the paynemes rescued them in their best  
 manere / not that withstanding there were more than  
 ten vesselles brent.

In this partye sheweth thystorye that Geffray *with*  
 32 the grete toth pursiewed so long the king anthenor  
 & thadmyral of Cordes, that they approuched nygh to  
 the port of Japhe, where they entred in / and geffray  
 after them; For by no manere he wolð leue them /  
 36 though men shewed to hym the grete multitude of

Geffray chases  
 them,

and is followed  
 by the rampyn  
 to Jaffa.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 150.

Urian had been  
 there, and had  
 set fire to some  
 of the Saracen  
 fleet.

Geffray enters  
 the port of Jaffa  
 after the king  
 and the admiral.

He fights them ;

they take to land.

They tell the  
caliph and the  
sultan their ad-  
ventures.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 159 b.

The sultan  
repeats an old  
prophecy that  
says that people  
who believe in  
Mahomet cannot  
withstand the  
Lusignans on  
the sea.

Geffray mean-  
while drives the  
Saracens from  
their ships.

They fly to Jaffa.

Geffray orders  
the horses to be  
landed.

paynemes that thezne were entred in to the vesselles to socoure the kyng<sup>1</sup> anthenor. But he anoone bygan the batayll that was hard & mortall, in so moch that the kyng and thadmyra<sup>1</sup> were constrayned to take land, 4 and went to the toune of Japhe, where they fond the calyph of Bandas and the Sawdan of Barbarye that were gretly abasshed that so soone they were retourned, and demanded of the cause wherfore / and they re- 8 counted to them al thaduenture, And how the kyng of armenye & the maister of Rodes were dyscomfyted, had not a knyght araged or wodd that came & socoured them with a few people that cryed ‘Lusynen’ / 12 & there may none withstand hym, whiche is now yonder at the porte where he fyghteth ayenst our people / and al that he recountreth is brought to hys ende. And whan the sawdan vnderstod it he had no wyll to 16 lawghe / but said, ‘By machomet, it is tolde me of old that I, & many other of our sette and lawe, shall susteyne grete parelis vpon the see, by the heyres of Lusynen / but yf we might haue them on land, and 20 that our people were out of þe shippes they shuld be soone all dyscomfyted.’ ‘By all our goddes,’ said the Caliphe, ‘ye say trouthe, / and also yf they were here dystroyed we shuld subdue lyghtly Rodes, cypre, & 24 armanye / Lete vs thenne make our people to come to land, and suffre the Cristen to take peasybly theire landing.’ But in certayn for nought they spake soo, For they yssued out without ony comandement, by 28 the vertue & strength of Geffray that therto constrayned them / and Geffray with his people pursiewed them at land, & chaced them vnto the Cite of Japhe / and all thoo that were ouertake were put to deth / and they 32 that entred in the toun cryed ‘treson, treson!’ Thenne were the gates shette, and euery man went to hys garde / and geffray retourned to his shippes / and commanded that the horses shuld be had out aland. For 36

he said that neuer he shuld departe but he shuld dey  
or he shuld make men to say, that Geffray with the  
grete toth hath be here.

4 **T**hystorye telleth vs that whyle Geffray was about  
to haue out of the shippes hys horses, the  
rampyn perceyued the baners & penons of the kyng<sup>1</sup>  
vryan, that moch strongly scarmyssed the nauye of

Urian is seen by  
the men of the  
rampin.

8 the sarasyns that knew nothing<sup>1</sup> that geffray had take  
land<sup>1</sup>, For they had take the deep of the porte. And  
<sup>1</sup>the kyng and thadmyraff were arryued at the narowest  
syde to be the sooner on land<sup>1</sup>. Thenne departed the

<sup>1</sup> fol. 160.

12 rampyn shipp of anauntage, and rowed toward vryan.  
And thenne they recountred<sup>1</sup> guyon, whiche asked of  
the patron tydynges of geffray. 'Yonder he hath take  
land,' said the patron, '& hath chaced<sup>1</sup> the paynemes

They row to  
him,

16 vnto þe Cite / and yonder is the kyng vryan your  
broþer, that scarmysssheth theire nauye, to whom I goo  
for to anounce hym your auenture, and the commyng  
of geffray, his brother' / And thenne the rampyn

20 rowed fast, and came to vryan to whom, after his  
obeyssaunce don, he recounted al the faytte. Wherof  
Vryan thanked god deuoutely / & cryed to hys peple,  
'aunant, lordes, thinke to doo wel, For our enemyes

and tell of  
Geffray's doings.

24 may not escape vs, but that they be other slayn or  
take.' Thenne the crysten borded theire enemyes, the  
which were gretly abasshed of this, that they had  
knowleche that the kyng<sup>1</sup> anthenor & thadmyraff were

Urian drives the  
Saracens to land.

28 retourned to Japhe. wherfor they toke land who that  
might, & fledd toward the toun. And thenne whan  
the Calyphe and the saudan sawe theire peple aland<sup>1</sup>,  
they dyde send ambaxades toward the prynces Cristen

They fly to the  
town.

32 for to haue trews the space of thre dayes, & that they  
shuld suffre theire landing<sup>1</sup>, & on the foureth day they  
shuld gyue them journey of batayff. Kinge Vryan  
accorded therto, and sent word<sup>1</sup> therof to his brethern

The caliph asks a  
truce for three  
days.

36 guyon and geffray / and thus they landed peasybly, and

Urian agrees to  
it.

The brethren  
land their hosts,  
1 fol. 160 b.

assembled theire peple togidre. Therne<sup>1</sup> was the Joye grete among<sup>1</sup> the thre bretheren, and theire oost was nombred xxii.<sup>MI</sup> what men of armes / balesters & archers.

greet each other,  
and refresh them-  
selves.

**T**hystorye sayth that the thre bretheren and theire people made moche eche of other, & refreshed them during<sup>1</sup> the trews. But panne the Sawdan of Damaske that had knowleche of the crystens landing<sup>8</sup> sent word<sup>1</sup> to the Calyphe & to the sawdan of Barbarye, that they shuld not fyght *with* the crysten tyl he were come *with* them, & that they shuld take othre thre days of trews / & so they dide; wherto the<sup>12</sup> noble prynces crysten accorded. And duryng that terme the Caliphe &<sup>2</sup> the sawdan of Barbarye dyde *with*draw theyre people toward Damaske to thentent that they might have the Cristen more *within* the land<sup>1</sup>,<sup>16</sup> so that none might flee to theyre nauye; but he were ouertake & slayne. For they wend<sup>1</sup> to haue aH theirre wyH vpon the Crysten. For they were after the sau- dan of Damaske was assembled *with* them to the<sup>20</sup> nombre of VII score thousand<sup>1</sup> fyghtyng men / and pe crysten were but xxii.<sup>MI</sup> good men / the which, whan they knew of the departyng<sup>1</sup> of the sarasyns fro Japhe, they were fuH dolaunt; For they supposed they had<sup>24</sup> fledd / but for nought they wend soo / for at ende of six dayes they came & approuched nygh them, & on the morne gaf them batayH. Thenne came a trucheman mounted vpon a dromadary, whiche alighted tofore the<sup>28</sup> tentes of the thre bretheren, and humbly salued them / and they rendred hym<sup>3</sup> gretynge / and he beheld them long or he spake. For he wondred moche of theirre noble maynten & fyers contenaunce / and in especial<sup>32</sup> he meruaylled moche of Geffray that was the hiest of personne, & saw the tooth that passed ouer the lyppe along hys cheke; wherof he was so abasshed that almost he coude not speke / but at last he said to<sup>36</sup>

The truce is  
lengthened.

The Saracens  
march inland to  
prevent the  
Christians escap-  
ing after the  
battle.

The hosts are  
140,000 Saracens  
against 22,000  
Christians.

The Christians  
think the Sara-  
cens have fled.

An interpreter  
comes to the  
brethren.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 161.

He wonders at  
their fierceness;  
especially at Gef-  
fray's tooth.



- kyng Vryan in this wyse. 'Noble kyng of Cypre /  
 my right redoubted lordes the Sawdants of Barbarye &  
 of Damaske / the Calyphe of Bandas / the kynges of  
 4 Anthioche & of Danette & thadmyrah of Cordes send  
 word by me to you that they be prest<sup>1</sup> redy to lyuere  
 you batayh, & they tary after you in a medowe vnder  
 Damaske where ye, with al your puyssaunce may  
 8 come / saf and peasybly there to make and take  
 there your lodgys tofore them wheresomeuer it playse  
 you / and by auenture whan ye haue sene theire puyss-  
 saunce ye shal fynd some good & amyable traytye  
 12 with my said lordes. For certaynly it is not to your  
 power to withstande theire strength.' And whan  
 geffray herd there wordes, he sayd to hym / 'goo thou  
 to thy kynges & sawdants, & to thy Caliphe / and say  
 16 them that yf there were none only but I & my people,  
 yet wold I fyght / & say them pat of theire trews we  
 haue nought to doo / and whan thou shalt come to  
 them say that geffray with the grete toth deffiyeth them /  
 20 and anoone after that thou art departed from hens I  
 shal sawte the Cite of Japhe, & shal fyre it / and al the  
 sarasyns that I shal fynd, I shal putte them to deth /  
 and say to them, as thou passe by<sup>2</sup> that they puruey  
 24 them wel, For I ryght foorth shal departe to asayh  
 them.' And whan the trucheman or messenger herd this  
 ansuere, he was al abashed / and without eny more  
 proces he lept vpon his dromadary, For he had so grete  
 28 feer of the fyersnes of geffray that alwayes he loked  
 behynd hym, for fere that he had folowed hym / &  
 sayd in hym self: 'By mahon, yf al the other were  
 suche as that with the grete toth, our lordes, nor theire  
 32 puyssaunce were not able to withstand them.' And  
 thenne he came to Japhe, & said to them that geffray  
 with the grete toth wold come anon tassayh theire  
 Cyte, and that he had sworne that he shuld putte in

He delivers his  
message,

that the Saracen  
lords are ready  
for battle.

He suggests a  
treaty.

Geffray bids him  
return to the  
Caliph

with his defiance,

and the news  
that Geffray is  
about to assail  
Jaffa and to slay  
all the Saracens  
he finds there.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 161 b.

The interpreter  
leaps upon his  
dromedary and  
full of fear rides  
away, thinking  
that his lords  
cannot withstand  
many Geffrays.

He tells the peo-  
ple of Jaffa that  
Geffray is about  
to assail them.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *prets*.

Many fly to  
Damascus.

Geffray ap-  
proaches Jaffa.

The interpreter  
returns

<sup>1</sup> fol. 162.  
to the Saracen  
knights,

and relates the  
result of his em-  
bassy.

subgection of hys swerd<sup>d</sup> al them that he fond<sup>d</sup>. Thenne  
were they a<sup>ll</sup> abasshed / and wete it wel that the more  
parte of the peple there fled for fere toward Damaske,  
and toke *with* them theire goodes. And anoon geffray 4  
dide blow vp hys trompettes, & armed hys peple, & went  
incontynent to sawte the toun, and wold<sup>d</sup> neuer cesse  
therof, For ony thing that his breþern said / and sware  
by god that he shuld shewe them suche tokens that men 8  
shuld knowe that he had ben in surye. But here seaceth  
thistorye of hym, & speketh of the forsaid messenger  
þat rode so long that he came tofore the lodgys of the  
sarasyns at Damaske.

12

**I**n this party, sayth thystory, that the messenger rode  
so fast vpon his dromadary that he cam / vnto  
thoost tofore Damaske / & fond<sup>d</sup> in the tente of the  
Calyphe the two sawdans, <sup>1</sup> the kyng<sup>i</sup> anthenor / thad- 16  
myral of Cordes, the kyng<sup>i</sup> golofryn of Danette, &  
many other that asked tydynges of the Cristens. And  
the messenger them said / ‘I haue don your commande-  
ment & message / but whan I shewed vnto them, 20  
yf that they had seen your puyssaunce it wold haue  
be a meane of traytye with you / and thenne one of  
them that had oo grete toth, wold not suffre the kyng  
of Cypre to haue the wordes, but he hymself said þus, 24  
“Goo thou to thy kynges and sawdants, & say them we  
haue not to doo *with* theire trews, / & that yf there wer  
but he & his peple only, yet wold he fyght with you” /  
and morouer said to me / that assoone as I shuld come 28  
to you that I shuld take you ayen þe patents of your  
trews, & that ye shuld beware of hym / and that in  
despyte of you a<sup>ll</sup> he wold<sup>d</sup> assawte Japhe, & putte the  
fyre thugh al the toun & destroye them for euer / and 32  
that thus I shuld say to them whan I passed by the Cite /  
and so haue I doo / and wete it wel that the more<sup>2</sup>  
part of the Cytezeyns be come after me, & immedy-

<sup>2</sup> MS. has *more* twice.

atly after my departyng<sup>r</sup> I herd<sup>t</sup> hys trompettes blowe  
 thassawte of Japhe / & ye coude neuer thinko thorryble  
 & fyers contenaunces of the prynces crysten with theire  
 4 puyssaunce / And wete it wel after the semblaunce that  
 they shew, ye be not of power tabyde them, & in  
 especial he with the grete toth hath none other fere  
 but that ye shal flee or they come to you.' And whan  
 8 the saudan of Damaske vnderstod<sup>t</sup> it, he bygan to lawgh,  
 & said<sup>t</sup>, 'By machomid<sup>t</sup>, in asmoche as I haue perceyued  
 now your hardynes, ye shal be the first in batay<sup>l</sup> ayenst  
 hym with the grete toth.' Wherto ansuerd<sup>t</sup> the mes-  
 12 sager / 'vnhappy be that heure or day that I approche  
 hym / but yf there be a grete ryuere or the toures or  
 walles of Damaske or some other Fortres betwix hym  
 & me / and yf I doo other, lete my lord mahomid<sup>t</sup>  
 16 drowne me,' / & therwith bygane euery personne to  
 lawhe. But there were suche that lawhed<sup>t</sup>, that afir-  
 ward, yf they might haue had<sup>t</sup> leyser, they wold<sup>t</sup> haue  
 wept. Now sha<sup>l</sup> I shew how geffray assawted Japhe,  
 20 and toke it by force, and putte to deth all the sarasyns  
 there, and toke their hauoir and goodes out of the Cyte /  
 & bare it vnto the vesselles, and after sette fyre on the  
 Cite / and this don, retourned the crysten to theire  
 24 lodgys, where geffray requyred his bretheren that they  
 shuld take hym, the maister of Rodes, & hys people, to  
 make the vantgarde / & they were agreed<sup>t</sup> / and that  
 same nyght they rested them tyl on the morowe.  
 28 **T**he next day, as the hystory wytnesseth, after the  
 masse herd<sup>t</sup>, desloged the vanward<sup>t</sup>, and after the  
 grete batayll, & the sommage & syn the ryergarde /  
 and it was a noble syght to see thoost & the fayre  
 32 ordynaunce to departe. Therne came a spye to  
 geffray, & hym said<sup>t</sup>: 'Sire, about half a leghe hens  
 ben a thousand sarasyns, whiche drawe them toward  
 baruth to kepe the hauen of the toun.' to whom  
 36 geffray asked / 'canst conduyte me thither?' / 'ye, by

He tells the Sa-  
 racens that he  
 thinks they are  
 unable to with-  
 stand the Chris-  
 tians.

The Sultan of  
 Damascus jeers  
 and says he will  
 make the inter-  
 preter the first  
 to fight Geffray.  
 1 fol. 162 b.

The interpreter  
 declares he will  
 not fight Geffray.

Geffray assaults  
 Jaffa, slays the  
 inhabitants, and  
 takes their goods  
 to his vessels.

The battle is  
 arranged.

The host marches  
 in good order.

A spy tells Gef-  
 fray of the march  
 of a thousand  
 Saracens to Bey-  
 routh.

my feyth, sire,' sayd the spye. Thenne said geffray to the maister of rodes, that he shuld conduyte the vanwarde, puttyng fyre vpon the way where he went, to thentent he shuld not fayH to fynd<sup>d</sup> hym by the trasse 4  
 of the fumyer / and the maister of <sup>1</sup>Rodes said / 'it shal be don.' And thanne departed geffray with the spye, and went before, where he perceyued the sarasyns commyng fro a mountayn ; & he shewed to geffray the 8 sarasyns, which was joyful therof, & hasted hys people. and whan he had ouertake them / he sware : 'by god / ye gloutons ! ye may not me escape' / & so rane vpon them, & ouerthrew the first that he recounted to the 12 erth, & syn drew hys swerd<sup>d</sup>, & dyde meruayllous fayttes of armes, & his people in lyke wyse. What nede is to speke more of the sarasyns, they were dyscomfyte, & fled toward Baruth, & the Crysten in the 16 chaas. And whan the sarasyns of baruth sawe the fleers, they anoone knew them, & lete fall the bridge, & opened the gates & barryers / thenne the fleers entred within the toun / but alwayes geffray folowed<sup>d</sup> so 20 . hastily, that he entred with them within the town with wel fyue C men of armes. And whan Geffray was entred he commanded to kepe [the] gate<sup>2</sup> tyl the resydu of hys people were come / And thenne bygan 24 the batayH to be fyers & strong<sup>d</sup> / but neuertheles the Sarasyns might not endure, but fled at another yate out of the toun. And he that penne had a good hors was wel bestad<sup>d</sup>, For they sporyd fast, som toward the Cite 28 of tryple, & some toward Damaske. And geffray & his peple slew al the sarasyns that they fond<sup>d</sup> in the toun, and threw them in the see / and he that sawe the toun strong & the Castel nygh the see, fayre porte 32 garnysshed with toures for the sauegarde of the nauye / sayd / 'that place shuld be kepe for hym self' / and there geffray lefte two houndred men of armes & a

<sup>1</sup> fol. 163.

Geffray follows

and overthrows them.

They fly to Beyrourth, chased by the Christians.

The Saracens cross the bridge, followed by five hundred of Geffray's men.

The Saracens are driven out of the other gate, and fly to Tripoli and Damascus.

Geffray slays all the Saracens he finds,

and says that he will keep the place.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. à garder. MS. has *repegate* = *kepe* [the] gate.



C balesters of his peple / and he hymself <sup>1</sup>soiourned there all that same nyght. And on the morne he toke leue of his men that he lefte there, & rode after thoost  
 4 by the trace of the fumyer & smoke / but the maister of Rodes was aferd lest he shuld haue grete empeschement /. Here seaceth the hystorye of hym / and sheweth of the fleers out of Japhe toward Damaske, whiche  
 8 came to thoost at the tente of the Sawdan, where as the lordes sarasyns were / and pyteously recounted to them the dystuction of Japhe / how the Cristen had putte to deth bothe yong & old, & sette fyre on eche part  
 12 of the toun. Whan the saudants & kynges sarasyns vnderstod it, they were full dolaunt. 'By al our goddes,' said the saudan of Damaske, 'Moche hard ben the crysten, & they doubte nought as it semeth /  
 16 but full wel they knowe that they are not of power to withstand our grete puyssaunce; wherefore they make semblaunt, that nought they fere vs, & make suche sawtes while that we are ferre fro them / but yf we  
 20 marched foorth / no doubte they wold recule & withdrawe them in to theire shippes.' 'By mahon,' said the sawdan of Barbarye / 'yf they were here alle rosted or soden, & yf it were custome to ete suche flesshe, they  
 24 were not to the regarde of our peple suffysaunt for a brekfast / by my lawe, yf there were but I & my people only, yet shuld none repasse of them homward.' But whan the trucheman or messenger herd hym so speke  
 28 he coude neuer hold hys tonge, but that he sayd / 'myghty sawdan, yf now ye sawe the kyng Vryan / the kyng guyon hys brother, & he with the grete toth, theire horryble & fyers contenaunce, shuld cause <sup>2</sup>you  
 32 to be in peas & cesse your grete menaces. And wete it wel, or the werke be ful doo ye shal not haue them fo[r] so good chep as ye say / but oft he that menaceth is somtyme in grete fer & drede hym self, & aftirward  
 36 ouerthrawn' / And thenne whan the saudan vnder-

<sup>1</sup> fol. 163 b.

He leaves three hundred men to guard it,

and by the guidance of the smoke rides to the Christian host.

The fugitives from Jaffa recount their mishap to the sultan.

The Sultan of Damascus says the Christians would fall back if he marched against them.

The Sultan of Barbary says there are not enough Christians to make the Saracen host a breakfast;

but the interpreter says if the sultan saw the brethren he

<sup>2</sup> fol. 164.

would cease his threats and make peace

stode the messagers wordes, he said to hym: 'By Mahomid, fayre sire, I see wel by the grete hardynes that is in you, ye wold fayne be ordeyned at the first recountre of þe batayll ayenst Geffray *with* the grete 4 toeth.' & he ansuerd: 'By my lawe, sire, yf he be not recounted of none other but of me / he may wel cōme surely; For I shal tourne myn heelys toward hym / ye / one leghe or two ferre fro his persone.' 8 Thenne the lawhing was there grete / but soone after they herd other tydynges, wherof they had no wyll to lawhe, For the fleers fro baruth forsayd came to thoost, and to them recounted the dommage & pyte of 12 the toun of Baruth, and how geffray with the grete toth had chaced þem by force, & al the resydu of them he had slayn / & 'by mahon,' said they, 'wete it wel he is not of purpos to flee, For he hath lefte garnyson 16 at Baruth, & wel vytaylled it, & commeth hyperward in al haste to hym possible / & men see nothing through al the Countre where he passeth but fyre & flāme, & the wayes be all couered *with* sarasyns that he & hys 20 people haue slayn.' Thenne whan the saudan of Damaske vnderstode it he was moch dolaunt & angry. 'By mahomid,' said he, 'I byleue fermely that he with the grete toth hath a dyuel in his body.' Thenne said 24 the saudan of Barbarye, 'I am in doubte of that is told me.' 'What is that?' 1 said the saudan of Damaske / 'it is said that the heys of Lusynen shal dystroye me, and that our lawe shal by their strengthe be hurt & dom- 28 maged.' Thenne was there none so hardy a Sarasyn but that he shoke for fere. And now cesseth thystorye of them, & retourneth to geffray.

**T**hystorye sheweth in this partye, that so long rode 32 geffray *with* hys felawship, that he ouertoke the vanwarde that the maister of Rodes conduyted, whiche was glade of his retourne, & asked how he had ex- ployted. And geffray recounted to hym how he & his 36

The fugitives  
from Beyrouth

relate how they  
have been chased  
by Geffray,

and that he is  
approaching.

The Sultan of  
Damascus be-  
lieves Geffray to  
have a devil in  
his body.

1 fol. 164 b.

He refers to a  
saying about the  
heirs of Lusignan  
destroying him.

Geffray over-  
takes the Master  
of Rhodes,

peple, *with* thayde of god, he had wonne the toun, castel, & hauen of baruth, and that by force they had chased a grete part of them that were *within*, and the  
 4 resydu they had putte to deth / & how he had lefte certayn nombre of his peple to kepe it. 'By god,' sayd the maister of Rodes, 'ye haue wel don, & nobly & valyauntly exployted' / and soone these tydynges  
 8 were knowen thugh thoost / & Vryan & Guyon were joyfuH therof. 'By my feyth,' said Vryan to Guyon: 'Oure brother Geffray is of grete enterpryse & ryght valyaunt in armes, and yf god of his grace yeue hym  
 12 long lyf, he shal do yet many grete actes worthy to be had in mynde.' 'By my feyth,' said guyon, 'ye say trouth.' Long tyme went the two bretheren thus spek-  
 yng of the prowes of geffray / And so long marched peir  
 16 oost, that on an euen they lodged them by a ryuere fyue myle fro Damaske / & there came theire espyes, that declared to them all the manyere & contenaunce of the sarasyns. And thenne they toke Counseyl to  
 20 wete what best was to doo, & they <sup>1</sup>concluded that on the morne theire oost shuld lodge a leghe nygh to the Sarasyns as they dide. And thus on the morne they departed, & was commanded that none shuld  
 24 sette fyre on his lodgys, nor in none other place; to thende that the Sarasyns shuld not soone perceyue theire commyng. And briefly to say, so long they went tyl they came to the place where they lodged  
 28 them togidre, & made þat nyght good watche toward theire enemyes. & after they souped & lay al nyght in theire harneys. And anoone aftir middenyght geffray, accompanied *with* a thousand fyghting men, toke a  
 32 guyde that wel knew the Countre, & went toward thoost of the Sarasyns al the couert. & nygh therby was a forest that dured a myle, and there he embusshed & sent word to thoost that they shuld be redy as to  
 36 receyue theire enemyes.

and relates how he captured Beyruth.

The news spreads, and Urian and Guion are Joyful.

The brothers speak of the prowess of Geffray.

The host arrives close to Damascus.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 165.

Next day they march still nearer.

At midnight Geffray ambushes a thousand men near the Saracen host.

He takes two hundred more men, and tells those of the ambush not to fight until he and his company fall back; and that then they should rush upon their pursuers,

Geffray marches to the Saracen host.

1 fol. 165 b.

It is asleep.

When he sees the great multitude he says that they would have to be dreaded if they were Christian, but as they are, they are only dogs.

Geffray sees a rich tent;

he enters and smites those inside.

They awake;

Thystorye testyfyeth that geffray at the day spryng, mounted on horsbake, with ij. C fyghtyng men, & commanded them of thembusshe pat for nothing that they sawe they shuld not meue them tyl that they sawe 4 hym & hys company recule, and thenne vpon them of the chaas they shuld renne. Thenne departed geffray, & went vpon a lytel montayne, and sawe the sarasyns oost aH styl, & herd nothing, as nobody had be 8 there. Thenne was he dolaunt, that sooner he had not knowen theire contenaunce, For yf hys bretheren had be there with theire peple, they shuld haue had good chep of sarasyns / but not withstanding, he sware that 12 syth he was so nygh, that he shuld make them to knowe his commyng. Thenne said geffray to hys felawes: 'ryde we fast, & see that ye be not aslepe as they are / & make no bruyt tyl I shal command you.' 16 And they said that nomore shuld they doo. Thenne they rode al the couert nygh togidre, & and entred into thoost, & wel perceyued that they were aslepe on euery syde / geffray behel & sawe the grete multi- 20 tude of people / and syn he said in this wyse: 'By my feyth, yf þey were crysten, they were to be ferd & dredd / but yet they be not so good as dogges.' and with his felawship went vnto the myddes of thoost, or they 24 made eny stryf. And there geffray perceyued a ryche tente, and supposyng that it had be other the Caliphes tente or one of the saudants / said vnto hys peuple / 'auaunt, lordes & good men, it is now tyme to chere & 28 awake these houndes, for to long they haue slept.' Thenne Geffray, & ten knyghtes with hym, entred in to the sayd tente, & vpon them that were in smote with theire swerdes, makyng heedes, armes, & legges to leue 32 the bodies. There was the noyse, & the cry grete & hydous to here / & wete it that it was þe tente of the kyng Gallafryn of Danette; which anoone rose vp fro hys bed, & wel he supposed to haue fled out at the 36



backsyde of hys tente, but geffray perceyued, & gaf  
 hym suche a stroke with his swerð that was pesaunt, &  
 cutting sharp as a raser, that he cleft hys heeð vnto  
 4 the brayne / & the sarasyn kyng fell down deed / and  
 none escaped of them that were in the tente; but they  
 were all slayne. And thenne cryeng 'Lusynen' they  
 retourned through thoost, puttyng to deth al the sarasyns  
 8 that they recountred. Thenne was thoost wel awaked  
 & made grete alarme / And anoone came these tyd-  
 ynges to the tente of the sawdan of Damaske, that  
 said: 'What noyse is that I here yonder <sup>1</sup>without?'  
 12 Thenne a sarasyn that came fro that part, which had  
 a broken heeð, in such manere þat hys one eere lay  
 vpon hys sholder / sayd to hym: 'Sire, that are x  
 dyuelles, and theire meyne that haue entred into your  
 16 oost, which slee & ouerthraw al them that they re-  
 countre in theire way / and they haue slayn the kyng  
 of Danette your cousyn, and theire cry is "Lusynen!"'  
 Whan the saudan vnderstoð it he made hys trompettes  
 20 to blow vp, that euery man shuld be armed. And  
 thenne the saudan & x. M<sup>l</sup> sarasyns with hym went  
 after. And geffray went with hys peple through thoost  
 making grete occyson of sarasyns, For they were  
 24 vnarmed, & might not endure nor withstand. And  
 wete it that or euer they departed fro thoost, they  
 slough & hurt more than iii M<sup>l</sup> sarasyns / and whan  
 they were out of the lodgys, they went al softe &  
 28 fayre / And the sawdan of Damaske hasted hym after.

Geffray cuts  
 Gallafrin's  
 head open.

The Christians  
 crying 'Lusig-  
 nan,' return  
 through the host  
 and slay many  
 Saracens,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 166.

The Sultan of  
 Damascus hears  
 the tidings,

and with x. M<sup>l</sup>  
 Saracens

hastes after  
 Geffray.

**M**oche dolaunt & angry was the saudan of Damaske,  
 whan he perceyued the grete occyson that the  
 crysten had don vpon hys peple / & sware by hys  
 32 goddes Appolyn and mahon, that forthwith he shuld  
 be auenged on them, & that not a crysten shuld be  
 take to mercy, but shuld al be slayn. thenne he  
 folowed geffray with x thousand Sarasyns. And  
 36 thenne geffray that perceyued, & sent word therof to

hys bretheren by his peple feynnyng<sup>1</sup> to flee / and he entred<sup>2</sup> *within* the busshe where his peple was, for to putte them in aray / And the saudan folowed alway, & passed<sup>3</sup> byfore thembuss<sup>h</sup>. Wete it wel that the 4 maister of Rodes that conduyted the vanward<sup>4</sup> was thenne in fayre <sup>1</sup>batay<sup>h</sup>. And whan he sawe the saudan that folowed the crysten / he ranne ayenst the sarasyns, the spere in the rest, and there they medled<sup>5</sup> 8 togidre & faught strongly / and *within* a lytel space of tyme the Sarasyns were dyscomfyte. For at the first recountre *with* the speerys, eche cristen ouerthrew a sarasyn to the erth<sup>6</sup>. And whan the sawdan sawe 12 that he might no lenger *withstand* he reculed, & assembled his peple in hys best wyse, abydyng the sarasyns that came after. But geffray & hys companye yssued out of thembusshe and ranne vpon them 16 *pat* went *without* ordonauce after the saudan. And *within* a whyle there were slayn of the sarasyns by the way more than foure thousand<sup>7</sup>. And thenne many of them fledd toward theire oost, and fond<sup>8</sup> the caliphe of 20 bandas, the saudan of barbarye, the king Anthenor, & thadmyral of Cordes, whiche asked them fro whens þey came / And they ansuerd<sup>9</sup>: ‘we come fro the batay<sup>h</sup> where the sawdan of Damaske hath be dys- 24 comfyted.’ And whan they vnderstod<sup>10</sup> it they were dyscomforted & sorowful, & wyst not what they shuld say or do. Now I wyl retourne to speke of the batay<sup>h</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 166 b.

He is driven back by the vanguard of the Christians.

Then his host is fal en upon by the ambush,

four thousand Saracens are slain.

Some of them escape to their host

and tell the Saracen leaders of the mishap.

The Sultan of Damascus fights manfully.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 167.

**T**he batay<sup>h</sup> was horrible & cruel, & the sawdan of 28 Damaske faught manfully *pat* day, after that he had assembled hys peple. Thenne came geffray, that ranne vpon them at backsyde / and the maister of rodes at the other syde, In so moche that there was 32 made grete occysyon of sarasyns. What shuld I make long compte / the feled them assaylled on bothe sydes, wherby <sup>2</sup>they were dyscomfyted, & might no lenger defende. And whan the saudan perceyued the dys- 36

- comfyture, he went out of the batayll & tourned the  
 targe behynd, and sporyd hys hors, & fled fast toward  
 thoost of the sarasyns / and geffray was at that syde,  
 4 that wel perceyued hym, & demed wel by hys ryche  
 armures that it was he, or some grete lord of the  
 sarasyns. Thenne he broched hys hors with the sporys  
 after the saudan, and cryed to hym, 'retourne, or thou  
 8 shalt dey! For I shuld haue grete vergoyne yf I smote  
 the behynd / but alwayes, yf thou not retourne, nedes  
 I most do soo.' And whan the sawdan vnderstoð  
 hym, he sporyd hys hors, & hasted hym more than he  
 12 dide tofore / and geffray, that ryght dolaunt was that  
 he might not ouertake hym, cryed to hym ayen,  
 sayeng: 'Fy on the! recreaunt coward; that art so  
 wel horsed, & so nobly & surely armed, and yet darest  
 16 not abyde a man alone / retourne, or I shal slee the  
 fleeyng / how be it, that shal be ayenst my wyll.'  
 And thenne the saudan, vergoynous of geffrays wordes,  
 that for fere of a man alone he fledd / returned at  
 20 the corner of þe wode, nygh by thoost of the sarasyns,  
 in that same place where as geffray had that day  
 embusshed hys people / and putte hys shild tofore hys  
 brest, and the spere in the rest, & thus he cryed to  
 24 geffray: 'What art thou, þat so hastily folowest me /  
 by mahon! that shal be to thy grete damage.' /  
 'and for thy prouffyt I am not come thus ferre,' said  
 geffray / 'but syth that myn name thou axest, thou  
 28 shalt <sup>1</sup>it knowe. I am Geffray with the grete teeth,  
 broþer to the kinges Vryan & guyon / and what art  
 thou?' 'By mahon,' said the saudan, 'that shalt thou  
 knowe / I am the saudan of Damaske. And knowe  
 32 thou, that I were not so joyous who that had gyuen me  
 a C thousand besans of gold, as I am to haue fond the  
 so at myn ease, For thou mayst me not escape / I deffy  
 the, by machomet my god.' 'By my feyth,' said  
 36 Geffray, 'nother thou nor thy god I preyse not a

When discom-  
 fited  
 he flies to the  
 Saracen host.

Geffray recog-  
 nizes him, and  
 cries to him,

'Return, or thou  
 shalt die!'

He hastes away  
 the faster;

but Geffray again  
 calls on him.

At last the sultan  
 turns round and  
 asks his name.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 167 b.

Geffray replies  
 that he is brother  
 to Urian and  
 Guion, and de-  
 mands his ad-  
 versary's name.

The sultan tells  
 him, and defies  
 Geffray.

Geffray cries that  
he will not  
escape.

Geffray and the  
sultan go apart,  
then run upon  
each other.

Geffray bears the  
sultan to the  
earth.

He cleaves his  
helmet,

and is about to  
take it from his  
head,

1 fol. 168.

when he sees  
sixty Saracens,  
who cry, 'Your  
end is come.'

Geffray smites  
the first dead,

and slays many  
others.

The sultan comes  
to his senses,

rotyne dogge; For soone thou shalt fynde me nerer the,  
to thyn euyl helthe / and yf it playseþ to god, my  
creatour, thou shalt not escape.' /

**H**ere sayth thystorye, that Geffray & the saudan, 4  
that bothe were of grete courage & strength,  
reculed eche fro other, and syn ranne vpon eche other /  
and the Saudan valyauntly smote geffray, & tronchoned  
his spere vpon his shild / but it is wel to byleue that 8  
the noble & valyaunt geffray, at this first cours, faylled  
not; For he smote the Saudan by suche radeur, that he  
lefte hym out of hys arsouns, & bare hym vnto therthe.  
and so passed foorth, and immedyatly toke in hys hand 12  
hys good swerd / and pretending that men shuld speke  
of his fayttes & valyaunces, he smote the saudan by  
suche vertu that he perced hys helmet, and effoundred  
hys heed almost to the brayne, so that the sawdan was 16  
sore astonyed and euyl bestad, in suche wyse that he  
nother sawe nor herd / but as geffray wold haue  
alyghted to haue take the saudans helmet, to haue  
brought it to hys bretheren, & to see yf he was deed, 20  
he perceyued wel thre score sarasyns, that cryed after  
hym, & said: 'By my lawe, false crysten, your ende  
is come.' And whan geffray vnderstode it, he sporyd  
hys hors, & brandysshed the swerd; and the fyrst that 24  
he recountred, he smote down to therthe al deed. And  
who that had be there, he had seen hym execute noble  
faytes & armes, as of one man deffendyng hys lyf; For  
geffray cutte and smote of heedes & armes, and dyed 28  
the place with grete effusyon of sarasyns blood / and  
they casted at hym sperys & dartes, and made grete  
peyne for to haue had ouerthrowen hym to therth.  
And thenne the saudan was come at hymself ayen, 32  
and stode vp al astonyed, as he had come fro slepe /  
he loke at ryght syde of hym, and mounted on hys  
hors, & sawe the batayll, where he perceyued wel  
geffray, that made grete occysyon of sarasyns / and was 36



- geffray wounded & hurt in many places of his body.  
 Thenne cryed the saudan, admonnestyng<sup>r</sup> his peple,  
 sayeng / 'auaunt! worthy sarasyns / by mahomid, yf  
 4 he vs escape, I shal neuer haue joye; For who might  
 bryng hym to an euyl ende, the resydu were not to be  
 doubted.' Thenne was geffray assaylled<sup>r</sup> on aH partes /  
 & he deffended hym hardyly & so valyauntly, that no  
 8 sarasyn durste hym abyde / but casted at hym fro ferre  
 sperys, darts, stones & arowes / vyretons & quarelles,  
 with theire crosbowes / but it semed not that he <sup>1</sup>made  
 ony force therof / but as a hongre wolf renneth vpon  
 12 sheep / so dide he renne vpon the enemyes of god.  
 'By my goddes, Appolyn & mahon,' sayd thenne the  
 saudan / 'this is not a man / but it is a grete dyueH,  
 come out of heH / or the Cristen god, which is come  
 16 hither to distroye our lawe' / And, For certayn, geffray  
 was in this auenture wel by the space of two heures.
- I**n this parel was geffray vnto tyme that the new  
 knight, which had be with hym in garende, which  
 20 had sene hym departe after the saudan / cam at him  
 with wel a C men of armes, For he loued hym entierly.  
 And thenne, whan he approached the wode, he perceyued  
 the batayH, and sawe the sawdan, that dyde his best  
 24 for to hurt & dommage Geffray, that faught alone  
 ayenst mahondys peple; wherfore he said / 'cursed  
 be he of god, that shal not helpe hym now' / and the  
 knightes peple ansuerd, 'to theire euyl helthe they  
 28 haue recountred geffray.' And forthwith they broched  
 theire horses with theire sporys, & came to the  
 batayH. but assoone as the saudan perceyued the  
 socours, he sporyd hys hors, & hastily fled toward  
 32 thoost / & left his peple in that plyght, of the which  
 neuer one escaped, but were al slayne. Thenne whan  
 geffray perceyued the new knight, that so wel had  
 socoured hym, he thanked hym moche, & sayd: 'My  
 36 frend, suche rooses ben good, & of swete odour / & the

and incites his  
people against  
Geffray,

who defends him-  
self valiantly,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 168 b.

and  
as a hungry wolf  
runs upon sheep,  
so runs Geffray  
upon the enemies  
of God.

The sultan cries  
that Geffray is  
either a great  
devil or the  
Christian God.

Geffray's new  
knight sees his  
lord's danger,

and rushes at  
the head of his  
people to the  
rescue.

The sultan takes  
flight.

Geffray thanks  
the knight,

1 fol. 169.

who advises him  
to return to the  
Christian host;

because it is  
often better to  
flee than to abide  
a foolish enter-  
prise.

Geffray follows  
the knight's  
counsel.

On the way back  
they find the field  
covered with the  
slain Saracens,  
who have lost  
xxv. Ml men.

2 fol. 169 b.

Geffray's wounds  
are tended, but  
they do not  
oblige him to  
leave off his  
armour.

lorde that hat about hym suche cheualrye, may take  
his rest surely.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'I haue not  
doo that thing' wherof I owe to be <sup>1</sup>rewarded, For  
euery trew seruau<sup>t</sup> oweth to take heede to thonour & 4  
prouffyt of hys maister and lord. And thenne, syth it  
is soo / no reward ought not to be had therfore / but  
departe we hens, For it is tyme that ye take your rest :  
ye haue do this day that wel may suffyse. & also we 8  
be lytel nombre of people, & nygh our enemyes, that  
haue grete puyssaunce / and your woundes and soores  
must be vysyted and ouersene / and also, it me semeth  
best, that we retourne toward oure oost by our owne 12  
wyH / than yf by force we were constrayned to  
retourne ; For no doubte / who that retourneth fleeyng,  
& is chassed by hys enemyes / that may be to hym but  
blame / how be it, that oftyme it is said / that bettre 16  
it is to flee, þan to abyde a folyssh enterpryse.' Thenne  
said geffray : 'Fayre sire, at this tyme we shal byleue  
your counseyH.' And they thez<sup>e</sup> departed, and went  
toward their oost, & fonð in their way the felde<sup>s</sup> 20  
sowen with sarasyns deed. And wete it wel, that  
the same day, byfore none, the sarasyns lost wel xxv<sup>ti</sup>  
thousand men, that by fayt of armes were al slayne /  
and there escaped, fleeyng, XL. M<sup>l</sup>. And wete it 24  
also, that the Caliphe and the two saudans, the king  
Anthenor and thadmyral of Cordes fonð of seuen score  
thousand panemes that the euen tofore were in their  
oost, but foure score thousand, wherof they were gretly 28  
abasshed. Now I shal speke of Geffray, that was  
retourned to thoost, where he was wel festyed of hys  
bretheren, and of their baronye / and his woundes  
were vysyted by the Cyrurgyens, that <sup>2</sup>said that he 32  
shuld not leue the harneys therfor : and they all  
thanked god. And now I shal shew of the sawdan. /  
**T**hystorye sayth, that whan the saudan was departed  
fro the batayH, he walaped tyl he came to the 36

sarasyns oost, where as he fond his peple al abashed,  
 For they wend he had be slayn. And whan they sawe  
 hym, they made grete joye, & made to hym their  
 4 obeyssaunce, and asked how he had exployted. 'By  
 mahomid,' sayd þe saudan / 'lytel or nought haue I  
 doo, For my peple is al deed.' And incontynent he  
 was desarmed, & recounted them al thauenture. And  
 8 the two oostes rested them that night, without ony  
 approching or cours don of neyther partye. /

The sultan gal-  
 lops to the Sara-  
 cen host.  
 They thought  
 him to be dead,  
 so receive him  
 with joy.

He relates his  
 adventure.

**H**ere sheweth thystorye, that on the morow by  
 tymes, the Crysten armed them, & rengid &  
 12 ordeyned them in batayH, and lefte good watche for to  
 kepe their lodgys / and them that were wounded &  
 hurt, that myght bere no harneys / and marched foorth  
 in fayre ordynauce toward thenemyes. In the van-  
 16 wardes were geffray, & the maister of rodes, & their  
 peple; & good arblasters were vpon the wynges, wel  
 rengid. And in the grete batayH was the king Vryan /  
 and the king Guyon conduyted the ryergard / and so  
 20 long they marched, that they sawe thoost of the  
 sarasyns / And anoone was made thenne, on bothe  
 sydes, a meruayllous cry / with whiche they marched  
 that one ayenst that other. And bygan the batayH by  
 24 the archers and arblasters so aspre that thayer was  
 obscurid with the quarelles & arowes, that flewh so  
 thyk. <sup>1</sup>The valyaunt geffray was in the Formest  
 frount of his peple, and whan the shotte seaced, he

In the morning  
 the Christians  
 arm

and march  
 against the  
 enemy.

The archers be-  
 gin the battle.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 170.

28 toke his sheld & hys spere in escryeng 'Lusynen' by  
 thre tymes, and smote his hors with his sporys, &  
 thrested in to myddes of his enemys so swyftly that  
 the maister of Rodes coude not folowe hym. Ther was  
 32 thenne horryble bruyt with their cryes / that one  
 cryed 'Damaske' / that other / 'barbarye' / some  
 cryed 'bandas,' & some 'anthioche,' and other were  
 that cryed 'cordes' / and geffray & his peple cryed  
 36 'Lusynen & Rodes.' There made the thre bretheren

Geffray shouts,  
 'Lusignau,' and  
 rushes vpon the  
 Saracens.

The brethren do  
such deeds of  
arms  
that all are  
abashed.

The Sultans of  
Damascus and  
Barbary rush on  
the brethren;

but the Chris-  
tians pluck up  
heart and slay  
many of the  
enemy.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 170 A.

Geffray gives the  
admiral a stroke  
so great that he  
dies.

Urian sees the  
Sultan of Bar-  
bary,

and strikes off his  
left arm.

The sultan re-  
treats to Damas-  
cus, but the  
Saracens con-  
tinue the fight.

so meruayllous faytes of armes / that not only the  
sarasyns were abashed / but also the crystens merueylled  
therof. The saudans of Damaske, & of barbarye, per-  
ceyued the thre bretheren, that so ouerthrew & slew 4  
theire peple; wherfore they, with xx. M<sup>l</sup> sarasyns,  
couched theire sperys & rane vpon them. There  
reforced the batayH / and with that <sup>1</sup>cours the cristen  
the lengthe of a spere ferre. And whan the thre 8  
bretheren saw the sarasyns, that thus ouerane theire  
peple / bygan to crye 'Lusynen,' & said, admounestyng  
theire peple / 'auaunt, lordes barons! these dogges  
may not long withstand our armes.' And thenne the 12  
Cristen toke herte corageous, & vygourously made an  
horryble cours vpon theire enemys; wherby the stour  
was strong, & the batayH mortal,<sup>2</sup> For they ouerthrew  
& slough many sarasyns. Thenne was per Geffray, 16  
that effoundred heedes vnto the brayne, & smote down  
to therthe al that he recountred with his swerd;  
Whiche perceyued thadmyral of <sup>3</sup>Cordes, that smote on  
the Cristen. Thenne thrested geffray thugh the prees, 20  
& cam and smote thadmyral by suche vertu, that he  
brake bothe helmet & heed vnto the brayne. There  
was the prees grete, For ther came the two saudants  
and theire puyssaunce, that supposed wel to haue 24  
redressed thadmyraH vpon his hors / but it was for  
nought, For he was deed. Thenne came there Vryan,  
and sawe the saudan of barbarye, þat moche hated  
hym, for cause that he had slayn the saudan his vncl 28  
in Cypre. Thenne came Vryan, & smote hym by  
suche strengthe, that he made hys lyft arme to flee fro  
the body. And whan the saudan sawe hym thus  
arayed, he went out of the batayH, & made ten knyghtes 32  
to conduyte hym to damaske / and neuertheles faught  
euer the sarasyns, For the saudan of damaske, & the  
caliphe of bandas, & the king anthenor held them in

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *se reculèrent le long d'une lance.*    <sup>2</sup> Fr. *greigneur.*



vertu. There was grete douleur, & grete pestylence.  
 And wete it wel, that the Cristens were sore damaged /  
 but as the veray cronykle sayth, the sarasyns receyued  
 4 there ouergrete damage & losse, For of them were  
 slayn XL. M<sup>1</sup> & more / and dured the batayH vnto  
 euen tyme, that they withdrew them eyther other part  
 to theire lodgyses. And on the morne the Caliphe, &  
 8 the king<sup>1</sup> anthenor, & the residu of theire people, with-  
 drew them in to the Cite of Damaske. And whan the  
 thre bretheren vnderstoð it, they went & lodged, with  
 theire puyssaunce, tofore Damaske. And wete it wel,  
 12 they were gretly febled, & the more part of them hurt.  
 And there they rested them by the space of VIII  
 1 dayes, without sawtyng ne scarmysshing.

Both sides are  
hurt, but the  
Saracens the  
more.

The battle stops  
at eventide.

Next morning  
the Saracens,  
greatly enfeb-  
led, retire to  
Damascus.

They rest viii.  
days.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 171.

Urian and his  
brethren

**T**hystorye sheweth vnto vs that the kyng Vryan  
 16 and hys bretheren and the maister of Rodes were  
 ryght dolaunt & wroth for the grete losse of theire peple.  
 For wel they sawe that yf the sarasyns assembled new  
 men, it myght come therof some euyl to them. For  
 20 wel they had lost viii<sup>M</sup> of theire men. But at that  
 other part were the saudans al abashed. For they  
 knew not the damage that the Crysten had receyued.  
 And they had CounseyH that they shuld requyre kyng  
 24 Vryan journey of traytye vpon fourme of peas / and so  
 they dide / And the kyng hadd counseyH that he shuld  
 be greable to it. And the iourney was assygned by  
 thacorde of bothe partes on the iii<sup>de</sup> day atwix the  
 28 lodgys & the toun / and were the trews graunted &  
 were delyuereð good pledges & hostages of both partyes.  
 And thenne came they of the toun to selle theire  
 marchaundyse in to the Crystens oost. Thenne came  
 32 to the iourney of traytye that was assigned the saudants  
 and theire CounseyH. And of the other part came  
 Vryan & hys bretheren, the maister of Rodes & theire  
 baronye with them, and spake, & communyked togidre  
 36 of one thinge & of other, / and dede so moch of eyther

see that if the  
Saracens as-  
semble new men  
they may lose,  
for they had lost  
viii. M<sup>1</sup> men.

But the sultans  
are abashed, and  
ask for a treaty.

It is granted.

The Saracens are to pay the Christians all the costs of their voyage,

and a yearly tribute to Urian and his heirs of xxx. Ml besaunts of gold;

1 fol. 171 b.

also they promise not to wage war against Urian, Guion, or the Master of Rhodes.

The brethren return to Jaffa, accompanied by the Saracen kings.

The sultan makes much of Geffray, but he will receive no gifts.

Urian and Guion take leave of Geffray and go to Jerusalem.

Geffray sails to Rochelle, where he is honourably received.

On the morn he rides to his father at Merment.

partye that they were accorded, and pacyfied by condycion that the Sarasyns shuld restore to the lordes Cristen all their expenses & costes made in their vyage, & to paye yerly vnto kyng Vryan & hys heyres for 4 euermore xxx<sup>M</sup> besauns of gold / and trews were made betwene them for  $\text{£}$  & one yere, and therof were lettres patentes sealed. And this couenaunt and trayte the sawdan of Barbarye that great douleur felt in 8 hys sholder for hys arme that <sup>1</sup> was of / and the kyng of Anthioche / ratyfyed, / promyttyng that neuer they shuld bere armes ayenst king Vryan, / ayenst Guyon of Armanye nor ayenst the maister of Rodes, nor their 12 peple / and that yf other kynges or prynces sarasyns wold attempte any werre anenst them, they shuld lete them haue knowleche therof assoone as they might know it / and yf thurgh that cause they had werre 16 ayenst any king or prynce, Vryan promysed them to socoure and gyue them comfort with all hys power, / & in lyke wyse kyng Guyon & the maister of Rodes promysed to them / And soone after the thre breþern 20 and their peple retourned to the port of Japhe. And the saudan of Damaske, the Calyphe of bandas, & the kyng Anthenor conueyed hym thither. And the sawdan made moche of Geffray, and proffred hym grete 24 yeftes, but he wold nought receyue / but that he moche thanked hym of his curtoysye.

**T**hystorye sayth that Vryan & Guyon entred in to the see, & vowed themself to Jherusalem. Wher- 28 fore they toke leue of geffray their broþer, and hym moche thanked of hys noble ayde & socours / and syn they departed fro the porte of Japhe, and rowed toward Jherusalem. And Geffray toke hys way by the see 32 toward Rochelle, & saylled so long that he came there where as he was honourably receyued & gretly festyed. / And on the morn he departed, and rode with hys companye tyl he came to Merment, where he fond bothe 36

his fader & and his moder, that knew tofore how he &  
 his brethern had wrought beyond the grete see &  
 festyed hym gretly / raymondyn hys fader kept a grete  
 4 feste & grete Court for joy that he had of his commyng.  
 But soone aftir <sup>1</sup>came there tydynges that in the  
 Countre of the Garendo was a grete geaunt that by hys  
 grete pryde & orgueyH, & by his grete strength held aH  
 8 the Countre in subgection. For no man durst gaynsay  
 his commandement. Of these tydynges was Raymondin  
 ryght dolaunt; how be it he made of it no semblaunt,  
 feryng that geffray shuld knowe & here of it. For he  
 12 knew hym of so grete courage that he wold goo fyght  
 with the geaunt yf he vnderstod where he was. But  
 it might not be kept so secret but that geffray vn-  
 derstode be talkyng of hym / and that come to hys  
 16 knowlege / he sayd in this wyse / 'how dyuel my  
 bretheren and I haue subdued & made trybutary the  
 saudan of damask & hys complyces, and that hound  
 alone shal be suffred to hold my faders ryght enhery-  
 20 taunce in subgection / by my sowle, in his euyl helthe  
 he thought to vsurpe it, For it shal cost hym hys lyf yf  
 I may.' Thenne came Geffray to hys fader, & thus  
 said to hym. 'My lord, I merueyH of you that are a  
 24 knight of so noble enterpryse how ye haue suffred so  
 long of that hound Guedon the geaunt, that hath putte  
 your countre of garande in subgection / by god, my  
 lord, shame is therof to you.' Whan raymondin vnder-  
 28 stod hym, he said / 'Geffray, fayre sone, wete it is not  
 long syn we knowe therof / & that we haue suffred  
 vnto your joyful commyng. For we wold not trouble  
 the fest / but doubte you not, guedon shal haue hys  
 32 payment after his deserte. He slew my granfader in  
 the Counte of pouthieu, as it was told me in bretayn,  
 whan I went thither for to fyght with Olyuer, sone to  
 Josselyn, that betrayed my fader.' /

Raymondin gives  
 a great feast for  
 joy of his return.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 172.

Tidings come  
 from Garendo of  
 a great giant who  
 keeps the coun-  
 try in subgection.

Raymondin hides  
 his grief in fear  
 that Geffray will  
 see it.

Geffray swears  
 that he will at-  
 tack the giant.

He tells his father  
 that he marvels  
 that he has suf-  
 fered Guedon to  
 keep his country  
 in subgection so  
 long.

Raymondin says  
 the giant shall  
 have his pay-  
 ment.

fol. 172 b.

Geffray says he  
is ready to go  
against him with  
ten knights.

Raymondin sor-  
rowfully con-  
sents.

Geffray sets out  
to find Guedon,

and men marvel  
why he wants  
him.

Geffray answers  
that he brings  
Guedon his pay-  
ment for his  
outrages.

1 fol. 173.

They tell Geffray  
that a hundred  
like him could  
not withstand  
the giant.

Geffray is con-  
ducted near the  
giant's dwelling.

**T**hanne ansuerd Geffray : ' I ne wot nor wyl not en-  
quyre of thinges past, syth that my predecessours  
haue therof had thonour & are come to theire aboute /  
but at this tyme present that Iniurye shal be soone 4  
mended yf it plesse god & I may / and as touching your  
personne ye ought not to meue your self for suche a  
theef & palyard ; For I, with ten knyghtes of myn  
houshold only for to hold me companye / not for ayde 8  
that I wyl haue of them ayenst hym, I shal goo fyght  
with hym' / And whan Raymondyn hys fader vnder-  
stod hys wordes he was dolaunt & sorowful, and thus  
said to hym / ' sethen it may none other wyse be / goo 12  
thou by the grace of god.' And thenne geffray toke  
his leue of his fader & of hys moder, and putte hym  
self on the way toward garande accompanied with x  
knyghtes, and there where he passed by he enquired 16  
after guedon where he might fynd hym / And wel it  
is trouthe that it was told hym where the geaunt was /  
But men were meruaylled, & asked of geffray why he  
speryd after hym. ' By my feyth,' ansuerde geffray, 20  
' I bryng hym the trybut & payment that he by his  
foly & oultrage thaketh vpon my faders lordship / but  
it is neyther gold ne syluer / but it is only the poynte  
of my spereheed, For none other payment he shal re- 24  
ceyue of me but strokes of my swerd withal.' And  
whan the good peple herd hym thus speke, they said  
to hym in this wyse : ' By my feyth, geffray, ye vnder-  
take grete folly, <sup>1</sup>For an hondred suche as ye be shuld 28  
not be able to withstand hys cruelte.' ' doubte you  
not,' said geffray / ' but lete me haue the feer alone' /  
and they held theire peas, For they durst not make hym  
wroth. For moche they fered hys fyersnes & yre, of 32  
whiche he was replenysshed / but þey conduyted hym  
vnto a leghe nygh to the sayd geauntis retrette or  
pryue dwellyng / and þene they sayd to geffray : ' Sire,  
ye may lightly fynd hym at yonder place within the 36



forest' / and geffray ansuerd, 'I wold fayne see hym,  
 For to fynd hym I am come hither' / And here  
 cesseth thystorye to speke of geffray / and sheweth of  
 4 Raymondyn & of Melusyne. /

**T**he veray and trew hystorye witnesseth that Ray-  
 mondin & Melusyne were at merment making  
 grete joye for the prosperous estate & good Fortune of  
 8 theire children; but this joye was soone tourned to  
 grete sorowe, For as ye haue herd how thystorye saith  
 tofore that Raymondin promysed to Melusyne that  
 neuer on the satirday he shuld not enquire of her nor  
 12 desyre to see her that day. It is trouth that on a  
 Satirday a lytel byfore dyner tyme, Raymondyn vnder-  
 stode that hys brother the Erle of Forests was come  
 to Merment for to see hym & hys Noble Court.  
 16 wherof Raymondin was ryght Joyous, but sith grete  
 myschief came to hym therfore as hereafter shal be  
 shewed. Thenne made Raymondin grete apparayll &  
 ryght noble for to receyue his brother / And shortly to  
 20 shewe, he came & recountred hys brother <sup>1</sup>with noble  
 company & welcommed hym honourably, & dide moche  
 that one of that other, & went to chircheward togidre /  
 And after the deuyne seruice was don they came  
 24 agayn to the palleys where al thinges were redy to  
 dyner / they wesshe theire handes and syn sett them  
 at dyner and þey were worshipfully serued / ha / las!  
 thezne bygan a part of the douleur & heuynes. For hys  
 28 brother coude not kepe hym, but he asked after Melu-  
 syne, sayeng in this manere: 'My brother, where is  
 my sustir Melusyne? lete her come, for moche I desyre  
 to see her.' And Raymondyn, whiche thought none  
 32 euyl, ansuerd, 'she is not here at this tyme / but to  
 morne ye shal see her & shal make you good chere.'  
 But for that ansuere the Erle of Forests held not hys  
 peas / but thus said ayen to his brother: 'Ye are my  
 36 brother / I owe not to hyde to you your dyshonour.

Raymondin and  
 Melusine are at  
 Merment mak-  
 ing joy over the  
 good fortune of  
 their children,  
 but great sorrow  
 comes.

The history has  
 told how Ray-  
 mondin promised  
 that he would  
 never inquire  
 after Melusine  
 on Saturdays.

The Earl of  
 Forest comes  
 one Saturday.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 173 b.

After attending  
 church they  
 return to the  
 palace,

and sit down to  
 dinner.

The earl asks  
 after Melusine,  
 and says he de-  
 sires much to  
 see her.

Raymondin an-  
 swers that he  
 can see her next  
 day.  
 The earl says to  
 Raymondin,  
 'You are my  
 brother, I cannot  
 hide your dis-  
 honour.'

One set of folk  
says your wife  
goes to another  
man every Satur-  
day,

and others that  
she is a spirit of  
the fairies, and  
goes on Satur-  
days to do pen-  
ance.

I know not  
which to be-  
lieve.'

1 fol. 174.

Raymondin rises  
from the table  
full of jealousy;  
he girds on his  
sword and goes  
to the place  
where Melusine  
retires on Satur-  
days.

He finds a strong  
door,

and pierces a  
hole in it with  
his sword.

Now, fayre brother, wete it that the commyn talking of the peple is, that Melusyne your wyf euery satirday in the yere is with another man in auoultyre / & so blynd ye are by her sayeng that ye dare not enquire nor knoweth wher she becommeth or gooth / and also other sayen, & make them strong that she is a spyryte of the fayry, that on euery satirday maketh hir penaunce. I wot not to whiche of bothe I shal byleue / and for none other cause I am come hither but to aduertyse you therof.' Whan Raymondin thenne vnderstod these wordes that his brother hym said he roos <sup>1</sup>fro the table and entred in to his chambre, and anoone aH esprysed with yre & Jalousy, withaH toke hys swerd & girded it about hym, & syn went toward the place where as Melusyne went euery satirday in the yer / and whan he cam there he fond a doore of yron thikk & strong / and wete it wel he had neuer be tofore that tyme so ferre thitherward / and whan he perceyued the doore of yron he toke hys swerd, that was hard & tempered with fyn stele, and with the poynte of it dyde so moche that he perced the doore, and made a hoH in it, and loked in at that hoH, and sawe thenne Melusyne that was within a grete bathe of marbel stone, where were steppis to mounte in it, and was wel xv foot of length; and therin she bathed herself, makynge there her penytence as ye shal here hereafter. /

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion.

fol. 174 b.

Thystorye sayth in this partye that Raymondin stode so long at the yron doore that he perced it with the poynte of his swerd, wherby he might wel see

- aH that was *within* the Chambre / and sawe melusyne  
 within the bathe vnto her naueH, in fourme of a woman  
 kymbyng her heere, and fro the nauel downward in  
 4 lyknes of a grete serpent, the tayH as grete & thykk as  
 a bareH, and so long it was that she made it to touche  
 oftymes, while that raymondyn beheld her, the rouf of  
 the chambre that was ryght hye. And whan Ray-  
 8 mondyn perceyued it, wete it wel that he was ryght  
 dolaunt and sorowful & not *without* cause, and coude  
 neuer hold hys tonge, but he said, 'My swete loue, now  
 haue I betrayed<sup>1</sup> you, & haue falsed my couenaunt by  
 12 the ryght fals admounestyng of my brother, and haue  
 forsworne myself toward<sup>2</sup> you.' Raymondin thenne was  
 smyten to the herte with suche sorow & dystresse that  
 vnnethe he coude speke / and pensefull *with* a heuy  
 16 contenaunce retourned hastily toward<sup>3</sup> hys chambre, and  
 toke some wax wher*with* he went & stopped the holt  
 that he had made at the doore of yron, and syn came  
 agayn to the hall where he found<sup>4</sup> hys brother. And  
 20 thenne whan therle of Forest perceyued hym and sawe  
 hys heuy contenaunce / wel supposed he that he had  
 fond<sup>5</sup> Melusyne in some shamful fayt, and said to him  
 in this wyse: 'My brother, I wyst it wel / haue ye not  
 24 fond<sup>6</sup> as I said?' Thenne cryed Raymondin to hys  
 brother of Forest in this manyere:<sup>2</sup> 'Voyde this place,  
 fals traytour, For thurgh your fals reporte I haue falsed  
 my feyth ayenst the moost feythfullest & truest lady  
 28 that euer was borne. ye are cause of the losse of al my  
 worldly joye & of my totaH destruction / by god, yf I  
 byleued my courage, I shuld make you to dey now of  
 an enyl deth / but rayson naturel kepeth & deffendeth  
 32 me therfro, bycause that ye are my brother / goo your  
 way & voyde my syght, that al the grete maisters of

Raymondin sees  
Melusine in the  
bath,

half woman, half  
serpent.

He becomes  
sorrowful, and  
laments that  
he has betrayed  
her.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 175.

He returns ha-  
stily to his cham-  
ber, to procure  
wax to stop the  
hole in the door.

This done he re-  
turns to the hall,

and orders his  
brother out of  
the place,

and tells him  
that were he not  
his brother he  
should die.

<sup>2</sup> Fr.: *Fuiez d'icy, faultz triste, car vous m'avez fait, par votre tresmauais rapport, ma foy parjurer contre la plus loyalle et la meilleure des dames qui oncques naquit, apres celle qui porta notre seigneur Ihesucrist.*

The earl and his  
people ride home  
as fast as they  
can.

He repents of his  
foolish enter-  
prise.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 175 b.

Raymondin cries,  
'Alas, Melusine,  
I have lost you  
for ever.'

He upbraids  
Fortune,

that made him  
slay his uncle.

and now will  
make him lose  
his lady.

heH may conduyte you thither' / And whan the  
Erle of Forest apperceyued Raymondyn his brother  
that was in so grete yre, he went out of the halle & aH  
his peple, & mounted on horsbak and rode as fast as 4  
they might toward Forests ryght pensefulH & heuy,  
repentyng hym of hys folyssh enterpryse; for he knew  
wel that Raymondin his brother wold neuer loue hym  
nor see hym. Here I leue to speke <sup>1</sup>of hym, & shal 8  
shewe you of Raymondin that entred in to his chambre  
wooful & angre. /

'**H**alas, Melusyne,' sayd Raymondin, 'of whom aH  
the world spake wele, now haue I lost you for 12  
euer. Now haue I fonde the ende of my Joye / and  
the begynnyng is to me now present of myn euerlast-  
yng heuynes / Farwel beaute, bounte, swetenes, amy-  
ablete / Farwel wyt, curtoysye, & humilite / Farwel al 16  
my joye, al my comfort & myn hoop / Farwel myn  
herte, my prowes, my valyaunce, For that lytel of  
honour whiche god had lent me, it came thurgh your  
noblesse, my swete & entierly belouyd lady. Ha / a, 20  
falsed & blynd Fortune, aigre, sharp, & byttir / wel hast  
thou ouerthrawn me fro the hiest place of thy whele  
vnto the lowest part of thy mansyon or dwellyng<sup>t</sup> place,  
there as Jupyter festyeth with sorow & heuynes, the 24  
caytyf & vnhappy creatures / be *þou* now cursed of  
god. by the I slough ayenst my wyH my lord, myn  
vncle, the whiche deth thou sellest me to dere. *helas!*  
thou had putte and sette me in high auctoryte thurgh 28  
the wyt and valeur of the wysest, the fayrest, & moost  
noble lady of al other / and now by the / fals blynde  
traytour and ennyous, I must lese the sight of her of  
whom myn eyen toke theire fedyng<sup>t</sup>. thou now hatest / 32  
thou now louest, thou now makest / thou now vndost /  
in the, nys no more surety ne rest than is in a fane  
that tourneth at al windes. *Halas / *helas!** my ryght  
swete & tendre loue / by my venymous treson I haue 36



maculate your excellent fygure / *helas!* myn herte & al  
 my wele ye had heeled me clene of my first soore / yf  
 I haue now rewarded you therfore. Certaynly yf I  
 4 now lese you / none other choys is to me / <sup>1</sup>but to take  
 myn vtermost exilt there as neuer after no man lyuyng  
 shaH see me.'

He cries that he  
 will

<sup>1</sup> fol. 176.

go into exile if  
 he loses her,

8 **H**ere sayeth thistorye, that in suche douleur & be-  
 wayHinges abode raymondin al that nyght tyl it  
 was day light. And as sone as aurora might be per-  
 ceuyed, Melusyne came & entred in to the chambre /  
 and whan Raymondyn herd her come he made sem-  
 12 blaunt of slepe. She toke of her clothes, and than al  
 naked layed herself by hym. And thenne bygan Ray-  
 mondyn to sighe as he that felt grete douleur at herte /  
 and Melusyne embraced hym, & asked what hym eyled,  
 16 sayeng in this wyse: 'My lord, what eyleth you, be ye  
 syke?' And whan Raymondin sawe that she of none  
 other jing' spake, he supposed that she nothing had  
 knowen of this faytte / but for nought he byleued soo,  
 20 For she wyst wel that he had not entamed nor shewed  
 the matere to no man / Wherfor she suffred at that  
 tyme & made no semblaunt therof / wherfore he was  
 right Joyous, and ansuerd to her: 'Madame, I haue be  
 24 somewhat euyl at ease & haue had an *axe*<sup>2</sup> in maner  
 of a contynue.' 'My lord,' said Melusyne, 'abasshe you  
 not, For yf it plese god ye shal soone be hole.' And  
 thenne he that was right joyous said to her, 'By my  
 28 feyth, swete loue, I fele me wel at ease for your  
 commyng' / and she said, 'I am perof glad' / and  
 whan tyme requyred they roos and went to here masse /  
 and soone after was the dyner redy / and thus abode  
 32 Melusyne with Raymondyn al that day / and on the  
 morne she toke leue of hym & went to Nyort, where  
 she bylded a fortresse. <sup>3</sup>And here seaceth thistorye of  
 her / and retourneth to speke of geffray.

and bewails all  
 the night long.

In the morning  
 Melusine re-  
 turns.  
 Raymondin  
 feigns sleep.

Melusine lies by  
 him. He sighs.

Melusine in-  
 quires what is  
 wrong.

Raymondin  
 thinks she does  
 not know of his  
 deed.

She does, but  
 makes no show  
 of her know-  
 ledge.

He replies he has  
 a fever.  
 Melusine says he  
 will soon be well.

He says he is  
 better since her  
 return.

Melusine goes to  
 Niort and builds  
 a fortress.

<sup>3</sup> fol. 176 b.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *un peu de fièvre en manière de continue.*

Geffray is received with joy in Garendé.

He asks after Guedon, and is taken to his tower of Mermount.

His guides leave.

Geffray dismounts and arms himself.

He tells his knights to wait for him in the valley, and bids them come to him when they hear his horn.

Geffray mounts to the tower.

\* fol. 177.

He calls to the sleeping giant,

Here sayth thystory, that Geffray came in garande, where as he was receyued *with* gret joye / and he asked where the geant guedon held hym self / and, as before is said, they conduyted hym, and shewed to 4 hym the strong tour of Mermount, where the geaunt was, & said: 'Sire, wete it / that yf ye byleue vs, it shal suffyse you to haue sene the toure, & shal retourne 8 *with* vs; For as touching our personnes, we shal goo no neer *pat* horryble geaunt, algaf you to eyther of vs your pesaunt or weyght of fyn gold.' 'By my feyth, sires,' said geffray, 'I thanke you moche, that thus ferre ye haue brought me.' 12

Geffray thenne, as thystory saith, descendid from his hors, & armed hym, and syn girded hys swerd<sup>1</sup> about hym, & remounted on horsback; and after toke hys sheld, & heng it tofore hys brest; & 16 toke a clubbe of stele, & faste it at tharsons of his sadeH; and syn toke a trompe of yuory, and heng it at hys neck behynd; and syn asked hys spere / and thenne said to his tene knightes, in this manere: 20 'Fayre lordes, abyde me in this valey / and yf god graunte me the vycatory of the geaunt, I shal thenne blowe this horne / and whan ye shal here it, ye shal lyghtly come to me.' And they were dolaunt that he 24 wold not suffre them to go *with* hym, and bade hym farweH, prayeng god for hys good spede. Thenne departed the valyaunt & hardy geffray, and mounted the montayne; and anoone cam to the first gate of the 28 toure, & found it open / thenne entred he in to the bassecourt, & went toward the dongeon, that strong was to *meruayH*. And whan he was nygh, he beheld it, & moche <sup>2</sup>played hym the facion and byldyng of 32 hit; but he sawe the brydge, that was drawen vp. For the geante slepte. Thenne he cryed *with* a hye voys, sayeng in this manere: 'hourys sone & fals geaunt,

<sup>1</sup> *hys swerd* twice in MS.

- cōme speke *with* me! For I bryng to the / the syluer  
that the people of my lord, my fader, owen to the.  
And, for certayn, geffray cryed so long that the geaunt  
4 awacked, & came at a wyndowe, and beheld geffray, who comes to his  
window and asks  
what he wants.  
armed of al pyeces, mounted vpon a courser, that held  
hys spere couched / and thus bygan to crye, with a  
lowde voyce, 'knyght! what wold thou haue?' 'By  
8 my sowle,' said geffray, 'I seke for the, & for none  
other / and I come hither to chalange the, and bring'  
*with* me the trybut that thou hast ouersetete vpon the  
people of my lord, Raymondyn of Lusynen, my fader.'  
12 Thenne whan the geant vnderstode geffray, he was  
nygh aragid & mad, that of one knight alone was so  
bold to make hym warre, & had sette hym so nygh hys  
place. but, notwithstanding, when he had wel aduysed  
16 hym, he consydered in hym self that he was a man of  
grete valyaunce. Thenne the geaunt armed hymself, he arms  
and laced the taches of hys helmet; & toke a grete  
barre of yron, and a grete sythe of stele, & came to  
20 the brydge, and lete it fall; & came in the bassecourt,  
& demanded of geffray: 'What art thou, knight, that  
art so bold to come hither?' And geffray ansuerd, in  
this manere: 'I am geffray with the grete teeth, sone  
24 to Raymondyn of Lusynen, that cometh hither to  
challenge the patiz or trybut, that thou takest thurgh  
thy grete pryde, of my lord my faders peple.' Thenne  
whan Guedon vnderstod it, he bygan to lawhe, and to  
28 hym thus said: 'By my feyth, poue fole, for thy grete  
hardynes & the grete enterprise <sup>1</sup>of thyn herte, I haue  
pyte of the. Now wyl I shew to the curtoysye / that  
is, that thou retourne lyghtly to make thy warre in  
32 other place; For wete thou wel, yf now *with* the were  
V. C suche foles as thyself art, yet coudest thou not  
endure and *with*stand my puyssaunce. but for pyte  
that I haue to putte to deth so hardy a knight, as I  
36 suppose thou art, I gyue the lycence & congie to
- Geffray answers  
he bears him his  
tribute for his  
misdoings.
- The giant is  
enraged;
- he arms
- and descends to  
the bassecourt,  
and again asks  
who Geffray is.
- He answers that  
he is the son of  
Raymondin, and  
has come to chal-  
lenge the tribute  
he has heretofore  
exactd.
- Guedon laughs  
at him,
- <sup>1</sup> fol. 177 b.
- and tells him to  
go back, because  
V. C like Geffray  
could not over-  
come him.

He says he will  
remit the tribute  
for a year.

Geffray is sorrow-  
ful that the giant  
appraises him at  
so little.

He taunts Gue-  
don that he is  
afraid;

but the giant still  
laughs at him.

Geffray there-  
upon spurs his  
horse and rides  
against Guedon.

Geffray knocks  
him down.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 178.

The giant rises,  
and smites Gef-  
fray's horse.

Geffray dis-  
mounts and ap-  
proaches the  
giant with sword  
drawn.  
The giant comes  
against him,

retourne to Raymondyn thy fader / goo thou lyghtly  
hens / and for loue of the I shal forgyue to thy faders  
peple the payement of a hoß yere of the trybut that  
they owe me.' Thenne whan geffray *with* the grete 4  
toth herd that the geaunt made so lytel of hym, & that  
as nought he preysed hym, he was of it ryght dolaunt,  
and said to hym in this wyse: 'Meschaunt creature,  
thou alredy ferest me mochi / I wyl wel thou wete that 8  
of thy curtoysy I sett nought by, For thus spekest thou  
for the grete feer that thou hast of my toeth. but wete  
pou, for certayn, that I shal neuer departe fro this place  
vnto that tyme I haue separed the lyf fro thy body / 12  
and therfor, haue pyte of thyself, & not of me, For I  
hold the for deed where as thou art / & ryght foorth I  
deffye ye.' And whan the geaunt herd hym, he made  
semblaunt of lawghing<sup>1</sup>, sayeng al this: 'Geffray, fool, 16  
thou comdest in to batayß, & thou mayst not endure  
one stroke of me only, without I felle the to þe erthe.'  
And thenne geffray, without ony more sayeng<sup>1</sup>, smote  
hys hors with hys sporys, and charged hys spere, & 20  
dressed hym toward the geaunt, asmoche as the hors  
might ranne; and strak hym through the brest by suche  
strength that he bare hym to the ground, the bely  
vpward. <sup>1</sup>but the geaunt stert vp lyghtly, in grete 24  
yre, & as geffray passed by, he smote hys hors behynd  
*with* hys sythe of fyn stele / and whan geffray wüst  
it, he descended lyghtly from hys hors, & came toward  
the geaunt, the swerd drawn. and thenne came the 28  
geaunt toward hym, holding his sythe in his hand:  
where as was grete batayß.

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Gue-  
don, the geaunt, in garande.

32

and raises his  
scythe to smite  
Geffray,

**A**l thus, as ye haue herde, geffray was on foot  
tofore the geaunt, that held his sythe in his fyst,  
& supposed to haue smyte geffray / but he bare



- it vp / & *with* that, he smote *with* hys swerd<sup>1</sup> vpon the haffe<sup>1</sup> of the geantis sythe, that it fel<sup>1</sup> in two pyeces.
- And thenne the geaunt toke hys flayel of yron, & gaf  
 4 geffray a grete buffet vpon his bassynet, wher*with* he was almost astonyed. Thenne came <sup>2</sup>Geffray toward hys hors, that laye on the erthe, & toke hys clubbe of yron, that hyng at tharsons of hys sadeH, & lightly  
 8 tourned toward the geaunt, that haunced hys flayel, supposyng<sup>1</sup> to dyscharge it vpon geffray / but geffray, that was pert in armes, smote with hys clubbe suche a stroke vpon the flayel, that he made it to flee out of the  
 12 geantis handes. And thenne the geaunt, full of yre, put hys hand in hys bosom, where were thre hamers of yron ; of the whiche he toke one, & casted it by suche radeur, that yf geffray had not receyued that strok vpon  
 16 his clubbe, he might haue be myschieuyd ther*with* / by the force wherof hys clubbe flough out of hys handes : and the geaunt toke it vp / but geffray drew lightly his swerd<sup>1</sup>, & came to the geaunt, that supposed to haue  
 20 smyte geffray *with* the clubbe of stele on the heed / but geffray, that was light & strong, fled the stroke, & the geaunt faylled ; & the stroke fel<sup>1</sup> to therth<sup>1</sup>, by the force wherof the heed of the clubbe entred in to the grounde  
 24 a large foot deep. And thenne geffray smote the geaunt vpon the ryght arme *with* hys swerd<sup>1</sup>, in suche vyolence, & hys swerde was so sharp & trenchaunt, that he made it to flygh fro hys body to the erthe. Thenne was *pe*  
 28 geant gretly abasshed, whan he sawe thus his arme lost / notwithstanding, he haunced his swerd<sup>1</sup> *with* hys other hand<sup>1</sup>, and trowed to haue smyte geffray at herte / but geffray kept hym wel therfro, & smote the geaunt  
 32 vpon the legge, vnder the knee, by suche strength that he smote it in two. Thenne the geaunt fel<sup>1</sup>, & gaf suche an horryble crye, that al the valey sowned *perof*, so that they that bode for geffray, her<sup>1</sup> it / but they

who cuts it in halves.

The giant takes his flail and smites Geffray.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 178 b.

Geffray takes his iron club

and knocks the flail out of the giant's hands.

The giant throws a hammer at Geffray

and drives his club out of his hands.

The giant thinks to hit Geffray,

but he flees the stroke.

Then Geffray smites off the giant's right arm.

The giant tries to strike at Geffray with the other hand, but he cuts the giant's leg in two.

The giant falls, and utters a horrible cry.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *manche*, a haft or handle. Written 'haste' in MS.

1 fol. 179.

Geffray cuts off  
the giant's head.  
He blows his  
horn, and the  
people laud God  
when they know  
the giant is dead.

Geffray tells  
them that the  
giant will never  
trouble them  
again.

knew not the certayn what it was / but <sup>1</sup>alwayes they  
had grete meruayH of that horryble sowne. Thenne  
geffray cutte the taches of the geant helmet, and after  
cutte of his heed / and syn toke hys horne, & blew it; 4  
Wherby his peple, that were in the valey, might here  
it / and so dide other that were of the countre / and  
by þat they knew the geaunt was deed; wherof they  
gaaf lawdyng<sup>t</sup> to our lord god deuoutely. and imme- 8  
diatly they mounted the mountayne, & came to the  
place, where they fonde geffray, that said to them of the  
Countre / 'this fals traytour geaunt shal neuer more  
patyse you, For he as now this tyme present, hath 12  
neyther lust nor talent to aske ony tribut of you.' And  
whan they perceyued the body & the heed of the  
geaunt, lyeng in two partes, they were al abasshed of  
hys gretnes, For he was XV foot of lengthe / sayeng to 16  
geffray, that he had enterprysed a grete faytte, to haue  
putte hym self in so grete parel tassayH suche a  
dyueH / 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'the parel is  
past. For, fayre lordes, I wyl that ye knowe / thing<sup>t</sup> 20  
neuer bygonne / hath neuer ende / In euery thing<sup>t</sup>  
most be bygynnyng<sup>t</sup>, tofore the ende commeth.'

2 fol. 179 b.

<sup>2</sup>Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to  
Geffray, was professed monke at Mayl- 24  
lezes, by consentement of hys fader &  
moder.

The tidings of  
Geffray's deed  
are spread in the  
country.  
Geffray sends the  
giant's head to  
his father.

**M**oche were thenne the knightes abasshed, as  
thistorye reherceth, of this that geffray had 28  
slayn the geaunt, that was so grete & mighty. And  
the tydings therof were spread in the Countre, & in the  
marches about. And also geffray sent, by two of hys  
knightes, to hys fader, the heed of the geaunt. And 32  
in the meane season he went & dysported hym in the  
Countre, where as he was gretly fested, & receyued

with grete joye, & presented with gret ryches. Here I  
 shal leue to speke of hym / & shal shew you of Froy-  
 mond, hys brother, who that prayed so moche hys fader  
 4 and his moder, that they were greable that he shuld be  
 professed monke at Maylleses / & so he was shorne, by  
 the consentement of hys fader, & of <sup>1</sup>his moder;  
 Wherof thabbot & aH conuent was ryght joyous.  
 8 And wete it wel, there were within the place to the  
 nombre of an hondred monkes. And yf they had  
 thenne grete joye of Froymonds professyon / it was  
 afterward reuersed in to grete douleur / as ye shal here  
 12 hereafter / but wete it wel, that it was not thurgh the  
 faytte of Froymond, For he was right deuoute, & ledd  
 a relygious lyf / but by the rayson of hym came to  
 the place a merueyllous auenture. It is trouth that the  
 16 two forsaid knightes that geffray sent vnto hys fader  
 with the heed of the geant, rode tyl they came to  
 merment, wher they fond<sup>t</sup> Raymondin, & presented  
 hym with the heed of the geaunt, wherof he was joyful.  
 20 And the heed was moche loked on / & euery man  
 meruaylled how geffray durst assay<sup>H</sup> hym. And thenne  
 Raymondin sent a *lettre* to geffray, how Froymond<sup>t</sup>, his  
 brother, was professed monke at thabbey of maylleses.  
 24 *helas!* that message was the cause of the trystefuH  
 douleur of the departyng of his wyf, wherof neuer  
 after he nor she had hertly joye, as ye shal here her-  
 after. Trouth it was that Raymondyn gaaf thenne  
 28 grete yestes to the two knightes, and delyuered them  
 the *lettre*; and sayd that they shuld grete wel geffray,  
 & that they shuld bere the hed<sup>t</sup> of the geaunt to  
 Melusyne, that was at Nyort: For it was not ferre out  
 32 of their way. Thenne so departed the two knightes,  
 & held<sup>t</sup> on their way tyl they came to nyort, where  
 they fonde their lady; the whiche they salued, &  
 presented her with the heed of the geaunt. Wherof  
 36 she was ryght joyous, <sup>2</sup>and sent it to Rochelle, and was  
 MELUSINE.

Froimond prays  
 his father and  
 mother to  
 allow him to  
 become a monk  
 at Mailleses.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 180.

They consent;  
 he is shorn.

The abbot is  
 glad,

but Froimond's  
 profession causes  
 them much pain  
 afterward.

The knights  
 bring Raymondin  
 the giant's head.

He sends back  
 word to Geffray  
 how Froimond  
 was professed  
 monk.

He gives the  
 knights gifts,

and bids them  
 take the head to  
 Melusine.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 180 b.

X

She has it set  
upon a spear  
at a gate of  
Rochelle.

There was a giant  
in Northumber-  
land named Gry-  
mault,

xvii. foot high.

He lived at  
Brombelyo,  
and destroyed  
the country for  
nine leagues  
round.

They hear in  
Northumberland  
of Geffray's deed,

and resolve to  
ask him to de-  
liver them from  
Grymault.

Eight noble per-  
sons are sent to  
Geffray ;

<sup>2</sup> fol. 181.

and when he  
understands  
their message he  
promises to help  
them.

sette vpon a spere at the gate toward guyenne. And  
Melusyne gaf the two knyghtes ryche yestes ; and after  
that toke theire leue, and went toward the toure of  
mountyouet,<sup>1</sup> where geffray was for hys dysport & solas. 4  
And here cesseth thystory, & sheweth other matere. /

**T**hystory sayth that the tydyng was anoone spred  
thrughe the Countre, how geffray with the grete  
tooth slough the geaunt guedon in batayH, and aH they 8  
that herd therof were gretly abasshed. And for that  
tyme regned in northomberland a geaunt that hyght  
Grymault, & was the moost cruel that euer man sawe,  
For he was xvii foot of heyght / and that same grete 12  
dyueH held hym nygh a mountayne called Brombelyo /  
and wete it wel for trouth he had dystroyed aH the  
Countre about in so moche that there ne durst no per-  
sonne inhabyte nygh hym by eyght or nene leghes / & 16  
so aH the Countre was desert & wyldernes. It befelH  
that in Northomberland came tydynges how geffray  
with the grete tooth had slayn the geaunt guedon.  
Wherfore they of the same Countrey made a grete 20  
counseyH, that they shuld sende to geffray, & profre  
hym so he wold delyuere them of the cruel murdrer  
grymault, euery yere duryng hys lyf he shuld haue  
x. M<sup>l</sup> besans of gold ; & yf he hath yssue male of hys 24  
body they to possesse the said annuel rente of x. M<sup>l</sup>  
besans / and yf he hath a doughter to hys heyre, we to  
be quytte after his decesse of our sayd trybute. Wher-  
upon they choose eyght of þe moost noble personnes 28  
of theire Countre, & sent hem in ambaxade toward  
geffray / the whiche departed & came to Mountyouet,  
where they fonde geffray, to <sup>2</sup>whom they proposed the  
cause of theire commyng. And thenne whan geffray 32  
vnderstode it / he ansuerd nobly : ‘ Fayre lordes, I wyl  
not reffuse your demande, how be it I shuld haue goon  
thithere to fyght with þat geaunt, For I herd tydynges

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Monjouet*.



of hym tofore your commyng<sup>t</sup>, for the pyte that I haue  
of the destruction of the peple, & also for to seke  
honour. Wete it that now foorthwith I wyl departe  
4 with you without ony lenger delay / and by the help  
of god I suppose texille the geaunt.' And pey thenne  
gaaf hym grete thankinges.

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Ray-  
8 mondin cam in garande toward geffray.

**T**henne came the two knyghtes that he had sent  
toward hys fader, and salued hym honourably,  
and recounted hym the noble chere that they had  
12 hadd of hys fader & of his moder, whiche <sup>1</sup>greted hym  
wel: 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'that playseth me  
wel.' and after they delyuered to hym the *lettre* from  
hys fader, which geffray toke & opend<sup>t</sup> it / the tenour  
16 of whiche made mencon how Froymond his brother  
was shorne monke at Mayllezes. And whan geffray  
vnderstod<sup>t</sup> it he was wroth, & shewed thenne so fel &  
cruel semblaunt that there ne was so hardy that durst  
20 abyde the syght of hym; but they all voyded the  
place except the two knyghtes and the ambaxatours of  
northomberland. /

**I**n this party sheweth thistory, that whan geffray  
24 knew the tydynges of Froymonds professyon he  
was so dolaunt that almost he went fro his wyt. And  
wete it wel that thenne he semed better to be araged  
& madd<sup>t</sup> than man with rayson. And he said in this  
28 wyse: 'how deueH! had not my fader & my moder  
ynough for to entreteyn & kepe thestate of Froymond  
my brother, & hym to haue maryed som noble lady of  
the land / and not to haue made hym a monke / by  
32 god omnipotent these flatterers monkes shal repente  
them perof, For they haue enchaunted my lord my  
fader, & haue drawen Froymond with them for to fare

The knights  
salute Geffray,  
and tell him of  
the noble cheer  
they had at his  
father's.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 181 b.

They deliver the  
letter which tells  
how Froymond  
had professed  
himself monk.

Geffray waxes  
wroth at the  
news.

He seems to be  
mad,

and declares that  
the monks shall  
repent of their  
guile and their  
greed.

Geffray tells the embassy that they will have to wait.

With his ten knights he goes to Mailleses,  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 182.

and finds the monks in chapter.

He upbraids them for having shorn his brother monk.

The abbot denies having so counselled him.

Froimond comes forward and says he became monk of his free will.

Geffray says he will pay him with the rest.

þe better by hym / but by the feyth that I owe to god  
 I shal pay them so, therfore, that they shal neuer haue  
 neyther lust ne talent to withdraw no noble man to be  
 shorne monke with them.' And thenne he said to the 4  
 bassade of Northomberland: 'Sires, ye muste sojourne  
 a while & abyde my retourn hither / For I must goo  
 to an affayre of myn that toucheth me moche.' And  
 they that knewe hys wrathe & anger ansuerd: 'My 8  
 lord, so shaþ we doo with a good wyþ.' Thenne made  
 geffray his ten knightes to mounte on horsback / and  
 also he armed hym and lept on hys hors / & syn de-  
 parted <sup>1</sup>fro Mountyoued, esprysed with grete yre ayenst 12  
 the abbot & Conuent of Maylleses / and at that tyme  
 the said abbot & hys monkes were in Chapitre. And  
 geffray thanne come to the place, entred, the swerd  
 gird about hym, in to the Chapitre. And whan he 16  
 perceyued thabbot & hys monkes, he said al on hye to  
 them: 'Ye false monkes / how haue ye had the hardy-  
 nes to haue enchaunted my brother, in so moche that  
 thrughe your false & subtyl langage haue shorne hym 20  
 monke / by the teeth of god yl ye thought it, For ye  
 shal drynk therfore of an euyl drynk.' 'helas! my  
 lord,' said thabbot, 'for the loue of god haue mercy on  
 vs / and suffre you to be enfourmed of the trouth & 24  
 rayson, For on my Creatour, I nor none of vs aþ coun-  
 seylded hym neuer therto.' Thenne came Froymont  
 forth, that trowed wel to haue peased the yre of  
 geffray hys brother / and þus said: 'My<sup>2</sup> dere, dere 28  
 brother / by the body & sowle which I haue gyuen to  
 god, here is no personne, nor within this place that euer  
 spake ony word to me touching my professyon, For I  
 haue it doon of myn owne free wyll & thrugh deuo- 32  
 cion.' 'By my sowle,' said geffray, 'so shalt thou be  
 therfore payed with the other, For it shal not be  
 wytted<sup>3</sup> me to haue a brother of myn a monke' / and

<sup>2</sup> By in MS. (Fr. Mon.)

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *reproché*.

with these wordes he went out of the Chapter, & shetted the doores fast after hym, & closed thabbot & the monkes therynne / and incontynent he made al  
 4 the meyne of the place to bryng there wode & strawe ynoughe al about the Chapter, and fyred it / & sware he shuld brezne them aȝt therynne, & that none shuld escape. Thenne came the ten knyghtes foorth tofore  
 8 geffray, whiche blamed hym of þat horryble faytte / sayeng : ' that Froymond, his broþer, was in good purpos, & that happily thrughe hys <sup>1</sup>prayers & good dedes the sowles of his frendes & other myght be  
 12 asswaged & holpen.' ' By the teeth of god,' sayd thenne geffray, ' nother he nor none monke in this place shal neuer syng masse nor say prayer, but they shal aȝt be bruled & brent.' Thenne departed the x  
 16 knyghtes from hys presence / sayeng that they wold not be coulþable of that merueyllous werke.

He goes out of the chapter, closes all the monks inside, and has wood and straw brought, and swears he will burn them.

His knyghts remonstrate with him,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 182 b.

without avail,

and leave him because they will not be culpable of such a deed.

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete  
 teeth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent  
 20 bothe thabbot & al the monkes there.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Geffray anoon  
 after that the ten knyghtes were departed fro hym,  
 he toke fyre at a lampe within the chirche, & sette the  
 24 fyre in the strawe aȝt about the Chapter, where as were in thabbot, & al the monkes of the place, & hys brother Froymond with them. It was a pyteous syght, For as soone as <sup>2</sup>the monkes sawe the fyre they bygan to  
 28 crye piteously, & to make bytter & doulorous bewaylynges, but al that preuaylled them nought. What shuld I make long compte? Wel it is trouth, that all the monkes were brent / and wel the half of the said  
 32 Abbey or euer geffray departed thens. That don he came to hys hors & lepte vp / but whan he cam in to the felde he retourned hys hōrs, & beheld toward

Geffray takes fire from a church lamp and lights the straw.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 183.

The monks cry bitterly when they see the fire.

They are all burnt, and half of the abbey.

Geffray feels remorse, and begins to sigh bitterly.  
He upbraids himself,

and is full of despair, and like to slay himself.

His knights approach, and one says that it is too late to repent.

Geffray rides swiftly to Mountjouet,

and gets ready to go with the ambassadors.

A messenger from Mailleses recounts to Raymondin the piteous tidings

<sup>2</sup> fol. 183 b.

of the burning of the abbey and the monks.

Raymondin says he cannot believe the story.

thabbaye / & perceyuyng that grete myschief & the  
dommage that he had don there, & his vnkynd & ab-  
homynable deelyng, remors of conscience smote the  
herte of hym, and bygan to syghe and bewayh byttirly / 4  
sayeng vnto him self in this wyse : ‘helas! fals, wycked,  
& vntrue prodytour<sup>1</sup> & enemy of god / woldest thou  
that men dide to the that / whiche thou hast doo to  
the true seruantes of god? / nay certayn.’ And thus 8  
blamed & wytted hym self, so that no man myght  
thinke the dyscomfort & grete dyspaire that he thenne  
toke / & wel I byleue that he had slayn hym self with  
hys owne swerde yf it thenne had not fortunied that 12  
hys ten knyghtes cam to hym there / one of the whiche  
bygan to hym saye / ‘ha / a, my lord, ouer late is this  
repented.’ And whan geffray vnderstode hym / he  
thenne had greter despyte than tofore / but he dayned 16  
not ansuere to the knyght, but rode so fast toward the  
toure of Mountyouet, that with grete peyne myght his  
men folow hym / & so long rode he tyl he came  
thither / And thenne made his apparayh for to goo 20  
with the ambaxatours there as they shold conduyte  
hym / & toke with hym but his x knyghtes. And  
here seaceth thystorye of hym, & speketh of Ray-  
mondin his fader / 24

**H**ere sayth thistory, that a messenger came toward  
Raymondin at merment that came fro mail-  
leses, <sup>2</sup>and after hys obeyssaunce recounted to Raymon-  
dyn ryght pyteous tydynges, sayeng to hym in this 28  
manere : ‘My lord, wel it is trouth, that geffray with  
the great toth your son hath take so grete malencolye  
& suche dueyl of the professyon of your son Froymond  
that he is com to maylleses, & there he hath fyred the 32  
Abbay / & within the chapter brent & bruled all the  
monkes, pryour, & Abbot.’ ‘What sayst thou?’ sayd  
than Raymondyn / ‘that may not be / I can not beleue

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *proditeur*.



it.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the messenger, 'it is  
trouth that I telle you; &, morouer, your son Froy-  
mond is brent & deed with them / and yf ye byleue  
4 me not make me to be putte in to pryson, & yf ye  
fynde otherwyse than I saye, lete me be hanged ther-  
fore.' Thenne Raymondyn sorowfuH & heuy mounted  
foorthwith on horsbak, & toke hys way toward mayl-  
8 leses as fast as hys hors myght bere hym / and hys  
men, who pat myght folowed hym / and he neuer  
seaced tyl he cam thither / where he fonde, as the mes-  
sager said, & sawe the grete doleur & myschief that  
12 geffray had don. Wherof he toke suche yre & anger  
at herte, that almost he was out of hys wyt. 'ha / a,'  
sayd he, 'Geffray, thou haddest the fayrest begynnyng  
of hye prowes & cheualrye to haue come to the degree  
16 of high honour more than ony prynee son lyuyng at  
this day / and now through thy grete cruelte thou shalt  
be reputed & holden vnworthy of al noble fayttes, &  
abhomyned for cause of thys vnkyndnes & horryble  
20 dede of al creatures. By the feyth that I owe to god,  
I byleue it is but fantosme or spyryt werke of this  
woman / and as I trowe she neuer bare no child that  
shal at thende haue perfection, For yet hath she  
24 brought none but that it hath some strange token / see  
I not the <sup>1</sup>horryblenes of her son called Horryble, that  
passed not vii yere of age whan he slew two squyers of  
myn / and or euer he was thre yere old he made dye  
28 two gentyl women his nourryees, thrugh hys byttyng of  
theire pappes? / sawe I not also theyre moder of that  
satirday, whan my brother of Forestz to me brought  
euyll tydynges of her / in fourme of a serpent fro the  
32 nuel dounward? / by god, ye / and wel I wote certayn /  
it is som spyryt, som fantosme or Illusyon that thus  
hath abused me / For the first tyme that I sawe her /  
she knew & coude reherce all my fortune & auenture.'

But the messen-  
ger says it is the  
truth, and that  
Froimond was  
burnt with them.

Raymondin rides  
to Mailleles,

and when he sees  
the mischief

he complains of  
Geffray,

and how he will  
be hated for his  
cruelty.

He cries that he  
believes it is  
spirit work.

He complains  
that Melusine  
never bore a  
perfect child,  
and of the  
horribleness of  
her son Horrible.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 184.

He speaks of  
seeing Melusine  
half woman, half  
serpent, on a  
Saturday,

and says he  
believes her to  
be a spirit.

Raymondin goes  
to Mernent.  
He retires to his  
chamber

and makes pite-  
ous lamentation.

The barons are  
sad,

and send word  
to Melusine at  
Nyort,

but this aug-  
ments the grief  
of Raymondin  
and Melusine.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 184 b.

When Melusine  
reads the letter  
she is sorrowful,  
more for the  
wrath of Ray-  
mondin than  
anything else.

She comes to  
Lusignan,  
where she looks  
so sad,

and sighs so  
much, that it is  
pitiful to see her.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn, pensefull and wroth ouer meruayllously, departed fro Mayllezes, & rode agayn toward Mernent. And whan he was come thither, he alyghted, & went in to 4  
hys chambre, where as he layed hym vpon a bed / and there he made suche lamentacion, & so pyteous bewayl-lynges, that there nys in the world herte so harde / but that it had wepte to here hym. Thenne were al the 8  
barons ryght dolaunt / and whan they sawe that they myght not gyue none allegeance to hys dolour, they toke Counseyll that they shuld lete it wete to their lady Melusyne, whiche was at Nyort that tyme / and 12  
thither they sent a messenger, to recounte to her al the matere of the fayt. Halas! full euyl dide they, For they augmented thereby bothe Raymondyn & Melusyne in theyre douleur & myserye. Now bygynneth their 16  
hard & bytter departyng<sup>1</sup>, eche fro other, whiche dured to Raymondyn his lyf natural / & to Melusyne shal laste her penitence vnto domysday. The messenger thenne rode tyl he came to Nyort, & made his 20  
obeyssaunce, & syn delyuered the lettres to his lady :  
<sup>1</sup>the whiche she toke, & opened it. And whan she vnderstode the tenour of the lettres, she was ryght heuy & dolaunt, & more for the yre & wrath of Raymondin 24  
than for any other thing<sup>1</sup>; For she sawe wel that the meschief that geffray had doon might none otherwyse be as for that tyme present. She thenne made come all her people & aray, and sent for many ladyes & 28  
damoysselles, for to hold her companye / and so departed fro Nyort, & came to Lusynen / and there she sojourned by the space of thre dayes / and euer she was of symple & heuy contenaunce / and went al about 32  
in the place, vp & down, here & there / gyuyng ofte syghes so grete that it was meruaylle & pyteous to here / And the hystory & cronykle, whiche I byleue be trew, sheweth to vs that wel she knew the douleur & 36

- sorow that was nygh her to come / and as to me, I  
 byleue it fermely / but her peple thoughte nothing of  
 that / but they trowed that it had be for cause of the  
 4 grete myschief that was befeH through the fayttes of  
 geffray, to thabbay of maylleses / and also for the  
 wrathe & anger that Raymondyn toke therof. Melu-  
 syne thenne, on the III<sup>de</sup> day, departed fro Lusynen, &  
 8 came to merment wel acompanyed of ladyes & damoy-  
 selles, as tofore I haue sayd. And thenne the barons  
 of the land, that were there assembled for to haue  
 recomforted Raymondin, that they loued entierly / came  
 12 ayenst her, & honourably receyued her / & sayd how  
 they by no wyse coude make Raymondyn to leue hys  
 dolour. 'Wel,' sayd she / 'doubte you no; For, by  
 the grace of god, he shalbe soone recomforted.'
- 16 **M**elusyne, the good lady, that thenne was wel  
 acompanyed of many ladyes & noble damoy-  
 selles, & of the barons of the land, entred in to þe  
 Chambre where as Raymondin was in / the which  
 20 chambre had regarde toward the gardyns, that <sup>1</sup>were  
 commodious & delectables, and also to the feldes  
 toward Lusynen. Thenne whan she sawe Raymondin,  
 humbly & ryght honourably salued hym / but thenne  
 24 he was so dolaunt & replenysshed with yre, that he to  
 her ansuerd neuer a word / and thenne she toke the  
 word, & sayd: 'My lord, grete symplenes & foly it is  
 to you that men repute & hold so sage & so wyse a  
 28 prynee / you thus to maynten & make suche sorowe of  
 that thinge that may none other wyse be, & whiche  
 may not be amended nor remedyed / ye argue ayenst  
 the playsire & wyH of the Creatour, whiche all thinges  
 32 created, & shal vndoo at al tymes whan it playse hym,  
 by suche manere wyse aftir his playsire. Wete it that  
 there nys so grete a synnar in the world / but that  
 is more piteable & mysericordious whan the synnar  
 36 repenteth hym, with herte contryte, of his mysdede &

She knows of the  
 sorrow that is  
 coming,

but her people  
 think she is sad  
 on account of  
 Geffray's mis-  
 chief.

She comes to  
 Mernment,

where they re-  
 ceive her honour-  
 ably, and tell her  
 of Raymondin's  
 grief.

Melusine enters  
 his chamber

<sup>1</sup> fol. 185.

and salutes him.

But he answers  
 not a word.

Melusine chides  
 him for his grief,

and says what is  
 done cannot be  
 undone,

and that God had  
allowed Geffray  
so to do because  
of the sins of the  
monks.

She says they  
have enough to  
rebuild the  
abbey, and to  
endow it richer  
than it was  
before,

and she  
hopes that Gef-  
fray will amend  
his life.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 185 b.

Though Ray-  
mondin knows  
she speaks wise-  
ly, he is so full  
of anger that in  
a cruel voice he  
cries,

synne / yf geffray, your sone & myn, hath doon that  
oultrageous folye thugh his *meruayllous* courage, Wete  
it certaynly that suffred god for cause of the monkes  
mysdedes & synnes, whiche were of euyl, inordinate, & 4  
vnreligious lyuyng / and wold our lord god haue them  
to be punysshed in that manere wyse / how be it, that  
it is vnknown to creature humayne, For the jugements  
of god be ryght secret & *meruayllous*. And, morouer, 8  
my lord, thankyng to god, we haue ynough wherof to  
do make ayen thabbey of Maylleses as fayre & better  
than euer it was tofore, & to empossesse & endowe it  
better & rychelyer, and therin to ordeyne greter nombre 12  
of monkes than euer were there ordeyned. Also, yf it  
playse god, geffray shal mende hys lyf, bothe toward  
our lord god & the world. Wherfore, my lord, leue  
your sorowe, I pray you.' Whan thenne Raymondyn 16  
vn<sup>d</sup>erstode Melusyne, he knew wel that she sayd  
trouth of that she had sayd to hym / and that it was  
best, after rayson, so to doo / but he was replenysshed  
& perced w<sup>th</sup> yre, that al rayson natural was fled & 20  
goon from hym. And thenne, w<sup>th</sup> a right cruel voyce,  
he said in this manyere :

Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a  
swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her 24  
lord, wyted her.

'Go hence, false  
serpent!  
Thou and thy  
children are but  
phantoms.

How can the  
dead have life  
again?

Froimond, your  
only perfect  
child, by devilish  
art has suffered  
death.

'Goo thou hens, fals serpente / by god! nother  
thou nor thy birthe shalbe at thende but  
fantosme / nor none child that thou hast brought shal 28  
come at last to perfection / how shal they that are  
brent & bruled haue their lyues agayn / goode fruyte  
yssued neuer of the, saaf only Froymonde, that was  
youen to god & shorne monke; the whiche, thugh 32  
arte demonyacle, hath myserably suffred deth: For aH



they that are foursenyd<sup>1</sup> with yre obeye<sup>2</sup> the comande-  
ments of the prynces of helle. And perfor, thorryble  
& cruel geffray commanded of his masters, alle the  
4 deuclles of helle, hath doon that abhomynable &  
hydouse forfaytte, as to brenne hys owne propre brother  
& the monkes, that had not deserued deth.' Thenne  
whan melusyne vnderstode these wordes, she toke suche  
8 douleur at herte, that foorthwith she felH in a swoone  
doun to therthe, & was half an ooure long that nother  
aspyracion nor breth was felt nor perceyued in her, but  
as she had be deed. And thenne was Raymondyn  
12 sorowfuller & more wroth than euer he was tofore, For  
thenne he was cooled of his yre, & bygan to make  
grete dueyH, & moche repented hym of that he had  
sayd / but it was for nought, For þat was to late / And  
16 thenne the baronnye of the land, & the ladyes & damoy-  
selles were ryght sory & dolaunt, and toke vp the lady,  
& layed her on a bed / and so moche they dide, that  
she came ayen to her self. And whan she myght  
20 speke, she loked on Raymondyn pyteously, and said /

2 fol. 186.

Geffray burnt his  
brothers by com-  
mand of his  
masters, the  
devils of hell.'

Melusine is over-  
come by his cruel  
words, and  
swoons.

He repents, but  
it avails nought.

When Melusine  
comes to herself  
she looks pite-  
ously at Ray-  
mondin and says,

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed hereafter, how  
Melusyne came to her self ayen, and  
spake to Raymondyn.

24 'H a / a Raymondyn / the day that first tyme I  
sawe the was for me ryght doulourous and  
vnhappy / in an euyl heure sawe I euer thy coynted  
body, thy facion, & thy fayre fygure / euyl I dyde to  
28 desire & coueyte thy beaute, whan thou so falsly hast  
betrayed me / how wel thou art forsworn toward me,  
whan thou putttest thy self in payne to see me / but for  
this, that thou haddest not yet dyscouered nor shewed  
32 to no man nor woman, myn herte forgafe<sup>3</sup> the / and no  
mencion I neuer shuld haue had made therof to the /

'It was an evil  
hour when I first  
saw your figure.

When you falsely  
betrayed me I  
forgave you be-  
cause you kept  
my secret.

3 fol. 186 b.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *enforceenez*.

Our love is now  
turned to hate.

If you had kept  
your oath, I was  
to be exempt  
from torment.

I should have  
been buried at  
Lusignan,

and my anniver-  
sary would have  
been devoutly  
kept.

But now my fate  
is altered.

I must suffer  
grievous peni-  
tence till dooms-  
day.

Melusine shows  
such grief that  
all pity her.

The heart of Ray-  
mondin is nearly  
broken by her  
grief.

He kneels to  
Melusine and  
beseeches her  
pardon.

Melusine calls on  
God to forgive  
him,

and god shuld haue pardoned the. Halas, my frende /  
now is our loue tourned in hate, douleur & hardnes /  
oure solace, playsire & joye ben reuersed in byttir  
teerys & contynuel wepynges, and our good happ is 4  
conuerted in ryght hard & vnfortunate pestilence /  
Halas, my frend! yf thou haddest not falsed thy  
feythe & thyn othe, I was putte & exempted from all  
payne & tourment, & shuld haue had all my ryghtes, & 8  
hadd lyued the cours natural as another woman; &  
shuld haue be buried, aftir my lyf naturel expired,  
with/in the chirche of our lady of Lusynen, where myn  
obsequye & afterward my annyuersary shuld haue be 12  
honourably & deuoutely don / but now I am, thrughe  
thyn owne dede, ouerthrowen & ayen reuersed in the  
greuouse and obscure penytence, where long tyme I haue  
be in, by myn auenture: & thus I muste suffre & bere 16  
it, vnto the day of domme / & all through thy falsed /  
but I beseche god to pardonne the.' Melusyne began  
therne to make suche douleur, that none was there that  
sawe her but he wept for pyte. And whan Ray- 20  
mondyn sawe her douleur & heynnes, almost hys herte  
brake for sorowe, in so moche that he nother herd, nor  
sawe, nor coude hold contenance. /

**T**hystorye sayth that Raymondyn was right dolaunt; 24  
and, for trouth, the true cronykle testyfyeth that  
neuer no man suffred so grete dolour, without of his  
lyf expired. but whan he was a lytel come to hys  
mynde, & sawe Melusyne tofore hym, he kneeled doun 28  
on hys knees, & joyntly<sup>1</sup> handes, thus bygan he to  
saye: 'My dere lady & my frend, my wele, my hoop,  
& myn honour, I beseche & pray you that it playse you  
to pardonne me, & that ye wyl abyde with me.' 'My 32  
swete frend,' sayd Melusyne, that saw the grete habund-  
aunce of teerys fallyng fro hys eyen / 'he that is the  
very forgyuer, creatour & omnipotent, forgyue you your

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *joignant*.

forfaytte ; For as touching myself, I forgyue & pardonne as she does ;  
 you with al my very herte / but as to myn abydyng but declares that  
 with you ony more / it is Impossible / for the veray God will not let  
 4 jugge & almighty god wold neuer suffre me <sup>1</sup>to doo her abide with  
 soo.' him. <sup>1</sup> fol. 167.

Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne  
 felle bothe in a swoune.

8 **A**nd with thoo wordes Melusyne toke vp Raymon- Melusine raises  
 dyn, her lord / and thenne, as they wold haue Raymondin.  
 embraced & kyssed eche other, they fell both at ones in  
 a swoune, so that almost theire hertes brake for grete  
 12 douleur : Certayn there was a pyteous syght. There  
 wept & bewaylled barons / ladyes & damoyselles, sayeng  
 in þis manere : 'Ha, fals Fortune ! We shal lese this  
 day þe best lady that euer gouerned ony land / the  
 16 moost sage / most humble / moost charytable & curteys  
 of aH other lyuyng in erthe.' And they al lamented &  
 bewaylled so pyteously, & rendred teerys in habund-  
 ance, in so moche that it was a pyteous syght. Thenne  
 20 retourned Melusyne to her self out of swounyng, and  
 herd the heuynes & dolour that the baronne made for  
 her departyng / and cam to Raymondyn, that yet laye  
 on the grounde, & toke hym vp / and thenne to hym,  
 24 in heryng of thassistaunce, she said in this manere /

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testa-  
 ment. /

28 **M**y lord & swete frend Raymondyn, Impossible  
 is my lenger taryeng with you ; Wherfore  
 lyst, & herke, & putte in mynde that I shal saye.  
 Wete it, Raymondyn, that certayn after your lyf naturel  
 expired, no man shal not empoesse nor hold your land  
 32 so free in peas as ye now hold it, & your heyres &  
 successours shal haue moche to doo / and wete it shal

'My sweet  
 friend, it is im-  
 possible to stay  
 with you, there-  
 fore listen and  
 keep in mind  
 what I say.  
 After your life no  
 man shall hold  
 your land in  
 peace.'

Your heirs  
through their  
folly shall lose  
their inheritance.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 187 b.

Keep Geffray  
with you, he will  
prove a valiant  
man. I will  
take care of  
Raymond and  
Theoderic,  
though after I go  
you will never  
see me again in  
woman's form.  
I bequeath Par-  
tenay to Theo-  
deric;

Raymond shall  
be Earl of Forestz;  
Geffray will pro-  
vide for himself.

I charge you to  
put Horrible to  
death.'

Raymondin asks  
Melusine to stay  
with him,

but she says that  
it cannot be done.

She then kisses  
him tenderly and  
bids him adieu.

be ouerthrawn & subdued, through theire folly, from  
theire honour & from theire ryght enherytaunce / but  
doubte you not, For I shal help you duryng the cours  
of your lyf naturel / and putte not geffray, oure sone, 4  
fro your Court / he is your sone,<sup>1</sup> & he shal preue a  
noble & valyaunt man. Also we haue two yong chil-  
dren male, Raymond & theoderyk / of them I shal take  
good heede / how be it, aftir my departyng / that ryght 8  
soone shal be / ye shal neuer see me in no womans  
fourme. And I wyl & bequethe to theodoryk, yongest  
of all our children, the lordshipes with al thappurten-  
aunces of Partenay / Vernon / Rochelle, & the port 12  
there / And Raymond shal be Erle of Forestz / and as  
touching geffray, he shal wel purueye for hym self.  
Thenne drew she Raymodyn & hys CounseyH apart,  
& sayd to them in this wyse: 'As touching our sone, 16  
that men calle Horryble, that hath thre eyen / wete it  
for certayn, yf he be lefte alyue / neuer man dide, nor  
neuer shal doo, so grete domage as he shaH. Wher-  
fore I pray & also charge you that, anoone aftir my 20  
departyng, he be put to deth; For yf ye doo not soo /  
his lyf shall fuH dere be bought, & neuer ye dide so  
grete folye.' 'My swete loue,' sayd Raymodyn, 'there  
shal be no fawte of it / but, for goddis loue, haue pyte 24  
on yourself, & wyl abyde with me.' And she said to  
hym: 'My swete frend, yf it were possyble / soo wold  
I fayne doo / but it may not be. And wete it wel, that  
my departyng fro you is more gryeuous & doubtous a 28  
thousand tymes to me than to you / but it is the wyH  
& playsire of hym that can do & vndoo al thinges.'  
and, with these wordes, she embraced & kyssed hym  
fuH tenderly / sayeng: 'Farwel, myn owne lord & 32  
husbond; Adieu, myn herte, & al my joye; Farwel, my  
loue, & al myn wele / and yet as long as thou lyuest, I  
shal feed myn eyen with the syght of the / but pyte I  
haue on the of this, that thou mayst neuer see me but 36



in horryble figure' / and therwith she lepte vpon the  
windowe that was toward the felde & gardyns ayenst  
Lusynen. /

She leaps to the  
window,

4 Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a  
Serpent flough out at a wyndowe.

- <sup>1</sup> In this partye, saith thistorye, that whan Melusyne  
was vpon the wyndowe as before is said, she  
8 toke leue sore wepyng, and her commanded to all the  
barons, ladyes, & damoysselles that were present / and  
after said to Raymondyn: 'here be two rynges of gold  
that be bothe of one vertue, and wete it for trouth that  
12 as long as ye haue them, or one of them / you / nor  
your heyres that shal haue them after you, shal neuer  
be dyscomfyted in plee nor in batayll, yf they haue  
good cause / nor they that haue them shal not dey by  
16 no dede of armes,' and Immediatly he toke the rynges.  
And after bygan the lady to make pyteous regrets and  
greuouse syghynges, beholdyng Raymondyn right pyte-  
ously / And they that were there wept alway <sup>2</sup>so ten-  
20 derly that eueryche of them had grete pyte, they  
syghyng full pyteously. Thenne Melusyne in her la-  
mentable place, where she was vpon the wyndowe  
hauyng respectiō toward Lusynen, said in this wyse,  
24 'Ha, thou swete Countre / in the haue I had so grete  
solas & recreacion, in the was al my felicite / yf god  
had not consented that I had be so betrayed I had be  
full happy / alas! I was wonnt to be called lady / &  
28 men were redy to fulfyllle my commandements / &  
now not able to be alowed a symple seruaunt / but  
assygned to horryble paynes & tourments vnto the day  
of fynal iudgement. And al they that myght come  
32 to my presence had grete Joye to behold me / and fro  
this tyme forth they shal dysdayne me & be ferefull  
of myn abhomynable figure / and the lustes & playsirs  
that I was wonnt to haue shal be reuertid in tribulaciōns

<sup>1</sup> fol. 188.

and again takes  
leave, weeping  
sorely.

She gives Ray-  
mondin two  
magic rings.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 188 b.

Those present  
weep, so full of  
pity are they.

She looks from  
the window to-  
wards Lusignan,

and speaks of her  
sad future,

and how all will  
disdain her be-  
cause of her  
abominable  
figure.

& grievous penitences.' And thenne she bygan to say  
 with a hye voyce: 'Adieu, my lustis & playsirs / Far  
 wel, my lord / barons / ladyes, & damoyselles, and I  
 beseche you in the moost humble wyse that ye vouche- 4  
 sauf to pray to the good lord deuoutely for me / that  
 it playse hym to mynusshe my dolorous peyne / not-  
 withstanding I wyl lete you knowe what I am & who  
 was my fader, to thentent that ye reproche not my 8  
 children, that they be not borne but of a mortal woman,  
 and not of a serpent, nor as a creature of the fayry /  
 and that they are the children of the doughter of kynge  
 Elynas of Albanye and of þe queene Pressyne, and that 12  
 we be thre sustirs þat by predestinacion are predes-  
 tynate to suffre & bere grievous penaunces, and of this  
 matere I may no more shew, nor wyl.' And therwith  
 she said: 'farwel, my lord Raymondyn, and forgete not 16  
 to doo with your sone called Horryble this that I haue  
 you said / but thinke of your two sones Raymond &  
 Theodoryk.' Thenne she bygan to gyue a sore syghe,  
 & therwith flawgh in to thayer out of the wyndowe, 20  
 trans<sup>1</sup>figured lyke a serpent grete & long in xv foote of  
 length. And wete it wel that on the basse stone of  
 the wyndowe apereth at this day themprynte of her  
 foote serpentous. Thenne encreaced the lamentable 24  
 sorowes of Raymondyn, and of the barons, ladyes, &  
 damoyselles / and moost in especial Raymondyns heuy-  
 nes aboue al other / And foorthwith they loked out of  
 the wyndowe to behold what way she toke / And 28  
 the noble Melusyne so transffygured, as it is aforsaid,  
 flyeng thre tymes about the place, passed foreby the  
 wyndow, gyuyng at euerche tyme an horrible cry &  
 pyteous, that caused them that beheld her to wepe for 32  
 pyte. For they perceyued wel that loth she was to  
 departe fro the place, & that it was by constraynte.  
 And thenne she toke her way toward Lusynen, makyng  
 in thayer by her furyousnes suche horryble crye & 36

She tells that her  
 father was

Elynas, King of  
 Albany, and her  
 mother Queen  
 Pressine; and  
 that she is one of  
 three sisters.

She gives a sore  
 sigh, and be-  
 comes like a  
 great serpent;  
<sup>1</sup> fol. 189.

and to this day  
 her serpent's  
 footprint is on  
 the base-stone of  
 the window.

The grief of Ray-  
 mondin and his  
 people increases.

They see Melu-  
 sine fly three  
 times about the  
 place, uttering  
 horrible cries;

then she makes  
 her way to Lusig-  
 nan, moaning so

noyse that it semed al thayer to be replete with thundre  
& tempeste. /

loud that it  
sounded like  
thunder.

Thus, as I haue shewed, went Melusyne, lyke a ser-  
4 T pent, flyeng in thayer toward Lusynen / & not so  
hygh / but that the men of the Countre might see her /  
and she was herd a myle in thayer, For she made suche  
noyse that al the peple was abasshed. And so she  
8 slawgh to Lusynen thre times about the Fortres, cry-  
eng so pyteously & lamentably, lyke the voyce of a  
Mermayde. Wherof they of the Fortresse & of the  
toun were gretly abasshed, & wyst not what they shuld  
12 thinke, For they sawe the fygure of a serpent, and the  
voyce of a woman pat cam fro the serpent. And whan  
she had floughe about the Fortresse thre tymes she  
lyghted so sodaynly & horribly vpon the toure called  
16 poterne, bryngyng with her such thundre & tempeste,  
that it semed that bothe the Fortres & the toun shuld  
haue sonk and fah / & therwith they lost the syght of  
her, and wyst not where she was become. But anoone  
20 after that cam messagers fro Raymondyn, <sup>1</sup>that he sent  
thither to haue tydynges of her / to whom was shewed  
how she fyl vpon the fortresse / & of theire fere that  
they had had of her / and the messagers retourned  
24 toward Raymondyn, & shewed hym al the caas. And  
thenne bygan Raymondyn to entre into hys sorowe.  
And the tydynges were knowen in the Countre, the  
pouere peuple made grete lamentacion & sorowe, &  
28 wysshed her ayen with pyteous syghes, For she had  
doo them grete good. And thenne bygan thobsequyes  
of her to be obseruyd in al abbeyes & chirches that she  
had founded / and Raymondin, her lord, dede to be  
32 doon for her almesses & prayers thugh al his land.

She flies through  
the air to Lusig-  
nan, making a  
great noise, and  
then flies three  
times round the  
fortress,

lamenting pite-  
ously like the  
voice of a mer-  
maid.

She alights on  
Postern Tower in  
such wise that it  
seemed the for-  
tress would fall.

She disappears.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 189 b.

Messengers are  
sent by Ray-  
mondin to get  
tidings of her.

Raymondin and  
all the people  
lament.

Her obsequies  
are observed in  
all the churches  
she had built.

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do  
brenne his sone called Horryble.

MELUSINE.

Y

The barons remind Raymondin of Melusine's command about Horrible.

He bids them fulfil her order.

Horrible is led to a cave

and suffocated.

He is buried at Neufmoustier.

Thenne came tofore the presence of Raymondyn the barons of the land, and said: 'My lord, it behouyth that we doo of your sone horryble this that his moder hath charged you & vs to doo.' And Raymondyn to them ansuerd, 'doo you in this that ye are commanded to doo.' And then they went and toke by fayre wordes this Horryble / & led hym in to a caue. For yf he had had warnyng of theire purpos 8 they shuld not haue had take hym without grete peyne. And thenne they closed hym in smoke of wet hey. And whan he was deed they buryed hym honnourably in the Abbey called the Neufmoustier. 12

### Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children.

Raymondin goes to Lusignan, and brings his children Raymondin and Theoderic.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 190.

Melusine visits them every day.

They grow faster than other children.

Raymondin when he hears of her coming,

hopes to have her back, but in vain.

Raymondin is so woful that he never laughs.

Thenne departed Raymondyn from thens & came to Lusynen, & brought with hym his two children, 16 Raymond & theodoryke / and said that he shuld neuer entre ayen in to the place wher <sup>1</sup>he had lost his wyf. And wete it wel that Melusyne came euery day to vysyte her children, & held them tofore the fyre and 20 eased them as she coude / and wel sawe the nourryces that, who durst no word speke. And more encreced the two children in nature in a weke than dide other children in a moneth; wherof the people had grete 24 meruayll. but whan Raymondyn knew it by the nourryces that melusyne came there euery nyght to vysyte her children / relessed his sorowe / trustyng to haue her ayen / but that thoughte was for nought, For neuer 28 after sawe he her in fourme of a woman / how be it dyuers haue sith sen her in femenyn figure. And wete it that how wel Raymondyn hooped to haue her ayen / neuertheles he had alway suche hertly sorowe that 32 there is none that can tell it / And there was neuer man syth that sawe hym lawgh nor make joye / and



hated gretly geffray with the grete toth / and yf he  
 myght haue had hym in his yre, he wold haue dystroyed  
 hym. But here seaceth the hystorye of him And speketh  
 4 of geffray. /

He hates Geffray.

**T**hystorye sayth, that geffray rode so long<sup>t</sup> that he  
 came in Northomberland with the ambaxatours  
 and hys ten knyghtes with hym / And whan the barons  
 8 of the Countre vnderstod<sup>t</sup> his commyng<sup>t</sup> they cam ayenst  
 hym honourably, & receyued hym solemply, sayeng :  
 ‘ha, sire, of your joyful comyng we owe wel to lawde  
 & preyse our lord god, For without it be by you &  
 12 through your prowes we may not be delyuered of the  
 horryble geaunt and meruayllous murdrer, Grymauld,  
 by whom aH this countre is dystroyed.’ Thenne an-  
 suerde geffray to them : ‘And how may ye knowe that  
 16 by me ye may be quytte & delyuered of hym?’ to  
 whom they ansuered, ‘My lord, the sage astronomyens  
 haue said to vs that the geaunt grymauld <sup>1</sup>may not dey  
 but by your dede of armes / and also we knowe for  
 20 certayn that he knoweth it wel. Wherefore yf ye go to  
 hym, and that yf ye telle hym your name ye shall not  
 kepe hym, but he shall you escape.’ Thenne sayd  
 geffray to the barons, ‘Sire, lede me toward the place  
 24 where I may find<sup>t</sup> hym, For grete desyre I haue to see  
 hym.’ And Immedyatly they toke hym two knyghtes  
 of the land that conduyted hym toward the place / but  
 that one of them said to that other þat they shuld not  
 28 approche al to nygh grymauld / and that they myght  
 not beleue that geffray shuld haue the vycetory of hym.  
 And thenne geffray toke leue of the barons and de-  
 parted, the two knyghtes with hym, and so long they  
 32 rode tyl they saw the montayne of Brombelyo. Thenne  
 sayd the two knyghtes to geffray, ‘My lord, yonder ye  
 may see the mountayne where he holdeth hym / & this  
 way shal lede you thither without ony fayH, For cer-  
 36 tainly he is euer at yonder trees vpon that mountayne

Geffray comes to Northumber-land.

The barons tell him they are joyful at his arrival,

because they will be delivered of Grymauld.

Geffray asks how they know.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 190 b.

They answer that wise astron- omers have said that he alone can slay Grymauld, and the giant knows this too, so Geffray must not tell him his name.

Geffray is taken to the mountain of Brombelyo,

where the knights show

where Grymauld  
is to be found.  
Here they leave  
him for fear of  
hurt.

Geffray tells  
them that it is  
well he has not  
trusted to their  
aid.

for to espye them that passe by the way. Now may  
ye goo thither, yf it playse you, For as touching our  
personnes we wyl goo no ferþer that way.' And geffray  
ansuerd to them in this manere, 'Yf I had come vpon 4  
thaffyaunce of your ayde I had faylled therof at this  
tyme.' 'By my feyth,' sayd one of them, 'ye say  
trouth.' Thenne came they to the foot of the hyll /  
and there geffray descended & armed hym, and syn 8  
remounted on his hors, and layed the sheld tofore hys  
brest, and toke his spere, and thenne he said to the  
two knyghtes that they shuld abyde hym vnder the  
mountayne, and that they shuld soone see what therof 12  
shuld befall. And they sayd that so shuld they doo.

fol. 191.

Cap. XLIX. How geffray *with* the grete  
tooth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouer-  
threw hym *with* hys spere. / 16

Geffray leaves  
the knyghts  
and ascends the  
mountain.

He sees the  
giant,  
who is astonished  
at Geffray's bold-  
ness in coming  
against him  
alone.

The giant takes  
a club.

1 fol. 191 b.

He demands  
Geffray's name,  
and threatens  
him with death.

Geffray defies  
the giant,

**I**n this partye sayth thistorye that Geffray toke leue  
of the two knyghtes, & mounted the mountayne,  
so that he approached nygh the trees where as he  
apperceyued the geaunt *pat satte vnder nethe* them. but 20  
assoone as he sawe geffray he meruaylled gretly how  
one knyght alone had the hardynes to haue dare  
come toward hym, and thenne he thought in hym self  
that he cam to treate *with* hym for som patyse or for 24  
som peas. but he sware hys lawe that lytel or nought  
he shuld entrete hym. Thenne rose vp the geaunt and  
toke an horryble grete Clubbe in hys handes, which  
ony man had ynough to doo to lyft it vp fro the 28  
ground. <sup>1</sup>And so he came ayenst Geffray, and cryed  
*with* a hie voys, 'What art thou that dardest come so  
boldly toward me in armes / by my lawe wel shal thou  
be payed therfor. For who that sendeth the hyther 32  
wold haue the deed.' And geffray cryed to hym, 'I  
deffye the / deffend thou thy self yf thou canst.' And

- with these wordes geffray couched hys spere & sporyd  
 hys hors and ranne & smote the geaunt in the brest so  
 myghtily that he ouerthrow hym, the legges vpward to  
 4 the ground / and anon geffray descendid fro his hors,  
 feeryng that the geaunt shuld slee hym vndre hym,  
 and fasted it by þe brydel at a tree / & pushed his  
 sheld behynd, and toke his good trenchaunt sword;  
 8 For wel he sawe that it were grete foly to hym to  
 abyde the stroke of the geauntis Clubbe. And thenne  
 cam the geaunt toward geffray, but almost he coude not  
 perceyue hym for cause he was so lytel of personne to  
 12 the regarde of hym. And whan he was nygh hym he  
 said to hym, 'Say me thou lytel body, who art thou  
 that so valyauntly hast ouerthrawn me? / by mahomik  
 I shaft neuer haue honour but I auenge me.' And  
 16 thenne geffray ansuerde to hym, 'I am Geffray with  
 the grete teeth, sone to Raymondyn of Lusynen.' And  
 whan the geaunt vnderstod hym, he was ryght dolaunt,  
 For wel he wyst that he myght not be slayne but with  
 20 geffrayes handes. not that withstanding he ansuerd to  
 hym, 'I knowe the wel ynough. thou slough that  
 other day my Cousin Guedon in Garande, al the  
 deuelles of helle haue brought the now hither.' And  
 24 geffray hym ansuerd, 'no doubte / but I shal slee the  
 yf I may.' And whan the geant vnderstod it, he  
 haunced his Clubbe & wold haue dyscharged it vpon  
 geffrayes heed, but he faylled, And thenne Geffray  
 28 smote hym with his swerd vpon the sholder. <sup>1</sup>For he  
 myght not reche to his heed, & cutte the haulte piece  
 of his harneys, and made his swerd to entre in his  
 flesshe wel a palme deep, and thenne the blood felt  
 32 doon along his body vnto the heelys of hym. And  
 whan he felt that stroke he cryed & said to geffray /  
 'cursed be that arme that by suche strengthe can  
 smyte, & hanged be the smyth that forged that swerd.  
 36 For neuer blood was drawen out of my body of no

and rushes  
forward and  
overthrows him.

Geffray dis-  
mounts,

fastens his horse  
to a tree,  
and takes his  
sword and shield.

The giant ap-  
proaches Geffray,  
but can hardly  
see him.

He asks Geffray  
who he is.

Geffray answers  
that he is the  
son of Raymon-  
din of Lusignan.  
The giant is sad  
at this news, be-  
cause he knows  
that Geffray  
alone can slay  
him.

The giant says  
he knows him as  
the slayer of  
Guedon.

Geffray tells the  
giant that he will  
kill him too.

The giant raises  
his club, but  
misses Geffray.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 102.

Geffray wounds  
the giant,

who curses  
Geffray's arm,

and strikes back. manere wepen al were it neuer so good.' And thenne  
 with his clubbe he wend to haue smyte geffray / but  
 geffray fled the stroke. For wete it for trouth that yf  
 he had atteyned hym he had slayn hym / but god, on 4  
 whom hys trust was, wold not suffre it. And ye owe  
 to wete for certayn that with that same stroke the  
 Clubbe entred into the ground wel a foot deep / but  
 or euer the geaunt myght have haunced his Clubbe, 8  
 geffray smote on it with his swerd by suche strengthe  
 that he made it fligh out of the geauntes handes. and  
 therewith he cutte a grete piece of it.

Geffray avoids  
 the blow.

The force of the  
 giant's stroke  
 drove his club  
 a foot into the  
 ground.

Before it is  
 raised Geffray  
 strikes it from  
 his hands.

### Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray 12 folowed hym.

**T**henne was the geaunt ryght dolaunt & abasshed  
 whan he sawe his Clubbe þus cutte lyeng on the  
 grounde, For he durst not bowe hym self to take it vp. 16  
 Thenne he lept on geffray & strake hym with his fyst  
 vpon the helmet with so grete myght & yre that almost  
 geffray was astonyed therwith all. but geffray, cora-  
 geous & hardy, smote the geant vpon the þye, so that 20  
 he cutte a grete part of it. And thenne whan the  
 geaunt sawe hym thus hurt he withdrew hym a lytel  
 backward, and syn bygan to flee / but geffray, holdyng  
 his swerd, folowed hym / and the geaunt entred into 24  
 a hoſt within the mountayne, Wherof geffray was  
 abasshed /. Thenne came geffray <sup>1</sup>to the hoſt and loked  
 in, but it was so obscure & derk & so deep that he  
 sawe nor wyst where the geaunt was become. And he 28  
 retourned and toke & mounted ayen vpon his hors, and  
 descended into þe valey, & came to hys meyne that  
 abode for hym there, whiche had grete meruayll whan  
 they sawe hym retourne hole & sauſ / and in especial 32  
 the two knightes wondred moche & were abasshed of  
 it / and they asked hym yf he had sene the geaunt /  
 and he said to them, 'I haue faught with hym / and

The giant fears  
 to bend to lift  
 his club,  
 so he strikes  
 Geffray with his  
 fist.

Geffray smites  
 the giant on the  
 thigh.

He flies to a hole  
 in the mountain.  
 Geffray follows

<sup>1</sup> fol. 192 b.  
 and looks in,  
 but it is so dark  
 that he cannot  
 see the giant.

Geffray rides to  
 his men, who  
 marvel at his safe  
 return.

The two knights  
 ask if he has seen  
 the giant.



he is fled & entred in to an hoſt, where as I may not see hym.' And they demanded of geffray yf he had told hym hys name / and he ansuerd, 'ye' / and thenne  
 4 they ſaid that it was for nought to ſeke hym, For wel he wylt that he ſhuld dey by the handes of geffray. 'Doubte you not,' ſaid geffray, 'For wel I knowe where he is entred in / and to morne, with goddes  
 8 help, I ſhal fynd hym wel.' And whan they vnderſtoode Geffray to ſpeke they had grete joye, and ſaid that geffray was the moost valyaunt knight of the world.

Geffray tells how he fought him, and how he entered a hole in the mountain.

They ſay that there is no uſe of looking for the giant, becauſe Geffray has told his name.

Geffray ſays that with God's help he will find him next day.

## 12 Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoſt for to fyght with the geaunt./

And thenne on the morowe by tymes Geffray armed hym & mounted vpon his hors & rode tyl he  
 16 came to the ſaid hoſt vpon the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' ſaid geffray thenne / 'this geaunt is twyes as grete as I, & ſith he is entred here in, wel I ſhal goo through it / and ſo ſhal I do whatſomeuer it beſeth  
 20 therof.' And thenne he toke hys ſwerd in his hand, & fayre & ſoftly lete hym ſelf faſt into the hoſt / and as he was in to the botome of it, he perceyued ſome light, & ſawe a lytel path. And thenne he made the  
 24 ſigne of the cros & foorth<sup>1</sup> went that way./

Geffray rides in the morning to the hole where Grimold diſappeared.

He jumps in ſword in hand, and ſees a light and a path.

He makes the ſign of the cros and follows it.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 193.

## Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the ſepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn.

Geffray thenne went not ferre whan he fond a  
 28 ryche Chambre, where as were grete ryches and grete Caudſtykes of fyn gold, and vpon them grete tapers white wax, brennyng ſo clere that it was  
 32 meruayll. And in the myddes of the Chambre he fonde a noble & ryche tombe of fyn gold, al ſette with

Geffray comes to a chamber

that contains a noble tomb,

and an alabaster  
statue of a  
queen,

with this inscrip-  
tion, 'Here lieth  
my husband,  
King Elynas of  
Albany,'  
and other writing  
regarding his  
burial, and his  
daughters Melu-  
sine, Melior and  
Palastine;

and how the  
giant was put on  
guard until  
the arrival of an  
heir of one of the  
daughters.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 193 b.

Geffray looks  
a long while at  
the inscriptions,  
but knows not  
that he is of the  
lineage of Elynas.

Geffray leaves  
the chamber, and  
makes his way to  
a field, where  
he sees a great  
tower.

He finds the gate,  
and enters the  
hall, where there  
are over a hun-  
dred prisoners.

perlys & precyous stones, & vpon it was figured the  
fourme of a knyght, that had on hys heed a ryche  
croune of gold *with* many precyous stones / and nygh  
by that tombe, a grete ymage of Albaster, kerued & 4  
made aftir the fourme of a quene, crowned *with* a ryche  
crowne of gold / the whiche ymage held a table of  
gold / where-as were wryton the wordes that folowen.  
'Here lyeth my lord myn husband the noble kyng 8  
Elynas of Albanye' / and also shewed al the manyere  
how he was buryed there, and for what cause. And  
also spake of theire thre doughtirs, that is to wete,  
Melusyne, Melyor, and Palastyne / and how they were 12  
punysshed bycause that they had closed theire fader /  
as in thystory tofore is reherced. Also it shewed by  
wrytyng how the geaunt had be there ordeyned for the  
kepyng & sauegarde of the place, vnto tyme he were 16  
putte therfro by the prowesse of one of the heyres of  
the said thre doughtirs / and how there myght none  
neuer entre *within* yf he were not of that lynage / and  
in these tables of gold was wel dyuyssed along as it is 20  
wreton in the Chapytre of king Elynas / and thus geffray  
beholding & seeyng, [pondered] by grete space<sup>1</sup> vpon  
<sup>2</sup>the tables as vpon the beaute of the place / but he  
knewe not yet that the tables shewed that he was of the 24  
lynnee of kyng Elynas & Presyne his wyf. And whan  
he had wel behold a long tyme he departed, & went by  
a waye obscure tyl he fonde a feld, thenne loked he  
tofore hym, & sawe a grete toure, square, wel batel- 28  
mented, & went toward and went about the toure tyl  
he fonde the gate the whiche was open, & the bridge  
let fall down, & entred in, & came to the haH, where  
he fonde a grete yron trayH,<sup>3</sup> wherin were closed a 32  
hondred men & more of the Countre that the geaunt

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Et à ce veoir et regarder advisa Geuffroy par grant temps.*

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *traillis.*

held for hys prysonners./ And whan they sawe  
 geffray they meruaylled moche, & hym sayd, 'Sire, for  
 the loue of god flee you, or ye shal be deed; For the  
 4 geaunt shaH come ryght foorth that shal dystroye you  
 al, were ye an C suche as ye are' / And geffray  
 ansuerd them al thus: 'Fayre lordes, I am not here  
 come but only the geaunt to fynd / & I shuld haue  
 8 don to grete foly to be come fro so ferre hither to  
 retourne so hastily.' And after these wordes cam the  
 geaunt fro slepe. But whan he sawe geffray he knew  
 hym, and sawe wel that his deth was nygh. and had  
 12 grete feer / and thenne he fledd unto a chambre, the  
 whiche he sawe open, & speryd the doore to hym.  
 And whan geffray that perceyued, he was ryght sorowful  
 that he had not mete with hym at the entryng of the  
 16 Chambre./

**T**hystorye sayth that geffray was right dolaunt whan  
 he sawe the geaunt was entred into the chambre,  
 and that he had speryd the doore to hym. Thenne  
 20 cam geffray toward the doore, rennyng with a grete  
 radeur, & smote with his foot so mightily that he  
 made the doore to flye vnto the myddes of the chambre.  
 1 And thenne the Geaunt swyftly went out at the doore  
 24 bycause he might none other way passe, and held in  
 his hand a gret mayllet wherof he gaaf to geffray suche  
 a stroke vpon the bassynet that he made hym al  
 amased. And whan geffray felt the stroke, that was  
 28 harde & heuy, he foyned with his swerd at his brest,  
 with suche yre that it entred in the geaunt thrughe to  
 the cros of the swerd. And thenne the geant made vp  
 2 an horryble cry, sayeng, 'I am deed, I am deed.' And  
 32 whan they that were in the traylles of yron herd it /  
 they cryed with an hye voys, 'Ha, noble man, blessid  
 be the ooure that thou were borne of a woman. We  
 pray the for the loue of god, that thou haue vs hens,

They are asto-  
 nished to see  
 Geffray, and ad-  
 vise him to fly  
 from the giant.

Geffray replies  
 that he has come  
 to find him;

and just as he  
 finished speak-  
 ing the giant  
 appeared. When he saw  
 Geffray he knew  
 his death was at  
 hand. He fled to a  
 chamber, and  
 barred the door.

Geffray bursts it  
 open.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 194.

The giant rushes  
 on Geffray, and  
 strikes him with  
 a mallet;

then Geffray  
 thrusts his sword  
 into the giant  
 right up to the  
 hilt.

The giant cries  
 out, 'I am dead,  
 I am dead!'

The prisoners on  
 hearing the cry  
 bless the hour of  
 Geffray's birth,  
 and beg their  
 deliverance.

For thou hast at this day delyuered this land out of the gretest myserye that euer people was in.'/

Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the geaunt kept in 4 pryson.

Geffray finds the keys, and releases them.

He tells how he came,

and presents the prisoners with the contents of the tower.

And thenne geffray cerched the keyes so longe tyl he fonde them, & lete the prysonners out; and this doon, they aȝ kneeled tofore hym / & asked hym 8 by what way he was come. And he said to them the trouth. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'it is not in remembraunce that this foure hondred yere was no man so hardy to passe by the Caue, but onely the geaunt 12 and his antecessours, that fro heyre to heyre haue dystroyed aȝ this Countre / but wel we shal bryng you another way.' And thenne geffray gaf to them al the hauoir of the toure. / 16

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott.

fol. 194 b.  
The prisoners put the giant's body on a chariot, and burn it. Geffray returns to the valley with the prisoners bearing their shares of the goods of the tower and the giant's head.

Geffray is feasted; he refuses gifts, and leaves the country.

The prisoners take the giant's head about the

The prysonners thann toke the Geaunt deed, & putte hys body in a Charyot, and sette hym ryght vp, 20 & bound hym so that he shuld not faȝ, & putte fyre all about hym. And this don, they led geffray to the place where he had left his hors, vpon the whiche he mounted, & descended toward the valey with al the 24 goodes that they had. Wherof euery man had his part / and toke the heed hool of the geaunt with them / and came foorth tyl they sawe geffrayis knightes and the more part of the nobles & peple of the Countre, 28 the which fested & dide to geffray grete honour / and to hym wold they haue youen grete yestes, but he wold none take / but toke his leue, & departed fro them. And the prysonners bare the heed of the geaunt thurgh 32 al goodȝ tounes for euery man to see, of the whiche



sight euery man had grete meruey<sup>H</sup> that one man alone durst be so hardy to assaylle such a deue<sup>H</sup>. And here seaceth thistory of that more to speke / and retourneth  
4 to speke of geffray.

country, and the people marvel that one man should have been brave enough to have fought such a devil.

**I**n this partye sayth thistorye that geffray rode so long that he came to mountyoued<sup>1</sup> in garande, where they of the countrey receyued<sup>d</sup> hym nobly. And

Geffray is well received at Mountjouet.

8 for thenne was come his brother Raymond to enfourme hym of the yre that their fader had, & of his wordes that he had said of hym, And hym recounted fro the bygynnyng vnto the fyn. And how their moder was

His brother Raymond tells of their father's rage, and how their mother had departed owing to the behaviour of the Earl of Forest; and that she was a daughter of King Elynas.

12 departed and al the manere / And how the first bygynnyng of her departyng<sup>t</sup> was through their vncle of Forestz. And how she had said at her departyng that she was doughter of kyng Elynas of Albanye.

16 And whan geffray her<sup>t</sup> this word<sup>t</sup> he bethought hym of <sup>2</sup>the table that he fon<sup>t</sup> vpon the tombe of kyng Elynas. And by this he knew that he and his brethern were come of the same lynage; wherof he thought

<sup>2</sup> fol. 195.

Geffray recollects the inscription on the tomb of Elynas, and understands that he is of the king's lineage. He is sorry for his mother,

20 hym self the bettre, but this not *with* standing he was ryght sorowfu<sup>ll</sup> of the departyng of hys moder, & of the heuynes of hys fader / and knew the<sup>ne</sup> wel that this misaduenture was cōme & grew by therle of

24 Forestz his vncle. Wherfor he sware by the holy trynyte that he shuld quyte hym. And the<sup>ne</sup> he made to go to horsback hys brother and his x. knyghtes, and rode toward the Countee of Forestz / and had

and swears revenge on the Earl of Forest.

28 tydynges that the Erle his vncle was in a Fortresse that was edyfyed vpon a roche ryght hye / and was the self Fortres named at that tyme Jalensy, and now it is called the Castel Marcelly.

Geffray takes his brother and ten knyghts, and rides to his vncle's castle.

32 Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncle.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Monjouet*.

He enters his uncle's hall, and finds him among his barons, and calls out 'To death traitor, for through thee we have lost our mother.'

Geffray approaches the Earl, with sword drawn.

The Earl runs out of a door followed by Geffray, who chases him to the top of the tower.

1 fol. 195 b.

The Earl gets out of a window to pass to another tower, but loses his hold and falls dead at the foot. Geffray looks out of the window and upbraids him for the loss of his mother.

Geffray descends to the hall, where none dare to speak against him.

He orders his uncle to be buried, and explains to the barons his uncle's misdeed.

Geffray makes his uncle's barons do homage to his brother Raymondin.

So long rode geffray that he came to the Castel and anoone he alighted & went into the hall where he fond the Erle among his barons / and thenne he cryed with an hye voyce / 'to deth traytour / 4 For thrughe the we haue lost our moder' / and foorth with drew his swerd & yede toward the Erle / And the Erle whiche knew wel hys fyersnes and anoone fled toward a doore open / and that part geffray 8 folowed hym / and so long chassed hym fro chambre to chambre to the hiest part of the toure where he sawe he myght no ferder flee / he toke a wyndowe / and supposed to haue passed vnto a tour lnygh but for 12 to saue hym from the yre of geffray / but footyng faylled hym, & fell down deed to the grounde. And thenne geffray loked out of the wyndowe, & sawe hym al to rent & brusið lyeng deed on the erthe / but 16 therof he toke no pyte / but sayd 'False traytour by thyn euyl report I haue lost my lady my moder / now haue I quyted the therfore.' And thenne he came down ayen to þe halle / but none so hardy was there 20 that durst say one word ayenst hym. And he thenne commanded that his vncl shold be buryed / and so he was and his obsequye don. And after þat geffray recounted & shewed to the barons of the land why 24 he wold haue slayne his vncl / and bycause of the Erles mysdede and false reporte they were somewhat peased. And thenne Geffray dide make them to doo homage to Raymond his brother, that was affirward 28 Erle of Forestz. And now seaceth thistory of hym to speke / and retourneth to shewe of Raymondyn his fader /

Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen 32 toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy.

Thystorye sayth that soone aftir this delyt was shewed to Raymondyn, wherof he was ryght dolaunt & sorowful / but he forgate it lightly, bycause  
 4 that his brother had announced hym the tydynges whereby he lost his wyf / and said to hym self / 'this pat is doo may be none otherwyse / I most pease geffray or he doo only more damage.' And <sup>1</sup>therefore  
 8 he sent word to hym by hys brother Theodoryke that he shuld come toward hym at Lusynen. And geffray came to his fader at his mandement / and as ferre as he sawe hym he putte hym self on his knees / and  
 12 prayed hym of pardon & mercy, sayeng in this wyse, 'My ryght redoubted lord, my dere fader, I beseche you of forgyfnes & pardon / and I sware you that I shal doo make ayen thabbay of Maylleses fayrer than  
 16 euer it was afore / and there I shal found ten monkes ouer the nombre of them that were there byfore.'  
 'By god,' said Raymondyn, 'al that may be doo with the helpe of god / but to the deed ye may not restore  
 20 theire lyf. But geffray it is trouth that I musto go to a pelgrymage that I haue promysed god to do. And therfor I shal leue you the gouernaunce of my land / and yf by auenture god dido hys wylle of me, al the  
 24 land is yours / but I wyl & charge you this that your moder hath ordeyned by her last wylle to be doo be fulfilled. She hath bequethed to Theodoryke Partenay, Merment, Vouant & al theire appurtenaunces  
 28 vnto RocheH, with the Castel Eglon with al that therof dependeth / and fro this tyme fourthon I enpocesse hym therof for hym and for his heyres.' Thenne said Geffray to him, 'Dere fader, wel it is  
 32 raison that it be so don.' This doon Raymondyn made his apparayH, & with hym mounted on horsback many lordes & knightes, and toke with hym grete fynauce & hauoir and so departed and foorth rode  
 36 on his way. And Geffray & <sup>2</sup>Theodoryke conueyed

Geffray's father is told the story.

He determines to appease Geffray.  
 1 fol. 196.

He sends Theodoric to ask Geffray to come to Lusignan.

Geffray obeys, and on seeing his father falls on his knees and asks pardon, and promises to rebuild the abbey of Mailleses better than it was before.

Raymondin answers that with God's help he may fulfil his promise, but that will not bring the dead to life. He tells Geffray that he is going on a pilgrimage, and that he leaves his land in his care, and makes him his heir.

Raymondin declares that Theodoric has been left Partenay and other lands and castles by his mother.

Raymondin then starts on his pilgrimage, accompanied by many knights, and well provided with money and goods.

2 fol. 196 b.



Geffray and Theodoric go part of the way with their father, and Geffray tells how he found the tomb of his grandfather Elynas at Brombelyo, and what was written on the golden tablet about Elynas' three daughters, one of whom was Geffray's mother.

Raymondin is glad to hear that his wife was the daughter of Elynas and Pressine.

He tells his sons to return, and continues on his way to Rome.

He gives Theodoric a ring, Melusine's parting gift.

hym tyl he bade them to retourne. And as they rode geffray recounted hym how he fonde the tombe of Helynas his granfader within the mountayne of Brombelyo, vpon foure Coulonnes of fyn gold and of 4 the ryches of þe place / and of the fygure of the quene Pressyne that stod vp ryght, and held a table of gold, and of this that was there writon / and how theire thre doughters were predestyned / 'of the whiche,' 8 said geffray, 'our moder was one of them' / and shewed hym al the begynnyng of the matere vnto thenk of hit. And wete it wel that Raymondyn herkned hym gladly, & was wel pleased of that he said that hys wyf 12 Melusyne was doughter of king Elynas & of Pressyne hys wyf. And thenne he gaf lycens to his children to retourne. And so þey departed & retourned toward Lusynen / and Raymondyn held on his way toward 16 Romme. And to theodoryke he gaf the ryng whiche Melusyne gaf hym at her departyng fro hym.

Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys 20 synnes to hym.

fol. 197.

Raymondin reaches Rome, and does reverence to Pope Benedict.

He confesses his sins.

The Pope gives him due penance. Raymondin dines with the Pope, and next day visits the holy places. When his affairs are attended to he takes leave of the Pope,

**H**ere sayth thystorye that Raymondyn rode so long that he came to Romme and his companye with hym, where he fonde the Pope named Benedictus / 24 & drew hym toward hym to whome humbly he made reuerence, & syn kneeled tofore hym & confessed his mysdedes & synnes in his best wyse / and as touching this that he was forsworne ayenst god and Melusyne 28 hys wyf, the pope gaf hym therfor such penaunce as it playsted hym. and that same day Raymondyn dyned with the pope Benedicte / and on the morne he yede & vysyted the holy places there. And whan he had 32 doon there al that he muste doo, he toke leue to the Pope & said to hym in this wyse, 'Ryght reuerend holy fader, I may not goodly considere in me how euer



I may haue joye. Wherfore I purpose to yeld<sup>d</sup> myself  
 into some hermytage.' And thenne the Pope hym  
 demanded thus, 'Raymondyn, where is your deuocyon  
 4 & wyll to goo?' 'By my feyth, holy fader,' said  
 Raymondyn, 'I haue herd say that there is to Mount-  
 ferrat<sup>1</sup> in Aragon a deuoute & holy place / & there wold<sup>d</sup>  
 I fayn be.' 'My fayre sone,' said the pope, 'soo it is  
 8 said.' And to hym said Raymondyn, 'holy fader, my  
 intencion is thither to goo and to yeld<sup>d</sup> my self there  
 hermyte, for to pray god that it playse hym to gyue  
 allegeaunce to my lady my wyf.' 'Now fayre sone,'  
 12 said the Pope, 'with the holy gost may ye goo / & al  
 that ye shal doo with good wyll I remysse it to your  
 penaunce.' And thenne Raymondyn kneeled & kyssed  
 the popes feet. And the pope gaf hym hys benedic-  
 16 tion. / And thenne departed Raymondyn & came to  
 hys lodgys / & dide doo <sup>2</sup>trusse & make all redy for  
 to departe / and as touchyng his meyne nor of hys way  
 I wyl not make long<sup>1</sup> mencyon / but he rode so long  
 20 that he came to Thoulouse / and there he gaf lycence  
 & leue to all hys meyne to departe & retourne / except  
 only a Chappellayn & a Clerc that he toke with him /  
 and wel & truly he prayed <sup>3</sup>euery one so that they  
 24 were content / but sory they were all of theire maister  
 that so departed fro them / and he sent letres to geffray  
 & to the barons of hys land that they shuld doo theire  
 hominage to his sone geffray, & receyue hym for theire  
 28 lord. And his meyne toke the letres / and soo they  
 departed fro theire lord with grete sorow & heynesse,  
 For he neuer tolde them what way he shuld take / but  
 wete it he had with hym goodes ynough / and dyde so  
 32 moche that he came to Nerbonne where he rested hym  
 a lytel space of tyme.

**T**hystorye sheweth in this partye that whan  
 Raymondyn was come to Nerbonne he dide

<sup>1</sup> Montserrat, the correct reading. <sup>2</sup> Fr. *trosser les sommiers*.

and tells him  
 that he wishes to  
 be a hermit.

The Pope asks  
 where he would  
 like to go.

Raymondin an-  
 swers Mount-  
 serrat in Aragon.

The Pope be-  
 stows his bless-  
 ing, after Ray-  
 mondin had  
 kissed his feet.

Raymondin gets  
 on his way, and  
 when he arrives  
 at Toulouse he  
 pays off his men,

<sup>3</sup> fol. 196.

and sends them  
 home with letters  
 to Geffray, which  
 order the barons  
 of his land to  
 do homage to  
 Geffray.

His men return  
 sadly, without  
 knowledge of  
 where their mas-  
 ter is going.  
 Raymondin goes  
 to Narbonne,  
 where he makes  
 a halt;

and has hermits' habits made for himself, his chaplain and his clerk. doo make many hermyte habytes, and also for his Chappellayn & Clerk suche as they owe to haue / and syn departed & went tyl he came to <sup>1</sup>Parpynen where he soiourned one day / and on the morne <sup>2</sup>he passed 4

He continues his journey the destraytte & mounted the mountaynes of Aragon / and so foorth he came to Barselone the Cite where he toke hys lodgys and soiourned there thre dayes, and on

till he arrives at Mountserrat. the foureth toke hys waye toward Mountferrat where 8 he came & yede & vysyted wel the Chirche & the place there, whiche semed hym ryght deuoute / and there he herd the deuyne seruyse deuoutly / but yet had he on hys worldly gownes / And thenne came to hym they 12

He is asked if he will stay the night, and answers 'yes.' that were ordeyned for to lodge & herberowe the pelgrymes, and demanded of hym yf it playсед hym to abyde there for þat nyght / and he ansuerd 'ye.'

<sup>3</sup> fol. 198 b. Thenne were his <sup>3</sup>horses stabled / and they gaf hym a 16 fayre Chambre for hym & for his men. And in the meane while Raymondyn yede & vysyted the hermytages / but he went no ferther than to the v<sup>th</sup> celle, for that place was of so grete heyght that he myght not 20 goodly goo thither / and fonde the III<sup>de</sup> celle exempt. For the hermyte there was deed but late tofore that. And there was stablysshed of old a Custome that yf within a terme prefix none came there to be hermyte, 24 he of the nerest Celle gooyng vpward muste entre into that other Celle so exempted / and so al the hermytes benethe hym to chaunge theire places vpward. And so by that maner wyse was the nedermost Celle of al 28 exempt & without hermyt. And the cause of this permutacion was that alwayes the nedermost hermyte most serue hys brother hermyte next aboue hym of meet & drynk after theire pytaunce & manere of etyng, 32 and so foorth dide that one to that other vpward / and

Raymondin visits the hermitages, and finds the third cell empty, the hermit having died lately.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Perpignen*.<sup>2</sup> Fr. *passa le vellon et le pertuys, et vint à disner à Funères, et au giste à Gnomie*. Omitted above.

thus one *serued* other. And so ferre enquired & knew Raymondyn of theire *maner* of lyuyng that he toke grete deuocion to it more than tofore / that is to  
 4 wete to be hermyte there. And thenne he toke leue of the v<sup>th</sup> hermyte & so dide as he descended of the other. And he demanded after the pryour of thabbey / and it was told hym that he was in the  
 8 vyllage nygh by thabbay that was hys, whiche vyllage was called Culbaston / and thenne he desyred them that they wold conduyte hym there as he was. And so Ray<sup>1</sup>mondyn left there his Chappellayn & his  
 12 Clerc, and with a *seruaunt* of the place went there as pe pryour was, whiche receyued Raymondyn with joyful chere. And there shewed Raymondyn al hys wyH and deuocyon and how the place playsted hym. And thenne  
 16 the pryour that sawe Raymondyn of fayre coutenaunce & man of grete worship graunted hym the exempted place, wherof Raymondyn had grete joye at herte. /

**T**henne was Raymondyn ryght joyous whan the  
 20 pryour had graunted hym the place of the nethermost hermytage and moche panked god therof. and so he bode there with the pryour al that nyght / and on the morow they mounted and came ayen to  
 24 thabbay where as Raymondyn toke his habytes and was there made hermyte. And thenne was the deuyne seruyce doon, where Raymondyn offred ryche jewels as gold & precyous stones. And after the *seruyce*  
 28 they went to dyner / and raymondyn dyde doo send to hys bretheren hermytes besyde theire pytaunce other meetes for recreacion, letyng<sup>t</sup> them knowe hys professyon & commyng. Wherof al they lawded god,  
 32 deuoutely prayeng hym that he wold hold & encrese Raymondyn in good deuocyon. And so dwelled Raymondyn in thabbay, and on the morne he entrel in to his Celle wher he bygan to led a holy & strait  
 36 lyf. And anoone after was the tydynges spredd

MELUSINE.

Raymondin, after his enquiries, takes a greater liking to the place than ever.

He takes leave of the hermit in the fifth cell and descends.

Raymondin asks to be taken to the prior of the abbey.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 199.

The prior entertains Raymondin,

and at his request grants the empty cell.

The next day Raymondin is made a hermit,

and after divine service makes a rich offering.

Raymondin tells his brother hermits of his profession, and supplies them with extra meats. The hermits praise God, and pray for Raymondin.

He enters his cell, and begins to lead a holy life.



The news that a great prince has professed himself a hermit becomes known,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 199 b.

and many come to see Raymondin and ask him his name, but he will not tell it.

through al<sup>l</sup> Aragon & Langgedok how that a grete prynee was made hermyte at Mounferrat / but they knew not of what Countre he was. And <sup>1</sup>also he wold<sup>t</sup> neuer vtte it / And many noble men went to 4 see hym / and in especial the king<sup>e</sup> of aragon was there hym self, which asked hym of his estate & Countre / but of hym he coude neuer wete it. And here resteth thystorye of them / and retourneth to shewe of 8 Raymondyns men that departed fro Thoulouse. /

Raymondin's men return to Lusignan, and deliver the letters.

**T**hystory recounteth that so long rode the men of Raymondyn after they were departed fro Thoulouse that they came in Poytou & so foorth to 12 Lusynen, Where they fonde geffray and many of the barons of the land<sup>t</sup> / and after theire obeysaunce doon they delyuered theire letres to geffray & to the barons as they were commanded by Raymondyn theire lord<sup>t</sup>. 16 Whan the baronye vnderstod<sup>t</sup> the tenour of theire letres they said to geffray in this manere / 'My lord syth it playseth not your fader vs more to gouerne / and that he wyl that we doo our hommage to you, we 20 are al redy thereto.' 'By god,' said geffray, 'gramercy, Fayre lordes, and I am redy to receyue you to your lygeauns.' And penne they dyde to hym hommage. And anoone after was knowen through al the Countre 24 how Raymondyn had exilled hymself for the grete sorow that he had for his wyf Melusyne that he had lost. Who thenne had sene the doleur & lamentable heuynes that men dide through al<sup>l</sup> the Countre 28 wysshyng theire lord & theire lady, he shuld<sup>t</sup> haue had hertely pyte. For many one fered geffray for cause of his yre & fyersnes. But for nought they doubted, For he gouerned<sup>t</sup> hym rightously & wel. Here I sha[1] 32 leue of þem <sup>2</sup>to speke / and shal shewe of geffray that was ryght dolaunt & sorowful of that he had lost both hys fader & his moder through his owne mysdede & synne. For they that were retourned fro hym coude 36

The barons declare that they are ready to do Geffray homage in place of his father.

He accepts it.

When the people know that Raymondin has exilled himself, and that Geffray is lord, they begin to be afraid.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 200.



not say where he was come. Thenne remorse of  
 conscience toke geffray at herte & remembred how he  
 fyred thabbaye of Maylleses, & brent hys brother  
 4 Froymond & al the monkes *per without* hauyng ony  
 lawfuH cause so to doo / and that thrughe hys synne  
 he angred bothe hys fader & moder, and by that cause  
 he had lost his moder. Wherefore he toke suche sorowe  
 8 that it was meruayH / and also he remembred the deth  
 of the Erle of Forest hys vncl, which through his faytte  
 fell down fro the hiest toure of the Castel Marcellly to  
 the erthe. And thus remembred geffray aH hys  
 12 my[s]dedes and synnes, and sore wepyng bygan to say /  
 that but yf god had pyte on hym he was lyke to be  
 lost & dampned for euer. And thenne he hymself  
 alone entred into a chambre / and there he bygan to  
 16 make grete sorowe & lamentable wepynges prayeng god  
 with herte contrite that he wold haue mercy on hym /  
 and as god wold he toke there deuocion to goo to  
 Romme for to confesse his synnes to our holy fader the  
 20 pope. And thenne he sent for his broder theodoryke  
 that he shuld come to speke with hym, For he loued  
 hym aboue al o<sup>per</sup>. And assoone as Theodoryke  
 vnderstod the mandement of hys brother geffray, he  
 24 foorthwith mounted on horsback & rode tyl he came  
 to Lusynen where geffray was, that receyued hym  
 with joye, & said to hym that he wold leue al hys  
 land in his gouernaunce, For he <sup>1</sup>wold go to Romme to  
 28 confesse his synnes tofore the pope / & that he wold  
 neuer come ayen tyl he had found hys fader. Thenne  
 Theoderyk prayeH hym that he wold suffre hym to goo  
 with hym. And geffray shewed to hym that it were  
 32 not good for them bothe so to doo / And thenne  
 geffray with noble companye departed and toke with  
 hym grete goodes, and toke with hym one of hys  
 faders *seruaunts* that was retourned fro Thoulouse for  
 36 to conduyte hym aH that way that hys fader yede /

Geffray is full of remorse when he thinks of the loss of his father and mother, and how it was caused by his misdeeds.

Geffray enters a chamber alone, and prays with a contrite heart for mercy.

He resolves to go to Rome to confess to the Pope.  
 Geffray sends for Theodorick

1 fol. 200 b.  
 to tell him that he is going to Rome to confess to the Pope, and that he leaves his lands in Theodorick's charge. Theodorick wants to go with him, but Geffray says it would not do. Geffray takes plenty of goods, and sets out on his journey with one of his father's servants.

and he shuld euer take hys lodgys there as hys fader was lodged by the way. And the *seruaunt* hym ansuerd that gladly he shuld so doo.

Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme 4  
& confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope.

**T**hystorye sayth that whan geffray was departed fro Lusynen he rode so long by hys journeyes that he came to romme, and drew hym toward our 8 holy fader the Pope, to whome he made humble reuerence and syn deuoutely confessed hym of hys synnes. And the Pope charged hym to make thabbay of Maylleses to be edyfyed agayn & therto ordeyne six 12 score monkes, & many other penitences the pope charged hym doo, the whiche as now present I shal not shewe. And thenne geffray said to our holy fader the Pope how he wold goo to seke hys fader, and the pope 16 told hym that he <sup>1</sup>shuld fynd hym at Mountferrat in Aragon. And thenne he toke leue of the pope & kyssed his feet / and the pope gaf hym hys benediction. And so geffray departed fro Romme & toke 20 hys way toward toulouse where he cam & hys meyne with hym and was lodged where as his fader dede lodge tofore. And there the *seruaunt* asked of theire hoste yf he coude not telle which way hys lord 24 Raymondyn toke / And thoste said to hym that hys lord had hold the way toward Nerbonne & that no ferther he knew of hys way. And the *seruaunt* told it to geffray. 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'that is 28 not the next way for to goo to Mountferrat / but syth my fader went that way so shal we doo.' And thus on the morne geffray & hys meyne departed & hasted them toward Nerbonne, where they cam & were lodged 32 there as Raymondyn had tofore lodged. For so moche enquired the *seruaunt* that he knewe þat hys lord dide

Geffray confesses to the Pope.

He is charged to rebuild the abbey of Maylleses.

Geffray learns that his father  
1 fol. 201.  
is at Mount-  
serratt.

He kisses the  
Pope's feet,  
and receives the  
benediction.  
Geffray goes to  
Toulouse, and

finds that his  
father went from  
there to Nar-  
bonne.

He follows the  
same route,  
though it is not  
the direct way to  
Mountserratt.

lodge there, & how he dide do make there many habytes for an hermyte. And on the morne geffray toke hys way toward Parpynen, where he cam, & fro  
 4 pens he rode *with* hys meyne to Barselone, & penne to thabbey of mountferrat where he alyghted & sent hys horses to Culbaston / and syn he yede & entred in to the Chirch. And anoon the *seruaunt* beforsaid sawe  
 8 the Chappellayn of Raymondyn his lord *within* a ChapeH And immedyatly he tok of it to geffray. Wherof <sup>1</sup>he had grete joye and yede toward the Chappellayne, the whiche whan he sawe geffray he  
 12 kneeled tofore hym and said, 'My lord ye be ryght welcome' / and syn he recounted to geffray the good lyf that hys fader led / and how euery day he confesseH hym & receyued his creatour / and that he ete nothing  
 16 that receyueth deth. And thenne geffray asked hym where he was. And the Chappellayn to hym said,  
 'he is in yonder hermytage / but my lord as for this day ye may not speke *with* hym, but to morne ye shaft  
 20 see hym.' 'By my fayth,' said geffray, 'fayn I wold see hym today / but sith it is soo I must take it in patience ty[1] tomorowe.' 'My lord,' said thenne the Chappellayn, 'yf it playse you ye may here the hye  
 24 masse, and therwhiles I shal ordeyne and shew your meyne where your Chambre shal be dressed, and also I shal doo make your dyner redy at your retourne fro the masse.'

28 **T**henne departed the Chappellayn fro geffray, that went to here masse acompanyed *with* x knyghtes and wel xx squyers. And thenne came the monkes of the place to Raymondins Chappellayn and demanded  
 32 of hym in this wyse. 'What is that grete deueH with that grete toth? he semeth wel to be a cruel man / wherof knowe you hym / is he of your Countre?'  
 'By my feyth,' said the Chappellayn, 'ye / It is  
 36 geffray *with* the grete teeth of Lusynen, one of the best

At last Geffray reaches Mountferrat.

His servant reports that he has seen his father's chaplain.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 201 b.

The chaplain welcomes Geffray, and tells him of the good life his father leads; how he confesses and communicates daily, and that he eats nothing that has had life.

The chaplain says Geffray cannot see his father till next day.

Geffray hears mass;

and when he is out of sight the monks ask the chaplain, 'Who is that great devil with that great tooth?'

He tells them,



& moost valyaunt knyghtes of the world & wete it he  
 1 fol. 202. 1holdeth grete possessions & grete landes.' And the  
 and they ask if it is not the same one who killed the Northumber-  
 land giant, and burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks therein.  
 The chaplain answers that he is.  
 The monks are much afraid.  
 The chaplain tells them to be at ease, because the hermitage contains the person Geffray loves most of all in the world.  
 The monks clean and decorate the church,  
 and send word to the prior of the arrival of Geffray.  
 The prior finds Geffray in the church, and does him reverence.  
 Geffray thanks him, and promises that the place will be none the worse for his visit.  
 2 fol. 202 b.

monke without hys leue.' 'By my feyth,' said the 8  
 Chappellayn, 'certainly it is that same.' And penne  
 the monkes al abashed and aferd sayd / he is come  
 hither for to doo vs some myschief and damage.  
 Thenne said one of them, 'wete it wel that I shal hyd 12  
 myself in suche place that he shal not fynd me.'  
 'Noo,' said the Chappellayn, 'Forsoothe I waraunt  
 you he shal doo you no hurt nor damage, but al ye  
 shal soone be glad of hys commyng, For suche one is 16  
 within this place that he loueth aboue al creatures of  
 the world.' And whan they vnderstod the Chappellayn  
 they were somewhat assured and went & hanged the  
 chirche, and made al the place fayre & clene to their 20  
 power as god hymself had descended there / and sent  
 word to the Pryour that was at Culbaston that he  
 shuld come there, and that geffray with the grete toth  
 was come in pelgrymage in to their abbaye, and noble 24  
 companye with hym. Thenne came there fourthwith  
 the pryour that fond geffray in the Chirche, and  
 honourably made hym reuerence and sayd that he  
 hymself / the monkes & al the place was at his 28  
 commandement. 'Sire,' said geffray, 'gramercy and  
 wete it wel I loue this place / and yf god gyf me  
 helthe it shal 2not be the wers for my commyng.'  
 'My lord,' said the pryour, 'god yeld you.' Thenne 32  
 cam the Chapellayn to geffray and hym said, 'My  
 lord, your dyner is redy.' And therwith geffray toke  
 the pryour by the hand and togidre went into the haH,  
 where they wessed their handes & syn sette them at 36



dyner; geffray and the pryour deuysed long space togidre of one thing & of oþer. And thus passed foorth that day. /

Geffray and the prior dine and converse a long time.

4 **I**n this partye sayth thystorye that on þe morne  
geffray roos vp and fonde the priour and his faders  
Chapellayn waytyng after hym whiche led̃ hym to  
here masse / and after the masse they led̃ hym toward  
8 the hermytages. And thenne the pryour toke his leue  
of geffray & retourned to Chireliward̃ supposyng none  
other but that geffray went for to see thestate of the  
hermytes and for none other cause. For he had neuer  
12 trowed that his fader had be þer. And thenne mounted  
geffray toward the first hermitage that was wel lxxx  
stepes highe vpon the mountayne. And wete it that  
the Clerc was at Raymondyns Celle doore waytyng for  
16 the Chappellayn that shuld say masse tofore Raymondin.  
And as the Clerc loked downward, he perceyued̃ geffray  
that came upward̃ & wel knew hym, and forthwith  
entred in the celle & said to Raymondin, 'My  
20 lord, here commeth your sone geffray.' And whan  
Raymondin vnderstoð it he was ryght joyous and said,  
'blessed be god / he is welcomme.' Thenne entred  
first the Chappellain in to the Celle & salued  
24 Raymondyn / but he bade the Chappellayn to say  
geffray that he myght not speke with hym tyl þat hys  
masse were doon. And foorthwith the cha<sup>l</sup>pellayn  
dyde as Raymondyn hym commanded. And geffray  
28 ansuerd̃, 'his playsire be doo.' This doon Raymondyn  
was confessed and herd his masse & receyued the holy  
sacrament. And in the meane sayson geffray beheld̃  
vpward the great mountaynes whiche were high &  
32 ryght vp and sawe thermytages that were aboue hym /  
and sawe the Capeñ of Saynt Mychel whiche was the  
v<sup>th</sup> hermytage, and after loked downward / and in hym  
self had grete meruayñ how man durst there take  
36 habytacyon / and to hym appered the Chirche and

Geffray hears  
mass in the  
morning, and

goes with the  
prior and the  
chaplain to  
the hermitages,  
where the prior  
takes his leave.

Geffray mounts  
to the first her-  
mitage,

and is recognised  
by Raymondin's  
clerk.

He tells his  
master of Gef-  
fray's presence.

Raymondin says  
'He is welcome.'

1 fol. 203.

Geffray has to  
wait till his  
father hears mass  
before he can see  
him.

He looks about  
while waiting,  
and wonders how  
anyone can live  
in such a place.

Geffray enters  
his father's cell,  
and salutes him.

Raymondin  
takes him in his  
arms and kisses  
him.

Geffray tells his  
father how he  
had been at  
Rome, and how  
he confessed,  
and was told by  
the Pope that  
his father was at  
Mountserratt.

Geffray asks his  
father to return  
to his country,  
but he answers  
that he cannot,  
as he intends  
to stay at Mount-  
serratt, and pray  
for Geffray's  
mother, for him-  
self, and for  
Geffray.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 203 b.

Geffray takes his  
leave.  
His father sends  
a greeting to his  
children and his  
barons.

Geffray gives  
presents to the  
Church;

and at dinner  
tells the prior  
that Raymondin  
is his father, and  
asks him to take  
care of him, and  
the Church will  
lose nothing  
by it.

housyng of thabbey but as lytel Chapelles. Thenne  
cam the Chapellayn & called geffray and he entred  
within the Celle of his fader / and anoone kneeled on  
his knees & dyde to hys fader reuerent salutacion / <sup>4</sup>  
And Raymondyn toke hym vp in his armes and kyssed  
hym / and thenne made hym to sette vpon a stoole  
with hym tofore the awter. And there bygan geffray  
to shewe to hys fader how he was at Romme, and how <sup>8</sup>  
he was confessed of the pope / and the pope hym said  
that he shuld fynd hym at Mountferrat. And in this  
communycacion had they many materes togidre /  
geffray alwayes prayeng hys fader that he wold <sup>12</sup>  
retourne to his countre. 'Fayre sone,' said Raymondyn,  
'that may I not doo. For here I wyl spende my lyf,  
always prayeng god for thy moder & me, & for the,  
that god wyl amende the, my sone geffray.' And soo <sup>16</sup>  
geffray was there al that day with his fader. And the  
next day in the morowe herd Raymondyn his masse,  
& receyued our lord, as hys custome was to doo / and  
after, said to geffray, 'Fayre sone, it behoueth the to <sup>20</sup>  
parte from hens, & to retourne in to thy Countre;  
and grete wel al <sup>1</sup>my children & my barons.' And  
thenne geffray toke leue of hys fader al wepyng; and  
loth he was to departe from his fader. And after <sup>24</sup>  
came down fro the mountayn vnto thabbaye, where  
he was honourably receyued / and the monkes had  
grete meruayll wherfore he was so long aboue.

**T**hystorye sheweth that geffray gaf grete ryches & <sup>28</sup>  
fayre Jewelles to the Chirche, & after toke leue of  
the pryour & his monkes, but the pryour hym conueyed  
vnto Culbaston, wher geffray dyned with the pryour /  
and told hym in secret wyse that Raymondyn was <sup>32</sup>  
hys fader, whom geffray besoughte to take hede to  
hys fader, and that the Chirche shuld not lese nothing  
therby, For euery yere ones duryng hys lyf he wold  
come & vysyte hys fader. Thenne ansuerd the pryour, <sup>36</sup>

- 'doubte you not, my lord, there shal be no deffawte but I shal vysyte & remembre your fader.' And thenne toke geffray leue & went to Barselone to hys bed.
- 4 And on the morne he departed toward Lusynen wher as Theodoryk hys brother & the barons receyued hym with ryght grete joye, and were glad of his commyng. And whan they were at leyser, geffray shewed to hys
- 8 brother theodoryk the very effect of euery thing touchyng theyre fader. Foorthwith Theodoryk that moche loued his fader bygan to wepe ful tenderly. And geffray seeyng his broþer make suche sorowe to
- 12 hym said thus, 'My ryght dere brother, yet must ye abyde here, For wete it wel that I wyl goo see our two bretheren in almayne, that is to vnderstand Regnauld king of behayne and the Duc Anthony of
- 16 Lucembourgh / but I wyl not departe without aray of men of armes, For þer be in thoo marches ryght euyl peple the which<sup>1</sup> gladly wold robbe them that passe by the way.' 'By my sowle, my brother, I hold wel
- 20 withal that ye doo as ye say / but I beseche you ryght entierly brother that we leue our countre in the gouernaunce of our barons & take with vs v.C. men of armes, and that it may playse you I to go with you ;
- 24 For I haue herd say that there is grete werre betwix them of Anssay & them of Austeryche.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'Ye say wel, For peraventure our brother Anthony is in hand with them.' And whan
- 28 they had made theire ordonnaunce, Odon the Erle of Marche came and spake with geffray, and brought in hys company thre score men of armes, For at that tyme he had warre ayenst the Earle of Vandosme /
- 32 and also Raymond their brother Earle of Forestz cam there the same day. And there the foure bretheren made there moche one of other / and were joyfull for the tydynges that they herd of theire fader / and said /
- 36 ones they hoped to see hym togidre.

Geffray returns to Lusignan where he is joyfully received.

He tells Theodoric about their father.

Theodoric weeps at the story.

Geffray proposes to visit Regnald and Anthony.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 204.

Theodoric wishes to go with him,

because he has heard there is war between Anssay and Austria.

They are joined by Odo, Earl of March.

The brothers make much of each other, and are glad of the news of their father.



# Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyed the monastery of Maylleses.

Geffray arranges for the rebuilding of the abbey of Mailleses.

He and Theodorick appoint good governors for their countries.

1 fol. 204 b.

Odo and Raymond propose to go with them to Allmain.

The Earl of Vendôme makes his peace with Odo.

The four brethren ride with their company to Castle Duras, near which they lodge.

The King of Anssay was at war with the Dukes of Freiburg and Austria. He was besieged by them at Pourrencreu.

Geffray afore his departyng charged & ordeyned people for the reedyfyng of the Abbaye of 4 Maylleses, as hym was youen in Charge by the pope by way of penaunce / and to them assygned where they shuld take bothe gold & syluer therwith to paye the werkmen. And so lefte he a good gouernour in 8 hys countre / And in lyke wyse dyde his brother theodoryk in his Countre. And whan Odon & Raymond sawe that they wold departe to go <sup>1</sup>to see theire bretheren in Allemayne, they sayd in lyke wyse 12 wold they doo. And commanded anoone theire peple to mete with them at Boneuah. And at that tyme were the bretheren acompanyed with two thousand men of armes & a thousand Crosbowes. And whan 16 the Erle of Vandosme herd tydynges therof he supposed certaynly that they came to exille hym, and that Odon had complayned hym to hys bretheren of hym, and so moche he doubted geffray that he came to Boneuah 20 and yelded hym to the grace of Odon erle of Marche. And he pardozned hym of al the mysdedes that he had doo to hym. And the erle of Vandosme made hym homage of the land that was in debat atwix 24 them. /

Here sheweth thystorye that the foure bretheren departed fro Boneual & were in theire companye many grete lordes, and rode in fayre aray tyl they cam 28 vpon an euen and lodged them nygh a ryuere called Meuze, by a Fortresse named the Castel Duras. But as now I shal cease of them to speke / and shal begynne to speke of the kyng of anssay, that had grete 32 warre ayenst the Erle of Frebourgh & with the Duc of Austeryche, the which had besieged hym within a Castel of hys that was called Pourrencreu. Wherfor



he sent word to Regnault kyng of Behayne that was  
 maryed *with* his Cousyn / and lyke wyse to the Duc  
 Anthony of Lucembourg prayeng them of ayde &  
 4 socour ayenst his enemyes, at the whiche instance &  
 prayer / the two bretheren Regnald & Anthony made  
 theire apparayll. <sup>1</sup>And Regnaulde departed out of his  
 Royallme of Behayne and came to Lucembourg with  
 8 IIII. C men of armes for to haue hys brother Anthony  
 with hym toward the siege of Porreneru, wher the  
 kyng of ansay was besieged *within*. And þat meane  
 sayson came two knightes to Lucembourg from geffray  
 12 and his thre bretheren þat were *with* hym, the which  
 two knightes brought word bothe to regnault &  
 anthony of theire bretheren commyng, and that they  
 were nygh the toun and cam for to see them. And  
 16 whan kyng regnault and the Duc Anthony knew that  
 theire bretheren were commyng toward them, they  
 were full glad & immedyatly commanded that al the  
 stretes shuld be rychely hanged, and syn mounted on  
 20 horsbak, and *with* noble companye they went to mete  
 them; and rode tyl they mete *with* the vanwarde of  
 theire armee & asked where theire bretheren were /  
 and it was shewed to them where they were commyng  
 24 vnder the standart. Geffray thenne, that wel vnder-  
 stod that anthony & regnault his bretheren came to  
 mete hem, he made euery man to stand apart / and  
 soone after the six bretheren mete togidre and embraced  
 28 & made moche one of other / and after rode foorth  
 toward the toun / and aftir theire age they rode two  
 & two togidre. Odon and Anthony were the formest,  
 and after them rode Regnault & Geffray / and them  
 32 folowed theodoryk & Raymonnet / and al theire  
 oost came after in fayre ordynaunce / and in this  
 manere they entred in to the toune, where as the  
 Cytezeyns were in theire best rayments al in a rowe  
 36 on bothe <sup>2</sup>sydes of the stretes, that were rychely

He had sent for  
 help to Anthony  
 and Regnald.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 205.

Regnald with  
 four hundred  
 men goes to  
 Anthony, to  
 accompany him  
 to the siege of  
 Pourreneru.

Geffray sends  
 word that he  
 and his three  
 brothers are on  
 their way to  
 Luxembourg.

Regnald and  
 Anthony meet  
 their bretheren  
 outside the  
 town.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 205 b

hanged / and the ladyes & damoysselles loked out of the wyndowes / and so grete & noble apparayH was there made for their commyng that it was a fayre syght.

**T**routh it is that whan the bretheren entred w<sup>ithin</sup> 4  
 Lucembourg, Anthony & Geffray rode thenne the formest of al their bretheren. And wete it that the notable Citeseyns, ladyes, & damoiselles meruaylled moche of the fyersnes and grete height of their lordis 8  
 bretheren, sayeng that they six togidre wer able & wel shapen to destroye a grete oost / And thus they rode through the toun into the Castel and there they alighted. There were the six bretheren recountred of 12  
 two noble ladyes, that is to vnderstand the quene of Behayn and the Duches of Lucembourg, that honourably receyued their lordes and brethern. And affir they went into the haH that was al hanged with 16  
 ryche cloth of gold / and *per* were the tables rychely couered & redy to dyner. And thenne after many playsaunt deuyses and joyfuH wordes, they wessed their handes and sette them at dyner and were nobly 20  
 serued. And after dyner geffray shewed & recounted all hys auentures & fayttes / and how he fonde pe tombe of Elynas / & of the quene Pressyne of whiche lynce they were yssued, wherof they were al joyfuH & 24  
 glad to meruayH / and how their fader was departed and where he was. For of all other thinges they knew ynough. And thenne Anthony & regnald told to their bretheren how the kyng of Anssay was 28  
 besieged & that they wold help hym. Thenne <sup>1</sup>ansuered Geffray, 'My lordes, my bretheren, wete it wel we are not come hither to take our rest / but we al are redy to goo *with* you whersomeuer ye wyl / & 32  
 therfor lete vs not make long soiourne / but go we<sup>2</sup> vpon our enemyes to helpe & socoure our frendes.' And forthwith Geffray and hys bretheren that were

The citizens  
marvel at their  
appearance.

The brethren  
are received at  
the castle by  
the Queen of  
Bohemia and  
the Duchess of  
Luxembourg.

Geffray tells of  
his adventures.  
How he had  
found the tomb  
of King Elynas  
and Queen  
Pressine, from  
whom they had  
all sprung, and  
how their father  
had become a  
hermit at  
Mountserratt.  
Anthony and  
Regnald tell  
their brethren  
that they are to  
help the King  
of Anssay.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 206.

Geffray answers  
that he and his  
brethren are  
ready to do so  
as well;

<sup>2</sup> 'we' repeated in MS.

come there *with* hym toke theire leue of bothe the  
 queene & duchesse theire sustirs & retourned to theire  
 oost / and thenne Regnault & Anthony wold haue  
 4 conueyed them / but geffray said, 'Fayre lordes &  
 bretheren, ye shal come no ferther / but make al your  
 apparayll & take leue of your wyues, and to morne, god  
 before, we wyl departe toward the said Castel wherin  
 8 the king of Anssay our frend is besieged.' And soo  
 Anthony and regnault retourned sayeng eche ono to  
 other, 'Certaynly this man may not long endure / but  
 he be other take or slayn. For he fereth of nothing  
 12 in the world / & also to counseyll hym, it were but  
 for nought, For he suffreth nothing, but as his wyt &  
 mynde gyueth hym. For yf he had *with* hym but  
 X. M<sup>t</sup> men, & that he sawe his enemyes tofore hym to  
 16 the nombre of IIC. M<sup>t</sup> yet wold he fyght & medle  
*with* them, wherfore we must take heede to hym that  
 he vaunce not hym self so moche *with* the enemyes,  
 but that we be nygh hym to socoure hym *with* our  
 20 people / but for this haste that he maketh we owe  
 not to wete hym euyl gree For cause that assoone as  
 oon may, he muste aduyse the wayes to hurt &  
 dommage his enemys.' And thenne they lefte of  
 24 geffray theire brother more to speke / but bothe they  
 said that he was ryght hardy & valyaunt. And on the  
 morne they <sup>1</sup>toke leue of theire wyues and left in the  
 land a good gouernour. And also geffray on that  
 28 other part ordeyned & purueyed of al thinges that were  
 necessary to hys oost. /

**I**n the next day Geffray made blowe vp hys trompettes,  
 that euery[y] man shuld be armed, and after herl<sup>t</sup>  
 32 his masse and syn marched forth *with* hys oost / And  
 immedyatly Anthony & regnault came out of the toun  
*with* theire people in fayre aray. And so they departed  
 and rode togidre tyl they came into the land of  
 36 Anssay / and on an euen lodged them thre leghes nygh

he then returns  
to his host.

Geffray refuses  
Anthony and  
Regnald's  
company,  
and asks them  
to prepare to  
start to succour  
the King of  
Anssay in the  
morning.

They speak of  
Geffray's  
bravery.

1 fol. 203 b.

In the morning  
they take leave  
of their wives  
and appoint a  
governor.

Geffray orders  
every man to  
arm, and after  
mass is said his  
host marches.

Anthony and  
Regnald join  
him with their  
people.

They arrive three  
leagues from  
Freibourg.

A letter of de-  
fiance is written  
to the Duke of  
Austria and  
the Earl of  
Freibourg,

1 fol. 207.

and sent by a  
herald to the  
Duke of Aus-  
tria at Pour-  
rencreu.  
It is read in  
hearing of all  
the nobles there.  
They say that  
the devil has  
sent the breth-  
ren against them,  
and that only  
the fame of the  
Lusignans is  
now spoken of.  
The herald re-  
turns to the  
brethren's camp.

Geffray takes  
five hundred  
men, and am-  
bushes them in  
a wood near  
Freibourg.

the toun of Frebourgh. Thenne called geffray al his bretheren and shewed to them that it behoued not them for theire honour to renne vpon no man but that they had defyed hym tofore / And they ansuerd that 4 he said trouth. Wherfor they lete make a *letre* of deffyaunce of whiche the tenour foloweth. ‘Regnauld by the grace of god kyng of Behayne, Anthony Duc of Lucembourg, Odon Erle of Marche, Geffray lord of 8 Lusynen, Raymond Erle of Forestz, and Theodoryk lord of Partenay. To the duc of Austeryche and to the Erle of Frebourgh, and to al theire alyaunces gretying. And where we haue vnderstand that with- 12 out ony lawfull quarell or raysonnable cause ye haue gretly hurt & dommagd bothe the land & people of our ryght welbeloued vncle the king of Anssay, the whiche as now ye haue besieged within his Castel of 16 Pourrencreu, And for as moch that we be therfor meued, & entende & purpose to entre in your land to dystroye you & al your people / consydering the noble ordre of knighthode that it shal not be by vs 20 mynnsshed. We perfor by our messenger send you oure *letres* of deffyaunce, &c.’ Thenne was delyuered the *letre* to a herault, which rode tyl he came to the siege of Pourrencreu wher he presented the said *lettre* 24 to the Duc of Austrych. the whiche *letres* were redd in heryng of al þe lordes there. Thenne said they of Allemayne the Deuell hath brought hem hyther, none other renomme is now thurgh al the world but of them 28 of Lusynen. Thenne retourned the herault toward the six bretheren, and to them shewed the manere how they of theire enemyes oost were meruaylled. ‘By my feyth they haue herd speke of vs from ferre / but now 32 they shal see vs nere to them.’ / It is trouth that thenne geffray departed with fyue hondred men of armes from his oost & went and embusshed his people in a lytel wod nygh the toun of Frebourgh. This 36



doon he & ten knyghtes *with* hym, & a squyer of  
 Lucembourgh that ryght wel coude speke Almayn  
 tonge & knew al the Countre, went vpon a lytel  
 4 mountayne to behold & see how he myght entre in  
 the toun / but or he departed he said to them of his  
 embusshe in this manere : ' Sires, I entende & purpose  
 with the help of god to haue the toun of Frebourgh or  
 8 to morne pryme at our playsire. Wherfore this nyght  
 I shaH departe *with* this X knyghtes and this esquier,  
 & at the spryng of the day I shal bygynne myn  
 enterpryse / and but loke wel whan ye perceyue vs  
 12 *within* the gate that fourth*with* ye marche toward vs.'  
 And theen about thre of the clokk after mydnyght  
 Geffray / his ten knyghtes and his guyde toke <sup>1</sup>eeche  
 of them a sack full of hey and bare it before them  
 16 vpon tharsons of theire sadels. In this manere they  
 went & came tofore the gate of Frebourgh, where as  
 the said esquier called the watche *pat* they myght  
 entre, sayeng that they were frendes and that they had  
 20 be aH that nyght in fourrage. Theen asked hym the  
 porter what they had in thoo sackes, the squyer ansuerd  
 there ben in gownes & suche thinges and suche ware /  
 that we haue take vpon our enemyes and we bryng  
 24 them hyther to selle them. The porter theen  
 supposyng they had be of Allemayne & theire frendes  
 opend the gate & lete faH the bridge. Theen entred  
 geffray first of alle, and foorth*with* drew his swerd and  
 28 slew the porter / and in conclusyon they slough al  
 them of the watche. Theen was there the cry of  
 them of the toun ' treson / treson' / And immedyatly  
 marched thembusshe & came & entred in the toun.  
 32 There was grete occisyon of them of the toun / but  
 many of them escaped and fledd. And whan this was  
 doon geffray lefte there foure hondred men of armes &  
 retourned with the residue toward hys oost that he  
 36 mete by the way toward the siege. Of this noble

He then takes  
 ten knights and  
 a squire, who  
 speaks German,  
 and knows the  
 country, and  
 goes to a hill to  
 see how he could  
 enter the town.

He tells his  
 ambush that he  
 hopes to have  
 Freiburg in the  
 morning,

and that when  
 they see that he  
 and his knights  
 have entered the  
 gate they are to  
 march up to him.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 207 b.

Geffray and his  
 knights take  
 each a sack of  
 hay, and ride to  
 Freiburg.

The squire asks  
 the watch to let  
 them in, as they  
 are friends.

The porter opens  
 the gate, and  
 lowers the  
 bridge.

Geffray enters  
 first, and slays  
 the porter.

At length all the  
 watch is slain.

The cry of trea-  
 son is raised.

The ambush  
 comes up, and  
 many of the  
 townspeople  
 are killed.  
 Geffray leaves  
 four hundred  
 men-of-arms in  
 charge of the  
 town, and with  
 those left  
 marches back to  
 his brethren,

who marvel at  
his valiant and  
subtle feat of  
arnes.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 208.

The Earl of  
Freibourg is sor-  
rowful when he  
learns the news.

After mass the  
brethren begin  
to march.

They are seen by  
the besiegers.  
The alarm is  
given, and they  
arm.

The hosts fight;  
the ground is  
soon red with  
blood.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 208 b.

enterpryse & valyaunt fayt the brethern of geffray and  
al theire peple were meruaylled / sayeng that geffray  
was the moost valyaunt knyght & subtyl in the faytte  
of arnes that lyued at that day. And joyous & glad <sup>4</sup>  
they marched courageously <sup>1</sup>toward theire enemyes.  
Anoon after came tydynges to the siege how Frebourgh  
was lost, wherof the Duc of Austeryche and in especial  
the Erle of Frebourgh were sorowful & wroth. 'By 8  
my feyth,' said thenne the Duc of Austerych, 'they  
be subtyl men of warre & moch to be doubted. Yf we  
loke not wel about vs they myght wet gyue vs a grete  
chak.' Wherfor they called theire CounseyH. 12

**I**n this partye sayth thystorye that on the next day  
by the morowe the six bretheren herd masse, and  
after ordeyned peire bataylles / geffray & his thre  
bretheren that were come with hym conduyted the first 16  
batayH, Anthony had the second, And regnauld the  
III<sup>de</sup>. And so marched forth in fayr ordynaunce, and  
so wel renged that it was a fayre sight to behold.  
And whan the sonne bygan to shewe bryght & clere 20  
they came vpon a lytel mountayn into the valey.  
Thenne were they Percyued, and they of the siege  
bygan to cry alarme. Thenne armed hym euery man,  
And in theire best wyse came & renged them before 24  
the bataylles of the brethern. Thenne bygan the  
bataylles of bothe sydes to approche eche other / and  
with grete cryes of one part & of other medled & ranne  
with theire sperys vpon eche other. The grounde was 28  
there soone dyed rede with grete effusyon of blood.  
For Geffray with hys swerd smote at the lyfte syde  
& at the ryght syde vpon his enemyes & ouerthrew or  
sloughe aH them that he recountred. And <sup>2</sup>the six 32  
baners of the bretheren rengid them togidre in fayre  
aray. There were the arnes of Lusynen wel shewed  
and knowen in pycture, and also by pesaunt and  
horryble strokes, For the six bretheren perced the 36

prees & smote, cutting heedes, armes, & legges of  
 their enemyes here & there, and made suche occysyon  
 that it was meruaylle / Geffray recounted by aduenture  
 4 the Duc of Austrych, on whom he descharged hys  
 swerd by such myght that he made hym to staker al  
 astonyed, And thenne theodoryk that was nygh by,  
 strak hym fourthwith and ouerthrew hym, and so  
 8 incontynent he was take. And the noble and valyaunt  
 Anthony dyde ryght valyauntly, For he toke the Erle  
 Freburgh and made hym to delyuere his swerd to hym,  
 and after betoke hym to foure knyghtes. What shuld  
 12 I make long compte. they of Allemayne were dys-  
 comfytred and bygan to flee. Thenne came the kyng  
 of Anssay out of the Fortres glad & joyous of the  
 dyscomfytture of hys enemyes, and came to the brethern  
 16 tentes where he thanked them moche of their noble  
 socour and gretly festyed them. And were brought  
 there tofore hym the Duc of Austeryche & the Erle of  
 Frebourgh with syx noble barons / and to hym said  
 20 the bretheren, 'Sire, here ben your enemyes as  
 prysonners, doo of them your playsyr.' And the kyng  
 thanked them gretly & humbly. And this doon geffray  
 and hys bretheren that were come with hym toke  
 24 leue of the kyng of Anssay, of their brethern Anthony  
 & Regnauld, and retourned in their Countre. But  
 thystory sayth that aftirward all the bretheren fonde  
 eche other togidre at Mountferrat, where they held a  
 28 noble feste for leue of Raymoundyn their fader, whiche  
 was ryght glad and joyous to see there his children,  
 but soone he toke leue of them and retourned in to hys  
 hermytage. And thenne the six bretheren gaaf grette  
 32 ryches & jewels to the chirche there, and after departed  
 and toke leue eche one of other & retourned to their  
 Countrees, some by the see & other by land.

36 **H**ere testyfyeth thistorye that as long as Raymoundyn  
 lyued, Geffray & theodoryk came there euery

The brethren  
 slay many of  
 their enemyes.

Geffray en-  
 counters the  
 Duke of Aus-  
 tria, and strikes  
 him with his  
 sword.

Theodoric, who  
 was at hand,  
 gives him  
 another stroke,  
 and overthrows  
 him. The Duke  
 is taken.  
 Anthony cap-  
 tures the Earl  
 of Freiburg.

The Germans  
 begin to flee.  
 The King of  
 Anssay comes  
 out of his for-  
 tress, and thanks  
 the brethren.

and feasts them.  
 The Duke of  
 Austria and the  
 Earl of Freiburg  
 are brought  
 before him, and  
 the brethren tell  
 him to do what  
 he pleases with  
 them.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 209.

The brethren  
 return home.

They afterwards  
 meet at Mount-  
 ferrat on a vist  
 to their father,  
 who is joyful at  
 seeing them.

They give rich  
 gifts to the  
 church.

Geffray and  
 Theodoric go to  
 Raymoundin  
 euery year;



but one day  
when they were  
about to journey  
to Mountserratt,  
a great serpent  
is seen on the  
battlements of  
Lusignan castle.

It has a woman's  
voice.

The people are  
abashed, and  
know it to be  
Melusine; the  
brothers weep.  
When the ser-  
pent sees them  
she inclines her  
head, and utters  
a dolorous cry.

Geffray and  
Theodoric go to  
Mountserratt and  
find their father  
dead.

1 fol. 209 b.

They mourn, and  
dress themselves  
and their men  
in black, and  
arrange their  
father's obse-  
quies.

The King of  
Aragon, and  
many lords,  
attend and hear  
mass.

After the burial  
Geffray thanks  
them.

A tomb is placed  
over Raymondin.

yere ones to see hym / but it befeß on a day, as they  
were bothe at Lusynen redy for to go to Mountferrat,  
a meruayllous auenture, For there was seen vpon the  
batelments of the Castel a grete & horryble serpent the 4  
which cryed with a femenyne voys, wherof all the  
people was abashed / but wel they wyst that it was  
Melusyne / whan the two bretheren beheld it, teerys  
in habundaunce bygan to fall fro their eyen; For they 8  
knew wel that it was their moder. And whan the  
serpent sawe them wepe, she enclyned the heed toward  
them, casting suche an horryble cry & so doulorous  
that it semed them that herd it that the Fortres shuld 12  
haue fall. And anoone aftir the two breþern geffray  
& theodoryk departed toward Mountferrat where they  
came and fonð their fader deed, whereof they  
lamented & made grete sorow <sup>1</sup>and anoone clothed 16  
themsell and al theire meyne in blak, and ordeyned  
for thobsequeye of their fader. There came the kyng  
of aragon with many grete lordes that offred at the  
masse. And whan the scruyse was doon & the corps 20  
buried honourably / geffray went & thanked the  
kyng and his barons of thonour that þey had doon to  
hys fader and to his brother & hym. /

**T**hus as thystorye sheweth was thobsequeye of 24  
Raymondyn deuoutly & nobly doon, and a ryche  
sepulture was made & sette vpon his graue, & trouth  
it is that Bernardon the neuuew of Geffray was there  
that ryght wel coude behaue hym among the ladyes, 28  
in so moche that the quene of Aragon, that was there,  
desyred her lord to demande of Geffray what that yong  
gentylman was, / and that / the kyng dide gladly.  
And theñne geffray ansuerd, 'Sire, he is my neuuew, 32  
sone to the Erle of Marche my brother.' 'Certaynly,  
Geffray,' said the kyng, 'Wel I byleue that, For he is  
wel nourrytured and semeth wel to be of noble



extraction / and wete it wel that his contenaunee  
 playseth vs ryght wel and so dooth lyke wyse to the  
 quene / and verly yf it playseth you to suffre hym  
 4 abyde *with* vs in our Court we wold doo for hym that  
 he & you botho shuld be playseth ther*with*.' 'Sire,'  
 said geffray, 'his fader hath another sone and two  
 doughtirs, & syth it is your playsir to haue hym he is  
 8 come hither *with* vs in a good heure & that playseth  
 me wel.' And thenne the kyng thanked hym moche,  
 and so dyde the quene. And wete it that Bernardon  
 1 Wedded aftirward, at thinstaunce & prayer of the  
 12 kyng of Aragon, the doughtir of the lord Cabyeres that  
 had none to hys heyre but her. And thenne the  
 kyng and the quene, lordes & ladyes, toke their leue  
 of the two bretherne, the whiche after grete yestes of  
 16 ryches by them youen to the chirch toke leue of the  
 pryour and hys monkes, and after departed and  
 retourned to Lusynen, where as they called to them all  
 the baronnye and there was thobsequye of Raymondyn  
 20 honourably doon. And aftir Geffray shewed to his  
 brother Odon, Erle of Marche, how & wherfore hys  
 sone Bernardon was lefte *with* the kyng of Aragon,  
 wherof he was glad. And thenne the bretheren and  
 24 the barons toke leue of Geffray and retourned to their  
 countrees. And Geffray abode at Lusynen and dyde  
 aftirward moche good; For he reedyfied the noble  
 Abay of Maylleses and dyde grete almesse to the poure  
 28 people.

**T**hystorye sayth that all the heyres of Raymondyn  
 and Melusyno regned nobly, that is to wete  
 Vryan in Cipre, Guyon in Armenye, Regnault in  
 32 Behayne, Anthony in Lucembourgh, Odon in Marche,  
 Raymonet in Forestz, Geffray in Lusynen, and  
 Theodoryk in Partenay. And of theyre lynee are  
 yssued them of Castel Regnault, They of Penbrough

The Queen of  
 Aragon takes  
 Geffray's nephew  
 to her court.

1 fol. 210.  
 He afterwards  
 marries the only  
 child of the Lord  
 of Cabyeres.

Geffray and  
 Theodoric givo  
 great gifts to  
 the church,

and return to  
 Lusignan, where  
 the obsequies of  
 Raymondin are  
 honourably done.

Geffray tells  
 Odo that Bernar-  
 don had been  
 left with the  
 King of Aragon.

Geffray rebuilds  
 the Abbey of  
 Mailleses.

The nine heirs  
 of Raymondin  
 and Melusine  
 reign nobly,

and from them  
 are issued the  
 lords of Castle  
 Regnault, of  
 Pembroke,

of Cabyeres, and  
of Cardillac.

Geffray governs  
his land well,  
and administers  
good justice.

For ten years he  
asks no ac-  
counts from his  
receivers, who

<sup>3</sup> fol. 210 b.

are told when  
they wish him  
to examine the  
accounts, that  
when justice is  
done, and his  
towns and  
castles are well  
provided for, and  
he has plenty  
of money, he  
is content.

But his stewards  
ask, for their  
own safety, that  
he should give  
them quittance.

Geffray looks at  
his accounts,  
and sees an item  
of ten sous that  
was paid yearly  
for the pommel  
of the highest  
tower of Lusig-  
nan Castle.

He is told that  
it is an annual  
rent.

Geffray declares  
he holds the  
castle direct  
from God,  
his Creator.  
His stewards  
tell Geffray that  
they do not know  
to whom they  
pay the ten sous.

in England / they of Cabyeres in Aragon,<sup>1</sup> and they of  
<sup>2</sup>Cardillak in Quercyn. /

**H**ere after saith thistory that geffray ten yere aftr  
the decez of Raymoudin his fader governed<sup>4</sup>  
ryght wel & kept good justice in his land / but duryng  
that long space of tym he asked of his receyuours none  
acomptes, but whan the <sup>3</sup>receyuours wold haue shewed  
theire acomptes he to them ansuerd in this manere : 8  
'What acomptes wold ye shew to me? For as touching  
myself I wyl none other acompte, but that justice be  
wel and truly kept through al my land, and my tounes  
& Castels wel entreteyned, and gold & syluer to hold 12  
& kepe myn estate / trow ye, that I wyl make a paleys  
of gold / the stone that my lady my moder me gaf,  
suffyseth me ryght wel.' And thenne hys stywardes &  
gouernours ansuerd, 'certainly, my lord, it behoueth 16  
wel to a prynce to here and see what he spendeth, at  
lest ones in a yere / al were it but for the saluacyon  
of hys receyuours in tyme to come and for to gyue  
them quyttaunce.' 20

**H**ere sayth thistory that geffray consentid to here  
thacomptes of his receyuours. And it came to  
an article where he vnderstod that <sup>4</sup>X. <sup>5</sup> were payed  
euery yere only for the pommel of the hyst toure of 24  
hys Fortresse of Lusynen / he anone rested there and  
asked why it was not made so strong that it myght  
laste many wynter. 'My lord,' ansuerd the receyuours /  
'it is rente annueH.' 'What say ye?' said geffray / 'I 28  
hold not the fortresse but only of god my Creatour /  
wel happy I were yf he held me quyte therfor of all  
my synnes / but telle me to whom ye paye.' 'Certaynly,'  
said they / 'we wot not' / 'How thenne,' said Geffray / 32  
'ye desyre of me quyttaunce therof / so wyl I haue

<sup>1</sup> Fr. version gives in addition '*ceulx du Chassenage du Dauphiné; ceulx de la Roche.*'

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *Candillat*.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. *dis soublz*.

- quytaunce of hym that receybeth it of you / as rayson  
 is / but by god ye shal not begyH me soo, for yf I may  
 knowe who that taketh that annuel rente of me, he  
 4 shal shew me good<sup>t</sup> letres therof made / or he or ye  
 shaH yeld<sup>t</sup> me ayen the said annuel rente fro the tyme  
 that ye first alowed it in your acomptes <sup>1</sup>ynto now.’  
 Thenne said the receyuours to Geffray in this manere :  
 8 ‘My lord, trouth it is / that six yere agoo after the  
 doulorous departyng of my lady your moder from your  
 fader / euery yere vpon the last day of August was  
 sene a grete hand<sup>t</sup> that toke the pommel of the said  
 12 toure & pullyd<sup>t</sup> it fro the toure by so grete strength  
 that the rouf of the tour brak therwithal, and so it  
 costed<sup>t</sup> euery yere to make ayen xx<sup>ti</sup> or xxx<sup>2</sup>ti. thanne  
 came a man to my lord your fader which he nor no man  
 16 knew what he was, and counseyll<sup>d</sup> hym that euery  
 yere vpon the last day of August he shuld doo take  
 — a purse of hertis leeder and to be put in it xxx pieces  
 of syluer, eche piece worth <sup>3</sup>foure penys, that made in  
 20 *summa* ten sheling, And that this purse shuld be putte  
 vpon the pommel of the said toure / and by that shuld  
 the pommel abyde styl and not hurt nor dommag<sup>d</sup> /  
 and euer syth tyl now it hath thus be doon.’ And  
 24 whan geffray vndersto<sup>t</sup> this meruayH he bygan to  
 thinke, and long he was or he ansuer<sup>t</sup> or said<sup>t</sup> ony  
 word<sup>t</sup>. /

- Thystorye witnesseth that long thought Geffray  
 28 **T**vpon this faytte, and after he said in this manere :  
 ‘Sires, how wel that I byleue that it is as ye say,  
 Neuertheles I charge you vpon payne of deth that ye  
 no more paye the said annuel, but at the last day of  
 32 August bryng to me the purse and the money, For I  
 wyl make the payement myself.’ Thenne sent geffray  
 for hys brother theodoryk in Partenay, and also for  
 hys brother Raymond in Forestz, that they shuld be

Geffray says that  
 he who takes the  
 money must  
 show letters  
 patent proving  
 his right,  
 or he will have  
 to return it.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 211.

The receivers  
 tell how six years  
 after the depar-  
 ture of Melusine,  
 and the last day  
 of August every  
 year,

a great hand  
 pulled down the  
 pommel of the  
 tower, which  
 cost twenty to  
 thirty livres to  
 repair.

Then an un-  
 known man came  
 and advised Ray-  
 mondin to put  
 thirty pieces of  
 silver on the  
 pommel the last  
 of August each  
 year,

and the tower  
 would be un-  
 injured.

Geffray marvels  
 much at the  
 story :

at length he for-  
 bids his steward  
 to pay the rent  
 again on pain  
 of death ;  
 but says on the  
 day the money  
 is to be given to  
 him, and he will  
 pay it himself.  
 Geffray sends for  
 Raymondin and  
 Theodoric,

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *livres*.

<sup>3</sup> Fr. *quatre deniers*.



1 fol. 211 b.  
and tells them  
the story, and  
that he is not  
going to pay  
again until he  
knows why the  
fortress is so  
bound.  
On the last of  
August Geffray  
hears mass,  
and arms  
and takes the  
money.

He bids his  
brethren fare-  
well,

and goes to the  
top of the  
donjon.

He waited from  
noon till three  
o'clock, but saw  
nothing.

Then he heard a  
great noise that  
shook the don-  
jon, and he saw  
an armed knight  
who said, 'Gef-  
fray, wilt thou  
deny my tri-  
bute?'

Geffray asks  
for his letters,  
and says, 'If  
thou hast them,  
I will pay thee.'  
The knight  
answers he has  
none, but that  
he has always  
been paid  
regularly.  
Geffray tells the  
knight that even  
if it were a good  
debt he would  
find it difficult  
to get,

with hym at Lusynen the xxvi<sup>th</sup> day of August. And  
whan they were come he shewed <sup>1</sup>to them al the  
matere of the said annuel rente, and said that he neuer  
shuld suffre it to be payed; but that he first knew to 4  
whom and why the fortres of Lusynen was bound thus  
for to doo. And whan the last day of August came,  
Geffray herd hys masse and receyued ryght, deuoutely  
the holy sacrement and immediatly armed hym, and 8  
bad the preste putte the stolle about his nek / and  
aftir toke the purse with the money therin. And  
penne he bad his bretheren farwel, sayeng in this  
manere: 'I wyl departe and serche for hym that thus 12  
yerly taketh trybute of my fortresse / but I assure you  
yf he be no more of strength than I am I sha<sup>ll</sup> hastily  
byreue hym of hys trybute.' And so he yede vp to  
the vpermost stage of the donjon / and his bretheren 16  
and the barons taryed benethe in grete doubte and fere  
that geffray shuld be perysshed / but geffray was therof  
not agast / but loked long yf he coude see eny thing.

**A** H thus as thystory sheweth geffray rested there 20  
fro none to thre of the clok, that he ne herd nor  
sawe nothing! but anoone after he herd a grete noyse  
wherwith all the donjon shook / and as he loked  
tofore hym he perceyued a grete knyght armed of al 24  
poynts, that said to hym with a hye voys, 'Thou  
geffray, wilt thou denye my trybute that of ryght I  
ought to haue vpon the pommel of this toure of the  
which I was seasyd & enpocessid by thy fader?' 28  
'Thenne,' said Geffray, 'where are the letres? yf thou  
hast them, shew it how my fader was bound, and yf I  
see thou hast good ryght / here is the money redy to  
paye the.' and thenne the knyght ansuerd in this 32  
manere: 'I had neuer letres therof / but wel & truly  
haue I be payed and neuer denyed tyl now.' 'By my  
feyth,' said geffray, 'al were it good debte and thy  
ryght to haue it / yet shuldest thou haue grete payne 36



to recouere it of me. And on the other part thou  
 holdest me for thy subget & <sup>1</sup>woldest hold me in  
 seruitude and thou hast therof nothing to shew. but  
 4 what art thou that thus by the space of <sup>2</sup>XVI. yere  
 hast thevely take this trybute? / I now desseye the by  
 the myght of my sauour and the I chalenge for myn  
 herytage.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'doubte  
 8 not therof but that I am a creature of god, and myn  
 name shalt thou knowe tyme ynough.' And without  
 eny more questyon echo of them recountred other with  
 myghty & gret strokes. And what with that and with  
 12 the stampyng of theire feet, the noyse was so grete  
 that al pey that were benethe were abashed, and  
 supposed that the donjon shuld haue fah. Wherfor  
 they wyst wel that geffray had somewhat to doo. And  
 16 his bretheren shuld haue assysted hym, but geffray had  
 them deffended so to do. And wete it wel whan the  
 knyght of the tour fond Geffray so fyers & so strong,  
 he putte his swerd vp in the shede and thurgh his  
 20 paueys behind hym. And whan Geffray sawe hym  
 that doo / he dyde lyke wyse with his shield / but he  
 with bothe his handes smote the knyght vpon the  
 helmet with his swerd so myghtyly that he staker  
 24 perwith. And thenne the knight toke geffray in his  
 arnes / and with that geffray lete fah his swerd and  
 wrestled with hym / and wete it wel ther was lytel  
 fauour shewed on neyther part. And whan the  
 28 knyght perceyued the purse about geffrays neck he  
 supposed to haue had it from hym / but geffray kept  
 hym therfro / sayeng / 'or thou haue purse or money  
 it shal cost the the best blood in thy body / but for  
 32 trouth I meruayll how thou mayst so long withstand  
 me.' 'By my feyth,' said the knight, 'I haue more  
 meruaylle how thou mayst withstand my strengthe /  
 but to morowe shalt thou haue a new day with me,

<sup>1</sup> fol. 212.

but as he has nothing to show that it is due, he demaunds his name, and desies him.

The knight replies that he is a creature of God, and that Geffray will learn his name soon enough.

They fight, and make so great a noise that those below think the donjon will fall.

His brethren would have come to his help, but Geffray had forbidden them to do so.

The knight sheathes his sword, and puts his shield behind him.

Geffray strikes him on the helmet so that he staggers.

He wrestles with Geffray,

and tries to take the purse from him.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 212 b.

The knight appoints another struggle in a meadow by the river next morning on condition that Geffray comes alone. Geffray agrees, and the knight disappears.

Geffray comes down and brings the shield he had won in his right hand, and the purse in his left.

His brethren are abashed, and ask whom he had found.

He answers, the most valiant knight he had ever seen, and tells of his covenant, and of the sudden departure of the knight. They laugh at the story, but when they look at Geffray's helmet they see there has been a great fight.

In the morning Geffray goes to the meadow.

He calls to the knight. 'Be ye he that will take tribute upon my fortress?'

<sup>2</sup> fol. 213. The knight says he is.

For, now the sonne is to his rest,<sup>1</sup> and thou shalt fynd me yonder vpon that medowe beyond the ryuere al redy armed to chalenge the and my ryght. But thou shalt assure me þat no personne shal passe the ryuere<sup>4</sup> but thou.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'I the assure no more ther shal not,' and with that he departed that geffray wylt not where he became. 'By my feyth,' sayd thenne geffray, 'here is apert messenger, I haue 8 grete meruaylle what this may be,' and so came he doun and brought with hym the knyghtes sheld that he had wonne.

**T**hystorye witnesseth whan Geffray was come doun, 12  
hys sheld about his neck and the knyghtis pauceys in his ryght hand that he had wonne / and in his other hand the purse with the money, hys bretheren and the baronne pere were abashed therwith, and 16  
asked hym whom he had fond. And thenne he said he had fond the moost valyaunt knyght that euer he dyde dedes of armes withal. And to them shewed al the maner of batayll & of theire couenaunt / and how 20  
he wold haue had the purse, and how he departed so sodaynly. and they bygan to lawhe, sayeng þat neuer tofore they herd of suche a thing. But whan they sawe geffrays helmet & al hys harneys so perysshed 24  
with strokes, they had no courage to lawhe. For they knew wel there was sore batayll. And on the next day erly geffray roos, and he & hys brethern herd masse & drank ones. And thenne armed hym at al 28  
pieces & mounted on horsbak / And his bretheren and þe barons yek to conueye hym to the ryuere, where he toke leue of them and passed ouer on the other syde of the ryuere. / 32

**T**hystorye telleth that anoone Geffray fond þe knyght and to hym said with a hye voys, 'Sire<sup>2</sup> knyght, be ye he that wyl take the trybute vpon my Fortresse?' And he ansuerd, 'ye by my feith.' And 36

ryght forth said geffray, 'I chalenge the, wherfor  
 deffende the.' And whan the knight vnderstod this,  
 he sette the spere in the rest and geffray lyke wyse /  
 4 and so eche of them recountred other / by force wherof  
 they brak thaire speris to the hard fyst in many pieces.  
 And whan they had thus manfully broken theire speris  
 they drew out theire swerdes and smote eche other  
 8 with grete & myghty strokes that the fyre sprang out of  
 theire harneys, wherof the peple vpon the rynere syde  
 had grete meruayll & were al abasshed how that euer  
 they might endure the grete strokes, For they left not  
 12 one piece of harneys hool. And they faught fro the  
 morow vnto thre of the. Clok at astirnone and neuer  
 seaced. And so grete was the batayll that none  
 1<sup>[wist]</sup> which of them had the better. And thenne  
 16 the knight bygan to say to geffray / 'here me now, I  
 haue the wel assayd / and as touching the trybute I  
 the quyte. And wete it wel that / that I haue doo,  
 it hath be for the prouffyt of thy fader & of his sowle,  
 20 For it is trouth that the pope enjoyed hym by way  
 of penaunce for the forsweryng that he had don to  
 thy moder to founde a monastery, the whiche penaunce  
 was not by hym obserued. but it is so yf thou  
 24 wylt edyfyne an hospital, and founde therin a preste to  
 syng dayly for thy faders sowle / thy fortres fro this  
 day fourthon shalbe quyte of ony trybute / how be  
 it there shal be sene about the tour more meruaylles  
 28 than in any other place of þe world.' And geffray  
 ansuerd, 'yf I knew for certayn that thou were of god  
 I wold gladly <sup>2</sup>fullfuill thy wyll in this byhalf.' /  
 And he said he was. And thenne geffray said / 'be  
 32 thou sure this shal be doon yf it playse god. but I  
 pray the say me what thou art.' And the knyght  
 ansuerd, 'Geffray, enquere no ferther, For as for this  
 tyme thou mayst knowe no more / but only that I am

Geffray chal-  
lenges him.

They break their  
spears,

and draw their  
swords, and give  
each other  
mighty strokes.

They fight till  
three o'clock,  
and no one can  
tell who has the  
better of the  
fight.

The knight tells  
Geffray that he  
forgives him the  
tribute.

What he had  
done was for the  
good of Geffray's  
father's soul,  
who was to  
have founded a  
monastery as  
penance, but had  
not done so.

If Geffray will  
build an hospital  
and endow a  
priest, he will  
quit him of his  
tribute alto-  
gether.

Geffray answers,  
that if he knew  
the knight were  
of God he would  
do his will.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 213 b.

He declares he  
is, and Geffray  
promises that  
his will shall be  
done.

<sup>1</sup> which in MS.



The knight disappears without telling his name.

Geffray crosses the river to his brethren.

They ask where his enemy has gone.

Geffray says that they came to an agreement, but he cannot tell where the knight has gone.

Geffray hung the shield he wore in his hall.

After Geffray had built the hospital the shield vanished.

Here ends the history of the heirs of Lusignan.

Long after the death of Guion of Armenia there was a wilful young king,

who heard tell of a castle in Great Armenia, where dwelt the fairest lady in the world.

She had a sparrowhawk, and to any noble knight who could

<sup>3</sup> fol. 214.

watch it three days and nights without sleep, she gave whatever they asked, save herself.

The young king resolved to go, and said he would take nothing but the lady's person.

'<sup>1</sup>a Creature of god.' And therewith he vanysshed that geffray wyst not where he became / wherof meruaylled moche they that were by þe ryuere. And thenne came geffray ouer the ryuer to his bretheren, whiche asked 4 hym how he had doo and where hys party aduerse was become. And geffray to them sayd that they were acorded togidre, but where he was become he coude not tell. And thezne they retourned to Lusynen 8 where geffray dide doo hang<sup>t</sup> the paneys, that he had wonne vpon the knyght of the toure, in the myddes of his haß. Where as it heng tyl geffray had edyfyed the said hospytal, For theñn it vanysshed away that 12 no man wyst where it became. And here fynyssheth the hystory of the heyres of Lusynen. but bycause that the kynges of Armanye ben yssued of that lynce, I wyl shewe herafter an auenture that befeß to a kyng 16 of Armanye.

**T**hystorye sayth that long after the deces of kyng guyon of Armanye, Ther was a kinge of that land<sup>t</sup> yong and fayre, lecherous and folowyng his wyß. 20 The kyng vndersted<sup>t</sup> by the report of som knightes vyageours, that there was in the grete Armanye a Castel whereas was in the most fayre lady that men wyst at that tyme in al the world / the whiche lady 24 had a <sup>2</sup>sperhawk / and to al knightes of noble extraction that thither went & coude watche the said sperhawk duryng the space of thre <sup>3</sup>dayes and thre nyghtes without slepe / the lady shuld appiere tofore them and 28 gyue them suche worldly yestes as they wold wysse and were desyryng to haue, except only her self. This kyng thenne that was lusty and in his best age, and that vndersted<sup>t</sup> the renomme of the excellent beaulte of 32 the said<sup>t</sup> lady / said he wold go thither / and that of the lady he shuld nothing take but herself. But wete it that in the said Castel might none entre but ones in

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *de par Dieu*.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *esprevier*.



a yere / and that was the day tofore the vygille of  
 saynt Johan / and the next day after saynt Johans  
 day euery man must departe thens. Whan the said  
 4 kyng was redy he departed & rode w<sup>th</sup> noble company  
 so long that he cam to the forsaid Castel at the day  
 assygned, tofore the which he dide dresse vp a ryche  
 paynllon and there he souped, and aftir went to rest.  
 8 And on the morne he roos and herd masse / and after  
 that the masse was do, he drank ones, and syn armed  
 hym and toke leue of them that were come w<sup>th</sup> hym,  
 whic<sup>h</sup> were sorowfu<sup>ll</sup> for his departing, For they  
 12 trowed that neuer he shuld haue come ayen. And  
 this doon the kyng yed toward the sperhawk in the  
 Castel. /

16 **H**ere saith thistory that whan the king was at  
 thentree of the Castel, an old man al clothed in  
 whyte cam ayenst hym, & asked hym who that had  
 brought hym thither / and he ansuerd in this manere :

'I am come hither to seke thauenture and to haue the  
 20 Custome of this Castel.' And the good old man said to  
 hym / 'ye be ryght welcome, folow ye me, and I shal  
 shew you the auenture that ye seke for.' Therne  
 yede the king aftir the old man / and gretly was he  
 24 meruaylled of the grete & inestimable riches <sup>1</sup>that he  
 sawe, w<sup>th</sup>in the place. And thene entred the old  
 man into a noble ha<sup>ll</sup> rychely hanged, And aftir hym  
 entred the kyng that perceyued in the myddes of the  
 28 ha<sup>ll</sup> a long horne of a vnycorne that was fayre &  
 whyte / and therupon was spred a grete cloth of gold  
 wheron stod the sperhawk and a gloue of whyt sylk  
 vnder his feet. Therne said the old man to the kyng  
 32 in this wyse : 'Sire, here ye may see thaduenture of  
 this Castel / and w<sup>th</sup> it sethen ye are so ferfoorth  
 come ye must watche this sperhawk thre days and thre  
 nyghtes without slep. And yf Fortune suffre you so  
 36 to doo, wete it wel pat the noble lady of this ryght

People could  
 only enter the  
 castle on the  
 vigil of St.  
 John's, and the  
 day after St.  
 John's day all  
 had to leave.  
 The King with  
 his company  
 arrived on the  
 right day, and  
 set up a pavilion  
 before the castle,  
 where he supped  
 and rested the  
 night.  
 In the morning  
 he heard mass,  
 drank, amused  
 himself,

and went to the  
 castle.

An old man  
 clothed in white  
 asked at the  
 entry why he  
 had come.

The King said,  
 'To have the  
 custom of the  
 castle.'  
 The old man wel-  
 comes him, and  
 asks him to  
 follow him into  
 the castle.  
 The King marvels  
 at the riches he  
 sees.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 214 b.

They come to a  
 noble hall, and  
 there the King  
 sees the sparrow-  
 hawk perched  
 on a unicorn's  
 horn.

The old man  
 tells the King  
 that if he watches  
 the sparrow-  
 hawk three days  
 and three nights  
 without sleep

the lady of the castle will appear on the fourth day, and grant what he desires most to have, except herself; if he asks to have her evil will befall him.

Castel shall appiere tofore you on the foureth day, to whom ye shal aske that thing of the world whiche ye desyre moost to haue / except her body / and no doubt of but ye shal haue it / but wete it certaynly 4 yf ye desire and aske to haue herself, euyl auenture shal fall to you therof.'

### Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhawk.

8

<sup>1</sup> fol. 215.

The old man left the King alone in the hall.

There was a table covered with all manner of dainties,

but the King eat sparingly, so that he might be able to keep awake.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 215 b.

He spent his time looking at the pictures,

and among others, sees figured the history of King Elinas and Queen Pressine, and their three daughters, and how they were punished for shutting their father in Mount Brombelyo.

The King watches until the third day,

**T**he forsaid old man affir that he had declared and shewed to the kyng the manere of watching of the sperhawk, he departed fro the halle / and the kyng abode alone and had grete meruayH, what of the 12 grete ryches pat he sawe there, as of a ryche table that was in the haH couered nobly with al maner deyntes of meetes. And that part he drew hym self & ete a lytel and drank of that lyked best & kept good dyete and 16 made none excès, For wel he knewe that to mochi meet & drynk causeth the body to be pesaunt & slepy. And to dryue fourth the tyme walked vp & down the haH, taking grete playsyr of the grete noblesse that 20 he sawe, <sup>2</sup>For there were ryche pictures where as were figured many a noble hystory, and the wrytyng vndernethe that shewed the vnderstandyng of it. And emong other hystories was there figured the 24 noble hystory of kyng Elynas & queen Pressyne his wyf, and of their thre doughtirs, and how they closed their fader in the mountayne of Brombelyo in Northomberland / and how Pressyne their moder 28 punysshed them therfor / and al the circonstaunces of peir faytes were there shewed in letres of gold fro þe bygynnyng vnto the ende.

**G**rete playsir toke the king to rede & see the said 32 hystories. And thus he watched loking here and there vnto the thirde day. And thene he per-

ceyued a right noble chambre, and sawe the doore al  
 wyd open / and that part he went and entred in the  
 chambre, and beheld *per* many knyghtes armed figured  
 4 and rychely paynted on the walles, and vnder their  
 feet were their names writon in letres of gold and of  
 what lynce & countre they were / and aboue their  
 heedes was writon in this manere: 'Vpon suche a  
 8 tyme watched this knight in this Castel the noble  
 sperhawk, but he slept / and therefore he most hold  
 company *with* the lady of this place as long as he may  
 lyue, and nothing worldly shal he wante of that his  
 12 herte can desire saf only the departyng fro the place.'  
 And there nygh were paynted thre sheldes in a rowe,  
 and on them were figured the armes of thre knyghtes  
 and their names / their lynce & their Contre that they  
 16 were of were writon vnderneath / and aboue the sheldes  
 was shewed by wrytyng this that foloweth: 'In suche  
 a yere watched our sperhawk this noble knight wel  
 and duely and departed *with* joye and had his yest of  
 20 vs *with* hym.' And so long beheld the king that he  
 almost slept / but he anon came out of the Chambre  
 and sawe the sonne almost down and passed fourth  
 that nyght without slepe.

24 **T**henne was he glad whan he perceyued *pe* day.

And foorthwith at the rysyng of the sonne cam  
 the lady of the Castel in so noble and so ryche aray  
 that the kyng had gréte méruayH therof / and what of  
 28 her ryches as of her excellent beaute, he was gretly  
 abashed. And thenne the lady dide her obeyssaunce,  
 sayeng in this manere: 'Noble kyng of Armanye, ye  
 be ryght welcome. For certaynly ye haue wel &  
 32 valyauntly endeuoired you. now aske of me what  
 yeste that so euer playse you worldly and raysounable,  
 and ye shal haue it *without* ony taryeng.' Thenne  
 ansuerd the king that right sore was esprysed of the  
 36 loue of her; 'By my feyth, gracyous & noble lady, I

when he sees  
 an open door.  
 He enters the  
 chamber,  
 and sees the wall  
 figured with  
 many knights,  
 and reads their  
 names and the  
 writing:

'This knight  
 watched the  
 sparrowhawk,  
 but slept,  
 and so must  
 remain in the  
 castle all his  
 life.'

He also sees  
 three shields  
 painted with the  
 arms of three  
 knights,

and a writing:  
 'This knight  
 watched our

1 fol. 216.

sparrowhawk,  
 and departed  
 joyfully with  
 his gift.'  
 The King nearly  
 fell asleep look-  
 ing at the figures,  
 but left the  
 chamber, and  
 kept awake all  
 the night.

At sunrise the  
 lady of the castle  
 comes to the  
 King,

and welcomes  
 him, and asks  
 him to name  
 what gift he  
 would have.

The King  
 answers,



'Neither silver  
nor gold, nor  
town nor castle,  
but you, my  
beloved lady, to  
be my wife.'

The lady is  
wroth at his  
request,

and replies that  
he cannot have  
her.

The King presses  
his suit,

but she tells him  
to ask a reason-  
able gift.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 216 b.

The King de-  
clares he will  
have nothing  
but herself.

The Queen tells  
him that unless  
he changes his  
purpose evil hap  
will fall on him  
and his posterity;

but the King de-  
clares that h's  
heart is ravished  
with her beauty,  
and that he will  
have nothing  
but her.

aske neyther gold nor syluer, Cyte, toun, nor Castel,  
For thanked be god I haue of al worldly ryches ynough /  
but yf it playse you, my ryht dere & right entierly  
beloued lady, I wyl haue you to my wyf.' And whan 4  
the lady vnderstod this she was wroth, and by grete  
yre she said to hym in this wyse: 'Ha, thou grete foole,  
For nought hast thou asked my body, For thou mayst  
not by no wyse haue it.' Thenne said the king to 8  
the lady, 'Wel I haue, to myn aduys, endeuoired me.  
Wherfor, noble lady, be you fauourable to me and haue  
regard to the custome of this castel.' 'By my feyth,'  
ansuerd the lady, 'as touching thaduenture & custome 12  
of this Castel, I wyl that it be obserued & kept / but  
aske of me yeft raysounable / and no doubte <sup>1</sup>of but  
thou shalt haue it.' 'By my feyth, noble lady, I desyre  
none other thing erthly nor none other I shal not aske 16  
nor take of you, but only your gracyous body.' 'Ha,  
fole, folc,' said thenne the lady, 'euyll myscheaunce  
shal fall on the, yf thou soone chaungest not thy  
purpos, and so it shal to al thin heyres & successours 20  
aftir þe / though they be not culpable therof.' And  
the kyng her ansuerd, 'It is for nought, For my  
herte is rauysshed of your beaute, and only fedde with  
your syght. And therefore your body wyl I haue and 24  
none other thing erthly.' /

Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue  
rauysshed by force the lady, but she  
vanysshed away. 28

W han thenne the lady sawe that the kyng  
chaunged not his purpos, she was ryght wroth,  
and to hym said in this manyere: 'Thou folyssh kyng,  
now shalt thou lese the syght of me, & shalt fayll of 32  
thy yefte, & hast putte thyself in auenture to abyde  
with in for euer in grete payne & tourment, bycause that

The lady becomes  
right wroth,

and tells him  
that he will lose  
his gift,



thou art yssued of the lynce of kyng guyon that was  
sone to Melusyne my sustir, and I am his ante / and  
thou art so nygh of my blood and kynred that though  
4 I wold be consentyng to thy wyH holy Chirch wold  
neuer suffre it.' And aftir she reherced & shewed to  
hym al that is tofore said in the <sup>1</sup>Chapter of Elynas  
and Pressyne, and also fro hed to heed all the heyres  
8 of Lusynen and their fayttes. And after she said to  
hym / 'grete myschief shal happe to the & vpon thyn  
heyres successors <sup>2</sup>after the, and that shal endure vnto  
the ix lynce, For they shal faH in decaye, & exilled fro  
12 their contrees & fro their honour, wherfor departe  
lightly hens, For here mayst thou no lenger abyde.'  
The kyng thenne vnderstod wel the lady. but ney per  
for her wordes, nor for fere that ought shuld hym  
16 mysfaH, he neuer chaunged his folysch wyH & vnhappy  
purpos, but wold haue take the lady by manere of  
vyolens and by force. but soone Melyor vanysshed  
away that he wyst neuer where she was become.

because she is  
the aunt of King  
Guion his an-  
cestor, and that  
they are too near  
of kin to marry,  
and even if she  
consented, Holy  
Church would  
forbid their  
union.

Then she tells  
the history of  
Elynas and Pres-  
sine, and of the  
heirs of Lu-  
signan,  
and foretells of  
the decay of his  
<sup>3</sup> fol. 217.

line, and of their  
exile from their  
lands.  
She advises him  
to leave the  
castle.

The King per-  
sists and tries  
to take her by  
force, but Melyor  
vanishes he  
knows not where.

20 Cap. LXII. How the king was bete &  
ouerthrowen and knew not of whom.

And immediatly after the departyng of Melyor  
there fel vpon the kyng gret & pesaunt strokes,  
24 as thykk as rayn falleth fro the skye. Wherof he was  
al to brusid in euery part of his body, and was drawn  
by the feet fro the halle vnto the barrers without the  
Castel. And wete it that he neuer saw none of them  
28 that so cruelly seruyd hym. And as soone as he  
myght he stode vpon his feet, cursyng a thousand  
tymes hym that first brought hym tydynges of this  
auenture, and the heure also that euer he cam thither.  
32 And thenne he went toward his meyne that saw his  
harneys al to broken and perysshed, and demanded of

The King is  
thrashed so hard  
that he is bruised  
in every part of  
his body, and is  
pulled by the  
feet out of the  
castle.

He cannot see  
who it is that  
serves him so.

He rises and  
curses the man  
that brought him  
the news of the  
adventure,

and returns to  
his men,

<sup>1</sup> Cap. I. page 6, *et seq.*

who ask if he has been fighting? He tells them he is hurt, but that he has had no fight because he could not see who struck him.

<sup>2</sup> fol. 217 b.

The King returns home,

but he had no joy after this adventure, though he reigned a long time. His heirs were unlucky.

This volume was ended on Thursday, Aug. 7th, 1394.

I have told the story of Lusignan Castle, and of its builders, and of their issue, from the true chronicles.

It has lately been conquered by the Duke of Berry,

hym in this manere: 'My lord, vs semeth that ye be sore hurt, haue ye had batayH there as ye haue be?' And he ansuerd, 'I am somewhat hurt / but no batayH I haue not had / but so ferre I knowe that shrewedly 4 I haue be festyed<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>how wel I perceyued no body / but I assure you I felt wel the strokes, and wete it wel I reuenged<sup>1</sup> me not / and thus haue I had no batayH / For he that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayH. 8 but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect.' /

**A**noone aftir the king & his people departed and entred in the see and sailled toward his countre, euer thinking vpon this that Melyor had said to hym, 12 and doubted moche to haue lost his good fortune as he had. For wete it wel that neuer aftir this faytte he had no hertly joye and regned long tyme, but fro day to day felH in decaye by dyuerse maners. And wete it 16 wel that his heyres after his decesse were not fortunat, but vnhappy in al their actes. Here shal I leue to speke of the king of Armanye. For ynough it is knowen that they came of the noble lynce of the 20 king Elynas of Albanye & of Lusynen. vnto this thursday vii day of August vpon the whiche was ended this present volume. The yere of our lord a thousand [ccc] <sup>3</sup>lxxx & foureteen. / 24

**N**ow have I shewed to you after the very Cronykles and true history how the noble Fortresse of Lusynen in Poytou was edyfyed & made / and of the noble yssue & lynce of the foundatours therof, on whos 28 sowles god haue mercy / the whiche fortresse of Lusynen is a now come but of late, by manere of Conqueste, into the handes of the ryght noble & myghty

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *batu*.

<sup>3</sup> Note to C. Brunet's Fr. Ed., page 420. *Le texte porte : mil iiij ringz et xiiij. C'est évidemment une erreur puisque Jean d'Arras dit, dès les premières pages, qu'il a commencé cette histoire en 1387. In the Harl. MS. of Melusine the date is given as 'le VIIe jour d'aoust l'an de grace Mil' iiiC iiijXX et XIII.'*

prynce my right redoubted lord Johan sone to the kyng  
 of Fraunce, Duc of Berry, Auvergne, &c., by whos com-  
 mandement I haue endeuoired me after my rude and  
 4 symple entendement to collige & gadre among many  
 gestes & true Cronykles the trouthe of thystory <sup>1</sup>byfore  
 specyfied. And wete it for trouthe that oftentimes I  
 haue heret my said lord say that a knyght called  
 8 Sersueit that held the said Fortres as lieutenaut &  
 Captayne there for the kyng of England / at that tyme  
 that my said lord had besieged / said to hym after the  
 reducyon of the Fortres / that thre dayes tofore, tofore  
 12 that he gaf it vp / he lyeng in hys bed *with* a woman  
 hys concubine named Alexaundryne / perceyued a  
 grete & horryble *serpent* in the myddes of the Chambre,  
 wherof he was gretly abasshed & sore agast / and wold  
 16 haue take the swerd to haue discharged it vpon the  
 serpent / but Alexaundryne said thenne to hym in  
 this manere: 'Ha, valyaunt Sersuel, how ofte haue  
 I sene your mortal enemyes tofore your presence that  
 20 neuer ye were aferd, and now for a *serpent* of femenyne  
 nature ye shake for fere. Wete it for trouthe that this  
 serpent is the lady of this place & she that edyfyed it /  
 she shal by no manere wyse hurt nor *dommage* you /  
 24 but so ferre I vnderstand by her apparysshing that  
 nedes ye shal hastily delyuere & gyue vp this Fortres  
 to the Duc of Berry' / And morouer said the said  
 Sersueit to my said lord that hys Concubyne fered  
 28 nothing the serpent / but that he was neuer in his  
 dayes so aferd. And that he sawe thenne the said  
*serpent* tourned in to a fourme of a woman clothed in  
 a gowne of Cours cloth & gyrded *with* a grete corde  
 32 vndernethe the pappes of her / and soone after tourned  
 herself in the figure of a serpent and so vanysshed  
 away.

36 **A**lso there was a man named godart dwellyng at  
 that tyme *within* the said Fortresse, whiche  
 MELUSINE.

son of the  
 King of France,  
 at whose com-  
 mand I have  
 gathered this  
 history.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 218.

I have often  
 heard my lord  
 tell a story of a  
 knight named  
 Sersuell, who  
 was lieutenant  
 of the castle for  
 the King of Eng-  
 land.

Three days be-  
 fore he gave it  
 up he was in bed  
 with his concu-  
 bine, and saw a  
 great serpent in  
 his chamber,  
 which frightened  
 him.  
 He took his  
 sword to slay it;

but his lady said  
 that the serpent  
 was the lady of  
 the place, and  
 her appearance  
 proved that he  
 would soon have  
 to give up the  
 castle.

The serpent then  
 turned into a  
 woman, clothed  
 in a coarse gown,  
 with a great cord  
 round her. Then  
 she became a  
 serpent again  
 and vanished.



Godart swore to my lord on the gospels that he had often seen

<sup>1</sup> fol. 218 b.

the serpent on the walls of the fortress, and that he had passed her without harm.

Ivon of Wales swore that three days before the surrender of the castle by Sersuell, he saw a great serpent on the donjon of the castle, and that many others saw her.

I have done my utmost to know the truth of the matter,

and if I have written what appears to some incredible, I beg for pardon.

Some authors hold this to be a true chronicle of fairies.

To those who object, I say the judgments and

affirmed for a trouth / and sware to my forsaid lord vpon the holy euaungilles that many tyme he had sene vpon the walles of the fortres <sup>1</sup>the said serpent, and that he had passed oftymes nygh her without receyuyng <sup>4</sup> of ony harme. Then another also called Yuon of Walles sware his feyth vnto my said lord that thre dayes tofore the reducyon of the said Fortresse made by the said Sersuell into the handes of my said lord, <sup>8</sup> bat he sawe an horryble grete serpent vpon the batelments of the donjon of the said Castel of Lusynen. And many other also had the vision and syght of her.<sup>2</sup>

**A**nd where it is soo that at thinstaunce requeste <sup>12</sup> and prayer of my said lord haue be examyned many prynces<sup>3</sup> and dyuerse oþer for the makying & compilacion of this present hystorye vpon the said matere. And also I haue putte my self to myn <sup>16</sup> vtermost power to rede & loke ouer the Cronykles & many bokes of auneynt hystories, to thende that I might knowe the trouth of the forsaid matere. Therefore yf I haue wryton or shewed ony thing that to som <sup>20</sup> semeth neyther possible to be nor credible, I beseeche them to pardonne me. For as I fele & vnderstand by the Auctours of gramaire & phylosophye they repute and hold this present hystorye for a true Cronykle & <sup>24</sup> thinges of the fayry. And who that saith the contrary / I say the secret jugements of god and his punyssh-

<sup>2</sup> Fr. adds: *Et encore plus avant y a ung chevalier poitevin, nommé messire Percheval de Couloune, qui fut chambellain du bon roy de Chippre, avec le roy, la serpente s'estoit apparue à icelluy roy, comme celluy roy luy avoit dit en ceste manière parlant à luy: Percheval, je me doute trop! Pour quoy, monseigneur? dist le chevalier. Par ma foy, dist le roy, pour ce que j'ay veu la serpente de Lusignen qui c'est apparue à moy; si me doute qui ne me adriengne auenne perte dedens brief temps, ou à Perrin mon filz; car ainsi apparut-elle quant auens des hoirs de Lusignen doibrent morir. Et jura messire Percheval que dedens le tiers jour aprez, la dure aventure que chascun scet bien advint.*

<sup>3</sup> Harl. MS. reads *prouues* = proofs.



- ments are inuysible & impossible to be vnderstand or knowe by the humanyte of man./ For the vnderstanding of humayne Creature is to rude to vnderstande the  
 4 spyce espyrtuel, & may not wel comprehend what it is / but as ferre as the wylle <sup>1</sup>of god wyl suffre hym.  
 For there is found in many hystories Fayries that haue be maryed & had many children / but how this  
 8 may be the humayn creature may not conceyue. For these poynts and suche other god hath reteyned þem in his secrets. And the more that the personne is of rude entendement the ferther is he fro knowlege of it.  
 12 And he that is replet of scyence naturel, the rather shaft haue affection to byleue it. Notwithstanding no creature humayn may not obteyne the secrets of god./ how be it saint paule saith in hys epystles to the  
 16 Rommayns, 'that al thinges ben knowen by humayn Creature' / but the glose reserueth & excepteth the secrets of god. For the kynde of man is to vnderstand the ferther that he trauaylleth in reaumes and Countrees/  
 20 the greter knowleche hath he of euery thinge / than he that resteth in his owne Countre and neuer remeuyth. And semblable wyse this historye is more credible for as moche as it is not auctorised by one man only / but  
 24 also by many noble Clerkes. Now of this proces I wyl make no ferther mencion / but humbly I beseche you and alle them þat shaft here or rede this hystorye / that yf there be ony thing that be nuyouse or display-  
 28 saunt to you / wyl pardonne me & hold me escusid. For yf a man dooth as wel as he can / he ought to be accepted. For in som cas the good wylle of a man is accepted for the dede./ And here I, Johan of Arras,  
 32 ende the hystorye of Lusynen / <sup>2</sup>beseching god of his hygh mercy to gyue to þem that be passed fro this mortall world hys eterna glorye / and to them that be lyuyng, prosperous and blessidfull endyng./  
 36 [Here fynyssheth the noble hystorye of Melusyne.]

punishments of God are not to be understood by man.

<sup>1</sup> fol. 219.

There are many histories of Fayries that have married, and had children. No man can understand how this can be. God has kept these things secret. Ignorant people cannot beileve such things. Those who are learned can more readily do so, but no man can fathom the secrets of God.

The more men travel the more they learn.

This story is made more credible by the number of clerks who vouch for it.

I ask forgiveness of my readers for anything tiresome or displeasing I may have written. If a man does as well as he can he ought to be accepted.

I, John of Arras, end the history of Lusignan,  
<sup>2</sup> fol. 219 b.  
 asking God to give those who have left this world His eternal glory, and to the living a blessed ending.



## NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE 1, line 19. In the Catalogue of the Duke of Berry's Library, published in Le Labourer's *Histoire de Charles VI.*, there is a volume relating to the subject of this romance, 'Vn liure de l'Histoire de Lezignem, escrit en Latin, de lettre de fourine, bien historié & au commencement du second feuillet apres la premiere Histoire, a escrit, *sola sed tantum*, couuert de drap de damas rouge, formant à deux fermoirs de laiton, & tixus de soye.' Jean d'Arras declares in several places that the romance is founded on old Chronicles; see end of Cap. I.

p. 2, l. 11. Text should read: 'the Wednesday before St. Clement's Day.' The 'before' has been accidentally omitted by the translator or the transcriber. The French version reads: 'le mercredi devant la Saint Clement en yver.'

p. 2, l. 18. This heading seems out of place.

p. 3, l. 9. Is the reference to Romans, Cap. I, verse 20?:—'For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also and divinity: so that they are inexcusable.'

p. 3, l. 33. He appears to refer to local traditions, of which he makes some use; see, for example, the description of Melusine's appearances in his own time, on pages 369 and 370.

p. 4, l. 17. Probably Gervaise of Tilbury (fl. 13th century), a nephew of King Henry II. of England; he was appointed Marshal of Arles by the Emperor Otto IV. He was a voluminous writer. Warton says, in the *History of English Poetry*, § XXIV, that his *Otia Imperialia* was translated into French by Jean de Guerre between 1412 and 1427. His treatise is full of the most extraordinary marvels. In the British Museum MS., leaf 85, he tells of men being born without heads, having their eyes and mouths in their breasts. He is very full on lamia and dragons, and all kinds of monstrosities. He says that there have been cases in Italy of men being turned into beasts by eating cheese given them in taverns by enchantresses. Gervaise dedicated his *Description of the World* to Otto IV.

p. 4, l. 32. French text reads: 'les ungz qu'ilz ne verroient jamais l'ung l'autre; que le samedi ilz ne les enquerroient que elles seroient devenues en aulcunes manieres; les autres que se elles avoient enfans, que leurs maris ne les verroient jamais en leurs gessines.'

p. 5, l. 21. He may be referring to the tales of Marco Polo, a copy of whose travels Jean d'Arras had access to in the Duke of Berry's collection.

p. 5, l. 24. The following appears to be the passage in *Gervaise of Tilbury* referred to: 'Scio equidem jampridem relatum veridica narratione, quod in Aquensi provincia paucis ab Aquis milliaribus est castrum

Russetum, quod vallem Trezensem sub se missam respicit. Hujus castri Dominus, Raimundus nomine, cum uno aliquo die solus in equo vectaretur juxta decursum interluentis Laris fluvii, ex improvise occurrit domina nulli decore secunda, in palafredo phalerato, vestibus et apparatu pretiosis, cumque salutata a milite ipsum ex nomine resalutasset, ille ab ignota se nominatum audiens, miratur et nihilominus illam, ut moris est, coepit verbis lascivis interpellare, ut ei consentiat. Cui illa opponit, hoc praeter conjugalem copulam nulli licere verum si in ejus nuptias consentiat, ipsius possit optatis frui complexibus. Quid ultra? acquiescet conditionibus miles in nuptiis: at illa replicat, illum summa temporalium felicitate ex ejus commansione fruiturum, dum ipsam nudam non viderit; verum ut ipsam nudam conspexerit, omni felicitate spoliandum asserit et vix ei vitam miseram servandam esse praeponit. Pendet dubiusne timeret optaretne mori? tandem in nuptias consentit et conditionem admittit. Inflammatus et aestuans omnem conditionem facilem arbitratur, qua cupitum thorum possit obtinere. Consentiant in matrimonium et contrahunt, et crescente militis felicitate, in breve favore et hominum gratia, temporalium copia et corporis strenuitate in tantum excrevit, quod pares excessit et paucis proceribus et illustribus secundus invenitur. Hominibus amabilis, apud omnes gratus, liberalitatem discretam largitate atque urbanitate condiebat, filiis et filiabus summae pulchritudinis procreatis. Cum post longa tempora uno die domina, ut assolent, in thalamo balnearet, Raimundus miles, a venatu rediens et aucupatu, perdicibus aliisque carnibus ferinis dominam exeniat, et dum parantur cibaria, necio quo motu vel spiritu militi venit in mentem, quod nudam videat dominam balneantem, constituens in animo siquidem, quod ex inlibita nuditatis conspectione potuit ex fatis esse periculum, temporis diuturnitate tamque diuturnae commansione longinquitate evanuisse. Affectum maritus exposuit uxori, quae diuturnam felicitatem ex conditione servata objicit et infelicitatem minatur secuturam, si contemnatur. Tandem paeceps in praecipitium miles, non temperatur interminatione poenae neque precibus flectitur, ut a stulto proposito desistens suae consulat utilitate:

“tangunt animum motusque metusque  
et timet eventus indignaturque timere.”

Quid moror? erepto linteo, quo balneum operitur, miles ut uxorem nudam videat, accedit, statimque domina in serpentem conversa, misso sub aqua balnei capite, disparuit, nunquam visa imposterum nec audita, nisi quandoque de nocte, cum ad infantulos suos visitandos veniebat, nutricibus audientibus, sed ab ejus aspectu semper arctatis. Sane miles pro maxima parte felicitate ac gratia minoratus, filiam illius dominae cuidam nostro affini ex nobilibus Provinciae oriundo postea dedit in uxorem, quae inter coaetaneas et confines suas plurimum extitit grata et cujus jam successio ad nos usque pervenit. Prima Decisio XV Otia Imperialia.

The theories of Paracelsus people rivers, &c., with Melusinæ. They have no spiritual principle, but can obtain one by entering into a union with man: ‘Melusinæ & melioræ filiæ regiæ quondam propter peccata desperabundæ, fuerunt a Sathana raptæ, & in spectra transmutatæ, spiritus malignos, lemures horribiles, & in immania monstra. Vivere putantur absque anima rationali & in brutali solum corpore phantastico, nutrirī elementis, atque una cum istis in extremo die judicii transituræ, nisi cum aliquo homine forte fortuna matrimonium contrahant, tum demum, ut ipse, naturali morte interire posse, ut matrimonio naturaliter vivere virtute hujus unionis. Ejusdem status atque generis plura spectra haberi creditur



in desertis, in sylvis, ruinis, monumentis, arcibus vacuis, & in extremis littoribus maris. Vulgo maledicti vacantur homines, sed proprio nomine spectra vocantur, atque diabolorum sancti, cum quibus versantur caco-dæmones, suas illusiones & portenta perficiunt.'—W. Johnson's *Lexicon Chymicum* [to the writings of Paracelsus], London 1652.

p. 5, l. 24. The name of Regnald does not occur in the list of the kings of Bohemia.

p. 5, l. 25. The Lusignans do not appear to have had any connection with Luxembourg.

p. 5, l. 28. The name Theodoric does not occur on the roll of the lords of Partenay-l'archevêque. The house was founded, according to French genealogists, by William, the son of Gilles Lusignan (fl. 1100—1130). Valence, daughter of Geoffray with the Great Tooth, married Hugh III. of Partenay-l'archevêque.

p. 7, l. 15. covered, Fr. *couvertement*.

p. 11, l. 3. Fr. 'je ne pense en nul cas deshoneste.'

p. 12, l. 26. There is a romance entitled 'L'Histoire du noble & vaillant Roy, Florimont fils du noble Mataquas duc d'Albanie.' Florimont is the son of Mataquas, sire of Duras and Duke of Albany. His mother was Edozie or Flory, daughter of Fragus, King of Persia. It is bound up with a Rouen edition of Melusine. Warton notices a romance of 'Florimont et Passeroze,' *History of English Poetry*, § XII, note.

p. 12, l. 32. In Coudrette's version of Melusine, Aualon is called fairy land.

p. 13, l. 7. In some editions of the French version Ybernie is substituted for Albany, others have Albany as here.

p. 14, l. 8. Fr. ver. adds 'filles' after 'lawfull.'

p. 15, l. 11. They should be allowed to leave Aualon.

p. 15, l. 32. One of Melior's adventures is described at page 362.

p. 16, l. 4. The eve of St. John's Day comes on June 23. Many curious customs used to be observed on the vigil of St. John. In London the Watch was paraded through the city. In Paris a number of cats and a fox were burnt in the Place de Grève. In Ireland the people used to light fires on the hill tops, and according to Rev. Donald McQueen, they danced round them, and then made their children and cattle walk through the fires. McQueen thinks the custom a relic of sun-worship.—Brand's *Antiquities*.

p. 16, l. 13. There is a mountain named Guygo in Lesser Armenia. No account of Palatine is given in this romance. In Coudrette's versification of the romance there is briefly narrated her story, l. 5704, *et seq.* Palatine's place of abode is there given as Arragon.

p. 17, l. 3. Geoffray with the Great Tooth discovers the tomb, see page 327.

p. 17, l. 24. The Castle of Lusignan was founded in the tenth century by Hugues II., known as the *Bien Aimé*. It had many masters, and was a formidable stronghold. It was razed in 1569, after its capture from the Huguenôts. Little trace of it now remains.

p. 17, l. 27. 'fell at debate'; translates *cut riot*.

p. 17, l. 32. Fountains are usually made the scenes of the fairy love-making. Elinas meets Pressine at 'a moche fayre fontayne'; Henry of

Leon, father of Raymondin, meets the 'fayr lady to whom he told all his Fortune,' 'nighe by a fontain,' &c.

p. 18, l. 7. Jean d'Arras was fond of etymology; this appears a reasonable guess.

p. 19, l. 14. The 1478 edition makes the third chapter begin here. The edition published at Rouen by Pierre Mulot begins Cap. III at the same place as our text.

p. 21, l. 7. 'h. . . s.'], in Fr. *sur le col*.

p. 31, l. 35. Melusine protests throughout that 'she is of god.' See pages 316 and 320.

p. 32, l. 32. Compare the promise exacted by Pressine, Melusine's mother, page 11.

p. 33, l. 12. 'hys doughtir,' i. e. Earl Emery's daughter.

p. 33, l. 25. Melusine has a store of magic rings:

1. Makes the holder proof against death from wounds.

2. Gives victory in war, in law, &c., to the holder.

3. Gives victory, and protects against enchantments and poison, p. 110, l. 20.

4. Gives victory so long as the wearer fights in a good cause, p. 191, l. 11; p. 319, l. 10.

Magic rings appear to have come from the East. They figure in many Arabian tales. In classical literature we have several Magic ring stories, which probably have been taken from Semitic sources. Plato's story of the ring of Gyges, that made the bearer invisible, is well known. Solomon had a ring that gave him command over the genii. It was made of copper and iron, and had the sacred name of the deity engraved on it. Solomon sealed his orders to the refractory genii with the iron part, those to the good genii were sealed with the copper portion. Once when Solomon was bathing, and had taken the ring from his finger, it was stolen by a wicked genie. Solomon was so concerned about the loss that he was unable to attend to affairs of state. It was afterwards recovered from the stomach of a fish that was caught for the king's table.

Petrarch relates that Charlemagne became infatuated with a woman of low degree to such an extent that he neglected the affairs of state, and even the care of his person. She fell ill and died, but her death did not break the charm: Charlemagne would not allow her corpse to be buried. One day Archbishop Turpin examined the body, and found a ring in her mouth, which he took possession of; Charlemagne then came under the influence of the Archbishop. The prelate, tired of the king's special attentions, and afraid that the ring might fall into the hands of some unworthy person, so he threw it into a lake near the town. From that time Charlemagne refused to quit Aix-la-Chapelle. He built a palace and a monastery there, and in his will directed his successors to be crowned at Aix.—*Epistolæ familiares*, Lib. I, Cap. 3.

p. 35, l. 33. Jean d'Arras was evidently of the opinion of Rabelais, that  
'Mieulx est de ris que de larmes escrire,  
Pour ce que rire est le propre de l'homme.'

p. 42, l. 4. Note that the Earl is unable to give land without the consent of his barons.

p. 42, l. 19. Brunet reads 'Montiers'; the Rouen edition has 'l'abbaye demonstiers.'

p. 45, l. 13. There is an 'onde limpide' near the Forest of Coulom-

byers, known as the 'Fontaine-des-Fees.'—*Annales de la Société Royal Académique de Nantes*, 1831, p. 405.

p. 48, l. 26. The power of love is a favourite theme of John of Arras. See 122, 135, 164, &c. The book was written for the amusement of the Duchess of Bar. This may account for the elaborate treatment of love affairs, dress, &c., in the book.

p. 54, l. 14. Coudrette makes the wine-list an extensive affair. See *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., p. 39:

'With wine of Angoy, and als of Rochel tho,  
Which would eschawfe the braines appetite,  
Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,  
Which iawne [yellow] colour applied noght vnto;  
Clarre Romain, with doucet Ypocras  
Thorught al the hal rynnynge hye and bas.  
Wine of Tourisnz, and also of Digon,  
Wine of Aucerre, of seint Jougon also;  
Wyne of Seint Johan of Angely good won,  
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;  
Wine of Estables, of Uiart also;  
After thaim cam the wyne,  
Wine of Seint Pursain, and of Ris hys brood.  
Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise,  
The nouel osey of Dingenon.'

p. 55, l. 3. The magic ring that Melusine gave Raymondin has made him invincible. See p. 33.

p. 59, l. 9. The custom of the newly-wedded couple making presents to the wedding guests, instead of receiving them, resembles what takes place in India in our time, where the parents of the bride make gifts to those who attend the marriage ceremony.

p. 63, l. 3. Fr. reads: 'Et avec tout ce il y a forte braies entaillées de mesmes la roche.'

p. 64, l. 13. There are a number of suggested etymologies of the name Melusine, none of them satisfactory.

Jean Bouchet says it is a combination of Melle and Lusignan. She was lady of Melle, and her husband was lord of Lusignan. Bouchet says that this was the accepted etymology in his time (16th century). Baron Dupin adopts this etymology. It appears, however, that women did not add to their name the name of their husband's seignory, nor was it usual for women to bear the name of their own manors.

Bouchet thought the tail signified that Melusine was an adultress. N. Chorier imagined that it symbolized her prudence!

Salverte says that the name is a combination of Mere and Lusignan. He makes its signification to be 'Mother of the Lusignans.' The name is spelt Merlusine by Brantôme, and the popular pronunciation is Merlusine.

Grimm derives it from Meri menni, a syren, or scylla.

Litré derives it from Melus, a Celtic word meaning agreeable.

Bullet says it is made up of Me = half, llysowen (pronounced lusen) = serpent: the name thus signifies half serpent.

A writer in the *Nouvelle Biographie Générale*, thinks that Melusine is an Anagram of Leusignem. I have not observed any case in which the family name is spelt in this manner, and I am not aware that the fashion of Anagram-making was much practised in the 14th century.



M. de Fremenville, in *Antiq. de la Bretagne, Côtes du-Nord*, p. 23, derives Melusine from morlusein = vapour or sea fog.

In Quaritch's catalogue, 1887 (vol. I, p. 90) it is stated that the name comes from a Breton word signifying 'the woman with a tail,' mer' hlostek, which the writer believes was at one time pronounced something like Merlusec.

Mascurat surmises that Melusine was a lady who used a seal engraved with a syren, and from that was at last imagined to be a mermaid herself.

p. 65, l. 3. The following list of Melusine's children shows the blemishes that each of them bore :

1. Urian : 'A broad face, ears like the handles of a vannus, and one eye red and the other blue.
2. Odon : One ear greater, without comparison, than the other.
3. Guion : One eye higher than the other.
4. Anthony : Had on the cheek a lion's foot (grif de lyon).
5. Regnald : Had only one eye.
6. Geoffray : Had a great tooth, which protruded more than an inch out of his mouth.
7. Froimond : Had a mole (tache velue) or tuft of hair on his nose.
8. Horrible : Had three eyes—one in his forehead.
9. Raymond : Blemish not recorded.
10. Theodoryk : Blemish not recorded.

p. 65, l. 3. 'handlyng of a fan' translates 'manilles d'ung van.'

p. 65, l. 11. Fr. reads : 'Guerende et Penicense.'

p. 66, l. 17. Fr. : 'mal enformé.'

p. 65, l. 12. Hugues IV. of Lusignan had a dispute with Joscelin, lord of Parthenay, about some lands that the latter had usurped. The dispute descended to the heirs of Joscelin. Hugues appealed to his suzerain William, Count of Poitiers. The count sided with the lord of Parthenay, and Hugues' stronghold, the Castle of Lusignan, was burnt down. *B. Le-dain* in *La Gatine*.

The Lusignans possessed the domain of Porhoët, in Brittany, from the 13th century. Phillipe le Bel took it from Guy, Count of Marche and Angoulême, in the 14th century.

Perhaps these historical events may have suggested the story in the romance.

p. 79, l. 24. 'the cranes flighing' translates 'les grues en vollant.' The cranes are said to be the earliest birds to migrate.

'E come i gru van cantando lor lai,  
Facendo in aere di se lunga riga.'

Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 84, l. 15. The Rouen Fr. ed. : 'Raimondin le frappa de la lance au coste.'

p. 91, l. 30. There is an omission here in the translation. The French text reads : 'Il avoit entendu par aulecuns des varlés d'icelluy chastelain que ilz actendoient gens à qui ilz ne vouloient point de bien.'—Brunet's ed., p. 104.

p. 92, l. 15. Fr. reads : 'que ilz ne nous trouvent à descouvert.'

p. 94, l. 24. 'high' seems to be a mistake for 'his.' 'traist l'espee' is the French reading.

p. 97, l. 28. There is a legend current that the convent of the Trini-



taïres of Sarzeau was founded by Melusine. John III., Duke of Brittany, founded it in 1341, forty-six years before John of Arras wrote this account of its origin. Jehan de la Haye, in *Memoires et recherches* (1581), says that Melusine and Raymondin were buried in this convent.

p. 104, l. 10. Such excrescences apparently do appear, as can be seen from the following statement, made by a man of recognized accuracy of observation:—

‘On the 29th [of Feb. 1839], being requested by some friends of the town, I visited a wonderful man there. It appears that nature, deviating from the usual course, gave this man a small trunk, like an elephant, on the right side of his face, beginning from the forehead to his chin. With his left eye only could he see, the other being covered with this superfluous part of the body. He was a young man of about twenty, sound in mind, as he gave rational answers to the several questions I put to him in the Sindhi language.’—*Autobiography of Lutfullah*, p. 311, edited by E. B. Eastwick, 1858.

p. 112, l. 35. This advice to kings reads as if it had been specially written for the Duke of Berry’s edification.

p. 116, l. 23. The Knights Hospitallers of St. John captured Rhodes after a siege of three years, in 1309, and made the island their headquarters.

p. 117, l. 32. In the Apocryphal Book, known as the Gospel of Nicodemus, the names of the two thieves are given as Dimas and Gestas. In the ‘Narration of Joseph of Arimathæa’ it is related that Demas was born in Galilee. He was an innkeeper, and was kind to the poor. He followed the example of Tobias in secretly burying those who died in poverty. He robbed Jews, even in Jerusalem. He plundered the daughter of Caiaphas. It was for this crime that he suffered death.

p. 120, l. 2. Fr. reads: ‘Urian n’avoit mie encores, à compter les gens du maistre de Rodes, plus de quatre nulle combatans.’

p. 128, l. 25. Alexander is said to have had 30,000 foot soldiers and 4,500 horsemen when he crossed the Hellespont. (Plutarch.)

p. 136, l. 26. ‘he cast at hym the dart [with great] yre.’ The Fr. ‘par grant’ is omitted by mistake.

p. 141, l. 21. Fr. text reads: ‘Adonques le maistre de Rhodes et les capitaines de Lymasson se mirent tous ensamble.’

p. 142, l. 9. The ‘pauveys,’ according to Viollet-le-Duc, were large oval or square shields, chiefly carried by the crossbowmen. They did not come into use until the fourteenth century.

p. 155, l. 20. For the true version of the story of how Cyprus passed into the hands of Guy of Lusignan (not Urian, as the Romance says), see the Introduction. The *Itinerary of Richard Cœur de Lion*, by Vinsauf, is the authority relied on.

p. 159, l. 24. The ‘for to wete & know, for to here & know,’ is a double translation of the French phrase, ‘pour aller sçavoir.’

p. 159, l. 22. ‘fortres’ is plural here and on p. 160, l. 6.

p. 169, l. 13. ‘they . . . . ancres’ translates ‘ilz desancrèrent.’

p. 169, l. 32. ‘them,’ i. e. their ships.

p. 171, l. 1. See page 129, *et seq.*

p. 176, foot of page. In John Stow’s *Surrey of London* (W. J. Thom’s ed., 1842, p. 119), the cost of writing out the works of D. Nicholas de

Lira in two volumes is given at 100 marks = £66 13s. 4d. W. Stevenson, in his *Life of William Caxton* (p. 12), says that this sum most likely included the cost of the illuminations. The volumes may have been sumptuously bound, in which case comparatively little would be left for the copyist's work.

It is quite probable that the 17/8, written on the margin of the Melusine MS., may be a memorandum having no relation to the copyist's pay.

p. 178, l. 10. Modern economists would not approve of this summary way of treating forestallers. Adam Smith believed that the dread of witches and of forestallers were on a par.

p. 179, l. 28. The Fr. ver. has the following sentences after 'armanye':—'Et se il vous samble qu'elle n'en soit digne, si luy aidez à assener à quelque noble homme qui bien sache le pays gouverner et deffendre des ennemis de Jhesucrist. Or y vueillez pourvoir de remède convenable car à tout dire, se il vous plait, en la fin je vous fais mon heritier du royaume d'Armanie; mais pour l'amour de Dieu prenez en garde et ayez pitié de mon povre enfant, qui est orpheline desolée de tout conseil et de tout confort, se vous lui faillez.' The nine succeeding lines of the English version, 28 to 36, are not represented in the French version published by Brunet.

p. 180, l. 8. After Guyon's address the Armenian lords reply in the French version: 'nostre seigneur le vous vueille meriter, qui vous doinct bonne vie et longue.'

p. 180, l. 31. The following paragraph is omitted in the English version:

'En ceste partie nous dist l'histoire que ceux de Caliz furent moult joyeux quant ilz virent approucher la navire, car ja sçavoient les nouvelles que leur seigneur venoit, pour ce que les barons qui estoient allez en Chippre pour porter les lettres dont je vous ay fait mention par avant, leur avoient mandé toute la verité, affin de ordonner et pourveoir de le recevoir honnourablement; et y estoient tous les haultz barons du pays et les dames et damoiselles venues pour le festoier et honnourer. A celle heure la pucelle Florie estoit à la maistresse tour, qui regretoit moult la mort de son père, et si avoit moult grant paour que le roy Urian ne le vouldist pas accorder à son frère, et estoit une cause qui moult luy angissoit sa douleur. Mais adoneques une damoiselle luy vint dire en ceste manière: Madamoiselle, on dist que ceulx qui estoient allez en Chippre arriveront bien brief au port. De ces nouvelles fut Florie moult joyeuse, et vint à la fenestre, et regarda en la mer, et vit navires, gallées, et aultres grans vaisseaulx qui arrivoient au port, et oyt trompettes sonner, et pluseurs aultres instruments de divers sons. Adonc fut la pucelle moult lie, et vindrent les barons du pays au port, et recevoient moult honnourablement Guion et sa compaignie, et le menèrent à mont vers la pucelle, laquelle luy vint à l'encontre de luy. Et Guion la salua moult honnourablement en ceste manière: Ma damoiselle, comment a-il esté à vostre personne depuis que me partis d'icy? Et elle luy respondist moult amoureusement et dist: Sire, il ne peut estre gaires bien, car monseigneur mon père est nouvellement trespasé de ce mortel monde, dont je prie à nostre Seigneur Jhesucrist, par sa sainte grace et misericorde, qui luy face vray pardon à l'ame, et à tous aultres; mais, sire, comme povre orpheline je vous remercie et gracie tant humblement comme je puy des vaisseaulx que vous m'envoïastes, et aussi de la grant richesse et avoir qui estoit dedans.'

p. 183, l. 25. Afterwards (p. 217) called Metydee.

p. 190, l. 11. This passage should be compared with that beginning on page 110, where Melusine gives parting advice to her two elder children, Urian and Guion.

p. 190, l. 34. Passages like this (see also p. 112) show that John of Arras pleaded for a more humane treatment of conquered provinces. He shows that even from selfish considerations a ruler should treat his people well (p. 112). It is true he does not directly condemn the marauding expeditions, which were the curse of the Middle Ages; but it should be noted that the sons of his heroine were always called to assist the oppressed. They never started out as mere plunderers. John of Arras was a forerunner of Rabelais in his condemnation of the barbarities of feudal warfare. He resembled Rabelais in character. It required considerable boldness for an officer of the Duke of Berry—one of the most rapacious plunderers of France—to make a stand against injustice.

p. 192, l. 20. Did the author of *Melusine* intend Anthony and Reginald's system of warfare to be an example to be followed by the Duke of Berry?

p. 202, l. 33. Fr. reads: 'le jeta si roidement encontre la terre que peu faillist que il ne lui crevast son cœur ou son ventre.'

p. 211, l. 2. It is interesting to note that all the kings in the Romance are constitutional kings. They are obliged to consult their barons before they enter into treaties or alienate land. (See pages 42, 211, 263.)

p. 214, l. 18. 'pruy meyne,'—a private or select company or following.

p. 222, l. 29. Fr. reads: 'paiez pour huyt moys.'

p. 228, l. 13. 'Catell & goodes' translates 'biens.'

p. 229, l. 14, there is an omission after 'city.' The Fr. text reads: 'mais le roy Zelodus avoit fait armer ses gens et faisoit fort assaillir la cité, car grand desir avoit de la prendre, et ceulx de dedens se deffendoient lachement, et bien le appercevoient les Sarrazins; et pour ce ilz assailloient tant plus vigoureusement. Et fut la besoigne mal allée quaut l'ancien chevalier vint qui bien apperceut la besoigne et la faible defense de ceulx de dedens' (Brunet's ed., p. 254). The Fr. text then continues: 'A donques achea l'assault,' &c., as in the English version.

p. 233, l. 31. 'the moost vytupere' translates 'pour plus vituperer.'

p. 246, l. 6. Fr. 'Thierry.'

p. 246, l. 12. Fr. 'ung chevalier faye au maulvais esperit.'

p. 246, l. 13. The belief in Incubi and Succubi (demons who consort with men and women and engender children) was current in the time of John of Arras, and for long after. The fathers of the Church taught the doctrine, as can be seen from Augustine: 'It is so general a report, & so many auerre it either from their owne tryall or from others, that are of indubitable honesty & credit, that the Syluans and Fawnes, commonly called Incubi, haue often iniured women, desiring & acting carnally with them: and that certaine diuells whom the Frenchmen [Gauls] call Dusies, do continually practise this vncleanness, & tempt others to it; which is affirmed by such persons & with such confidence that it were impudence to deny it.'—*City of God*, Bk. XV, Cap. XXIII, ed. 1620, translated by J. H.

Lodovico Vives, in commenting upon this passage, says: 'There are a people at this day that glory that their descent is from the devils, who



visited women in the guise of men, and men in the guise of women. This in my conceit is viler than to draw a man's pedigree from pirates, thieves, or famous bullies, as many do. The Egyptians say that the devils can only accompany carnally with women and not with men.'

The following quotation from Michael Psellus, a Byzantine savant of the eleventh century, explains the mediæval ideas on this subject. The text is from a translation by Pierre Moreau Touranio, published in 1576: 'Or me suis-je trouué quelque-fois avec vn moine, en la Cherronese de Mesopotamie, lequel apres auoir esté spectateur & cõiurateur des phâtosmes diaboliques, autant ou plus expert en cela, que nul autre, depuis il les a mesprisez & abiurez, comme vains & friuoles, & en ayant fait amende honorable, s'est retiré au gyron de l'Eglise, & a fait professiõ de nostre foy seule vraye, & Catholique: laquelle il a soigneusemẽt appris de moy. Ce moine donc me dit alors & declara plusieurs choses absurdes & diaboliques. Et de fait, m'estant quelque-fois enquis de luy, s'il y a quelques diables patibles: ouy vrayement, dit-il, comme on dit aussi, qu'aucuns d'iceux iettent semence, & engendrent d'icelle des verms. Si est-ce chose incroyable, luy dis-je lors, que les diables ayent aucuns excremẽs, ny membres spermatiques, ny vitaulx. Vray est, respondit-il, qu'ils n'ont tels, membres, si est-ce toutefois qu'ils iettent hors ie ne scay quel excrement & superfluité, croyez hardiment ce que ie vous en dis. Dea, luy dis-je lors, il y auroit danger qu'ils fussent alimentez & nourriz de mesme nous. Ils sont nourriz, respondit frere Marc, les vns d'inspiration, comme l'esprit qui est aux arteres & nerfs, les autres d'humidité: mais non par la bouche, comme nous, ains comme sponges & huistres attirent à soy l'humidité adiacente exterieurement. Puis iettent hors ceste latente & secreta semence. A quoy ils ne sont tous subiects, ains seulement les diables qui sont enclins à quelque matiere, sçauoir est, ou celuy qui hait la lumiere, le tenebreux, l'aquatique, & tous soubsterrains.'—Psellus, *De l'energie ou operation des diables* (leaf 19 b, et seq.), ed. 1576.

In Ambroise Paré's collection (died 1590), livre xix, ch. 30, we read: 'Or quant à moy ie croy que ceste pretendue cohabitation est imaginaire procedante d'une impression illusoire de Satan . . . car à l'exécution de cet acte, la chair et le sang sont requis, ce que les esprits n'ont pas.'

Fuller accounts of the ancient opinions on Incubi and Succubi will be found in Iohn Wierus, *De Prestigiis dæmonum*, 1569 and 1579, and in Jean Bodin's *Refutation of Wierus*, 1593.

Modern thought ascribes the belief in Incubi & Succubi to Dreams, see E. B. Tylor: 'From dreams are avowedly formed the notions of incubi and succubi, those nocturnal demons who consort with women and men in their sleep. From the apparent distinctness of their evidence these beings are of course well known in savage demonology, and in connection with them there already arises among uncultured races the idea that children may be engendered between spirits and human mothers. (See Martin, *Mariner's Tonga Islands*.) For an ancient example of the general belief in this class of demons, no better could be chosen than that of the early Assyrians, whose name for a succubus, "lilit," evidently gave rise to the Rabbinical tale of Adam's demon wife Lilith. (See Lenormant, *La magie chez les Chaldéens*.) The literature of mediæval sorcery abounds in mentions of this belief, of which the absurd pseudo-philosophical side comes well into view in the chapter of Delrio (Lib. II, quæsto 15): "An sint unquam dæmones incubi et succubæ, et an ex tali congressu proles nasci queat?" But its serious side is shown by the accusation of consorting with such demons being one of the main charges in the infamous bull



of Innocent VIII., which brought judicial torture and death upon so many thousands of wretched so-called witches. (See Roskoff, *Geschichte des Teufels*.) It further throws light on demonology, that the frightful spectres seen in such affections as delirium tremens have of course been interpreted as real demons.'

p. 253, l. 19. 'hym,' i. e. Claude of Syon.

p. 264, l. 16. 'concernyng' here means 'compared with.' Fr. phrase is 'envers la puissance.'

p. 273, l. 31. Jaffa changed hands several times in the 4th Crusade, 1196.

p. 279, l. 34. 'ye shal not haue them for so good chep,' i. e. 'You will not overcome them as easily as you think.' Fr. reads: 'Vous n'aurez pas si bon marché.'

p. 281, l. 33. Fr. 'tout le couert.'

p. 282, l. 18. Fr. 'tout couertement.'

p. 287, l. 11: 'Si cum li cerfs s'en vait devant les chiens,  
Devant Rollant si s'en fuient Paiën.'

*La Chanson de Roland*, ll. 1874-5.

p. 290, l. 7. 'cours' translates 'se reculèrent.' 'There reforced the batayll [*et souffrirent cristien moult grant affaire*], and with that cours [retires] the cristen,' &c.

p. 291, l. 3. 'sarasyns' in Fr. text is 'Turcs.'

p. 295, l. 9, page 32.

p. 296, l. 6. 'esperit fae.'

p. 297, l. 5. 'quaque à harenc' = a herring barrel.

p. 303, l. 3. 'ung flayal de plomp à trois chainnes.' The flail was rarely used in France. The MSS. of the 12th and 14th centuries show it very seldom (*Viola-le-Duc*).

p. 309, l. 19. The date of the ravaging of the Abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232.

p. 312, l. 8. Coudrette makes the Castle of Vouvant the scene of the catastrophe. *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., line 3453.

p. 314, l. 26. 'Si quelqu'un aussi se fondoit sur la non vérisimilitude de tant d'aventures, enchantements, de la flûte d'un roi Oberon, tant de somptueux palais soudainement se perdant et évanouissant, et du cheval de Pacolet, qui est encore plus en ça, d'une Mélusine, de Merlin; je lui répondrai que le christianisme étant pour lors bien peu avancé aux contrées de par deçà, le diable avoit beau jeu à faire ses besognes, essayant, en tant qu'est en lui, nous empêcher et divertir du vrai service de Dieu, par ses moqueries et illusions; et, gagnant toujours pays, allant de pied en pied, a si bien fait cet esprit calomniateur, que d'eteindre, en ce qu'il a pu, le nom de notre Seigneur Jésus-Christ, et icelui obscurcir et cacher aux hommes.'—*Contes d'Eutrapel*, by Noël du Fail, 1548.

p. 315, l. 2. The theory that anger is the work of demons is hinted at by the Byzantine Psellus. This writer declares that there are six varieties of demons: Leliurium, or fiery, haunting the upper atmosphere, Aërial the lower atmosphere, Earthy, Aqueous, Subterranean, and Lucifugus, the lowest class of all. The aërial and earthy enter into the soul of man, and urge him to all kinds of lawless thoughts and deeds. If a Lucifugus obtain an entrance into man it makes him ungovernable. The

Lucifugus is devoid of intellect, is ruled by whim, and is regardless of reproof. The possessed person can only be saved by divine assistance.

There is an old saying: 'via furor brevis est.'

p. 318, l. 12. 'Vernon'; Fr. 'Warnont.'

p. 318, l. 23. French text adds: 'car certainement il destruiroit tout ce que j'ay ediffie, ne jamais guerres ne fauldroient au pays de Poetou ne Guienne.'

p. 319, l. 27: 'nessun maggior dolore,  
Che ricordarsi del tempo felice  
Nella miseria.'—Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 321, l. 19. There is a legend that Melusine flew to the caves of Sassenage in Dauphiny, natural hollows in the mountain which lie at the back of Grenoble, and made her abode there. N. Chorier, in his *Histoire Générale de Dauphiné*, describes these caverns: 'Les grotte de Sassenage ne font pas moins digne d'estre contemplée. L'une est d'une grandeur incroyable, & elle gette de l'horreur dans les ames les plus ferme. En l'autre ces cuves si célèbres, & dans la troisième est une table de pierre, que l'on appelle communement la table de Melusine. C'est l'opinion d'un grand personnage que les nymphes y estoient reverées autrefois d'un culte particulier.' 'Estienne Barlet fait passer pour une verité ce qu'il raconte d'une autre. Il dit qu'apres que l'on y est entré par un long & difficile chemin, on y voit distinctement des choses estranges. Un roy y paroist assis dans un thône, la couronne à la teste & des thresors infinis à ses pieds. Il adjoûte que l'on croit que les fées, ou ces nymphes que les Grecs nomment les Oreades, y ont habité, & qu'ayant eu longtemps de la peine à le croire, il en a esté à fin persuadé. Cette caverne n'est pas fort éloignée de Montcluz, mais ce que l'on en dit l'est beaucoup de la verité.'—Lib. I, Cap X.

p. 336, l. 8. Montserrat (mons serratus) rises abruptly from the plain of Catalonia. The ridge of peaks makes it look from a distance like an enormous saw. There are a number of natural caverns in the rock. A monastery was founded at Montserrat in the tenth century. The legend tells that one evening the shepherds of Olea heard celestial music as they tended their sheep. While they listened they saw a bright light among the rocks. The Bishop of Manresa hearing of their vision, resolved to ascend the mountain. He found there an image of the Virgin, made of black wood. It was recognized as the statue that had been sculptured by St. Luke, and brought to Spain by St. Peter. He erected a chapel near where he found the image. A few years afterwards the Count of Barcelona built a convent on the spot, and appointed his daughter Abbess. Later the building passed into the hands of the Benedictines. The Virgin's image worked miracles, and an immense number of pilgrims were drawn to the shrine. The ascent to the chapel was very difficult, and it was regarded as a very meritorious task. The kings of Aragon, Castile, and Navarre enriched the foundation. New buildings were added from time to time. At the wars at the end of last century the Spaniards turned the monastery into a fortress. The French captured it, and when they blew up the fortifications much damage was done to ancient portions of the buildings.

The hermitages are now in ruins, and the ascent to them is very difficult. They were all built on the same plan. Each had an ante-chamber, a cell with a recess, a study, a kitchen, and a plot of garden with a chapel. The hermits took a vow to die on the mountain. They followed an austere rule, and lived on vegetables and a little salt fish.

Their only amusement was carving little wooden crosses for the pilgrims who visited their cells.

It was at Montserrat, in the Church of the Virgin, that Ignatius Loyola vowed constant obedience to God and the Church, on the Vigil of the Annunciation, 1522.—*Visite au Montserrat*, by G. de Lavigne.

p. 337, l. 9. Fr. 'Culbaton.' The village of Collbató is the starting-point now-a-days for Montserrat.

p. 340, l. 8. Geoffray visited Pope Gregory IX. in 1233. Before he left France he made restitution to some of those he had wronged, as the letter dated 1232, still extant, proves: 'To all who shall see these letters, Geoffroi de Lezinem, Vicomte of Châtellerault, lord of Voluent and Mayreuent, salut éternel.

'You know that I am about to journey to the court of Rome, to put an end to my differences with the church of Maillezais. I wished to satisfy to the best of my ability, before my departure, all who have claims against me, especially such as are in holy orders.

'Geoffroi, Abbot of Absie, having heard of my will, has demanded restitution for damages done, and losses and injuries that I and my father have caused to the Abbey of Absie.

'I have learnt, from the testimony of men worthy of belief, that these claims are just; and for the salvation of my soul, and of my father's soul, I have satisfied the said abbot, 1232.'—From Thibaudau's *Histoire de Poitou*.

p. 368, l. 18. Coudrette's versification of the Romance carries the fortunes of the Armenian kings to Leo VI., the last of the line, who died at Paris in 1393. This king was driven from his throne by the successful arms of the Egyptians. He was taken prisoner, and obtained his release through the good offices of John of Castile. Leo VI. visited Spain, where he was received as a champion of the Christian faith, and the King of Castile allowed him a pension of 150,000 maravedis. He afterwards travelled to France, where he was kindly received by Charles VI. A pension of 6,000 francs was granted to him there. Leo came over to England, where his reception was as warm as in Spain and Portugal. He obtained an English pension in addition to those from Spain and France. Leo VI. was a far-sighted man. He wanted to bring about a permanent peace between France and England, and he told the rulers of both countries that the only way that the Mahomedan arms could be checked in the East was by the aid of a united West. Unfortunately, his wise policy was rejected, and the rivalries of the kings of Christendom lost some of the fairest lands of Europe to the followers of Mahomet. Leo VI. told the King of France that Amurath aimed at being crowned at Rome, and that he had sent an expedition out with that purpose, which was annihilated by a stratagem of the King of Hungary.

'Thay lost ther lande and all ther honour,

Inclinyng and comyng vnto mischaunce.

On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce pat houre,

So fro hermeny chaced into Fraunce.

Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sustinance.

At Parys died as happned the cas,

At the Celestines entered he was.'—l. 5685.

After the death (29th Nov. 1393) of Leo VI. the title of King of Armenia was assumed by James I. of Cyprus. Neither James I. nor any of his successors ever reconquered the country.



p. 370, l. 5. Yuon, Yvain, Owen, or Evan of Wales claimed to be the rightful heir of the kingdom of Wales, and the French king treated him as such. Yuon was a favourite of John the Good, King of France, and took a part along with the French in the battle of Poitiers. When peace was made between England and France, Yuon went to Lombardy, where he remained until the war was renewed. In the reign of Charles V. he held a number of commands. He led an expedition of Welsh knights against Guernsey. His hope was that he would be able to reconquer Wales. Charles V. assisted him with money and supplies, but he was unable to land in Wales. He took part in the expedition of Bertand du Guesclin in Spain. On his return to France he won some victories over the English. Froissart says that he was greatly hated in England on account of his claims to the Welsh crown, and for his treatment of his English prisoners, some of whom he would not allow to be ransomed. Yuon fell a victim to treason. He took into his service a James Lambe, a knight who represented himself to be a Welsh exile. He appointed this man his chamberlain. When Yuon was before Mortagne (1378), directing the siege against the English garrison, he was assassinated by James Lambe, who fled to the English camp, where he received protection. Yuon was buried at the church of St. Leger with great pomp.



LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF  
*MELUSINE.*

The loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traueyll to the amorous louers, and deth to horses, 56.

Old synne reneweth shame, 79.

Such weneth to auenge his shame that increassith it, 93.

It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.

Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.

Wel fole is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd wenyng to make hym be styll, 107.

Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.

Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.

A flyes of a yere is more prouffitable than a flyes that is shorne twyes or thryes a yere, 112.

In long treatee lyeth sometyme grete falshed, 113.

Wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther, 113.

One grayne of peper alone sinertith more on mans tonge, than doth a sacke fult of whete, 128.

Victorye also lyeth not in grette multitude of peuple, but in good rule & ordynaunce, 128.

Goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte, 138.

All is not yet lost that lyeth in parell, 147.

Who lerneth not his crafte in his yougthe, with grete peyne & hard it shal be for him to be a good werkeman in his old age, 193.

That God doth, he done anone, 203.

Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought & forged, 211.

Of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had, 237.

Betre is to haue more of prouffyt & lasse honour, 238.

A lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynd, 247.

That the fole thinketh oftymes cometh to foly, 255.

The fole proposeth & god dysposeth, 265.

He that menaceth is sometyme in grete fer & drede hymself, & aftirward ouerthrowen, 279.

Betre it is to flee, than to abyde a folyssh enterpryse, 288.

Thing neuer bygonne hath neuer ende, 304.

In euery thing most be bygynnyng tofore the ende cometh, 304.

He that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayn, but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect, 368.



## GLOSSARY.

*Words in Italics are the corresponding words of the French version, Ch. Brunet's Edition 1854. Cot. = Cotgrave's French Dictionary.*

- Abhomyned, page 311, abominated.  
 aborde, 71, waited.  
 absteyn, 16, abstain.  
 abused, 7, beguiled.  
 abyssines, 5, abysses.  
 accorded, 213, agreed.  
 acompte, 356, account.  
 acoyntaunce, 71, acquaintance.  
 acoynte, 190, become familiar;  
 acoynted, 205.  
 adioust, 16, adjust.  
 admounestred, 228, warned; ad-  
 mounestyng, 287.  
 adomage, 32, harm; adomaged,  
 182.  
 adrecyd, 226, directed.  
 aduyronned, 123, surrounded.  
 aduys, 71 (*avis*), opinion.  
 affeblysshid, 241, became depressed,  
 lost spirit.  
 affectuely, 148 (*humblement*), earn-  
 estly.  
 affettuonsly, 159, affectionately.  
 affyaunce, 324 (*fiance*), assurance,  
 trust.  
 affyns, 89 (*proesmes*), near relatives.  
 affrayenge, 10, fearing.  
 afrayed, 28, frightened.  
 agree, 259, accept.  
 aigre, 298, harsh.  
 albaster, 328, alabaster.  
 alez, 218, allies; alyed, 92.  
 algaf, 300, although (lit. *al if*).  
 allegeaunce, 335, relief.  
 almese, 106; almesses, 321, charity.  
 alowed, 200, lowered.  
 altogidre, 41, altogether.  
 ambaxade, 183, embassy.  
 amorous, 56, amorous.  
 amongis, 27, amongst.  
 amyable, 275, friendly.  
 an, 90, one.  
 ancrs, 114, anchors.  
 anenst, 21, against.  
 ansuerde, 10, answered.  
 ante, 367, aunt.  
 antecessours, 330 (*antecesseurs*), pre-  
 decessors.  
 aourned, 51, 53 (*aourne*), attired.  
 aparteyned, 20, belonged.  
 apas, 27, apace.  
 apayed, 111, 192, pleased.  
 appareyllid, 118, made ready.  
 apparysshing, 369, appearing.  
 apperceyued, 230, 324, observed.  
 appert, 125, expert.  
 appertly, 131, promptly (*Cot.*).  
 appertyse, 83, deeds.  
 appiere, 15; appyeren, 4, appear.  
 arblast, 289, men who worked  
 the arblastes, machines for throw-  
 ing missiles.  
 archegaye, 226 (*archegaie*), dart.  
 ardaunt, 142, burning.  
 argued, 150 (*argue*), perplexed.  
 arregarde, 132, rearguard.  
 arsouns, 286, saddle-bows.  
 aspre, 145, fierce.  
 asprely, 132, fiercely.  
 aspye, 117, spy.  
 aspyracion, 315, respiration.  
 assayed, 171, attested.  
 assoted, 12, infatuated.  
 assurest, 171, boldest.  
 astonyed, 202, astonished.  
 astromy, 20, astronomy.

astronomyens, 323, astronomers.  
 asuryd, 156 (*fiance*), betrothed.  
 auantgarde, 174, vanguard.  
 auautyng, 11, boasting.  
 auctoures, 3, authors.  
 auncyent, 4, ancient.  
 auoultire, 296, adultery.  
 awondred, 50, wondered.  
 awter, 344, alter.  
 axe, 41, ask.  
 ayez, 299, attack of fever.  
 ayen, 180, again.

Bake, 9, back.  
 bare, 351, bore.  
 barers, 124; barreres, 63 (*braies*),  
 defences.  
 bassade, 308, embassy.  
 bassecourt, 300, inner court of a  
 castle.  
 basyn, 8, mug.  
 basynets, 123, helmetted men.  
 batayll, 289, battalion.  
 batayllous, 246 (*bataillereux*), given  
 to fighting.  
 beaulte, 7, beauty.  
 beed, 148, bed.  
 begonne, 12, begun.  
 behauf, 17, use.  
 behel, 282, beheld.  
 behighte, 111, 190, promise, pro-  
 mised.  
 beryng, 8, bearing.  
 besily, 3, busily.  
 betoke, 110, committed.  
 bewte, 7, beauty.  
 bigge, 86, build.  
 bigynne, 17, begin.  
 bilded, 17; bylded, 6, builded.  
 bode, 18, bid.  
 bourgeys, 206; burgeys, 151,  
 burghers.  
 braunche, 23, branch.  
 braundysshed, 145, brandished.  
 brede, 41, breadth.  
 brenne, 17; brenne, 4; brennyng,  
 184, to burn.  
 brigh, 266, bright.  
 broche, 21, pierce.  
 broched, 130, spurred.  
 broded, 53; browded, 81, embroi-  
 dered.  
 bruled, 234, burnt.  
 bruyt, 251, noise.

brygandyners, 128, men wearing  
 brigandines, canvas coats cover-  
 ed with iron plates or iron rings.  
 buffet, 303, blow.  
 busshe, 284, ambush.  
 butyn, 146, booty.  
 bycomme, 4, gone to.  
 bye, 39, buy.  
 bygoten, 6, begotten.  
 bynethe, 22, beneath.

Caas, 128, cause.  
 candelstykes, 17, candlesticks.  
 carrykes, 109, cargo ships.  
 caruell, 117, a light ship.  
 cas, 11, case.  
 castel, 15, castle.  
 castellayne, 92, castellan.  
 catholich, 215, catholic.  
 causer, 89, originator.  
 cepter, 179, scepter.  
 cerched, 330, searched.  
 certyfyen, 3, to certify.  
 cesse, 155, cease.  
 chaffed, 22, excited, vexed.  
 champaynes, 100, open fields.  
 chanoyne, 40, canon.  
 chappen, 193, shapen.  
 charyte, 12, charity.  
 chasse, 20, chase.  
 chaunfreyn, 84 (*gauffrain d'acier*),  
 the headpiece of a barbed horse  
 (Halliwell).  
 chayere, 82, chair.  
 cheryed, 98, treated.  
 cheuauance, 155 (*chevance*), achieve-  
 ment.  
 cheuysaunce, 264, promise.  
 cheyned, 177, chained.  
 childed, 104, gave birth to.  
 chirch, chirche, 36, church.  
 cleme, 142, climb.  
 clemme, 25, climb.  
 clepen, 187, called; clepid, 245,  
 named.  
 cleue, 26, cleave.  
 clos, 118 (*clos*), enclosure, 267.  
 cluble, 303, club.  
 cohortacion, 97, company.  
 cohorte, 97, company.  
 coler, 53, collar.  
 collige, 369, collect.  
 comneyd, 123; commonyd, 154,  
 excited.



- communkyed, 291, talked.  
 commynalte, 184 (*communes*), commons.  
 comparacion, 17, comparison.  
 compleyned, 12, complained.  
 complices, 96, accomplices.  
 condampned, 68, condemned.  
 condycion, 14, condition.  
 congie, 301, leave.  
 conne, 12, to be able.  
 connyng, 2, cunning, knowledge.  
 conspiracion, 75, conspiracy.  
 constreyned, 7, constrained.  
 contrefaytte, 135, deformed.  
 contynue, 299 (*continue*), prolonged attack.  
 conuenable, 40, convenient.  
 convers, 100, menials.  
 convyne, 133, 142, 172 (*commune*)? assembly, militia, soldiery.  
 conyns, 261, rabbits.  
 corset, 84, a cloth coat worn over the cuirass.  
 coste, 134, disbursement.  
 costes, 268, coasts, shores.  
 cotidiane, 100, daily.  
 cote, 129, coat.  
 coude, 7, could, was able; 20, knew.  
 couenaunce, 5, covenant.  
 couert, 254, 257, 281, 282, covert, concealed way.  
 couertly, 262, obscurely, secretly.  
 couetyse, 87, covetous.  
 coule, 168, cool.  
 couloure, 4, colour.  
 coureer, 9, courser.  
 cours, 15, course; cours, 290, rush.  
 courteyns, 57, curtains.  
 coyffe, 250 (*coeffe*), head-dress.  
 coynted, 315, comely.  
 cradelles, 4, cradles.  
 cramesyn, 205, crimson.  
 cronykle, 6, chronicle.  
 cryded, 82, cried, shouted.  
 curee, 99, entrails, quarry.  
 curtoysye, curtoisye, 9, courtesy.  
 cyrurgyens, 288, surgeons.  
 Dalt, 177, divided.  
 damoysean, 163; damoyseaulx (pl.), 125, youth.  
 dampned, 339, damned.  
 daw fole (*damp musart*). French text means Sir Fool or Sir Thoughtless, "damp" being equivalent to the O.E. *Dan*, as: "Dan" Chaucer. *daw fole* may mean "melancholy" fool; see Bradley's *Stratmann's M. E. Dictionary*, under "dau."  
 debonnaire, 190, gentle.  
 deceneryd, 169, ? unfurled their sails.  
 decez, 356, decease.  
 dede, 321, caused; dede, 323, deed; dede, 12, did.  
 deece, 190, divide.  
 deeling, 111, bearing.  
 def, 29, deaf.  
 deffawte, 345, default.  
 delyt, 333, misdemeanour.  
 demanded, 20, related.  
 demened, 80, 125, 136, depressed; demeneth, 147, conducted.  
 demesurably, 132, greatly, immeasurably.  
 demysed, 87 (*s'en est deffuit*), got rid of.  
 denounced, 188, declared.  
 departed, 116, divided.  
 departement, 98, departure.  
 despyt, 234, contempt.  
 desray, 123, disorder.  
 destraytte, 336 (*le vellon et le pertuis*), ? district, or territory.  
 destrier, 81; destrer, 82, horse.  
 detrenched, 146, hacked.  
 deucl, 234 (*doeul*); dueyht, 237, mourning.  
 deuoyre, 82, duty.  
 deuysed, 67, told.  
 deuyses, 348, talks.  
 dey, 15, die.  
 diches, 88, ditches.  
 distourned, 55, turned aside.  
 do, 321; doo, 239; doon, 13, 26, cause to.  
 dogge, 21, dog.  
 dolaunt, 312, doleful.  
 douleur, 305, dolor.  
 dombe, 29, dumb.  
 dome, 13, doom.  
 domnage, 145 (*dommaige*), harm.  
 don, 118 (*donne*), given.  
 dongeon, 300, main tower of a castle, donjon.  
 doubtid, 1, feared.  
 doubtful, 193, fearful.

doughtir, 11, daughter.  
 down, 13, down.  
 dowbed, 18, dubbed.  
 dresse, 30; dressed, 21, direct,  
 turned.  
 dressyng, 155 (*adressant*), address-  
 ing.  
 duc, 6, duke.  
 duchery, 214, duchy.  
 dueil, 138; dueyl, 216, mourning.  
 dysempare, 215, dethrone.  
 dyspens, 148, outlay.  
 dysployed, 119, 230, unfurled, dis-  
 played.  
 dysporte, 77, 98, sport; dysported,  
 304, enjoyed.  
 dyspoylle, 136, pillage.  
 dyspreyse, 113, contemn.  
 dyspytous, 29 (*despiteux*), angry,  
 spiteful.  
 dyssymyle, 113, dissimulate.  
 dystourne, 26 (*destourneray*), turn  
 away; distourned, 83.

Eche, 17, each.  
 effoundred, 286, cut into.  
 egaly, 146, equally.  
 emonge, 118, among.  
 empeche, 39, prevent.  
 empeschement, 279, hindrance.  
 empossesse, 99; enpocesse, 333, put  
 in possession.  
 emprysed, 81, undertaken.  
 ench, 83, inch.  
 encheson, 65, motive.  
 encres, 337; encresse, 32, increase.  
 encysed, 62, cut.  
 endenoyre, 152; endeavour; en-  
 deuoyred, 157.  
 endoctryne, 55, instruct.  
 enfourmed, 308, informed.  
 enharnashed, 9, accoutred.  
 enjurous, 66, injurious.  
 enlyberte, 99, liberate.  
 ensiew, 184, follow.  
 ensured, 68 (*asseuroit*), assured.  
 entamed, 211, 299, broached.  
 entaylled, 50, carved.  
 entende, 1, to give heed.  
 entendement, 369, understanding.  
 entent, 91, intent, purpose.  
 ententyfly, 70, attentively.  
 enterprenaunt, 122, enterprising.  
 enterprysed, 12, undertaken.

entremete, 63 (*se meslera*), inter-  
 meddle.  
 entreteyne, 239, keep up.  
 enuahisshing, 138 (*enwaye*); enua-  
 hyshed, 147; enuahye, 201, as-  
 sault.  
 envertued, 200 (*se envertuoit*),  
 strengthened.  
 eny, 16, any.  
 erable, 99, arable.  
 erle, 6, earl.  
 eschiewed, 145, avoided; 170,  
 rescued.  
 esceryed, 77, 115, p.p. of *escrien*, to  
 call to.  
 excuse, 258, excuse; 10, excused.  
 eslongyd, 133 (*se eslongerent*), separ-  
 ated.  
 espyrtuel, 371, spiritual.  
 esprised, 11, 34 (*surpris*), overtaken.  
 esprouued, 224 (*esprouvoient*), tried.  
 esprysed, 77 (*espris*), smitten.  
 espyes, 193, spies.  
 esquyer, 248, squire.  
 essaye, 192, try.  
 estimed, 117, estimated.  
 estraungers, 178, strangers.  
 estymacion, 266, estimate.  
 enerche, 320; eueryche, 154, every.  
 euerychon, 38, every one.  
 ewrous, 244 (*heureux*), lucky, happy.  
 excusacion, 107, excuse.  
 exercyted, 224, exercised.  
 exployted, 123 (*exploita*), worked;  
 81, fought; 289, acted.  
 eyled, 299, ailed.

Facion, 225, build, make.  
 fader, 7, father.  
 faicte, 13; faitt, 71; faytte, 119;  
 fayt, 312, deed.  
 falshed, 13; falsed, 315, falsehood;  
 fals, 12.  
 fan, 65 (Latin *vannus*), a corn win-  
 nowing fan or sieve.  
 fantosme, 311, phantom.  
 fasted, 44, fastened.  
 fauntesye, 4, 31, fantasy.  
 fawte, 57 (verb), fail; 196, wrong;  
 58 (noun), failure.  
 feith, 24, faith.  
 fel, 134, 200, fierce, cruel.  
 felawship, 8, fellowship.  
 fer, 60, far; ferre, 327.

ferder, 332, further.  
 ferfourth, 106, widely.  
 fest, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted;  
 feste, 8, rejoicing.  
 festyed, 368 (*batu*), thrashed.  
 fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.  
 feynted, 66, faint.  
 feynyngly, 28, pretending.  
 flayel, 303 (*flayel*), a baton carrying  
 a lump of iron attached by a  
 chain.  
 flawgh, 321, flew; floughe, 321.  
 flemed, 112, fled.  
 florysshed, 13 (*florie*), flowered.  
 flote, 268, fleet.  
 flyes, 112, fleece.  
 fole, 24, fool.  
 fore, 184, early.  
 foreby, 251, past.  
 forfaytte, 315 (*fourfait*), crime.  
 forgate, 7, forgot.  
 forwayed, 101, wandered, lost.  
 foundatours, 368, founders.  
 foundement, 62 (*fondament*), found-  
 ation.  
 founs, 172 (*font*), bed.  
 fourme, 17, form.  
 foursenyd, 315 (*enforcenez*), furious,  
 enraged.  
 fourueyeth, 76, wanders.  
 fowel, 206, foul.  
 fownd, 103, founded.  
 foynyng, 67, thrusting.  
 foyson, 21 (*foison*), abundance.  
 fro, 3, from.  
 fuldoo, 1, accomplish.  
 fullyssh, 149, 208, fully.  
 fumyer, 278, smoke.  
 fust, 85, fist.  
 fuste, 116, a rowing and sailing ship.  
 fynaunce, 257, trust.  
 fyers, 17, fierce.  
 fyerste, 118, boldness.  
 fyl, 321, fell.  
 fyn, 331, end.  
 fynaunce, 17 (*finance*), ready money.  
 fyreyron, 23, flint and steel.  
  
 Gadre, 266, gather.  
 gaf, 19, gave.  
 galyote, 167; little galley; galyotte,  
 118.  
 gan, 22, began.  
 garnysons, 135, garrisons.

garnysshed, 184, 230, furnished,  
 adorned.  
 gate, 203, got, obtained.  
 gaynstode, 137, withstood.  
 geaunt, 17, giant.  
 gendred, 246, begotten.  
 gent, 8, gentle.  
 gerdell, 53, girdle.  
 gerland, 59, garland, wreath.  
 gestes, 369, histories.  
 glanced, 77, glanced.  
 gobelyns, 4, goblins.  
 gonnes, 115, guns.  
 good chep, 279, 282 (*bon marche*),  
 easy mastery.  
 gorgeret, 175, a piece of armour to  
 protect the throat.  
 gramaire, 370, grammar.  
 gramercy, 9, great thanks.  
 grauntfader, 19, grandfather.  
 gree, 109, 121, favour, will, pleasure.  
 gree, take in, 2, agree to.  
 greef, 13, grief.  
 gret, grett, 7, great.  
 greve, 130, injure.  
 gnerdon, 204, reward.  
 gyfte, 15, gift.  
  
 Haake, 20, hawk.  
 haboundonne, 99, give up.  
 habundauntly, 228, abundantly.  
 halid, 161, hauled.  
 halowed, 158, blessed.  
 handlyng, 65 (*manilles*), handles.  
 hap, 15; happ, 5, 12 (noun), luck,  
 chance.  
 happe, 4; happed, 5; haped, 118  
 (verb), to happen.  
 hardyly, 10; hardytly, 231, boldly.  
 harneys, 115, armour.  
 hauen, 118 (*clos*), haven.  
 haunce, 112; enhance, 325, raised.  
 haunted, 113, practised.  
 hauoyr, 67, goods.  
 haused, 166 (*getter*), lowered over-  
 board.  
 hawtepyece, 145; haulte piece, 325,  
 helmet.  
 heest, 21,  
 hehge, 21, hang.  
 helmets, 199, 251 (*bassines*), fighting  
 men.  
 henne, 211, hen.  
 hens fourthon, 17, henceforth.

herberowed, 70, harboured.  
 herde, 7, heard.  
 here, 2, hear.  
 herke, 317, harken.  
 herte, 9, hart; hert, 39.  
 heued vp, 24, raised.  
 heure, 146, hour.  
 heuyer, 35, heavier.  
 heyer, 66, heir.  
 hit, 7, it.  
 hold, 190, keep.  
 hott, 302, whole.  
 holped, 46, helped.  
 honestly, 73, worthily.  
 hontous, 238, ashamed.  
 hool, 361, whole.  
 hoop, 36, hope.  
 hores, 177, oars.  
 hors, 10, horse.  
 hourys son, 300, whore's son.  
 hurted, 25, p.p. of hurten, to rush  
 against.  
 hurtelyd, 95 (*hurta*), pushed.  
 hydouse, 315, hideous.  
 hye, 76 (*hault*), aloud; 94, high.  
 hyerid, 134, hired.  
 hyndre, 24, hynder.

Impetred, 14, procured (Cot.).  
 importable, 153, unbearable.  
 incontynent, 276, immediately.  
 indigned, 262, made indignant.  
 infortunate, 16, unfortunate.  
 iugge, 15, judge.  
 iuggement, 3; jugement, 15, judg-  
 ment.  
 Iung, 16, June.

Jacke, 205 (*Jaques*), coat.  
 jape, 79, jest.  
 journey, iourney, 291, a fixed date.  
 juggle, 317, judge.  
 justiser, 97, justiciary.

Kennyng, 104 (*Veues*), far sight,  
 extent of vision. Cotgrave trans-  
 lates "kenne": *voir de loin*.  
 Motteux (*Rabelais*, Bk. IV, cap.  
 22) translates "ne sommes pas  
 loing de port" by "within a ken-  
 ning."

kepe, 112, gnard.  
 keile, 28, churl.  
 kerued, 17, carved.

keruyng, 43, carving, cutting;  
 kerned, 50.  
 knowleche, 2, knowledge; know-  
 leched, 96.  
 konne, 108, show.  
 kychons, 50, kitchens.  
 kymbyng, 297, combing.  
 kyng, 6, king.  
 kynne, 90, kin.  
 kynrede, 24, kindred.  
 kyst, 78 (*jetta*), cast.

Langing, 136, longing.  
 large, 111, liberal.  
 largenes, 111, liberality.  
 launche, 123, hurl; launchid, 94,  
 rushed.  
 lawghe, 272; lawhe, 101, laugh.  
 lawmentyng, 147, lamenting.  
 lectuary, 247 (*electuaire*), electuary.  
 leder, 39; leeder, 357, leather.  
 lefte, 286, lifted.  
 legge, 99; leghe, 129; legthis (pl.),  
 194, league.  
 leghe, 294 (*lieue*), place.  
 legthes, 353, legs.  
 lepe, 10, leap.  
 les, 22, lest.  
 leser, 144 (*loisir*), leisure.  
 lette, 10, delay; late (inp.) let, 20;  
 letted, 196.  
 leued, 23, left; leve, 33, leave.  
 leuyed, 135, levied.  
 leyd, 34, laid.  
 leyser, 277, leisure.  
 locucion, 20, circumlocution.  
 lodgis, 119, lodgings.  
 lost, 147, faith.  
 lustis, 320, pleasures.  
 lyf, 7, life.  
 lyflod, 108; lyuelod, 31 (*terrien*),  
 landholding.  
 lygeauns, 338, allegiance.  
 lyghtly, 300, quickly.  
 lykwyse, 15, likewise.  
 lynee, 6, line.  
 lyuere, 275, give.

Machecolyd, 63, 103, parapetted,  
 holes are left in the parapets to  
 pour out molten lead, &c.  
 machined, 96; machyned, 68, ma-  
 chinated.  
 maculate, 299, blemished.



mageste, 1, majesty.  
 magre, 142, maugre.  
 maister, 1, master.  
 manded, 73 (*manda*), sent for.  
 mandement, 153, 183, mandate,  
     cominament.  
 manoyr, 100, mansion.  
 marches, 183, districts.  
 maronner, 268, mariner.  
 maryage, 16, marriage.  
 mate, 147, dull (*mat*), dejected;  
     mated, 216.  
 mayllet, 329, mallet.  
 maynten, 126, bearing.  
 medled, 132, mingled.  
 medowe, 5, meadow.  
 meney, 9, retinue.  
 mercy, 71, thank; mercyed, 90.  
 meruaylle, 11, marvel.  
 meryte, 15, merit.  
 meschaunt, 302, wicked.  
 mesprysed, 79, calumniated.  
 messagery, 69, corps of messengers,  
     embassy.  
 messe, 54, dish.  
 metes, 38, meats.  
 meued, 122; mevyd, 8; menyd, 21  
     (*mue*), stirred up.  
 meure, 160, mature.  
 meyne, 23, men; meney, 9, 280,  
     company.  
 moche, 6, much.  
 moder, 14, mother.  
 mone shyn, 22, moonshine.  
 moneth, 208, month.  
 morow, 361, morning.  
 most, 29, must.  
 moustre, 165, muster.  
 mowe, 23, be able.  
 musarde, 29 (*musart* from *muser*; to  
     loiter), dawdler.  
 myddes, 54, midst.  
 mynnsshed, 350, lessened; my-  
     nusshe, 820.  
 myscheaunce, 366, ill luck, mis-  
     chance.  
 mysdon, 261, done amiss.  
 mysdymed, 265, mistook.  
 mysericordous, 313, forgiving.  
 myserye, 13, misery.  
 mysknewe, 102, mistook.  
 myster, 219, need; mystier, 222.

Nat, 2, not.

naturell, 15, natural.  
 nauye, 109, navy.  
 nauyll, 15, navel.  
 nayle, 81, hoof.  
 ne, 1, nor.  
 nedermost, 336, nethermost.  
 ner, 212, nor.  
 nevew, 17, nephew.  
 none, 358, noon.  
 nones, 63, nonce.  
 nothre, 39, neither.  
 nourrytured, 354, nurtured.  
 nouryces, 103, nurses.  
 nuyouse, 371, tiresome.  
 nyghte, 179, niece; nyghtis (pl.),  
     162.  
 nys, 8, is not.

Obscurte, 22, obscurity.  
 obsequye, 235, funeral ceremony.  
 obtempering, 9, submitting.  
 occysyon, 132, slaughter.  
 on, 131, 233, in.  
 ones, 360, once.  
 oo, 79; oon, 4, one.  
 oost, 193, host.  
 ootys, 91, oats.  
 ordonne, 14, order; ordonned, 79.  
 orguey<sup>th</sup>, 293, haughtiness.  
 orgueyllous, 249, haughty.  
 orphanite, 147, state of orphanage.  
 orphelym, 241; orphenyme, 213;  
     orphenyns (pl.), 187, orphan.  
 ough, 126; owche, 59, jewel.  
 ouergrowen, 65, full grown.  
 oueredde, 1, read over.  
 ouertredde, 112, overstep.  
 ought, 134, owes.  
 oultrage, 196, outrage.  
 oultrageous, 89, outrageous.  
 outhre, 95, either.

Paas, 21, pace.  
 pais, 257, peace.  
 palfrener, 52 (*varlet*), page.  
 palfroy, 9, palfrey.  
 palleys, 147, palace.  
 palyard, 294 (*ribault*), rascal.  
 pannes, 4, pans.  
 panser, 84, a steel plate covering  
     that part of the body between the  
     breast and the waist. *Viollet-le-*  
     *Duc*, the front part of the cuirass.  
 pappes, 311, breasts.

parels, 31, perils.  
 parement, 37, ornament.  
 parfounde, 167, deepest.  
 parfytt, 3, perfect.  
 partrych, 175, partridge.  
 pas, 136, pass, passage.  
 patron, 115, master.  
 patyse, 304, 324, tribute; patiz, 301;  
   patise (verb), 304, tax, exact tri-  
   bute.  
 paueys, 142, 359, shield.  
 paueysed, 167, shielded.  
 paynemys, 106, pagans.  
 peas, 12, peace; peased, 100, paci-  
   fied.  
 pensefull, 28 (*pensif*), thoughtful.  
 perflyght, 22; perflyttly, 5, per-  
   fectly.  
 peris, 39; peers.  
 perpetrated, 76, perpetrated.  
 perske, 126 (*pers.*), blue, sky colour-  
   ed (Cot.).  
 pert, 105, expert.  
 pesaunnt, 142, weight.  
 pesaunt, 145, heavy.  
 peupled, 118, peopled.  
 peyne, 12, 322, pain, painstaking.  
 plaisir, 10, pleasure.  
 playntes, 12, plaints.  
 playsaunce, 14, pleasure.  
 playsaunt, 7, pleasant.  
 plee, 53 (*plait*), story.  
 plee, 319 (*plet*), play.  
 pletyng, 33, pr. part. of plete, to  
   plead.  
 portable, 209, bearable.  
 portecollis, 253, portcullis.  
 potence, 117, cross, gibbet.  
 pouere, 6, poor.  
 pouldre, 115, powder.  
 poursiewe, 155, seek.  
 poynted, 149, appointed.  
 prately, 9 (*doulcement*), prettily.  
 prechement, 196, preaching.  
 prees, 137 (*presse*), throng.  
 prest, 265, 275, ready, now.  
 preste, 358, priest.  
 preu, 21 (*preus*), valiant.  
 preyse, 23, praise.  
 preysed, 302, appraised.  
 prodytour, 310 (*proditeur*), traitor.  
 proesse, 15, prowess.  
 promysson, 16, promise.  
 promynte, 15, promise.

promyttyng, 292, promising.  
 propice, 168; propyce, 108, pro-  
   pitious.  
 propos, 261, proposal.  
 propre, 196, own.  
 propiete, 133, property.  
 proufytte, 3, profit.  
 proyt, 132, prey.  
 prymat, 40, primate.  
 pryne, 148, six A.M.  
 pryuy, 214, select, intimate.  
 publyed, 64, published.  
 pucelle, 179, maid.  
 punysshe, 13, punish.  
 purchasse, 257, procure.  
 purfeld, 53; purfyllled, 240, trimmed.  
 puruey, 19, purvey.  
 purveyaunce, 109, provender.  
 purueyed, 109, purveyed, provided.  
 pytaunce, 336, allowance.  
 pyte, 14, pity.

Quarell, 287, a kind of arrow.

Radeur, 329 (*radeur*), swiftness; 386,  
   violence.  
 reasonably, 18, reasonably; raisson,  
   260, justice.  
 rampyn, 117 (*rampin*), a light ship.  
 rannyn, 8, running.  
 raser, 283, razor.  
 rauysshed, 7, ravished.  
 realyed, 145, rallied.  
 reaume, 238; reame, 240, realm.  
 rebuckyd, 252, struck, attacked.  
 rechaced, 126, chased back.  
 reche, 325, reach.  
 recomforte, 107, comfort again.  
 recorded, 263, related.  
 recountred, 168, encountered.  
 recule, 124, 231, fall back, retreat.  
 rede, 2, read.  
 redeuaunce, 4 (*redevance*), rent, ser-  
   vice.  
 redressid, 193, rearranged.  
 reforced, 176 (*se renforcha*), 290  
   (*reforcha*), increased, reinforced.  
 regarde, 209, desert.  
 regenerated, 140, regenerated.  
 regne, 6, reign.  
 regracy, 23; regracye, 124, thank.  
 rejoye, 157, gladden.  
 relacion, 42, reference.  
 relessed, 322, relaxed, diminished.

releuyd, 95 (*se remit*), 103, 131, rose.  
 relygyon, 181, order.  
 remenant, 44, remnant.  
 remevyth, 371, removeth.  
 remyse, 207, 210, restore; remysed,  
 137.

renounee, 108; renounee, 74 (*renommée*), renown.  
 resoynngne, 140 (*ressongner*), to fear  
 (Cot.).

respeccion, 319, outlook.  
 restabylsshe, 196, establish again.  
 retche, 14 (*challoir*), reck, regard.  
 reuertid, 319, turned.

reueste, 97, endow.  
 reuested, 40, clothed.  
 reueyht, 241, revelry.  
 rewled, 68, ruled.  
 rightwyse, 69, righteous.

roche, 248, rock.

roos, 22, rose.

roste, 4, roast.

rote, 60, root.

rotyn, 286, rotten.

rought, 67, recked.

route, 136, squadron (Cot.).

royalme, 118; royame, 245, realm.

rudesse, 28, rudeness.

ryall, 363, royal.

ryalte, 214, royalty.

ryuage, 2, 114 (*ripve*), shore, landing.

Saaf, 3, except.

sac, 39, sack.

salades, 130, helmets.

saluacyon, 356, safety.

salue, 126, salute; salued, 8; sa-  
 lewed, 10.

Satirday, 15, Saturday.

saudant, 291, sultan.

sauegarde, 17, safeguard.

sauf, 177, except.

sawdees, 148, soldiers' pay.

sawdoyers, 208; sawdyours, 149,  
 soldiers.

sawdan, 105, sultan.

sawte, 229; sawtyng, 291, assault,  
 assaulting.

saynct, 3, saint.

scafolds, 241 (*eschafauds*), grand-  
 stands.

scaped, 34, escaped.

scarmusshing, 131, skirmishing.

schall, 2, shall.

scourers, 224 (*coureurs*), runners.

seaced, 311, ceased.

seale, 39, seal.

seased, 75, seasyd, 358 (*saisir*, con-  
 nected with *seisin*), seized from.

sechyng, 10, seeking.

see, 7, sea.

semblable, 210, similar.

semblaunt, 33, 150, show.

semyng, 7, seeming.

sene, 153 (cf. *syn*) since.

senester, 84; senyster, 137, left.

separed, 302, separated.

sepulture, 354, tomb.

serche, 1, search.

seruytude, 249, feudal dues.

sethen, 163, since.

sette, 17, set, placed; 272 (noun),  
 sect.

seuene nyght, 91, week.

shadd, 22, shed.

shede, 359, sheath.

shelynges, 43, shillings.

shett, 14, shut.

shul, 16, shall.

siege, 133, seat, camp.

siew, 123, follow; siewed, 219;

siewyng, 73.

sith, 10, since.

sitte, 23, set.

slee, 24, slay.

slough, 306, slew.

sodan, 128, sultan.

soden, 279, boiled.

solas, 306, amusement.

solemply, 323, solemnly.

sommage, 143, baggage.

sommed, 65, summoned.

songe, 7, sang.

sonne, 174, sun.

sorow, 13, sorrow.

sonne, 360, sun.

sort, 110, spell, sorcery.

souped, 363, supped.

sourdred, 46 (*est sours*), 50 (*sour-  
 dit*), sprung forth.

sowle, 41, soul.

sowne, 101, sound.

sparpylled, 165 (*esgarez*), scattered.

spek, 6, 19, speak.

sperhaak, 16; sperohak, sparrow  
 hawk.

speryd, 294, asked.

spoused, 11, espoused.

spyce, 371 (*espèce*), element.  
 stablysshed, 17, stablished.  
 stalage, 54, stands.  
 stert vp, 302 (*saillist*), jumped up.  
 straunged of, 48, estranged from.  
 stake, 234, a pile of wood.  
 stakered, 82; staker, 353, staggered.  
 staung, 98, pool.  
 stere, 185, stir, move.  
 sterop, 27; sterope, 83, stirrup.  
 stode, 7, stood.  
 stoure, 132, 146, tumult, battle.  
 strange, 183, foreign.  
 stranger, 10, stranger.  
 strengest, 33, strongest.  
 streyte, 118, street.  
 styed, 94, mounted.  
 styl, 7, still.  
 subget, 24, subject.  
 subgection, 17, subjection.  
 suposen, 3, suppose.  
 supposet, 30, intendest.  
 surprysed, 10, overcome by.  
 surquydous, 96, arrogant.  
 suscited, 151 (*resuciter*), raised from.  
 sustir, 118, sister.  
 swette, 7, sweet.  
 syke, 147, sick.  
 sylenceth, 48, becomes silent.  
 symplenes, 194, ignorance.  
 syn, 17, 71, 116, since, then.  
 synester, 258, evil.  
 synewes, 138 (*vaines*), veins.  
 synnar, 313, sinner.  
 synne, 339, sin.  
 syth, 26, since.  
 sythe, 301, scyth.

Tache, 22 (*tache*), spot; tache, 232, buckle, clasp.  
 tambours, 110, drums, a kind of tambourine.  
 targe, 175, shield.  
 termyned, 149, terminated.  
 terryen, 60, landholder.  
 thaketh, 294 (*pris*), taketh.  
 the, 284, they.  
 thenne, 7, then.  
 thevely, 359, thieflike.  
 thikk, 18, thick.  
 thoo, 16, those.  
 thrested, 77, thrustud.  
 through, 359, threw.  
 thirst, 7, thirst.

thye, 232, thigh.  
 tierce, 157, In summer eight of the clock, in winter ten (Cot.).  
 toard, 96, towards.  
 to fore, 20; to forne, 178, before.  
 togidre, 11, together.  
 toke, 4, took.  
 top, 105, tuft.  
 tourment, 15, torment.  
 tourned, 9, turned.  
 tranchis, 43 (*trenchée*); trenchis, 50, carvings, hewings.  
 trasse, 278, trace.  
 trauserse, 126, across.  
 trayth, 320 (*traillis*); traylles (pl.), 329, cage.  
 trayttee, 182, treaty.  
 trenchaunt, 145, sharp.  
 trew, 1, true.  
 trews, 276, truce.  
 tronchoned, 286, truncheoned.  
 troussage, 132 (*troussages*), goods, bundles.  
 troussed, 141, prepared to leave.  
 trouth, 17, truth.  
 trucheman, 274, interpreter.  
 trusse, 335, pack.  
 trychery, 110, treachery.  
 trystefull, 305, sad.  
 tyres, 53, attire.

Valew, valewe, 41, value.  
 valiauntis, 122, valiantness.  
 vasselage, 145 (*vaisselage*), fealty; 200 (*vaisselages*), feats of arms (Cot.).  
 vergoyne, 285 (*vergoingne*), shame.  
 vergoynouse, 21, ashamed.  
 vertu, 291; vertue, 200, strength.  
 very, 1, 25, veracious.  
 vitupere, 89 (*blasme*), reproach.  
 vmbrel, 83 (*maisselle*), the shade for the eyes placed immediately over the sight of a helmet, and sometimes attached to the vizor (Halliwell).  
 vnfortune, 209, misfortune.  
 vnnethe, 202, 249, scarcely, nearly.  
 vnpurveyed, 121 (*despourveu*), unprovided.  
 vnved, 131, united.  
 volente, 207, will.  
 voyded, 209 (*ostées*), removed.  
 vpso-dounne, 25, upside down.



vyageours, 362, travellers.  
 vylayne, 28, bondman.  
 vylonnye, 251, disgrace.  
 vynaigre, 114, vinegar.  
 vyreton, 269, arrow or bolt.  
 vysyted, 288, examined.  
 vytupere, 233 (*vituperer*), shame.

Wakked, 7, was awake.  
 waloped, 130; waloping, 21, galloped.  
 warauntyse, 200; waraunt, 136, protect.  
 warde, 62, wall of defence.  
 wardes, 170, guards.  
 wareyne, 99, preserve, enclosure.  
 wast, 18, waste.  
 waymentyng, 13, lamenting.  
 wedryng, 206, weather.  
 wele, 11, weal.  
 wend, 72; weneth, 2; wenyng, 29, weened, thought.  
 wende, 137, turned.  
 wepen, 25, weapon.  
 wered, 21, fought, warred, worried.  
 were, 129, wear.  
 werre, 65, war.  
 wers, 216, worse.  
 wery, 145, weary.

wete, 115; wot, 12; wote, 120, know.  
 whom, 52, home.  
 wodd, 272, mad.  
 wode, 285, wood.  
 woo, 85, woful.  
 wood wroth, 247, madly angry.  
 worship, 111, respect.  
 worshipfully, 10, honorably.  
 wounderly, 5, wonderfully.  
 wraunt, 158, guarantee.  
 writon, 17, written.  
 wrorthy, 68, worthy.  
 wysshying, 177, wish.  
 wyttd, 310, blamed.

Yaf, 181, gave.  
 yede, 7, 21, went.  
 yeft, 16, gift.  
 yl wyller, 211, ill-wisher.  
 ymage, 17, image.  
 ynough, 13, enough.  
 yonde, 70, yonder.  
 yonge, 4, young.  
 ypocras, 54, a spiced and sweetened wine.  
 yrous, 246 (*fier*), angry, fierce.  
 ytaken, 9, taken.



## INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

### PART I.—PERSONS.

- Adam, page 3.
- Alayn of Quyngant, 68, Raymondin's uncle.
- Alexaundryne, 369, concubine of Sersuell.
- Anthenor, King of Antioch, 264; helps to form a league to fight Urian of Cyprus; is defeated, makes a treaty with Urian, and agrees to pay tribute, 292.
- Anthony, 6, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; leaves home to succour Christine of Luxembourg, 190; conquers the King of Anssay, 308; marries Christine, 214; goes to the siege of Pourrencreu, 347; captures the Duke of Freiburg, 353.
- Appolyn, 283.
- Aragon, King of, visits Raymondin at Montserrat, 338; is present at Raymondin's burial, 355.
- Argemount, Lord of, 218, a baron of Poitou, appointed by the Duke Anthony as captain of Luxembourg in his absence at the siege of Prague.
- Aristote, 3; Aristotles, 20, quoted.
- Asselyn, 183, Earl of Luxembourg, father of Christine.
- Austeryche, Duke of, fights against the King of Anssay, is defeated, 245.
- Bandas, Caliph of, goes against Cyprus with the King of Brandimount, 164; attacks Lymasson, 167; he retreats on hearing of  
**MELUSINE.**
- the damage to the fleet by the storm, 168; his fleet captured, 170; fights Urian, 175; makes his escape, 176; defeated at sea by the Master of Rhodes, 177; escapes in a small boat, 177; forms a league against the kings of Cyprus and Armenia, 264; defeated by the Christian forces, and is compelled to make a treaty, 292.
- Bar, Duchesse of, Marie, 1, daughter of John le Bon, King of France; born Sept. 12, 1344; married 1364 to Robert, Duke of Bar; died 1404.
- Barbary, Sultan of, nephew of King Brandimount, one of the league against Urian, King of Cyprus, 264; believes the league will be successful against the Lusignans on land, 272; loses his arm in a fight with Urian, 290; makes a treaty, 292.
- Benedictus, Pope, 334; Benedicte; visited by Raymondin.
- Bernadon, 354, son of Odon, Earl of Marche, marries the heiress of the lord of Cabyeres.
- Berry, Duke of, John, 1, son of John le Bon, King of France; born Nov. 30, 1340; died June 15, 1416; commands John of Arras to compile the history of Melusine, 2; captures Lusignan Castle, 369.
- Bertrand, 18, 102, son of Emery, Earl of Poitiers; succeeds to the

- earldom, 40: grants Raymondin a piece of land, 41; goes to Raymondin's wedding, 49.
- Bertrand, 214, son of Anthony and Cristine of Luxembourg.
- Blanche, 18, daughter of Emery, Earl of Poitiers, goes to Raymondin's marriage, 52.
- Brandimount in Tharse, King of, uncle of the Sultan of Damascus, 164; goes against Cyprus to avenge his nephew's death, 164; his fleet damaged by a storm, 165; swears to obtain victory or death, 170; fights Urian, 175; slain, 175.
- Claude of Syon, 247, refuses to pay Raymondin his tribute, 246; is attacked by Geffray with the great Tooth, 247; captured, 254; is hung before Valbruyant Castle by Geffray's orders, 256.
- Clerevauld, 252, third brother of Guyon of Syon Castle; rebels against Raymondin, 246; is captured by Geffray's squire, 253, and is hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.
- Cordes, Admiral of, 268; Querdes, 264; joins the Caliph of Bandas to fight the King of Cyprus, 264; defeated at sea by Geffray, 270; slain by Geffray, 290.
- Crystyne, 183, daughter and heiress of the Duke of Luxembourg; the King of Anssay sues for her hand, 183; she refuses because he is a widower, 183; her land attacked, 185; Anthony rescues her, 203; marries Anthony, 214.
- Damascus, Sultan of, wants to marry the daughter of the King of Cyprus, 121; is refused because he will not be baptised, 121; goes to fight the king, 115; besieges Famagosse, 121; hears of the arrival of the Lusignans, 124; defeated by Urian, 133; throws a poisoned dart at the King of Cyprus, 136; slain by Urian, 145.
- Damascus, Sultan of, jeers at the Christians' power, 277; gets frightened at Geffray, 280; attacks Geffray, 283; has to fly, 285; makes a treaty, 292.
- David, King of Israel, 2, quoted.
- Dupont, Josselyn, makes the heir of the King of Bretayne jealous of Henry of Leon, 66; is denounced by Raymondin, 72; summoned to appear before the King of Bretayne, 73; his treachery exposed, 75; confesses, 85; ordered to make restitution, 88; hung, 86.
- Dysmas, 117, the good thief who was crucified with Jesus.
- Earle of Vandosme at war with the Erle of Marche, 345; he has to make peace, and do homage for some of his land, 346.
- Eglantyne, daughter and heiress of Frederick, King of Bohemia, 215; left an orphan, 227; marries Regnault, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 240; becomes the mother of Olyphart, 242.
- Elynas, King of Albany, a widower; when hunting he meets Pressine, a beautiful lady, 7; becomes enamoured of her, 9; proposes to marry her, 10; is accepted on condition that he promises to abstain from seeing her while in childbed, 11; has three daughters by her, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; breaks his promise, 11; his wife and daughters disappear, 12; his daughters shut him up in Brombelyoys, a Northumbrian mountain, 14; his death, burial, and tomb, 17.
- Emery, Earl of Poitiers, 18, slain by accident at a boar hunt by his nephew Raymondin, 25.
- Florye, daughter and heiress of the King of Little Armenia, falls in love with Guyon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, 162; left an orphan, 178; her father's dying wish is that she should marry Guyon, 179; Guyon marries her, 181.
- Florymond, son of Nathas, King of Albany, 7; he has much trouble, 12.



- Forests, Erle of, jokes his brother Raymondin about his marriage to Melusine, 56; makes him jealous of Melusine, 295; is slain by Geffray, 332.
- Frederyk, King of Behayne, brother of the King of Anssay, 215; besieged by the Saracens at Prague, 215; slain by the King of Craco, 226.
- Froymond, 245; Froymonde, 6; Froymont, 308, seventh son of Raymondin and Melusine, 104; the only perfectly formed child Melusine bears, 314; shorn, a monk at Mailleses, 305; burnt in the Abbey of Mailleses by Geffray with the great Tooth, 309.
- Gallafryn, King of Danetto (Dami-etta) has his head cut open by Geffray, 283.
- Geffray with the great Tooth, sixth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; goes against Claud of Syon and his brethren, 247; hangs them before Valbruyant Castle, 256; pardons Guerin and Gerrard, 263; resolves to fight the Saracens, 264; arrives at Lymasson, 267; defeats the Saracens at sea, 270; plunders Jaffa, 277; captures Beyrout, 278; kills Gallafryn of Damietta before Damascus, 283; fights the Sultan of Damascus, 287; kills the Admiral of Cordes, 290; the Saracens agree to pay tribute, 292; fights the giant Guedon, 302; slays him, 304; enraged at his brother Froymond becoming a monk, 307; burns the Abbey of Mailleses, his brother Froymond and all the monks, 304; repents, 310; goes to Broumbelyo, 323; fights the giant Grimold, 324; follows him into a cave, 327; sees there the tomb of Elynashis grandfather, 326; slays Grimold, 329; learns his mother's fate, 331; slays the Earl of Forest, 332; becomes lord of Lusignan, 338; repents his many misdeeds, 329; goes to Rome and confesses to the Pope, 340; visits his father, 343; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses, 346; captures Freiburg, 351; fights the Duke of Austria, 353; attends his father's burial, 353; fights with a mysterious knight, 359; promises to build an hospital, 361.
- Geruayse, 4 (? Gervaise of Tilbury) quoted.
- Godart, 369, declares he has often seen a serpent on the walls of Lusignan Castle.
- Great Carmen, 263.
- Great Prior of Rhodes invites Urian and Guion to Rhodes, 116; goes to search for the Saracens, 117; cuts off the Saracen retreat, 174; defeats the Calaph of Bandas at sea, 177; sails to the Saracen fleet at Jaffa, 266.
- Grymault, 306; Grymauld, 323, a Northumbrian giant; Geffray with the great Tooth fights him, 324; and on the second day slays him, 329.
- Guedon, 293, a giant in Garendes; fights Geffray, 301; is slain, 304.
- Guerard of Mountfrayn, nephew of Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 256; makes peace with Geffray, 263.
- Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 255; submits to Geffray, 261, and is forgiven, 263.
- Guion, third son of Raymondin and Melusine, 103; goes with his brother Urian to help the King of Cyprus against the Saracens, 109; receives a ring from Ermin, 126; visits the King of Cyprus, 150; goes once more against the Saracens, 160; driven on the coast of Armenia, 161; falls in love with Flory, the heiress of the King of Armenia, 163; defeats the Saracens, 166; is offered the crown of Armenia, 179; marries Flory, 180; has to defend himself against a Saracen league, 265.
- Guyon, brother of Claud of Syon Castle, fights Geffray with the great Tooth, 249; is overcome

and bound to a tree, 251; hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.

Henry of Leon, father of Raymondin, seneschal of the King of Bretayn, 65; slain by Josselin Dupont, 67.

Henry, son of Alayn of Quyngean, and cousin of Raymondin, 70; obtains from Raymondin the Barony of Henry of Leon, 87.

Henry, 178, 257, son of Urian and Hermin of Cyprus.

Horrible, eighth son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 105; has three eyes, and is of a brutal disposition, 105; suffocated, 322.

Locher, 245, son of Anthony and Christine of Luxembourg.

Lymas, Captain of, visits the wounded King of Cyprus, 146; takes a message from him to Urian, 148.

Machomid, 277; Mahon, 275, Mahomet.

Melidee, 183; Metydee, 217, daughter of the King of Ansay; betrothed to Bertrand, Anthony's son, 245.

Melior, second daughter of Elinas and Pressine, 11; helps Melusine to shut her father up in the Mountain of Brombelyoys, 14; as punishment is sent by her mother to keep a Sperohak in a castle in Armenia until the day of judgment, 15; she gives gifts to knights who can watch the Sperohak three days and nights without sleep, 362; has an adventure with a King of Armenia, 365; tells her history, 366.

Melusyne, 6; Melusigne, 11; Melusine of Albany, 52; eldest daughter of Elinas, King of Albany, and Pressine, 11; taken to Aualon, 12; told of her father's broken promise, 13; shuts up her father in Brombelyoys Mountain, 14; condemned to turn into a serpent every Saturday till she finds a man who will marry her and who promises to keep away from her on those

days, 15; meets Raymondin at the Fountain of Soif, 27; wakens him, 29; tells his history, 31; asks him to marry her, 31; obtains a promise that he will not try to see her on Saturdays, 32; gives Raymondin advice, 33; her wedding, 53; thanks Raymondin for his friends' presence and urges him to keep his promise, 57; she presents rich jewels to her guests, 59; builds Lusignan Castle, 62; gives birth to Urian, 65; advises Raymondin to go to Bretayn to obtain justice from Josselin Dupont, 65; prepares a welcome for her lord, 101; gives birth to Odon and Guyon, 103; builds Partenay and many towns and castles in Poitou and Guyenne, 103; gives birth to Anthony, Geffray, Froymond, 104, 245, and Horrible, 105; gives permission to Urian and Guion to seek their fortunes abroad, 107; organizes their forces, 109; gives them parting advice, 110; raises an army for Anthony and Regnald, 188; gives them advice, 190; gives birth to Theodoric, 245; Raymondin is made jealous of her by his brother, 295; breaks his promise and visits her on a Saturday, 296; sees her bathing in the form of a serpent woman, 297; she forgives him and consoles him, 299; she hears of the burning of the Abbey of Mailleses by her son Geffray, 312; her sorrow, 312; she goes to Raymondin and chides him for his over great grief, 313; he upbraids her, and calls her a false serpent, 314; she faints, and on reviving laments her fate, 316; she makes her testament, 318; bids Raymondin farewell, 319; is transformed into a serpent and disappears, 321; her obsequies, 321; visits her infant children, 322; her voice is heard lamenting Raymondin's death, 354; is seen by Sersuell, Godart, 369, and Yuon of Wales, 370.

Nathas, 11, Mathas, 17, son of Elynas, King of Albany, by his first wife; he persuades Elynas to break his promise to Pressine, 11; succeeds his father, 12; marries Yerys, 12.

Ode, Duke of Bavaria, 223; goes with Regnald and Anthony to the siege of Prague, 225.

Odon, Edon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 102; marries the daughter of the Earl of Marche, 182; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; the Earl of Vandosme does homage to him, 346.

Olyphart, 242, son of Regnald and Eglantine of Bohemia.

Olyuyer, son of Josselin Dupont, 72; fights Raymondin, 79; yields, 84; condemned to be hanged, 86.

Palatyne, youngest daughter of Elynas and Pressine, sent to the Mountain of Guygo to watch the treasure of Elinas until she was released by a knight of her own lineage, 6.

Philibert de Mommoret assists Gefray in his fight against the rebel Guion, 248, 252.

Pressine, meets Elynas, King of Albany, 7; he is struck with her beauty and declares his love, 10; she consents to marry him on condition that he promises not to look at her when she is in childbed, 11; her marriage, 11; hated by her step-son Nathas, 11; has triplets, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; King Elynas breaks his promise, 11; she leaves him, taking her daughters with her to Aualon, 12; she shows them the land of their birth from Mount Elyneos, 13; she tells them of their father's broken promise, 13; she punishes her daughters for ill-treating their father, 15; she buries Elynas, and builds him a noble tomb, 17.

Raymondin, son of Henry of Leon, 67, and nephew of the Earl of

Poyters, 19; goes on a boar-hunt with his uncle, 21, whom he accidentally kills, 25; he laments his fortune and resolves to fly, 27; at the Fountain of Soif he meets three fairies, 27, and becomes enamoured of the eldest, Melusine, 29; he is surprised that she knows his history, 30; she asks him to marry her, and promises to make him a great lord, 31, on condition that he will never ask to see her on a Saturday, 32; she counsels him to return to Poitiers, and advises him what to do there, 34; he follows her advice, and all goes well, 36; she sends him back to Poitiers to demand of the new Earl a gift of as much land as he can encircle with a hart's hide, 39; he obtains his land grant, 41; he invites his friends to his wedding, 48; they are surprised at the riches of his wife, 59; Lusignan Castle built, 62; named, 64; Melusine bears him a son named Urian, 65; he goes to Brut Britain to avenge an injury to his father, Henry of Leon, 69; he fights Oliver, son of Josselin Dupont, 83; conquers, 84; obtains a decision in his favour from the King of Brut Britain, 88; on his return home he is attacked by the friends of Josselin Dupont, 94; he repels the attack, and sends his enemies to the King of Brut Britain, who hangs them, 97; he finds a grand castle on his return home, 100; is met by Melusine, 101; she bears him more sons, Odon, Guion, 104, Anthony, Regnald, Gefray, 104, Froimond, Horrible, 104, Theodoric, 246; a rebellion in Garaude, 246; he is made jealous by his brother the Earl of Forest, and breaks his promise to Melusine by looking at her in her bath on a Saturday, 296; he sees her to be half woman and half serpent, 297, and laments that he has betrayed her, 297; he drives his brother away for tempting



him, 297, and keeps secret what he has seen, 298; he is forgiven by Melusine, as he has been dis-croet, 299; he hears that Geffray has burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks, 310; he visits the Abbey, where he is overcome with anger and denounces Melusine as a spirit, 311; he upbraids her and calls her "a false serpent," 314; he repents and is forgiven, 315; Melusine changes into a serpent and disappears from him, 321; he has his son Horrible burnt, 321; he is full of sorrow at the loss of his wife, 321; he gives his lands to Geffray, 333, and goes on a pilgrimage to Rome, 334, where he confesses to the Pope and visits the Holy Places, 334; he then journeys to Montserrat in Aragon, 336, where he becomes a hermit, 337; his death, 354, and burial, 355.

Raymond, Earl of Forest, ninth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; suckled by Melusine after her disappearance from Raymondin, 322; is made Earl of Forest by Geffray, 332.

Regnald, fifth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 104; goes with Anthony to the siege of Luxembourg, 111; goes to the siege of Prague, 219; slays King Zelodyus; marries Eglantine of Bohemia, 240; Oliphart, his son, 242; goes to the siege of Pourrenereu, 347.

St. Iohan Baptiste, 16.

St. Paul, 3, 371, quoted.

Saint William, Erle of Poitiers, grandson of Erle Emery of Poitiers, 20; becomes a monk of the Order of the White Mauntelles, 20.

Sersuell, Lieutenant, in charge of Lusignan Castle on behalf of the King of England, 369.

Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel in Asy, marries a fairy, to whom he gives a promise that he will never look at her when she is naked, 5; he breaks his promise, 5; his wife

plunges her head into water, and changes into a serpent and disappears, 5.

Theodoryk, youngest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 246; nursed by his mother after she had left Raymondin, 322; becomes lord of Partenay, 333; left in charge of Geffray's lands, 339; marches against Freiburg, 347, 353; visits his father at Montserrat, 353.

Urian, eldest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 65; wishes to assist the King of Cyprus against the Sultan of Damascus, 109; Melusine provides an army transport and victuals, 109; sails from Rochelle, 115; fights the Sultan of Damascus at sea, 115; lands his army at Cyprus, 119; receives a jewel from Ermine, the heiress of the King of Cyprus, 126; defeats the Saracens, 132, 138; kills the Sultan of Damascus at Famagosse, 146; knighted by the King of Cyprus, 153; is offered the heiress of Cyprus to wife, 155; accepts her, 156; his marriage, 157; becomes king, 158; kills King Brandemount, 175; defeats the Saracen invaders, 176; his son Henry born, 178; defends himself against a new Saracen League.

Yeris, 12, wife of Nathas, King of Albany, and mother of Florymond.

Yuon of Wales, 370, sees Melusine in the form of a serpent.

Zelodyus, Zodyus, King of Craco, 227; besieges Frederick of Bohemia at Prague, 216; kills Frederick, 226, and ill-treats and burns his body, 227; Regnald slays him, 233; the King of Anssay burns his body, 234.



## PART II.—PLACES.

- Acon, page 219, Aix-la-Chapelle.  
 Aisne, River, 193.  
 Albany, 6, 12.  
 Allemayne, 183; Almayn, 351.  
 Anssay, 183, may be read Aussay;  
   Alsace.  
 Aragon, 336.  
 Ardane, 245, Ardennes.  
 Armanye, Grete, 362, Armenia.  
 Armanye, 161; Arminenye, 6, Little  
   Armenia.  
 Aruall, 89.  
 Asy, 5, ? Aisy in dept. of Aisne.  
 Aualon, 12.  
 Austeryche, 345.  
 Auuergne, 1.  
  
 Bandas, 163, may be read Baudas,  
   Baghdad.  
 Bar, Duchy of, 1.  
 Barselone, 336.  
 Baruth, 160, ? Beyrout.  
 Behayne, 6, 214, Bohemia.  
 Berry, 1.  
 Boneuall, 346, ? Bonneval, dept.  
   Eure et Loire.  
 Bretons; 17, 97, Brittany.  
 Brombelyoys, 14; Brombelyo,  
   Mount, 32.  
 Brut Brytayne, 17, Brittany.  
  
 Cabyeres, 355.  
 Cardillak, 356.  
 Coles, 122.  
 Coloyne, 219.  
 Coulombyers, Forest of, 19, 37, 59,  
   in dept. of Vienne.  
 Craco, 216.  
 Cruly, 161, Little Armenia.  
 Culbaston, 337, Colbató.  
 Cypre, 105, Cyprus.  
  
 Damaske, 164.  
 Danette, 276, Damietta.  
 Denmark, 242.  
 Duras, Castel, 346, on the Meuse.  
  
 Eglon, Castle, 103.  
 Elyneos, Mount, 13.  
 England, 356.  
  
 Famagoce, 105, 146; Famagousta,  
   Cyprus.  
 Fontayne of Soyf, 2, or Fontayne of  
   Fayerye, 27.  
 Forest, 6; Forestz, 18, earldom.  
 Fraunce, 1.  
 Frebourgh, 350, Freiburg.  
  
 Garande, 246; garende, 287; guer-  
   rende, 89, country of the River  
   Garonde.  
 Gascoynne, 104.  
 Guyenne, 104.  
 Guygo, Mount, 16, a mountain in  
   Armenia.  
  
 Holland, The low march of, 242.  
 Hongery, 225.  
 Hospytal of Rodes, 122.  
  
 Jalensy, 331.  
 Japhe, 265, Jaffa.  
 Jherusalem, 292.  
  
 Langgedok, 338, Languedoc.  
 Leffé, 217.  
 Leon, Castel, 67.  
 Lorayne, 183.  
 Lucembourg, 6, 183.  
 Lusygnen, 6; Lusignen, 17.  
 Lynas, 146; Limasson, 117, Limas-  
   sol, Cyprus.  
 Lynges, 103.  
  
 Mailleses, Abbey of, 6; Maillezes,  
   246.  
 Malegres, 162.  
 Marcellly, Castel, 331.  
 Masyeres, Bridge of, 245, ? Mézières.  
 Maxence, 103, Abbey of ? Maxent.  
 Melle, 103.  
 Mermont, 292; Mernant, 103.  
 Mermount, 300, Tower of the giant  
   Guedon.  
 Meuse, River, 194; Meuze, 245, 346.  
 Montferrat, 335, Montserrat in Ara-  
   gon.  
 Montiers, Abbey of, 42.  
 Mouchyne, 243 (*Muchin*), ? Munich.  
 Mountfrayn, 257.

- Mountyoued, 331; Mountyouet, 306.  
 Murmych, 225.  
 Myrabel, 192.  
  
 Nantes, 73.  
 Nerbonne, 335.  
 Neufmoustier, Abbey of, 322.  
 Northomberland, 14, 306.  
 Northweglie, 242; Norway.  
 Nuenmarghe, 223 (? Nurenbürg).  
 Nyort, 299.  
  
 Parpynen, 336, Perpignan.  
 Partenay, 6, 103.  
 Penbrough, 355, Pembroke.  
 Penycence, 65.  
 Poitiers, 118; Poyters, 19; Poytiers.  
 Pons, 103.  
 Poterne Tower, 321.  
 Pourrencru, 346, (?) Porentruy, near  
 Freiburg.  
 Poytow, 4; Poitow, 17; Poytwo,  
 41; Pouthieu, 293 (*Ponthiène*).  
 Praghe, 215, Prague.  
  
 Quercyn, 356.  
 Quyngant, 68, ? Guingamp.  
  
 Regnault, Castel, 355.  
 Rochelle, 103.  
 Roussel, Chastel, in Asy, 5.  
 Ryne, River, 219, Rhine.  
  
 Saint Hylary of Poyters, church, 40.  
 Salesbury, 1.  
 Saynt Andrew, Port of, 168.  
 Saynt Mychel, Capell of, 343.  
 St. John of Rhodes, 269.  
 Sassymon, 98.  
 Soyf, Fontayne of, 37.  
 Sperhaak Castle, 16; Sperohak, 15.  
 Storyon, 73.  
 Surye, 160, ? Syria.  
 Syon Castle, 247.  
  
 Tallemontois, 104.  
 Tallemounte, 104.  
 Tharse, 164, in Asia Minor.  
 Thoulouse, 335.  
 Tryple, 278, ? Tripoli in Syria.  
 Tupple, 160 (*Tupple*), ? Tripoli,  
 Syria.  
 Turcke, 145; Turckye, 265.  
  
 Valbruyant Castle, 255.  
 Vannes, 98.  
 Vernon, 318.  
 Vertone, 195.  
 Vouant, 103.  
 Vtreight, 242, Utrecht.  
  
 Xaintes, 103.  
  
 Ycrys, 12.  
 Zeland, 242, Zealand.











PRATT

SEP 11 1984

PRATT

JAN 7 1985

SEP - 8 1986

PRATT

JAN 13 1987

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY

10 SEP

